



SMITHSONIAN



HISTORY

YEAR BY YEAR



THE HISTORY OF THE WORLD, FROM
THE STONE AGE TO THE DIGITAL AGE



History

YEAR BY YEAR





Penguin
Random
House

FIRST EDITION

DK LONDON

Senior Editor Francesca Baines
Senior Art Editor Sheila Collins
Editors Steven Carton, Clare Hibbert, Andrea Mills
Designers David Ball, Jeongeun Park, Stefan Podhorodecki,
 Mary Sandberg, Jane Thomas
Illustrator Jeongeun Park
Managing Editor Linda Esposito
Managing Art Editor Diane Peyton Jones
Category Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Producer Mary Slater
Senior Producer, Pre-production Ben Marcus
Producer, Pre-production Rachel Ng
Picture Researcher Nic Dean
DK Picture Librarian Romaine Werblow
Jacket Editor Manisha Majithia
Jacket Designer Mark Cavanagh
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf
Associate Publishing Director Liz Wheeler
Art Director Phil Ormerod

DK INDIA

Editor Bharti Bedi
Art Editors Deep Shikha Walia, Shipra Jain, Pankaj Bhatia
DTP Designers Neeraj Bhatia, Tanveer Abbas Zaidi
Deputy Managing Editor Kingshuk Ghoshal
Deputy Managing Art Editor Govind Mittal
Preproduction Manager Balwant Singh
Production Manager Pankaj Sharma

This edition published in 2019
 First American Edition, 2013
 Published in the United States by DK Publishing
 1450 Broadway, Suite 801, New York, NY 10018

Copyright © 2013, 2019 Dorling Kindersley Limited
 A Penguin Random House Company
 19 20 21 22 23 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
 001—314181—July/2019

All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under the copyright reserved above, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.
 Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress.

ISBN 978-1-4654-1418-2

Color reproduction by Opus Multimedia Services, Delhi, India
 Printed and bound in Malaysia

A WORLD OF IDEAS:
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW
www.dk.com



Smithsonian

THE SMITHSONIAN

Established in 1846, the Smithsonian—the world's largest museum, education, and research complex—includes 19 museums and galleries and the National Zoological Park. The total number of artifacts, works of art, and specimens in the Smithsonian's collection is estimated at 154 million. The Smithsonian is the world's largest museum and research complex, dedicated to public education, national service, and scholarship in the arts, sciences, and history.

SECOND EDITION

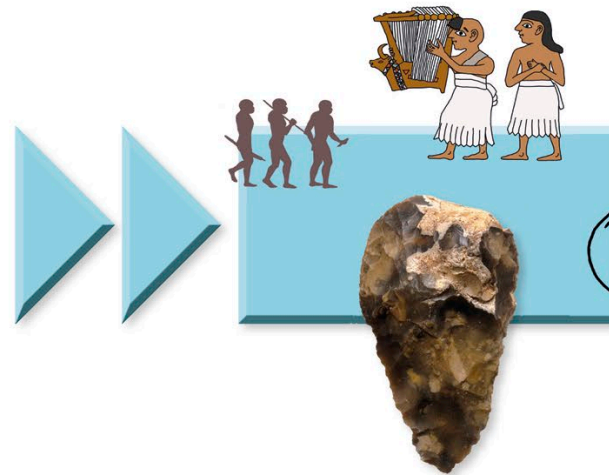
Editor Jessica Cawthra
Senior Art Editor Sheila Collins
US Editor Megan Douglass
US Executive Editor Lori Hand
Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa
Jacket Editor Emma Dawson
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Senior Producer, Pre-production Andy Hilliard
Senior Producer Jude Crozier
Managing Editor Francesca Baines
Managing Art Editor Philip Letsu
Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Associate Publishing Director Liz Wheeler
Art Director Karen Self
Design Director Phil Ormerod
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

SMITHSONIAN ENTERPRISES

Product Development Manager Kealy Gordon
Senior Manager, Licensed Publishing Ellen Nanney
Director, Licensed Publishing Jill Corcoran
Vice President, Consumer and Education Products Brigid Ferraro
President Carol LeBlanc

Smithsonian

Dr. F. Robert van der Linden, Curator,
 National Air and Space Museum





Contents



6.5 MYA–3000 BCE

Before history began

- 8 6.5–0.2 MYA
- 10 Hunter-gatherers
- 12 200,000–10,000 BCE
- 14 Magical creatures
- 16 10,000–3000 BCE
- 18 The first farmers



3000 BCE–700 BCE

Really ancient history

- 22 3000–2500 BCE
- 24 Into battle!
- 26 Gods and temples
- 28 2500–2000 BCE
- 30 The first writing
- 32 2000–1500 BCE
- 34 The metal ages
- 36 1500–1000 BCE
- 38 Hidden treasures
- 40 An Egyptian scribe
- 42 1000–700 BCE



700 BCE–500 CE

Much more civilized

- 46 700–600 BCE
- 48 Growing up in Sparta
- 50 600–500 BCE
- 52 The Greek-Persian wars
- 54 500–400 BCE
- 56 Celtic warriors
- 58 400–300 BCE
- 60 300–200 BCE
- 62 Tomb army
- 64 200–100 BCE
- 66 100–1 BCE
- 68 The Roman Empire
- 70 1–100 CE
- 72 Riot in Pompeii
- 74 100–200
- 76 200–300
- 78 A Roman girl's life
- 80 300–400
- 82 400–500



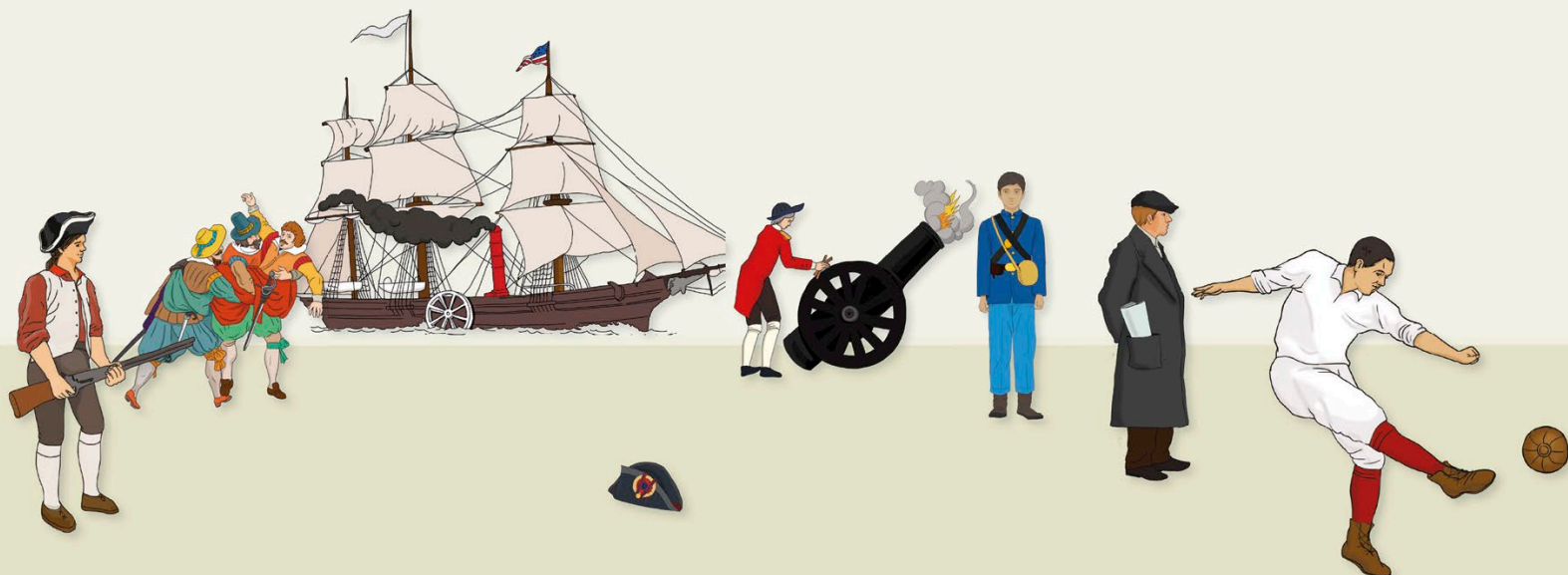
500–1450

The marvelous Middle Ages

- 86 500–600
- 88 The Maya
- 90 600–700
- 92 China's golden age
- 94 700–800
- 96 The world of Islam
- 98 800–900
- 100 The Vikings
- 102 900–1000
- 104 Boy monk
- 106 1000–1100
- 108 1100–1200
- 110 The Crusades
- 112 Samurai battle
- 114 1200–1300
- 116 Young apprentices
- 118 Mongol warriors
- 120 1300–1400
- 122 Battle of Agincourt
- 124 1400–1450
- 126 Aztecs and Incas

Traveling through time

The earliest events in this book took place a very long time ago. Some dates may be followed by the letters *MYA*, short for “million years ago.” Other dates have *BCE* and *CE* after them. These are short for “before the Common Era” and “Common Era.” The Common Era was originally based on the birth of Jesus. When the exact date of an event is not used, the letter *c* is used. This is short for the Latin word *circa*, meaning “round,” and indicates that the date is approximate.



1450–1750

Exploring and reforming

- 130 1450–1475
- 132 The Renaissance
- 134 1475–1500
- 136 Age of Exploration
- 138 1500–1525
- 140 1525–1550
- 142 Ottoman Empire
- 144 1550–1575
- 146 Mercator's map
- 148 Europe's Wars of Religion
- 150 1575–1600
- 152 1600–1625
- 154 The trial of Galileo
- 156 Edo Japan
- 158 1625–1650
- 160 Mughal India
- 162 1650–1675
- 164 1675–1700
- 166 Qing China
- 168 1700–1725
- 170 The rise of Russia
- 172 1725–1750
- 174 Life at sea



1750–1850

Time for change

- 178 1750–1760
- 180 1760–1770
- 182 The Industrial Revolution
- 184 Working at the cotton mill
- 186 1770–1780
- 188 The American Revolution
- 190 1780–1790
- 192 The French Revolution
- 194 1790–1800
- 196 The execution of Louis XVI
- 198 1800–1810
- 200 The slave trade
- 202 1810–1820
- 204 1820–1830
- 206 Medical science
- 208 1830–1840
- 210 Revolutionary reaper
- 212 1840–1850
- 214 Heading west



1850–1945

Empires and World Wars

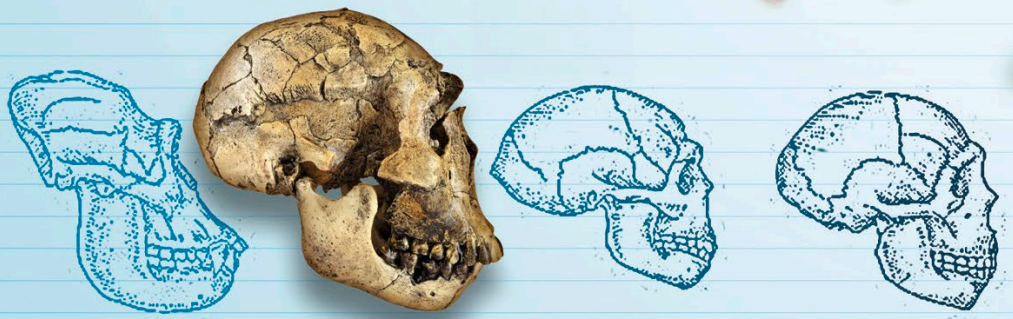
- 218 1850–1860
- 220 1860–1870
- 222 American Civil War
- 224 1870–1880
- 226 Unification of Germany and Italy
- 228 1880–1890
- 230 The Scramble for Africa
- 232 Children of Ellis Island
- 234 1890–1900
- 236 1900–1910
- 238 Learning to fly
- 240 1910–1915
- 242 World War I
- 244 1915–1920
- 246 1920–1930
- 248 1930–1935
- 250 The Great Depression
- 252 Worthless money
- 254 1935–1940
- 256 War in Europe
- 258 War in the Pacific
- 260 1940–1945
- 262 Fleeing the Nazis



1945–present

Fast forward

- 266 1945–1950
- 268 The Cold War
- 270 Divided Berlin
- 272 1950–1960
- 274 1960–1965
- 276 Civil Rights
- 278 1965–1970
- 280 Man on the Moon
- 282 1970–1975
- 284 Arab-Israeli Conflict
- 286 1975–1980
- 288 1980–1985
- 290 Decolonization
- 292 1985–1990
- 294 Fall of Communism
- 296 1990–1995
- 298 Living under apartheid
- 300 1995–2000
- 302 2000–2005
- 304 War on Terror
- 306 2005–2010
- 308 2010–2018
- 310 The history of the United States and Canada
- 314 Glossary
- 316 Index
- 319 Acknowledgments





6.5 MYA–3000 BCE Before history began

The human story began more than six million years ago, in Africa, when our apelike ancestors first began to walk upright. Over time they evolved, becoming bigger and more intelligent. One species, *Homo erectus*, learned how to use fire and to make stone tools. They were followed by more advanced species until, around 200,000 years ago, our own species, *Homo sapiens*, appeared. As hunter-gatherers, modern humans settled every inhabited part of the planet. Then, around 9500 BCE, humans began to farm, which led to a new way of life.



6.5 ▶ 0.2 MYA

The "cradle of humankind"

Humans belong to a family of upright walking apes, called hominins, which evolved in East and South Africa. We know about hominins thanks to their fossils. One of the most important sites is the Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania, where hominin fossils date from around 1.9 MYA. The gorge is known as "the cradle of humankind."

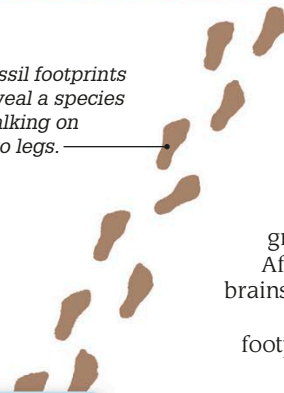


6.5 MYA

Two-legged apes

The first apes able to walk upright appeared in the forests of Africa. They combined walking with swinging from trees. The earliest evidence found so far is called *Sahelanthropus tchadensis* ("Human fossil from Sahel").

Fossil footprints reveal a species walking on two legs.



3.9 MYA

Human ancestors

A new group of hominins, called Australopithecines, spread across the dry grasslands of East and South Africa. They were small, with brains a third the size of those of modern humans, but their footprints were much like ours.

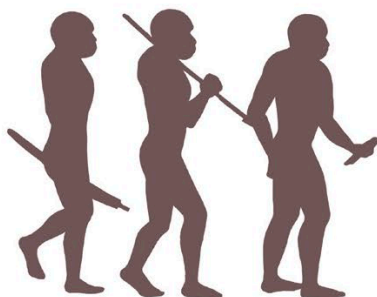
6 MYA

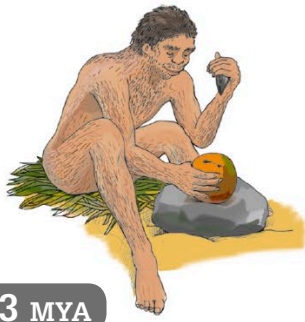
5 MYA

4 MYA

“We hope to find more pieces of the puzzle, which will shed light on the connection between this upright, walking ape, our early ancestor, and modern man.”

Richard Leakey,
Kenyan anthropologist

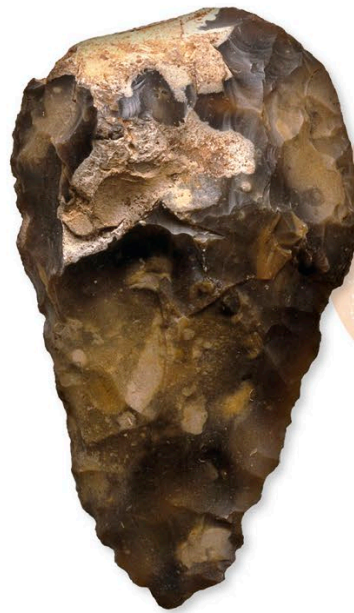




3.3 MYA

Early toolmakers

An early hominin species, possibly *Australopithecus*, learned how to make stone tools by striking pebbles with other stones to create a cutting edge. They used their tools to dig up roots, open nuts, and smash open bones to get at edible marrow on the inside.



A new tool

Homo erectus invented a new kind of stone tool, the leaf-shaped hand ax, in Africa around 1.9 MYA. This was the first tool to be made to a design, and it would remain the main hominin tool for over a million years.

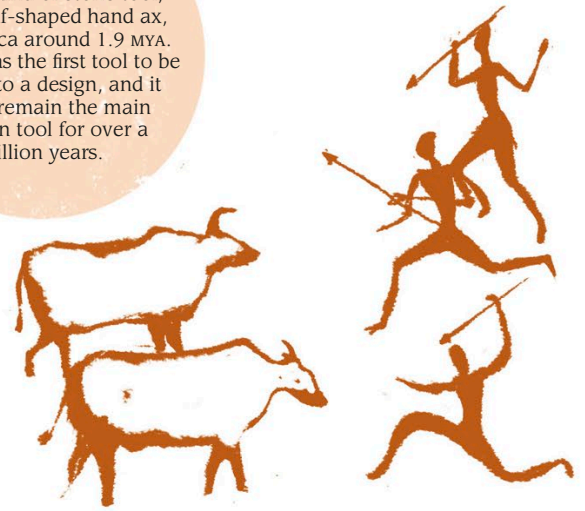
1.9 MYA

Human-sized

Homo erectus (upright man), a descendant of *Homo habilis*, evolved in East Africa. The discovery of an almost complete skeleton, called the Turkana Boy, showed that *Homo erectus* was the first hominin to grow as tall as modern humans.



Skull of Turkana Boy



0.5 MYA

First shelters

Descendants of *Homo erectus*, called *Homo heidelbergensis*, moved into Europe, where they hunted elephants and hippos with stone-tipped spears. They were the first hominins to build shelters out of wood.

3 MYA

2 MYA

1 MYA

OUT OF AFRICA

Less than 100,000 years ago, our species, *Homo sapiens*, moved out of Africa to settle the world, as shown on this map. We were not the first hominins to leave Africa. Around 1.9 MYA *Homo erectus* moved out of Africa into Eurasia.

Longest-standing hominin

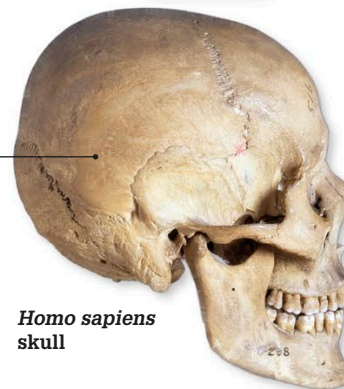
Homo erectus was the longest-surviving hominin species. They lived across large areas of Africa, Southern Europe, Asia, and Indonesia for more than 1.5 million years.



Back-sloping forehead, low brain case, and thick brow ridges

Homo erectus skull from Kenya, East Africa

High skull case to hold large brain



Homo sapiens skull

0.2 MYA

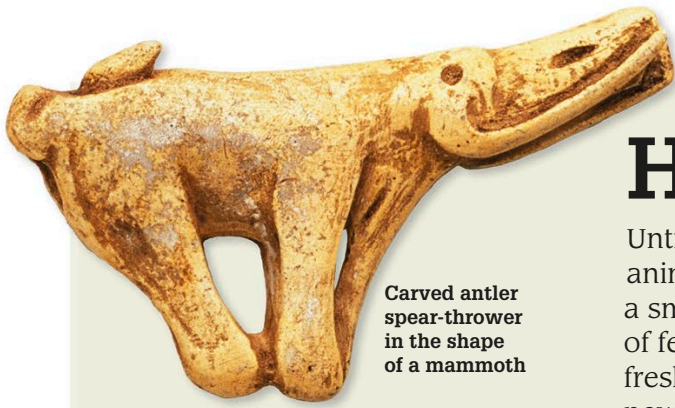
Modern humans

The first modern humans, called *Homo sapiens* (thinking man), appeared in Africa 200,000 years ago. They were larger-brained descendants of *Homo heidelbergensis*. Our distinguishing features are a high forehead with slight brow ridges, a small face, and a projecting chin.

Making fire

Homo erectus learned how to make fire. This provided warmth, light, and protection from wild animals, and was used to cook meat. Fire allowed hominins to move into colder areas of the planet.





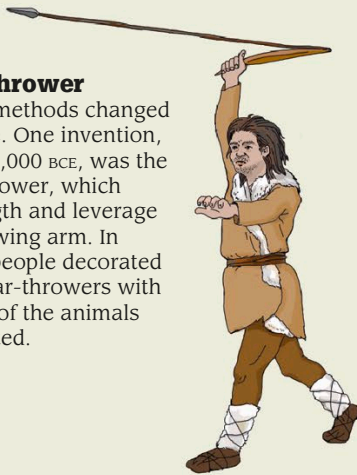
Carved antler spear-thrower in the shape of a mammoth

Hunter-gatherers

Until just 10,000 years ago, all humans survived by hunting animals and gathering plants for food. This can only support a small population, so hunter-gatherers usually lived in bands of fewer than fifty people, who often had to move on to find fresh food supplies. It was as hunter-gatherers, searching for new sources of food, that people settled in every continent of the world except Antarctica.

Spear-thrower

Hunting methods changed over time. One invention, before 21,000 BCE, was the spear-thrower, which adds length and leverage to a throwing arm. In Europe, people decorated their spear-throwers with carvings of the animals they hunted.



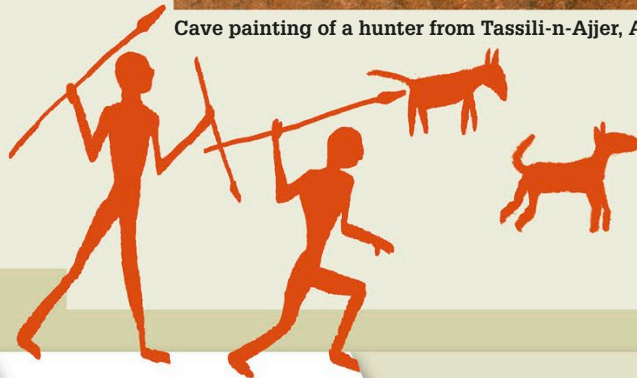
Cave painting of a hunter from Tassili-n-Ajjer, Algeria

“The choice for hunters was brutal: starve or move.”

Dr. Jacob Bronowski,
The Ascent of Man, 1973

Hunting with dogs

At some point before 35,000 BCE, hunters domesticated dogs. Dogs were skilled trackers, with their acute senses of smell and hearing, and they provided speed and sharp teeth for the kill. Dogs also learned new skills, such as how to understand human emotions.



After the Ice Age

From around 12,000 BCE, the world's climate warmed. As ice sheets melted, forests spread and rivers and lakes formed. During the new period, called the Mesolithic (Middle Stone) Age, people ate a wider variety of plant foods. The bow, ideal for woodlands, became their most important hunting weapon.

Key events

62,000 BCE

Arrowheads, found in a South African cave, provide the earliest evidence of the bow and arrow. The bow allowed hunters to kill their prey from a distance.

39,000 BCE

People in Asia and Europe began to make cave paintings of animals, such as babirusa (deer-pig) and aurochs (wild cattle).



35,000 BCE

Earliest evidence of domesticated dogs, from a cave in Belgium. Dogs were domesticated from wolves, by raising them from puppies.

21,000 BCE

People in Europe first used spear-throwers, tools that increased the speed and force of a spear through the air.

Bow

Choose your weapon

During the Mesolithic period, people invented many specialized tools for different purposes. Hunters made antler and bone harpoons, arrows with flint blades, and spears, traps, and nets for fishing.

**Antler harpoon with serrated edge****Fishing spear****Arrow with flint blade****Hunter-gatherers today**

In a few areas of the world today, people still live as hunter-gatherers. Learning about these societies can help us understand how the first people might have lived. In most cases, hunting is left to men, while the gathering of plant foods is the work of women and children. People own few personal possessions, and share everything they have.

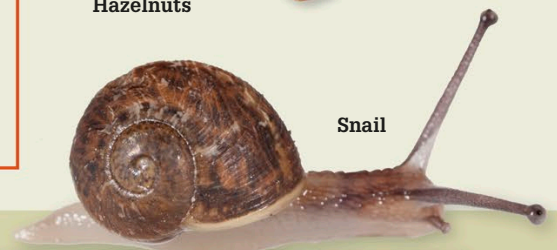
**Tracking prey**

The San Bushmen of South Africa are modern-day hunter-gatherers. Expert trackers and hunters, they use bows and arrows to kill deer, antelope, zebra, and other animals. They tip their arrows with poison, which they extract from beetle larvae.

Prehistoric menu

Mesolithic people learned to eat a highly varied diet. Here are some of the foods they would have eaten:

- Berries
- Nuts
- Seeds
- Leaves
- Grasses
- Roots
- Shellfish
- Snails
- Fish
- Meat
- Eggs

**Cranberries****Hazelnuts****Blackberries****Snail****Flint arrowhead****13,000 BCE**

Mammoth hunters in Ukraine built constructions from the bones of their prey. It is not known if these were simply shelters or had some ritual purpose.

12,000 BCE

Mesolithic hunter-gatherers in the Near East became so skilled at gathering wild foods that they were able to settle down in early villages.

12,000 BCE

As the climate in Northern Europe warmed up, many large mammals, including woolly rhinos and mammoths, became extinct.

200,000 ▶ 10,000 BCE

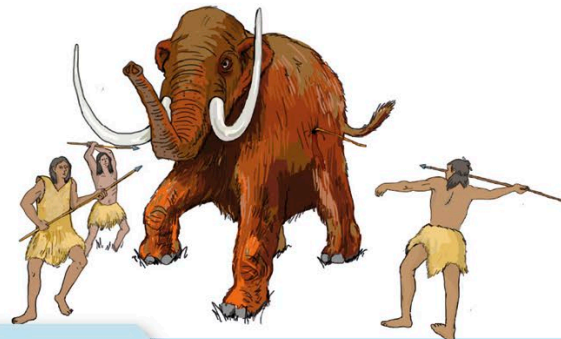


Woolly mammoth

110,000 BCE

Ice sheets

This period marked the beginning of a 100,000-year-long cold phase in the Earth's climate, in which ice sheets periodically spread south from the Arctic and sea levels sank. In Eurasia, forests gave way to steppe and grassland, inhabited by animals adapted to the cold, such as the woolly mammoth and woolly rhinoceros.

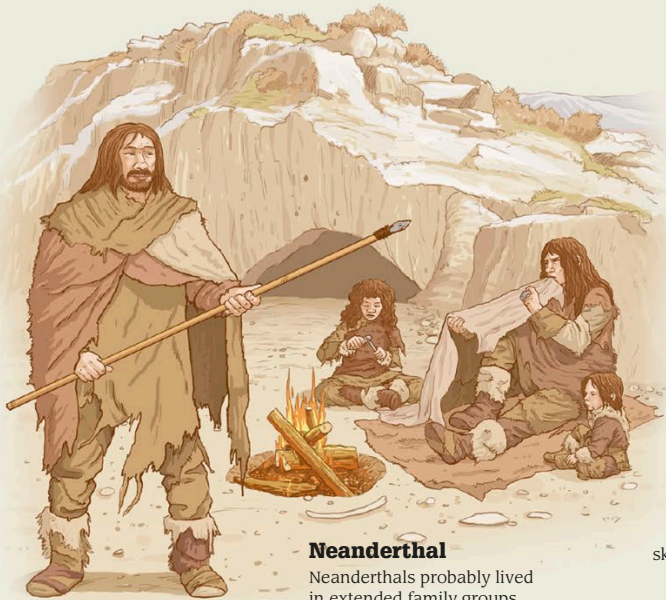


▶▶ 200,000

150,000

100,000

200,000 BCE NEANDERTHALS



Neanderthal

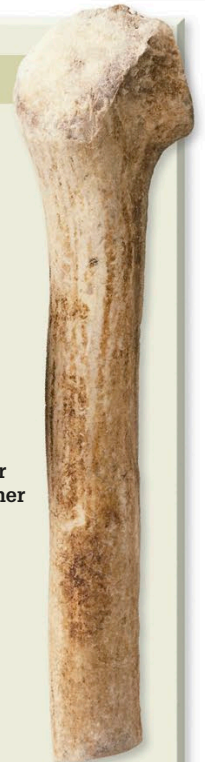
Neanderthals probably lived in extended family groups, in rock shelters or caves.

In Europe and the Near East, Neanderthals, a new human species adapted to cold conditions, appeared. Stocky and muscular, Neanderthals hunted large mammals using spears at close quarters. Neanderthals dressed in skins and lived in caves, where they also buried their dead.

Antler hammer

Skin scraper

Neanderthals made a wide range of tools and weapons. This scraper, for preparing skins, was shaped by chipping flakes from the flint with a hammer of bone or antler.





Hand painting from a cave at Chauvet, France

“If we went back 100,000 years... there might have been as many as six different kinds of humans on the Earth. All those other kinds have disappeared, and left us as the sole survivors.”

Dr. Chris Stringer of the Natural History Museum, London

85,000–70,000 BCE

Into Asia

Modern humans, *Homo sapiens*, moved out of Africa and into Asia. They then spread east across South Asia, keeping to the warmer southern regions. The previous human species in Asia, *Homo erectus*, had already become extinct.

39,000 BCE

First artists

Early humans created works of art—cave paintings of animals and carvings of animals and people. They also left images of their own hands on the cave walls, by spitting or blowing pigment over them.

38,000 BCE

Last Neanderthals

Following a period of extreme climate change, Neanderthals became extinct. With the disappearance of the last Neanderthals, *Homo sapiens* was the only human species on Earth.

50,000

50,000 BCE

First sea voyages

Modern humans from Asia made the earliest known boat journeys, crossing the sea to settle Australia. There, they found unfamiliar new animals, including the Giant Kangaroo and many large flightless birds. Many of these became extinct following the arrival of humans.



40,000 BCE

Cro-Magnons

The first modern humans in Europe are called Cro-Magnons, after a site in France. They were the first people to make tailored clothes using bone needles.

10,000

15,000 BCE

Into America

Modern humans from Asia crossed into the Americas, following herds of game. They were able to do this because the lower sea levels created a land bridge between the two continents, where today the Bering Strait divides Russia from Alaska.

14,000 BCE

First pots

Hunter-gatherers in Japan made the first pots—clay copies of woven baskets called “Jomon” (cord patterned) ware. In most other places, pottery was only invented once people became settled farmers.



Jomon pot

17,000 YEARS AGO, FRANCE



Magical creatures

Around 17,000 years ago in Lascaux, France, early people decorated a network of caves with paintings of 2,000 animals, including horses, aurochs (wild oxen), bison, and stags. Perhaps these paintings were used in ceremonies to bring good hunting. We do not know. But when they were illuminated by the flickering light of stone lamps, the beasts must have seemed to have magical powers.



The Hall of Bulls in the Lascaux caves, France

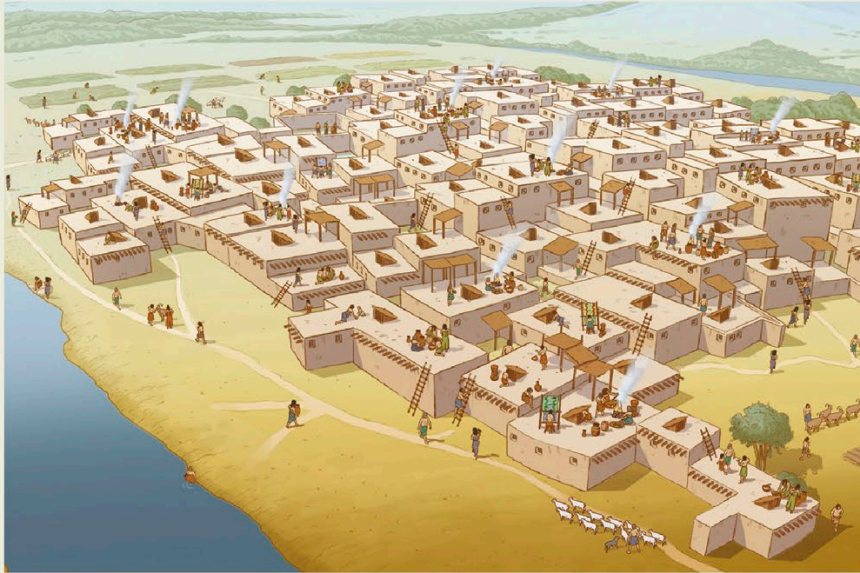
“Most people don’t realize how *huge* some of the paintings are. There are pictures of animals there that are ten, fifteen feet long, and more.”

Ralph Morse, US photographer, who took the first photos of the Lascaux caves, in 1947.

10,000 ▶ 3000 BCE

7300 BCE

CATALHÖYÜK



The earliest-known town is Catalhöyük, in what is now Turkey. The settled lifestyle enabled farmers to grow a surplus to support craftworkers and to trade. People imported cowrie shells, obsidian (volcanic glass), and copper, and exported obsidian daggers, mirrors, and jewelry.



Cowrie shells



Obsidian

Crowded town

People lived in mud-brick houses that were tightly packed together. There were no doors, and houses were entered through ladders from the roofs.

10,000

9000 BCE

Gobekli Tepe

Thought to be the world's oldest place of worship, this prehistoric temple in modern-day Turkey is older than the ancient Egyptian pyramids by around 6,500 years. Excavated in 1995,

the site is made up of rings of monumental stone blocks surrounding T-shaped pillars that are carved with pictures of animals, such as snakes and vultures.

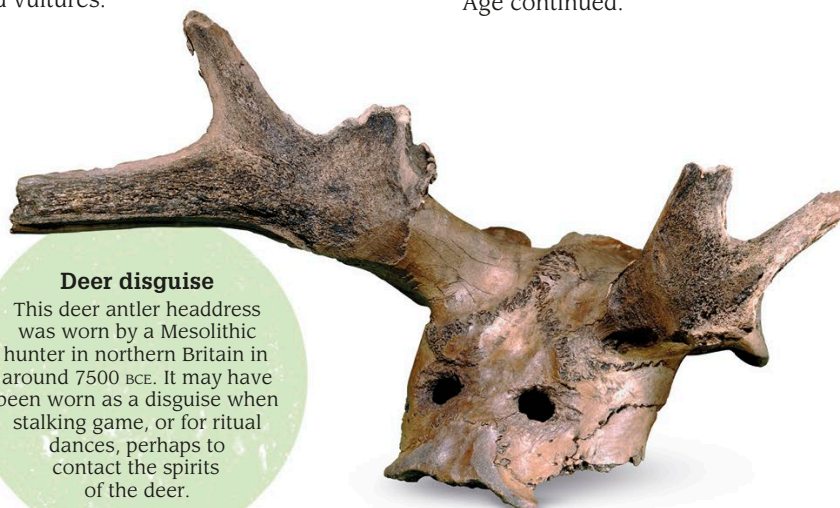


Reptile carving on a stone pillar from the Gobekli Tepe

9500 BCE

First farmers

People in Egypt and the Near East became the first farmers. With the arrival of farming, a new period called the Neolithic (New Stone) Age began. In other parts of the world, where people still lived as hunter-gatherers, the Mesolithic (Middle Stone) Age continued.



Deer disguise

This deer antler headdress was worn by a Mesolithic hunter in northern Britain in around 7500 BCE. It may have been worn as a disguise when stalking game, or for ritual dances, perhaps to contact the spirits of the deer.





The Poul nabrone dolmen in Ireland

4000–2500 BCE

Tomb builders

Farming people in Europe set up large stone tombs. The earliest, called dolmens, used standing stones supporting a horizontal table stone. Originally, dolmens would have been covered with earth mounds. A tomb of the ancestors showed the right of the living to hold the land.

4000–3000 BCE

First cities

The first cities emerged in Mesopotamia (modern-day Iraq). Each city was ruled by a king on behalf of a local god, who was worshipped in a great temple.



Mesopotamian temple door plaque

King is shown larger than his family

5000 BCE

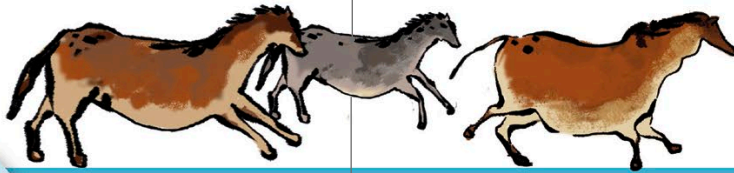
Copper tools

People in Central Europe and western Asia made the first metal tools, from copper. Stone tools remained the most commonly used, and so historians call this period of prehistory the Chalcolithic (Copper-Stone) Age.

4000–3000 BCE

Horse riders

People began to ride horses on the steppes, or grassy plains, of Europe and Asia. They lived as shepherds, leading flocks of sheep across the steppes in search of fresh grazing.



3500 BCE

Chinese bronze

In China and western Asia, people discovered that by mixing tin with copper, they could make a much harder metal—bronze.

6000

3000

3300 BCE ÖTZI THE ICEMAN

In 1991, hikers in the Ötztal Alps, between Austria and Italy, discovered the body of a man in melting ice. At first, they thought he was a modern-day victim. In fact, he was 5,300 years old. The man, nicknamed Ötzi, had died after being shot with an arrow.



Handle is 2 ft (60 cm) long, and made from yew.

Ötzi's ax

Ötzi's ax had a copper blade bound to a wooden handle with leather thongs. This is the only complete prehistoric ax ever found.

Clothing and equipment

The body was found wearing a bearskin hat, clothes of deer and goat hide, and deer-and-bearskin shoes stuffed with grass. Ötzi also had a bow and arrows, a copper ax, a flint dagger, a fire-making kit, and berries for food.

3300 BCE

First writing

The Sumerians invented an early writing system called cuneiform. Around the same time, Egyptians invented another writing system called hieroglyphic. It used picture signs, which stood for words, ideas, and sounds.

3100 BCE

The first kings

The first kings ruled in Egypt. The earliest we know was named Narmer, shown on this carving wearing the white and red crowns of Upper (southern) and Lower (northern) Egypt. Narmer may have united the two lands in a single kingdom.



Here, the king wears the white crown of Upper Egypt.

Narmer strikes his enemies with his mace.

Narmer palette

The first farmers

From 9500 BCE, people in Egypt and western Asia learned how to sow, harvest, and store crops. They also domesticated animals, such as goats, sheep, cattle, and pigs—they had become farmers, beginning a new period called the Neolithic (New Stone) Age. In East Asia and the Americas, farming was adopted later, and different native crops were grown.



The Fertile Crescent

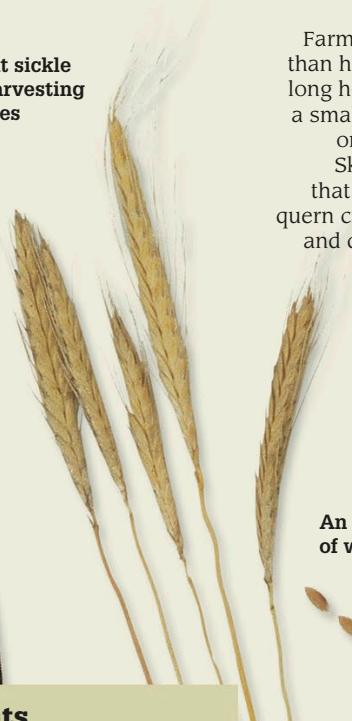
Farming began in an area known as the “fertile crescent” (shown in green above), which stretched from the Mediterranean to the Persian Gulf. It followed the courses of three great rivers—the Nile, the Tigris, and the Euphrates—which flooded regularly, depositing silt to make the soil fertile. Here grew wild grasses, ancestors of wheat, barley, rye, and other food crops.



Changing wheat

The wild ancestors of wheat had brittle heads that shattered when ripe, releasing grains to be spread by the wind. By harvesting plants with larger, more intact ears, people gradually changed wheat. It evolved into bread wheat, a plant whose grains wait for the plant to be harvested.

A flint sickle for harvesting grasses

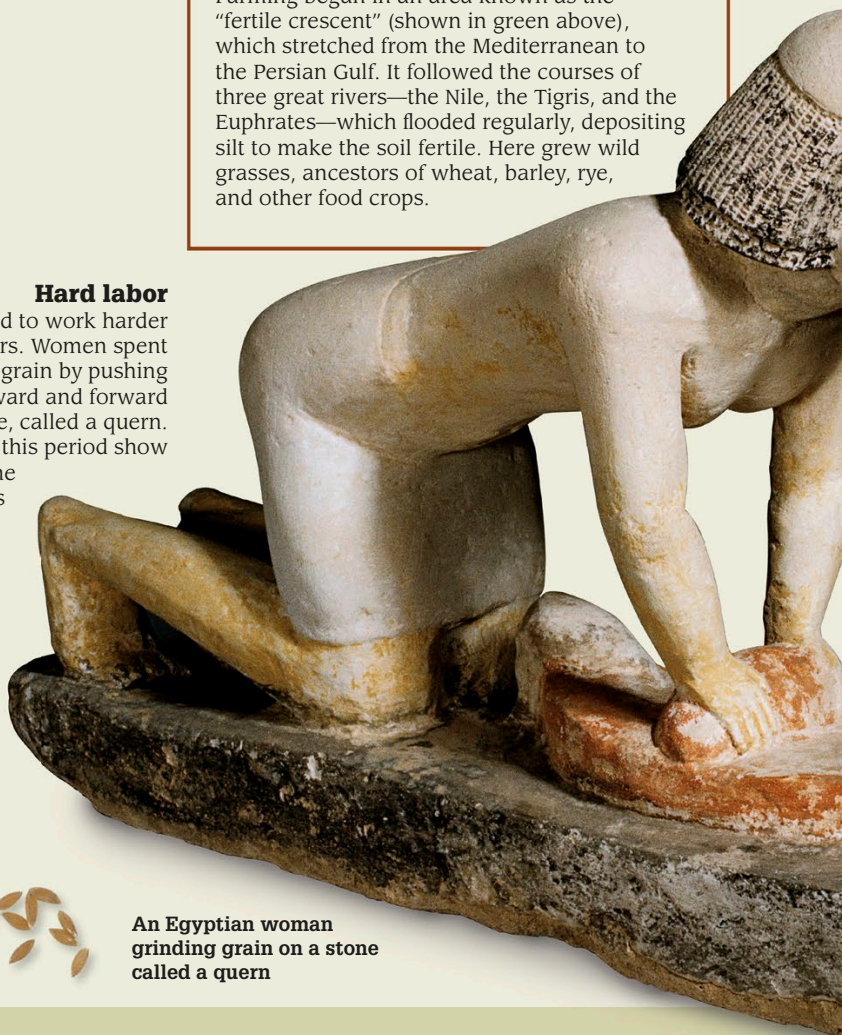


An early variety of wheat



Hard labor

Farming people had to work harder than hunter-gatherers. Women spent long hours grinding grain by pushing a small stone backward and forward on a large stone, called a quern. Skeletons from this period show that kneeling at the quern caused arthritis and damaged toes and ankles.



An Egyptian woman grinding grain on a stone called a quern

Key events

9500 BCE

First farming began in Egypt and western Asia, as people settled to cultivate wild grasses.

8500 BCE

Goats and sheep were domesticated in the Near East.



8000 BCE

In Mesoamerica, people learned to grow squash. Rice was first domesticated in China.



7000 BCE

Pigs were domesticated in Turkey and cattle in the Near East. Corn was developed from wild teosinte in Mexico.

6500 BCE

Chinese farmers grew millet along the Yellow River, and rice by the Yangtze.

Settled life

Farming allowed people to stay in one place, settling in villages that then grew into towns. Settling down changed many aspects of daily life, bringing with it advantages and disadvantages.

Pros

- Easier to raise bigger families
- Life was more comfortable
- There was access to goods, through trade
- Potential for wealth and power, for some

Cons

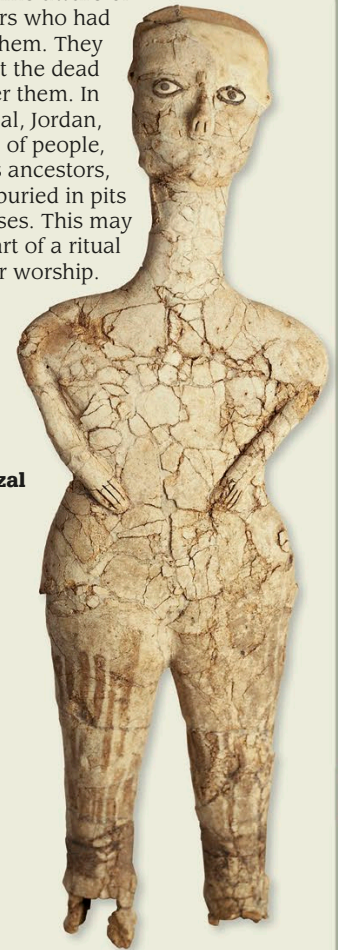
- Overcrowding
- Risk of disease, caught by living alongside other people and animals
- Disposal of rubbish and sewage was a problem
- Farmers' wealth attracted attackers

High-rise living

In many early settlements, people lived on top of one another.

**Ancestor worship**

Living in one place, farming people became aware of the ancestors who had lived before them. They believed that the dead watched over them. In 'Ain Ghazal, Jordan, statues of people, perhaps ancestors, were found buried in pits beneath houses. This may have been part of a ritual of ancestor worship.



'Ain Ghazal statue

Practical pots

Most pottery was too heavy and fragile to be carried by hunter-gatherers, but when people settled, pots revolutionized their lives. They could use them to carry liquids, store grain, and cook food over a fire. Pottery was also decorative, and became a way of displaying wealth.

American farmers

Around 8000 BCE, farming was developed in Mesoamerica (present-day Mexico and Central America) and South America. There were few large animals suitable for farm work, so Americans never invented wheeled transportation or the plow. Many different native crops and animals were found in this region:

★ Corn

Domesticated in Mesoamerica from a wild grass called teosinte.

★ Potatoes

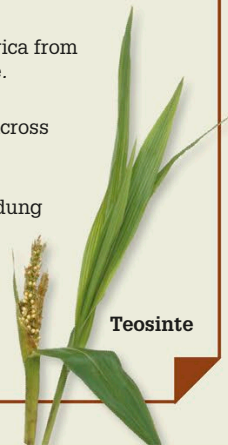
Wild potato species grew across the Americas.

★ Llamas and alpacas

Used for their meat, wool, dung (for fuel and fertilizer), and also as pack animals.

★ Guinea pigs

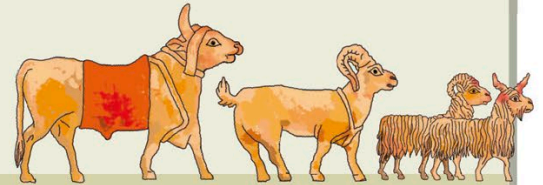
These animals are a major meat source in the Andes.



Teosinte

Animal adaptation

Animals changed when they were domesticated. Cattle and sheep became smaller and more docile than their wild ancestors. Sheep lost their long horns and developed a thick woolly fleece.

**6000 BCE**

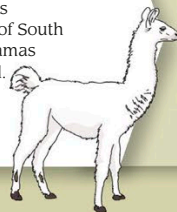
In Sumeria, Mesopotamia, the cultivation of crops occurred on a large scale.

5000 BCE

Farming spread across Europe, West Asia, and North Africa.

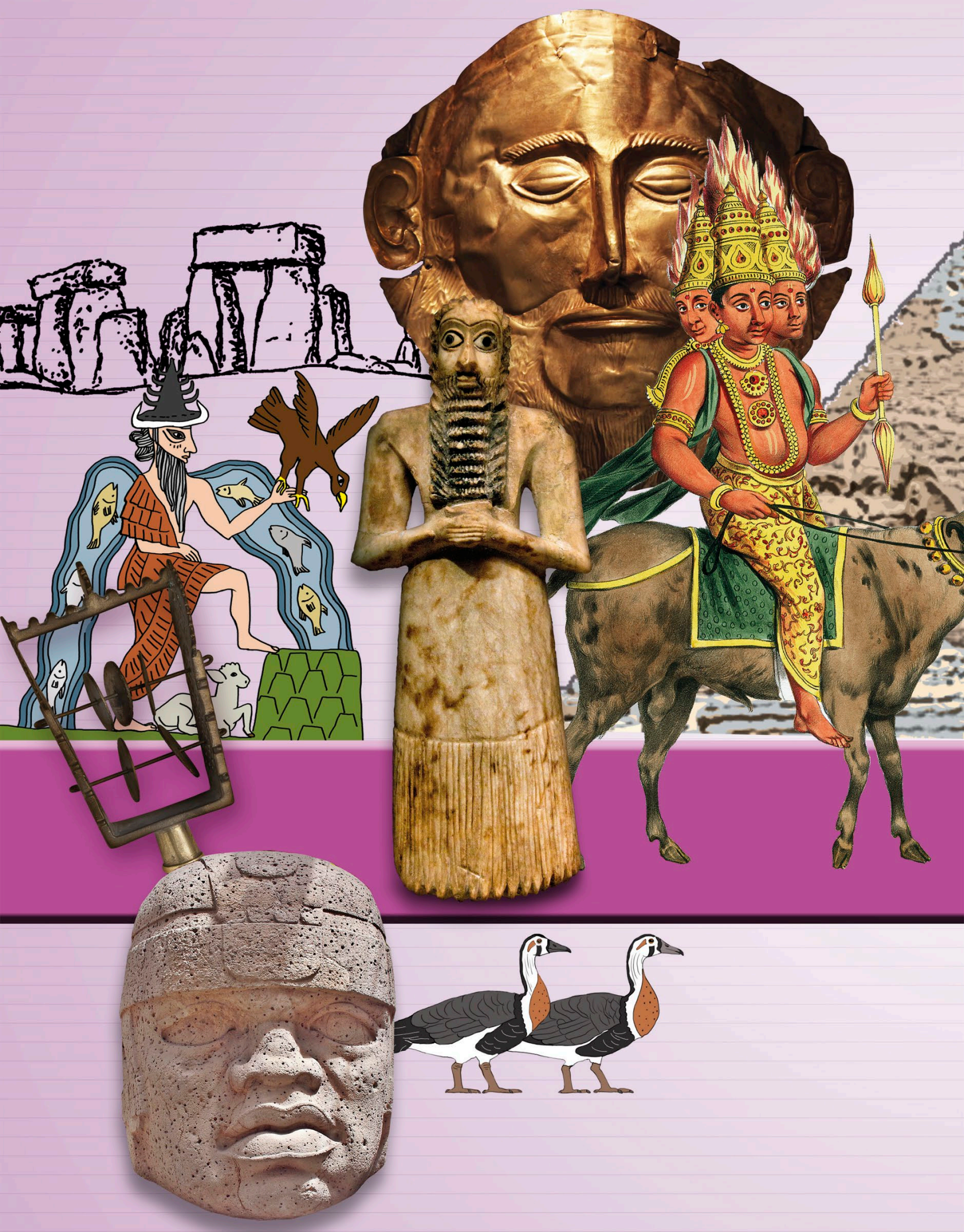
5000 BCE

In the Andes mountains of South America, llamas were tamed.

**4000 BCE**

Paddy field cultivation of rice began in China. In the Mediterranean, vines and olives were farmed.



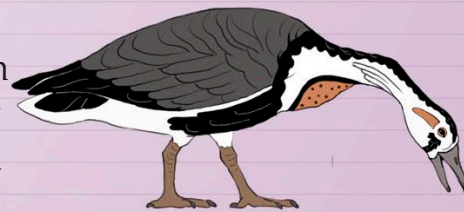




3000–700 BCE

Really ancient history

The invention of farming changed human life forever. People now lived a settled life that could support many more people than hunting and gathering. As the population exploded, villages grew into towns and cities, and different classes appeared. The earliest civilizations developed in Egypt and Mesopotamia, with kings, organized religion, and writing. A great advance was made when people learned how to use metals, for tools, weapons, and jewelry. Competition over land and resources also led to the first wars.



3000 ▶ 2500 BCE

2686–2181 BCE OLD KINGDOM EGYPT

During the Egyptian Old Kingdom, a series of pharaohs built the largest stone tombs in history. Each pyramid tomb acted as an eternal home for the dead king, and a place where he was thought to change into an immortal god. The tallest of them, The Great Pyramid, stood 481 ft (147m) high.

Kingdom of the Nile

The civilization of Ancient Egypt grew up beside the desert along the banks of the Nile River. Each year the river flooded, depositing fertile soil along the banks where people were able to farm. The first period of Ancient Egyptian civilization, known as the Old Kingdom, was a time of peace and prosperity.

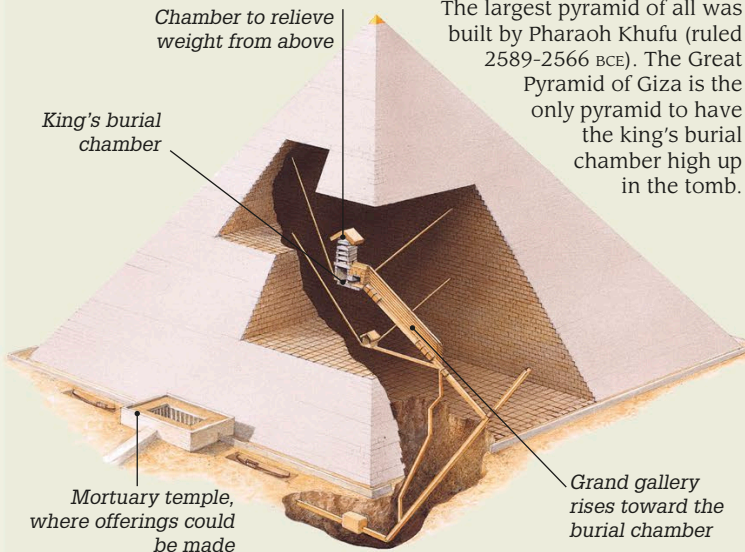


Step pyramids

Pharaoh Djoser (ruled 2670-2651 BCE) built the first pyramid, with six stepped levels. This was the world's first large building made of stone.

Great Pyramid

The largest pyramid of all was built by Pharaoh Khufu (ruled 2589-2566 BCE). The Great Pyramid of Giza is the only pyramid to have the king's burial chamber high up in the tomb.



3000 BCE

First state

In Egypt, pharaohs created the world's first state. The king was seen as divine, a living representative of the sky god, Horus. Pharaohs were the first rulers to wear crowns.



3000 BCE

Stonehenge

In Britain, farming people began to build Stonehenge, a ceremonial center aligned with the midwinter sunset. It began as a circular ditch and bank. The first stones were erected in 2600 BCE, followed by larger uprights with horizontal stones in 2500 BCE. How Stonehenge was used remains a mystery.

3000

2900



Longshan pot

3000 BCE

Chinese towns

Along the Yellow River, people built the first large walled towns in China. The Longshan people, named after the town where the first excavations took place, made beautiful pottery and silk textiles from moth cocoons.



Life after death

The Ancient Egyptians preserved the bodies of the dead for a life they believed existed after death. Bodies were mummified—embalmed, wrapped, and placed in cases covered in religious symbols for protection.



The Ancient Egyptian civilization continued, with few changes, for almost 3,000 years.



2800 BCE

Caral

The earliest American civilization developed in Peru. The people of the Norte Chico civilization built the first large towns in the Americas. One of the biggest was Caral (right), which had huge ceremonial platform mounds.



2800

2700

2600

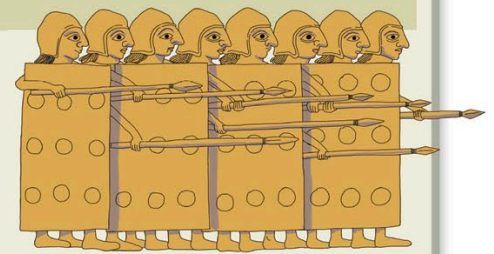
2500

4000–2000 BCE

MESOPOTAMIA



The first great civilization emerged in Mesopotamia, on the fertile flood plains of the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers. The earliest dynasties were in the region of Sumer. The Mesopotamians are believed to have invented the wheel, the plow, and writing.



Men of war

Unlike Egypt, Mesopotamia was not a single state but was made up of city-states, each ruled by a king on behalf of a god. The cities competed for control, and are thought to have recruited the first armies in history.

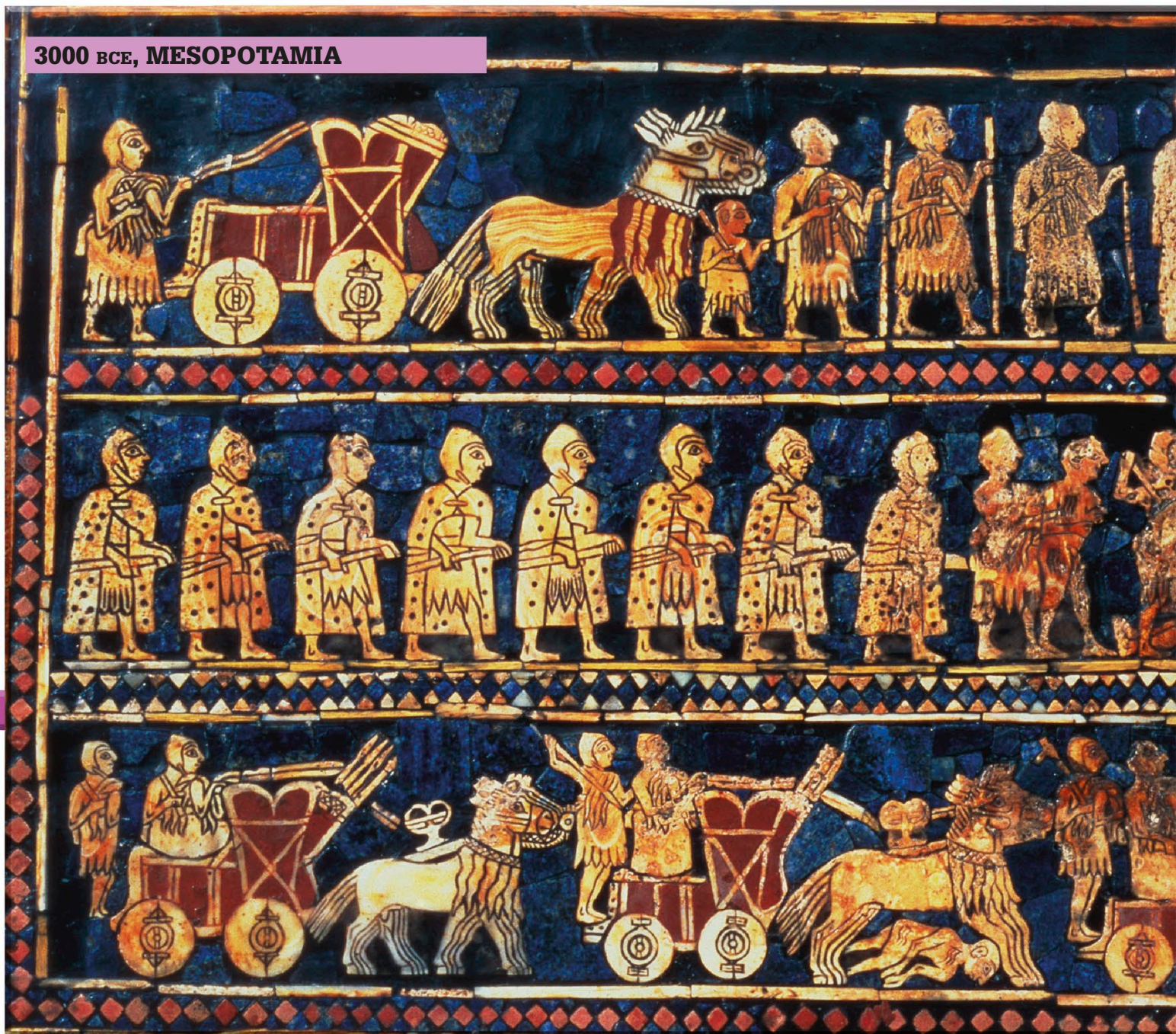
Between two rivers

Mesopotamia means “between the rivers” and lay in roughly the area of modern Iraq. The region of Sumer is shown in pink. The dotted line on the map above shows the coastline at this time, which has retreated over the centuries.



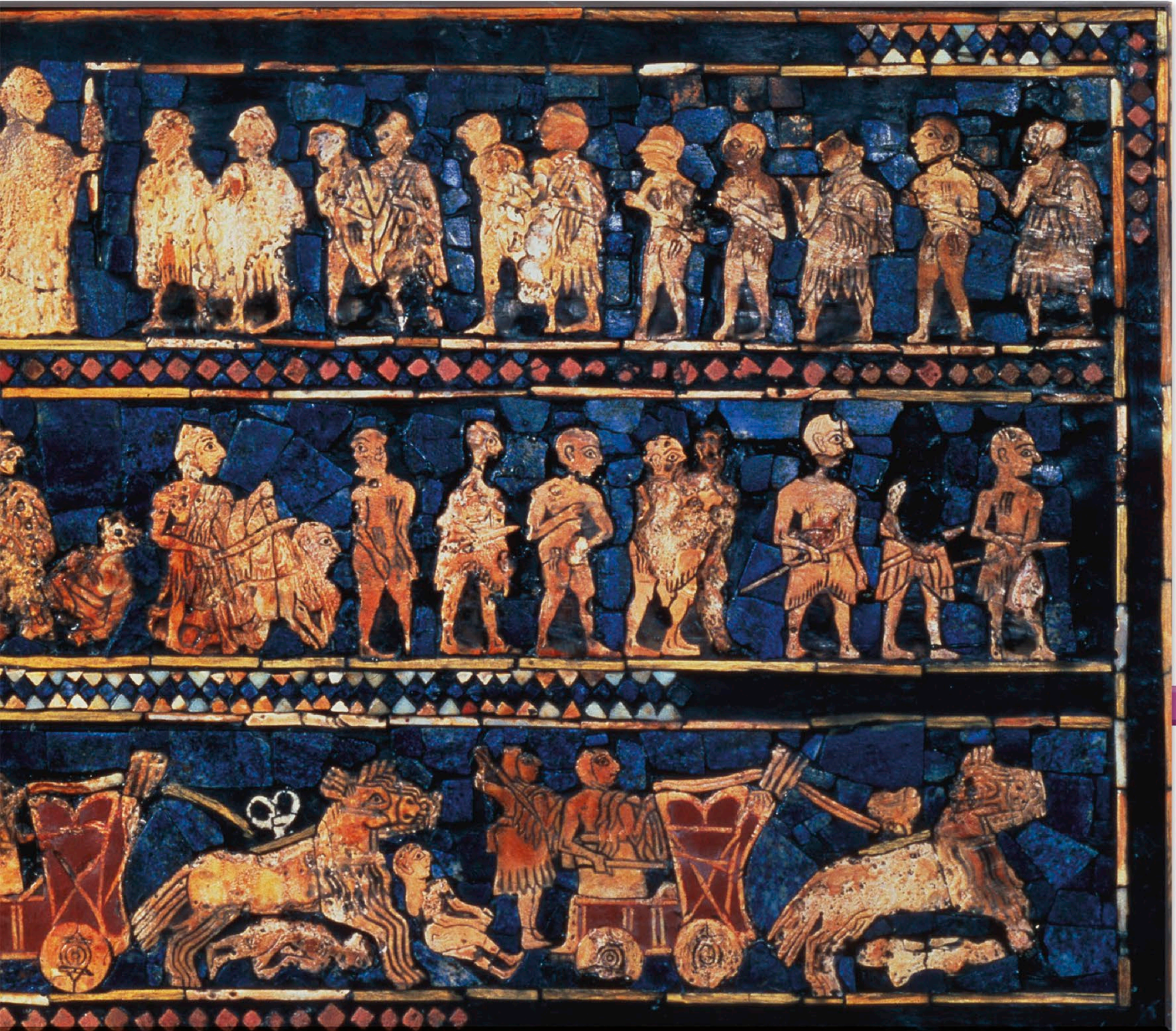
Royal tombs

From 2600 BCE, the rulers of the city of Ur were buried in tombs filled with treasures and everyday items for the next life, such as this gaming board.



Into battle!

This mosaic reveals how, five thousand years ago in Mesopotamia, rival armies from city-states battled for supremacy. At the top, prisoners are dragged before the king, who has stepped down from his chariot. Below, ranks of infantry advance, and other soldiers kill the enemy with axes and lead away prisoners. At the bottom, soldiers in chariots, each pulled by four donkeys, trample the dead.



Mosaic panel from a box found in a royal tomb in the city of Ur in Mesopotamia

“The asses at the rear walk sedately, while those drawing the other cars become more and more excited as they encounter the corpses strewn on the ground, until those at the front have broken into a gallop which threatens the balance of the riders.”

Sir Leonard Woolley, the British archaeologist who discovered the fragments of the mosaic, from his book *Ur of the Chaldees*, 1929

Gods and temples

The ancient civilizations of Egypt and Mesopotamia were among the first to practice organized religion. People worshipped many gods, each one responsible for a different area of life. Gods were worshipped in large temples, staffed by priests. In these and in other early civilizations, organized religion was a powerful unifying force.



Egyptian gods

Egyptian gods took the form of animals, humans, and sometimes a mixture of the two. Re-Horakhty, above, combined the features of Ra and Horus.

- ★ **Ra**
God of the Sun, shown in many different forms, often with a solar disk on his head.
- ★ **Horus**
God of the sky and protector of the Pharaoh, shown as a falcon or a falcon-headed man.
- ★ **Thoth**
God of wisdom and writing, shown as a baboon or an ibis, or a man with their heads.
- ★ **Khnum**
God of pottery who made the first humans out of clay, shown with a ram's head.
- ★ **Hathor**
Goddess of joy and music, shown as a woman with the ears or head of a cow.

Festivals

Gods each had their own festivals, when their statues were carried in processions. Music played a major role. The sistrum, a metal rattle, was used in ceremonies for the goddesses Hathor and Isis (goddess of motherhood and magic).



Sistrum rattle

Key events

5300 BCE

The oldest-known Sumerian temple, to Enki, the god of fresh water, was built in Eridu, Mesopotamia. It was called the "House of the Cosmic Waters."

2600 BCE

Temple of Ra, the Egyptian Sun god, was built in Heliopolis. Ra was the most important god worshipped during the Old Kingdom.

Egyptian priests perform a ritual



A painting of the columns of the Great Hypostyle Hall, Karnak

The Temple of Karnak

The most famous Egyptian temple, at Karnak, was dedicated to the creator god Amun-Re, his wife Mut, and Montu, the war god. Over hundreds of years, the temple was enlarged by succeeding pharaohs to become one of the largest religious complexes in the world.

Mesopotamian gods

The gods of Mesopotamia were represented in human form. Although there were hundreds of them, the most important were the patrons of major cities. The gods are known by two names. They have a Sumerian name, which was used until the second millennium BCE, and a later Akkadian name.



Enki / Ea
God of fresh water, mischief, and crafts, and patron of the city of Eridu.



Inanna / Ishtar
Goddess of love, war, and the planet Venus, and the patron of Uruk.



Nanna / Sin
God of the moon, patron of Ur, and known as father of the gods.



Ningirsu / Ninurta
God of war and rainstorms, and patron of the neighboring cities of Girsu and Lagash.

Incense

Both the Egyptians and the Mesopotamians believed that their gods loved sweet-smelling incense. This was a mix of resin, wood, herbs, and spices imported from Arabia, which they burned. Its fragrant smoke was an offering to the gods.

Incense resin



Worshipper statues

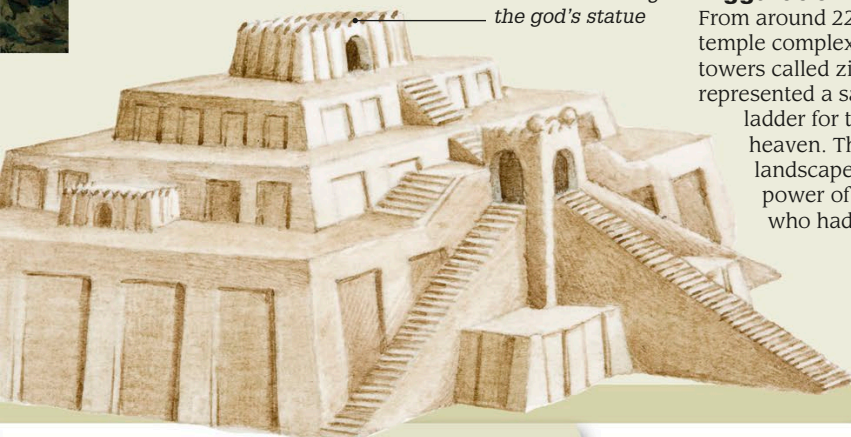
Ordinary Mesopotamians visited their temples with offerings, such as animals to sacrifice, to please their gods. They left behind worshipper statues, which would pray continually to the god on their behalf. These reveal that the Mesopotamians clasped their hands together when praying.



“I offered incense in front of the ziggurat... The gods smelled the sweet scent, and collected over the sacrifice like flies.”

The Epic of Gilgamesh, a Mesopotamian poem from the 18th century BCE

Shrine containing the god's statue



Ziggurat of Ur

From around 2200 BCE, Mesopotamian temple complexes included tall stepped towers called ziggurats. These may have represented a sacred mountain, or a ladder for the god to climb up to heaven. They dominated the flat landscape, a visible reminder of the power of the god and the people who had built the temple.

Great Ziggurat of Ur

2200 BCE

The first ziggurats were built in Mesopotamia. They were made of mud bricks, faced with glazed bricks and tiles.



Mesopotamian musician, followed by a priest

2055–1985 BCE

The earliest known temple to Amun-Re, Mut, and Montu, was built at Karnak in Thebes.

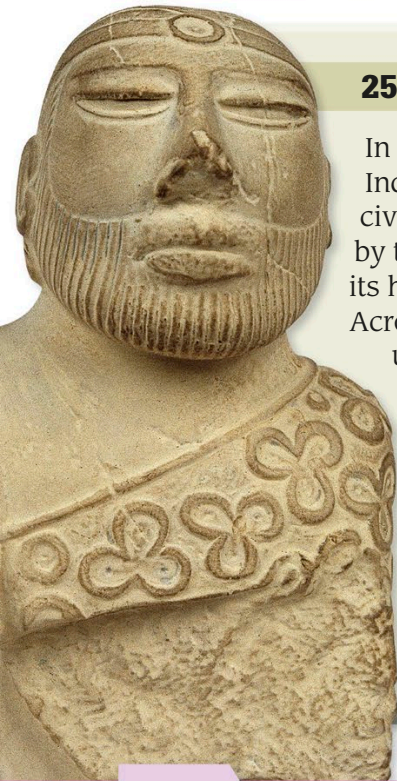
1550–1295 BCE

During the New Kingdom, when Thebes became the capital of Egypt, Amun-Re became chief god and his temple at Karnak was massively enlarged.

605 BCE

King Nebuchadnezzar II of Babylon rebuilt the ziggurat dedicated to Marduk, which had been destroyed by the Assyrians.

2500 ▶ 2000 BCE



2500 BCE INDUS CIVILIZATION

In Pakistan and northwest India, the mysterious civilization that grew up by the Indus River was at its height around 2500 BCE. Across the region, a uniform way of life was created—with shared measurements and the same pottery styles.



Mohenjo-daro

Indus people built the first large planned cities, using standard-sized bricks. Every house had its own water supply, bath, and toilet. This is a view of the ruins of Mohenjo-daro, the most important Indus city, in what is now Pakistan.



Priest king

There is no evidence of kings or organized religion in the Indus. However, archaeologists called this imposing statuette the “priest king.”

Indus lands

The Indus region was big enough to hold both Mesopotamia and Egypt, but we know very little about it.

▶▶ 2500

2400

2300

2500 BCE

Norte Chico

In Peru, the Norte Chico civilization continued to flourish, lasting until 1800 BCE. Unusually for an urban civilization, the Norte Chico people did not make pottery. There is also no evidence of art.

Bronze head of an Akkadian ruler, believed to be Sargon I



“Sargon marched to Kazallu and turned Kazallu into a ruin heap, so that there was not even a perch for a bird left.”

Babylonian Chronicle of Early Kings

2334 BCE

First empire

In Mesopotamia, King Sargon of the region of Akkad began his conquest of the region of Sumer, creating the world’s first empire. As a result, Akkadian, a semitic language related to Arabic and Hebrew, replaced Sumerian as the language of Mesopotamia.





Ziggurat of Ur today—the lowest level has been reconstructed.

2200 BCE

Chinese kingdom

According to legends, the first kingdom, ruled by the Xia Dynasty, appeared in northwest China. It is thought to have been founded along the Yellow River by Yu the Great.

2112 BCE

Ziggurat of Ur

King Ur-Nammu of Ur (ruled 2112–2095 BCE) made his city the most powerful in Mesopotamia. He also built a great ziggurat temple, dedicated to the moon god Nanna/Sin.

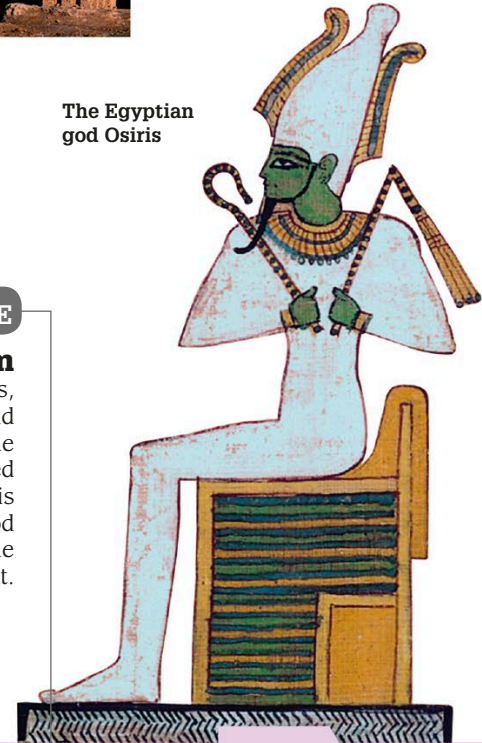


2040 BCE

Middle Kingdom

Mentuhotep II, ruler of Thebes, defeated his rivals and reunited Egypt, beginning the Middle Kingdom, which lasted until 1650 BCE. During this period, the cult of Osiris, god of the dead, became increasingly important.

The Egyptian god Osiris



2180 BCE

End of the Old Kingdom

Following a period of famine, caused by low Nile floods, the Egyptian Old Kingdom fell apart. A period of disorder followed, with many rulers governing different parts of Egypt.

2200

2100

2000

2100 BCE

Minoan prosperity

On the island of Crete in the Mediterranean, a people we call the Minoans flourished. They built large palaces, including a particularly fine example at Knossos. These were also religious and industrial centers, with workshops for metalworkers and other craftsmen. A wall painting from Knossos (left) shows a ritual in which people leap over a bull and perform acrobatic stunts. It is thought that athletes would grasp the bull's horns and then vault over its back.



Wall painting from Knossos showing acrobats bull-leaping



The Minoans are named after Minos, a legendary king of Crete. We do not know what they called themselves.

The first writing

In different parts of the world, as civilizations grew more complex, people started to write. The earliest systems were invented by the Egyptians and the Sumerians of Mesopotamia. Their reason for inventing writing was to record commercial transactions. Later, writing was used for letters, religious texts, law codes, and to record historical events. With the coming of writing, history begins. For the first time, we know the names of ancient peoples and their rulers, and we can read their stories, written in their own words.



Reed signs

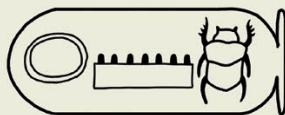
A writing technique used in the Middle East between 2500 and 330 BCE was called cuneiform, meaning “wedge-shaped.” The signs were formed by pressing a pointed reed into wet clay, each time producing a wedge shape. The resulting picture signs stood for words, sounds, ideas, and objects.

Hieroglyphs

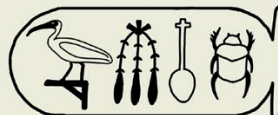
Egyptian hieroglyphs (sacred signs) were pictures of everyday objects to represent objects, ideas, and sounds. The names of pharaohs, shown in oval shapes called cartouches, included the signs of the gods they claimed as relatives. Each pharaoh had two royal names. On the right are the names of Pharaoh Tuthmosis III, with a red disk for Re, and an ibis bird for Thoth.

Two names

Tuthmosis III was called Menkheperre, meaning “Eternal is the form of Re,” and Tuthmosis Neferkheperu, meaning “Born of Thoth, beautiful of forms.”



Re Men Kheper
Re Eternal Forms
Menkheperre



Thoth Mes Nefer Kheper
Thoth Born of Beautiful Forms
Tuthmosis Neferkheperu

Hieroglyphs from the Temple of Hatshepsut in Luxor

Key events

3300 BCE

The Egyptians used hieroglyphs on bone and ivory tags to label goods. These are among the oldest surviving examples of writing.

3300 BCE

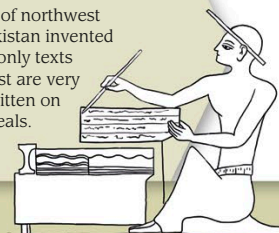
The Sumerians were writing with cuneiform (wedge-shaped) script on clay tablets. The first signs were pictures of animals and objects, later simplified to patterns of wedges.

2600 BCE

Indus people of northwest India and Pakistan invented a script. The only texts known to exist are very short, and written on merchants' seals.

1800 BCE

The Minoans of Crete invented a writing system, called Linear A, with 90 picture signs, standing for syllables and objects. It has not been deciphered.



Egyptian scribe

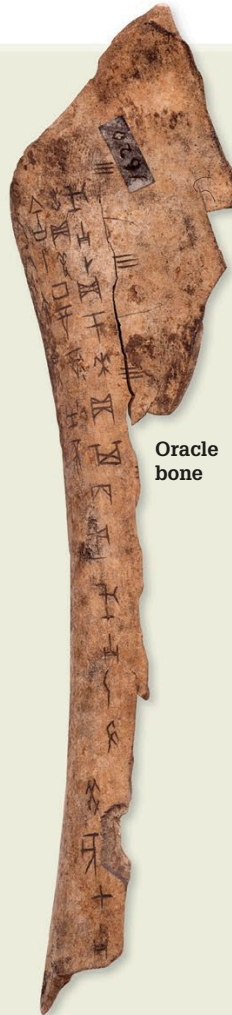


Indus stone seal

The impression when the seal is pressed in clay



Indus seals
The Indus people invented a writing system that has not been deciphered. Indus writing, using 300 picture signs, only survives on stone seals, used to identify goods and their owners.



Oracle bone

Chinese oracle bones

The oldest surviving Chinese writing is on "oracle bones," used for divination (telling the future). A diviner wrote questions, such as when crops should be planted, on ox shoulder-blade bones or turtle shell. These were then heated and the diviner interpreted the cracks that appeared to give the answers.



Sun



Moon



Mountain



Rain

Some early Chinese characters



Scatter



Book



Jaguar

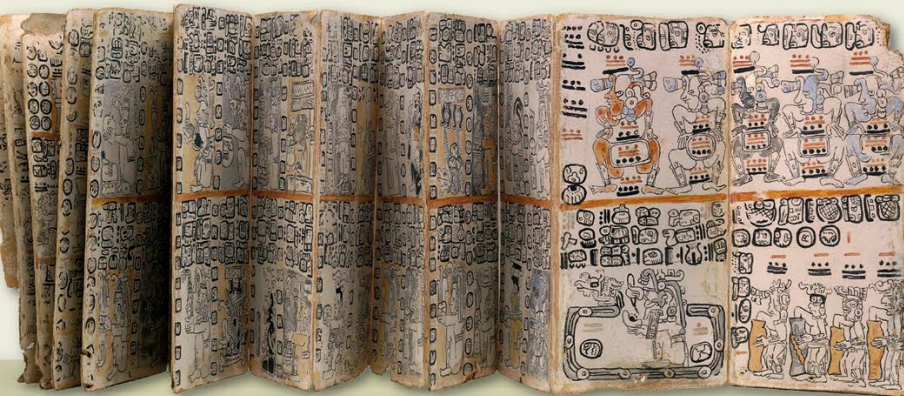


Snake

Mayan glyphs

The Mayans of Mesoamerica invented a writing system with signs, called glyphs, that represented syllables and ideas. They wrote religious texts in screenfold books, called codices, made from fig tree bark.

Mayan painted codex (book)



Phoenician alphabet

Around 1050 BCE, there was a huge advance when the Phoenicians began using an alphabet, a system with signs standing for consonants. The advantage of this was that there were just 22 signs to learn. It was now easy for ordinary people to learn to read and write.

ⴐ	ⴑ	ⴒ	ⴓ	ⴔ	ⴕ	ⴖ
aleph	beth	gimel	daleth	he	waw	zayin
ⴗ	ⴘ	ⴙ	ⴚ	ⴛ	ⴜ	ⴝ
heth	teth	yodh	kaph	lamedh	mem	nun samekh
ⴞ	ⴟ	ⴠ	ⴡ	ⴢ	ⴣ	ⴤ
ayin	pe	tsade	qoph	resh	shin	taw

Adapting the alphabet

The Phoenician alphabet was copied by the Greeks, who added new signs for vowels. This was then adapted by the Romans, who created the alphabet we use today.

1250 BCE

The Chinese wrote on "oracle bones," using picture signs called ideograms, each standing for an idea or an object. There are no sound signs.

1050 BCE

The Phoenicians began using an alphabet. There were earlier alphabets in the Near East, but it was the Phoenicians who spread the idea.

900 BCE

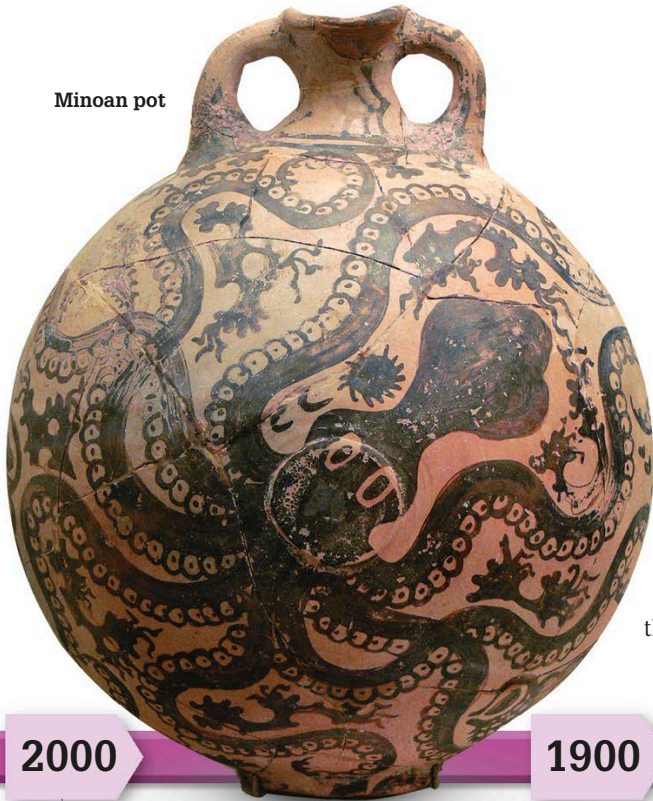
Some archaeologists believe that the first written texts in the Americas date from around 900 BCE, based on a carving from Veracruz in Mexico, which appears to have 28 signs.

300 BCE

The Mayans used glyphs (signs) to carve monumental inscriptions, paint text on vases, and write books.

2000 ▶ 1500 BCE

Minoan pot



1600 BCE SHANG CHINA



1800 BCE

Peruvian advances

Major advances in northern Peru led to the introduction of pottery, weaving, and intensive farming. The population grew and new urban centers were built.

2000

2000 BCE

Minoan seafarers

The Minoan civilization, on the island of Crete, dominated the eastern Mediterranean. The Minoans were great seafaring traders, exchanging Cretan goods, such as olive oil, wine, and decorated pottery, for Egyptian ivory and copper from Cyprus. They also founded trading settlements on other islands, such as Karpathos and Thera (Santorini). Minoan pottery (above) was often decorated with marine creatures, such as octopuses.

1900

1800

1760 BCE

Babylonian empire

King Hammurabi of Babylon conquered Mesopotamia, creating a short-lived empire. He is best known for his law code, inscribed on a stele (stone) that he had set up in public so all could see it. The carving (left) shows him receiving his laws from Shamash, god of justice.



“To the end of days, forever, may the king who happens to be in the land observe the words of justice which I have inscribed.”

King Hammurabi,
Law Code

Stele of Hammurabi



Minoan palaces were equipped with sophisticated plumbing systems and flushing toilets.

The kings of the Shang Dynasty ruled China from 1600 BCE. People worshipped ancestors, and the massive gulf between rulers and ordinary people grew. When a king or noble died, he was buried with hundreds of slaves or prisoners, executed by beheading, to serve him in the next life.

Burial customs

Found among the items in a Shang royal tomb were this chariot, and the skeletons of two charioteers and the horses to pull it.

Age of bronze

The bronze industry flourished at this time. Skilled craftsmen made tools, weapons, musical instruments, and ritual items, such as this blade.



Mycenaean gold mask



1650 BCE

Egypt invaded

The Hyksos, a people from western Asia, conquered the Egyptian delta, fighting from horse-drawn chariots later adopted by the Egyptians.

1600 BCE

Mycenae

The Mycenaean civilization rose to power in Greece. They were influenced by the Minoans, copying their art and fashions, but were much more warlike. They built fortified palaces and conquered Crete around 1450 BCE.

1700

1600

1500

1650 BCE

Hittite conquerors

The Hittites conquered an empire that encompassed most of Asia Minor, also known as modern-day Turkey. They rode into battle on chariots, and were one of the first peoples to use iron, from around 1550 BCE. They traded iron goods, but kept the technology secret for 300 years.

1628 BCE

Thera eruption

A massive volcanic eruption on the Greek island of Thera buried Minoan settlements on the island. It also set off tidal waves that devastated nearby islands, and coastal settlements on Crete.

1550 BCE

New Kingdom

Pharaoh Ahmose drove Hyksos invaders out of Egypt and a new period of rule began, known as the New Kingdom. Pharaohs, ruling from Thebes, later conquered an empire in Asia. It was a time of prosperity, during which the huge temple complex at Karnak was built.



Fresco from Thera of a boy with fish

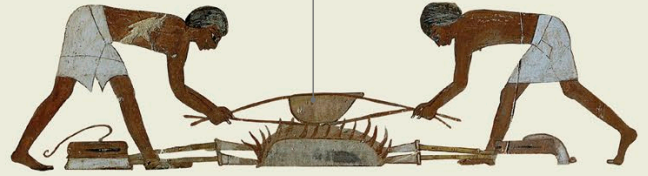
The temple complex at Karnak today



The metal ages

People made a huge advance when they learned how to use metals. Metal tools were easier to shape than stone ones, and they could be mass-produced using molds. Unlike a stone ax, which was useless when broken, a copper or bronze one could be melted down and recycled. Shiny metals, such as gold and silver, were also perfect materials for jewelry and coins.

Copper is heated over a fire by Egyptian metalworkers.



Smelting copper

Around 6500 BCE, people learned to extract copper from ores (rocks containing minerals and metals), which they recognized by their bright green color. They heated the rocks until the red metal flowed out—a process called smelting. The molten metal could then be poured into molds.

Brilliant bronze

By 3200 BCE, people learned that by mixing a small amount of tin with copper, they could make a much harder metal called bronze. Tin is a scarce metal, which made bronze extremely valuable.



Using molds

Like copper, bronze was cast: heated until it melted, then poured into a mold to make items such as this pin from Morigen, Switzerland, which is 3,000 years old.

Chinese metalwork

The most skilled early bronzeworkers were the Chinese, who used casting techniques to make sculptures, vessels, and weapons such as this ax blade.



The age of iron

Although iron is the most common metal, it was the last to be used by people. It has a much higher melting point than other metals, which makes it difficult to extract and work. It could not be poured into a mold, but had to be hammered into shape. It is often heated in an extremely hot furnace, called a forge, which makes it easier to work.

Greek ironworker at a forge



Key events

7000 BCE

Gold and copper, from naturally occurring nuggets, were used to make jewelry in western Asia and Egypt.

6500 BCE

People in southeastern Europe and western Asia learned to extract copper from mineral ores by smelting.

5000 BCE

At Varna, Bulgaria, wealthy people were buried in tombs containing 3,000 gold artifacts.



3200 BCE

In western Asia, people learned how to make bronze by mixing copper and tin.

Copper ore



Pure iron

Iron's hardness made it the perfect material for tools and weapons. This dagger dates from around 100 BCE–100 CE. The top handle is shaped like a human face.



Bull-shaped gold ornament from Varna



Gold was often recycled, so ancient gold jewelry usually only survives in graves.

Glorious gold
Gold, which is beautiful and scarce, has always been prized all over the world. Soft and easy to work, it does not tarnish or rust, and is the perfect material for jewelry. Some of the world's oldest gold jewelry, dating from 5000 BCE, was found in graves in Varna, Bulgaria.

American metal

In the Americas, people made jewelry, statuettes, and masks from gold, silver, and copper, but did not discover how to work the harder metals. This gold mask comes from a royal tomb in Sipan, Peru, dating from 250 CE.



Choose your metal

Each metal was used for different purposes, according to its availability and properties, such as hardness or color.

- ★ **Gold**, the most valuable metal, was made into royal funeral masks and jewelry for the rich.
- ★ **Silver**, the second-most-prized metal, was used for jewelry, cups, and coins.
- ★ **Copper**, an attractive red metal, was used for decorative items and tools, such as axes and chisels. Copper is soft, so these needed to be resharpened regularly.
- ★ **Bronze** was used for high-status objects, such as swords, spearheads, shields, helmets, brooches, and mirrors.
- ★ **Iron**, the hardest and most common metal, was used for weapons and everyday items, such as tools, nails, and wheel rims.

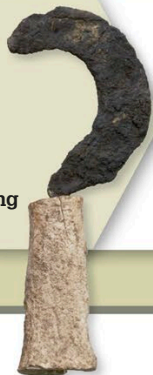


Greek silver coin

1550 BCE

Iron was first smelted in the area that is now Turkey, beginning the Iron Age.

Reaping hook



1200 BCE

The Chinese used bronze to make the world's first life-size statues of people.

1200 BCE

Ironworking reached western Europe. The coming of iron weapons led to an increase in warfare.

Bronze razor from Cambridge, England, 500 BCE

500 BCE


Chinese metalworkers learned how to heat iron until it melted, creating the first cast iron.



1500 ▶ 1000 BCE

“All eyes are on your beauty until you set. All work ceases when you rest in the west.”

Akhenaten, Hymn to the Aten

 The Olmec were making rubber from the saplike fluid of trees 3,000 years ago.

1400 BCE

The Olmec

The first Mesoamerican civilization developed in the jungles of the north coast of Mexico. The Olmec built earth mounds and temples, and carved colossal sculptures of the heads of rulers, ancestors, or gods—all wearing helmets.



1352 BCE

Sun worshipper

Pharaoh Akhenaten tried to make the Egyptians worship a single god, the Aten or Sun disk (right). He founded a new capital, Akhetaten, with open-air temples for worshipping the Sun. After his death, around 1334 BCE, the old religion was restored.



▶▶ 1500

1400

1300

1302–1213 BCE RAMESES THE GREAT

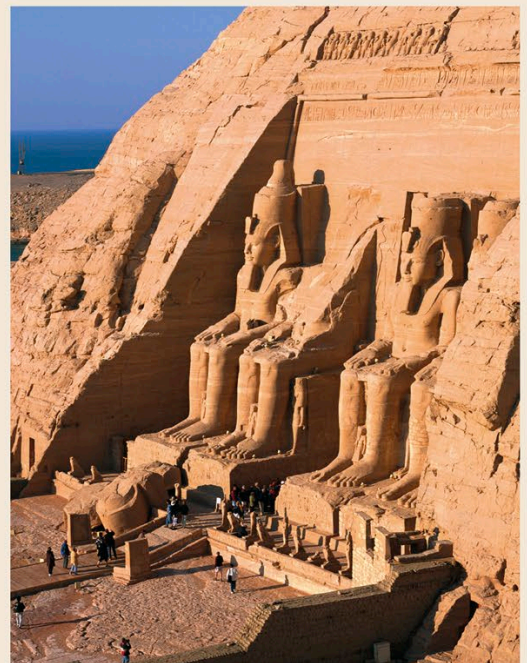
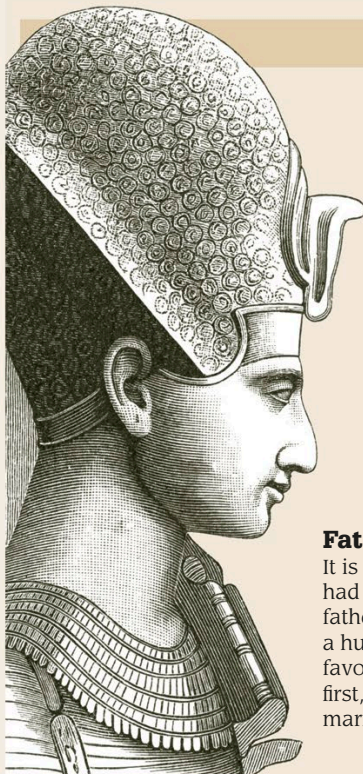
Rameses II, known as Rameses the Great, ruled Egypt for 66 years. His long reign brought stability and prosperity to the Egyptian Empire, and he was a major figure in the Middle East. He even claimed to have defeated the threat from the Hittite Empire in the north single-handedly, at the battle of Kadesh. In fact, the battle was inconclusive.

Father of many

It is said that Rameses had seven wives and fathered more than a hundred sons. His favorite wife was his first, Nefertari, whom he married at the age of 15.

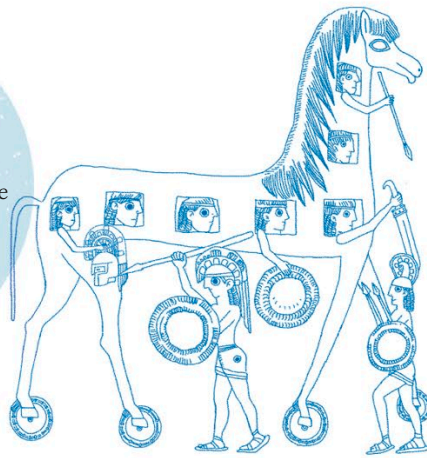
Famous face

Rameses built a huge number of monuments and temples, which often included colossal statues of himself, such as the temple at Abu Simbel (right).



Trojan horse

A Bronze Age legend tells of the siege of Troy. The Greeks built a huge wooden horse, hid soldiers inside, and pretended to sail away. When the Trojans took the horse into the city, the soldiers crept out, and opened the gates to the Greeks, who captured the city.



1000 BCE

The Aryans

Since the middle of the second millennium, a people called the Aryans had been settling in northwest India. They brought with them an early form of Hinduism. Most of what we know of them comes from their collection of religious poems, the Vedas. Their language, Sanskrit, is closely related to many European languages.



Agni, one of the most important Vedic gods

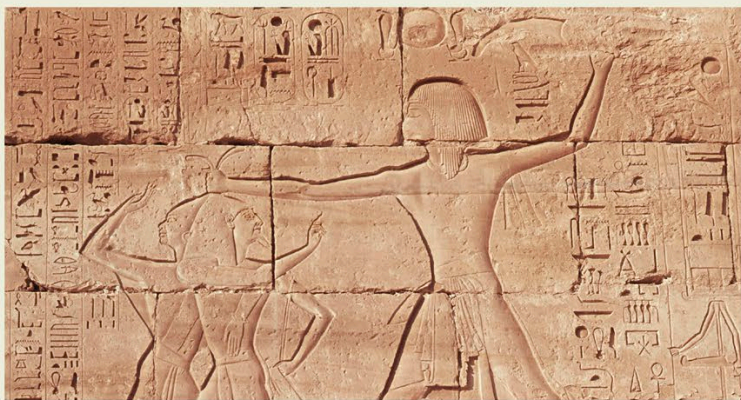
1000

1250–1100 BCE BRONZE AGE COLLAPSE

From 1250–1100 BCE, the eastern Mediterranean was in turmoil. There was a mass movement of peoples looking for new lands to settle, and some of the great Bronze Age civilizations, including the Mycenaeans and Hittites, were violently destroyed by unknown enemies. Only Egypt was strong enough to fend off foreign invaders, whom the Egyptians called the “Sea Peoples.”

Greek Dark Age

Sometime around 1100 BCE, Mycenae (right) and the other fortified palaces in Greece were sacked and burned. A period now called the Greek Dark Age followed. The knowledge of writing was lost, and population levels fell.



Egypt endures

Pharaoh Rameses III defeated a great seaborne invasion by the Sea Peoples in the Nile delta in 1178 BCE. Rameses had scenes of his victory carved on temple walls, showing a captive people called the “Peleset.” They later settled on the coast of Canaan, where they gave their name to Palestine. We know them from the Bible as the Philistines.

1046 BCE

Zhou dynasty

In China, King Wu of Zhou defeated the last Shang emperor in battle, and founded the Zhou Dynasty. Under the Zhou, ironworking was introduced to China.

Phoenicians

After the Bronze Age, the Phoenicians, who lived on the coast of modern-day Lebanon and Syria, became the leading seafaring merchants of the Mediterranean. They traded in purple dye, extracted from the murex sea snail.



1327 BCE, ANCIENT EGYPT



Hidden treasures

For seven years, archaeologist Howard Carter had been searching the Valley of the Kings in Egypt for the lost tomb of a little-known pharaoh named Tutankhamun. Then, in November 1922, the team uncovered some steps leading down to a sealed door. With trembling hands, Carter made a tiny opening in the doorway, and peered in by the light of a candle. Before him lay the greatest collection of Egyptian treasures ever discovered. Never before had a royal tomb been unearthed that had not been emptied by grave robbers. The treasures had remained in the tomb for 3,000 years, ever since they were buried with the young pharaoh Tutankhamun for use in the afterlife.



A panel on the back of Tutankhamun's gold throne shows the king being anointed with scented oil by his queen, Ankhesenamun.

“As my eyes grew accustomed to the light, details of the room within emerged slowly from the mist, strange animals, statues, and gold—everywhere the glint of gold.”

Howard Carter, *Tomb of Tutankhamun*, 1923

An Egyptian scribe

Children in Ancient Egypt were usually taught at home, and expected to do the same work as their parents, usually farming. Only the sons of scribes and nobles went to school, where they learned writing and accounting. Scribes kept all the official records in Egypt, and could become very successful. However, their training was long and rigorous.

An early start

From the age of four, a boy went to scribal school, where he would train for up to ten years. Lessons began early in the morning, and pupils would take their midday meal of bread and beer with them. The boys sat cross-legged on the floor, ready to learn.

Tools of the trade

One of the boys' first lessons was to make pens. They learned how to chew the ends of reeds to separate the stiff fibers into delicate nibs. The pens were kept in a wooden palette, along with cakes of red and black ink. Scribes wrote on paper made from the papyrus plant, which grows in the Nile marshes. However, to save papyrus, pupils practiced on slabs of limestone or broken pieces of pottery.

A lot to learn

Students had to learn more than 700 hieroglyphic signs, as well as simplified versions of the symbols used in everyday letters and accounts. The boys copied out literary texts to practice writing, and also studied mathematics and accounting.

Best behavior

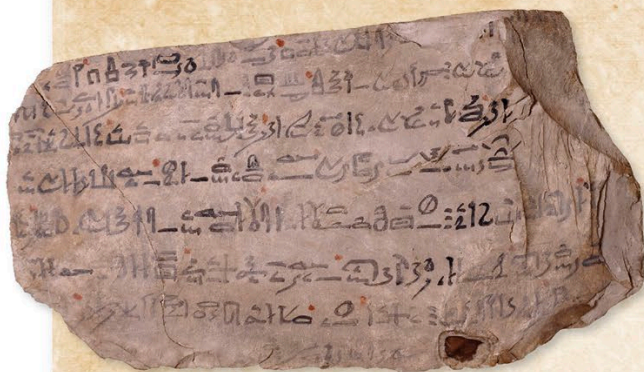
Young scribes must have envied other children their own age, who did not have to go to school. For them, discipline was strictly enforced and unruly or lazy pupils were often beaten. They were also reminded of the benefits of the life ahead of them. A scribe could look forward to authority, freedom from manual labor, and exemption from taxes in times of flood.

“The ears of a boy are on his back. He hears when he is beaten.”

School text quoted by the historian Adolf Arman in *The Literature of the Ancient Egyptians*, 1927

Goose census

This scribe is counting geese for taxation records. His palette of pens is tucked under his arm, and he keeps his scrolls in the basketwork “briefcase” in front of him.



Ostrakon

Pieces of stone or pottery used for writing were called ostraca. This ostrakon shows a copy of a classic poem from Egyptian literature, written in hieratic script.

“By the hypnotic process of repetition, the boy was filled with elaborate repertoire of form and phrase that made up the literary language of the state.”

Extract from Egyptologist John Romer's book, *Ancient Lives*, 1984

Wooden palette

This palette of pens is inscribed with the name of Rameses I, indicating that the scribe who used it worked for the pharaoh's palace.



“I shall make you love books more than your mother, and I shall place their excellence before you. It [the scribe’s office] is greater than any office. There is nothing like it on earth.”

*The Teachings of Dua-Khety,
a school text, c. 2000 BCE*



1000 ▶ 700 BCE



1000 BCE

City of Jerusalem

According to the Bible, Jerusalem was conquered by the Israelite king David (ruled c. 1006–965 BCE). This painting shows the Ark of the Covenant, a portable shrine, being carried into the city. Jews believe that the Ark held stone tablets, inscribed with ten commandments written by God.

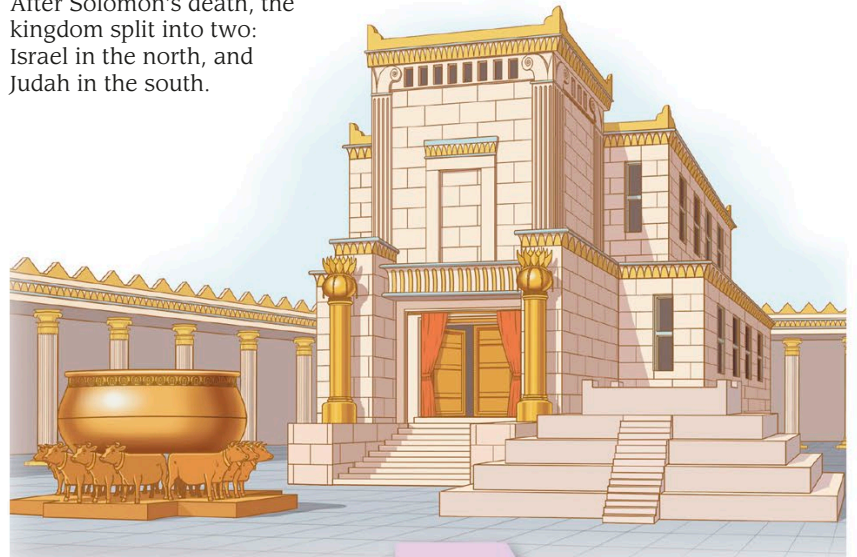
965 BCE

Solomon's Temple

David's son, Solomon, built a temple in Jerusalem, a site still sacred to Jews today. After Solomon's death, the kingdom split into two: Israel in the north, and Judah in the south.

“In the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, the second month, he began to build the temple of the Lord.”

The Bible: 1 Kings 6:1



900

960–600 BCE ASSYRIAN EMPIRE

By the 9th century BCE, the Assyrians, from northern Mesopotamia, had become the most feared military power in the Near East. Their armies conquered both Judah, whose kings had to pay tributes of gold and silver, and Israel, whose people were resettled in Assyria. The Assyrians' enemies, led by the Babylonians, later joined forces to destroy the Assyrian Empire.



From Egypt to Iraq

This map shows the Assyrian Empire in 670 BCE, when it stretched from Egypt to Iraq. Within the empire, peoples who rebelled against Assyrian rule were ruthlessly punished.

In Ancient Assyria, lion hunting was the sport of kings.



Lion hunt

The Assyrians loved hunting as much as they loved warfare. This relief carving, from the Palace of Nineveh, in modern-day Iraq, shows King Ashurbanipal hunting lions from his chariot.

750 BCE GREEK WRITING

The Greeks adopted an alphabet from the Phoenicians. Not long after, *The Iliad* and *The Odyssey*, two long poems by the poet Homer, were first written down. This marks the beginning of Western literature.



The hero Odysseus

The Odyssey tells the story of Odysseus, returning home from war. Here, he has encountered the menacing sirens, half-women, half-birds, who try to lure the ship to its doom.



The twin brothers Romulus and Remus were raised by a she-wolf.

753 BCE

The founding of Rome

According to Roman legend, Rome was founded by the twin brothers Romulus and Remus in 753 BCE. Archaeology shows that the city really began as a humble farming settlement in the 9th century BCE.

750 BCE

Greek colonies

The Greeks founded colonies around the Mediterranean and Black Seas. These include Massilia (Marseilles, France), Neapolis (Naples, Italy), and Tripolis (Tripoli, Libya).

800

800 BCE

Chavin de Huantar

The Chavin civilization dominated Peru at this time. The most important site was Chavin de Huantar, a political and religious center filled with carvings of jaguars (below), eagles, and supernatural beings.



776 BCE

Olympic games

The Olympic Games, held in honor of the chief Greek god, Zeus, were first held in Greece. During the games, people from all over the Greek world gathered to compete.



Wars were often stopped so people could travel to the Olympic Games in safety.

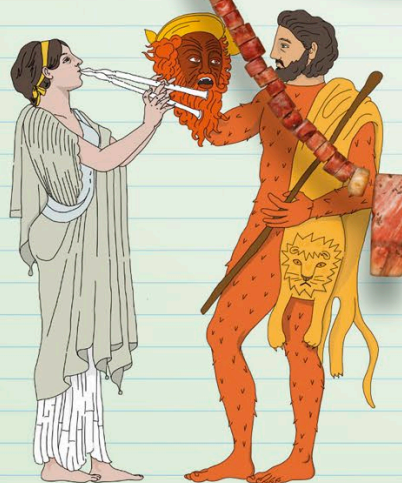
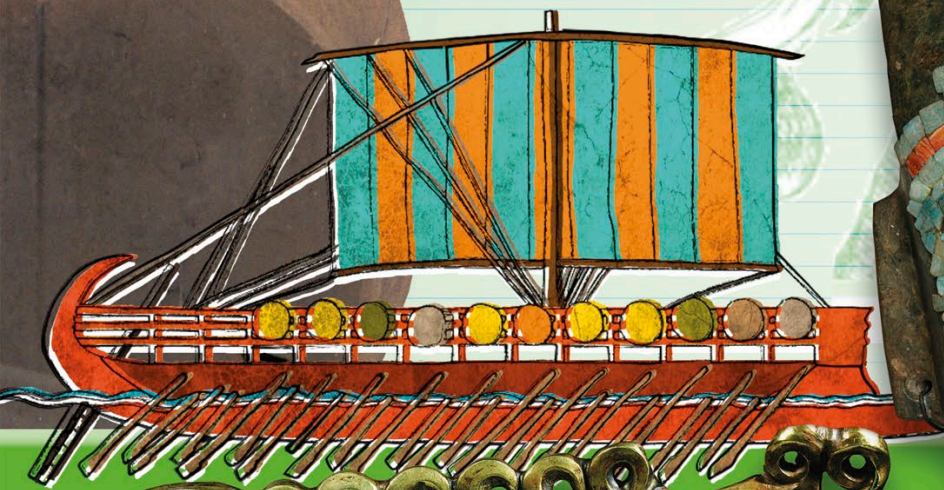
700



Arctic hunters

In the Canadian Arctic, from 800 BCE, people hunted seals and walrus through holes in the ice, using elaborately carved bone harpoons. These hunters are called the Dorset people.

The Ancient Greek pentathlon included discus and javelin throwing, jumping with weights, running, and wrestling.





700 BCE–500 CE Much more civilized

As the world's population grew, farming and trade expanded and civilizations emerged in different parts of the world—around the Eastern Mediterranean, in Persia, India, and China. By 500 CE, most of the world's major religions, except Islam, had been founded. New skills and technologies allowed artists, poets, architects, and thinkers to be creative in new ways. Many of the things we now take for granted, such as coins, paper, drama, sports, philosophy, and mathematics, first came into being during what is now known as the Classical Age.



700 ▶ 600 BCE

689 BCE

Babylon sacked

Assyria was still the dominant civilization in Mesopotamia after its armies destroyed the city of Babylon. During the reign of Ashurbanipal (ruled 668–627 BCE), Assyria even conquered Egypt, but its empire had collapsed by 612 BCE.



King Ashurbanipal is shown here helping to rebuild a temple in Babylon

Mysterious Etruscans

The Etruscans of northern Italy lived in cities and built elaborate tombs. They left many beautiful objects, such as this head overlaid with gold. However, their written script is difficult to decipher, so they remain a mystery.



660 BCE

First emperor

According to legend, Jimmu became the first emperor of Japan in 660 BCE. He was said to be descended from Amaterasu, the Japanese goddess of the Sun.

▶▶ 700

680

660

685–668 BCE THE RISE OF MILITARY SPARTA

After the Greek city-state of Sparta crushed the neighboring land of Messenia, Sparta forced the Messenians to become slaves (helots). But the helots outnumbered the Spartans. The risk of a revolt turned Sparta into a military state ruled by two kings and a Council of Elders.

Battle-ready troops

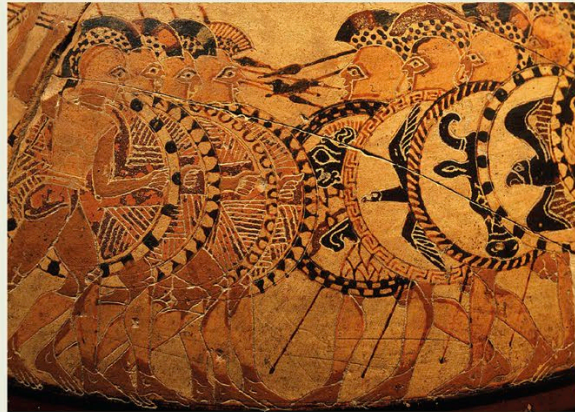
Sparta became the strongest military power in Greece. Sparta never bothered to build defenses against invaders. Its strength lay in its formidable army. All adult male Spartans were full-time soldiers, ready to fight for their city at any time.

Killer looks

Beneath their bronze helmets, Spartan soldiers wore their hair long to appear more ferocious. Their tunics were dyed red to hide any bloodstains.



Bronze helmet



652 BCE

Scythian success

The Scythians defeated the Medes tribes of northern Iran. The Scythians were nomads from Central Asia who migrated west to found a powerful empire in what is now Ukraine and southern Russia. They were skilled horsemen and buried their leaders in large mounds called *kurgans*.

Growing up in Sparta
See pages 48–49



Golden stag from a Scythian shield



Painting from the *Chronicles of Japan*, 1891, showing Jimmu (standing) spying a sacred bird

“Draco’s code was written not in ink but in blood.”

Plutarch, Greek historian

620–600 BCE

FIRST USE OF COINS



Lydian coin made of electrum

The world’s first true coins were produced in the kingdom of Lydia in Anatolia (Turkey). They were made of electrum, a mixture of gold and silver. Before this, metal bars and ingots (blocks) were used for money. Coins were more portable, and the Greek city-states around the Mediterranean quickly adopted the idea.

621 BCE

Draco’s laws

A man named Draco gave Athens, Greece, its first set of laws. Because he prescribed the death penalty for nearly every crime, his name lives on—harsh laws have come to be described as “draconian.”

616 BCE

King of Rome

Tarquinius Priscus, who was an Etruscan by origin, became the fifth king of Rome (the first, Romulus, was said to have ruled from 753 to 716 BCE). Tarquinius Priscus won a series of battles over the neighboring tribes of Sabines, Latins, and Etruscans to make Rome the most important power in central Italy.

640

620

600



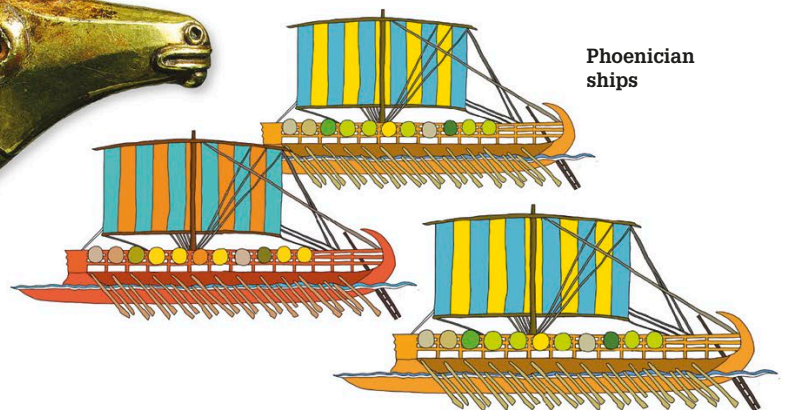
When a Scythian leader died, his wife, servants, and horses were sacrificed. They were buried in a circle around his body.



600 BCE

African round trip

According to the historian Herodotus, writing 160 years later, the Egyptian Pharaoh Necho II sent a Phoenician fleet to explore the east coast of Africa. The Phoenicians were traders from Lebanon, admired for their seafaring know-how. Their ships sailed on around the tip of Africa into the Atlantic, reaching the Mediterranean Sea three years later.



Phoenician ships

Growing up in Sparta

From the moment he or she was born, every Spartan boy or girl belonged to the state. A council of elders would inspect the newborn baby to see if it was healthy and strong. If it seemed weak, it would be left to die on a hillside. The lives of both boys and girls were dedicated to the military power of Sparta.

To the barracks

At the age of seven, a boy was taken from his family and sent to military school to be turned into a soldier. The boys lived and slept in barracks, where they were taught the arts of war. Their sisters started their education at the same age. They learned to wrestle, run, and throw the javelin. The Spartans believed that this training would produce strong mothers, who would give birth to strong sons.

Toughening up

Young Spartans were trained to be tough. The boys were forced to go barefoot at all times—which would have been painful over rough, thorny ground—and were kept permanently short of food. Once a year, they were taken to the sanctuary of the goddess Artemis and publicly whipped to test their resilience.

Everything to prove

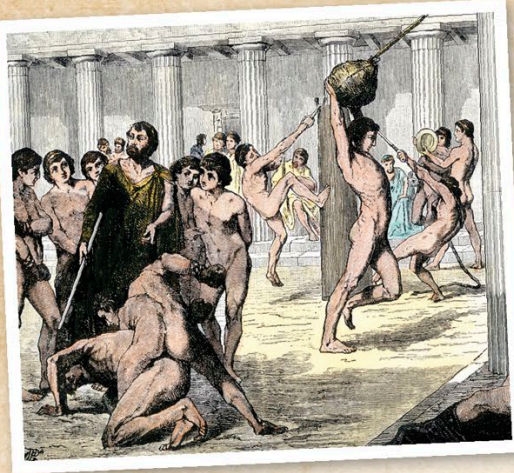
Before he became a citizen, a young Spartan had to prove his courage and ferocity in a special ritual. He was sent out alone into the countryside at night, armed with only a dagger, and allowed to kill any helot he came across. Helots were despised slaves, who were forced to farm the land for the Spartans.

Life as a warrior

At the age of 20, a Spartan man became a full-time soldier called a hoplite, a name derived from his large heavy shield, called a hoplon. From then on, he lived as part of a pack of 15 men who ate, drank, trained, and fought together. He would have to marry by the age of 30, to produce the next generation of warriors.

Running girl

This bronze figurine from around 500 BCE shows a Spartan girl, wearing a short tunic, taking part in a running race.



Tough training

This 19th-century woodcut depicts young Spartans in training. They are naked, as was usual in Greece.

“After they were 12 years old, they were no longer allowed to wear a tunic and were given one cloak a year; their skin was hard and they had practically no baths.”

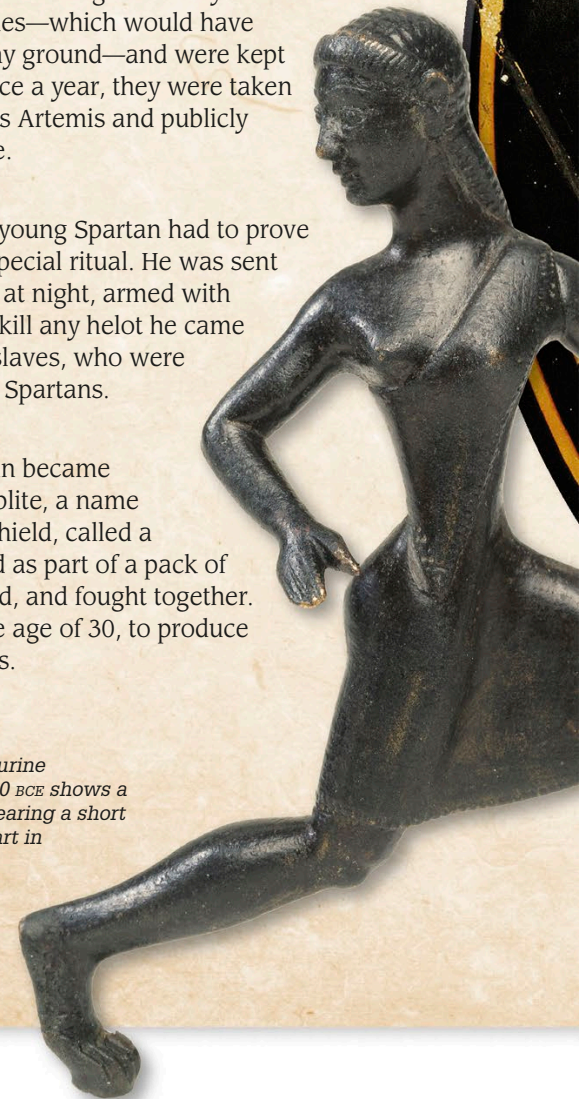
The Greek scholar
Plutarch, c. 95 CE

Sturdy dagger

A typical Greek dagger was about 16 in (40 cm) long, with a blade 3 in (7.5 cm) wide.

“Son, either with this [shield] or on it!”

This was a Spartan mother's traditional farewell to her son, urging him to be brave. Only cowards lost their shields. Fallen heroes were carried home on theirs.



Vase painting
This vase painting from around 510 BCE shows a Spartan footsoldier carrying his shield.



“A Spartan boy stole a young fox and hid it under his coat. He let it tear out his intestines with its teeth and claws, and died upon the spot, rather than be found out.”

Story told by the Greek scholar Plutarch

600 ▶ 500 BCE

585 BCE

Solar eclipse

Thales of Miletus, a Greek city-state in Anatolia (modern-day Turkey), correctly predicted a solar eclipse. Thales was one of the earliest Greek philosophers—thinkers who asked questions about the natural world.

590 BCE

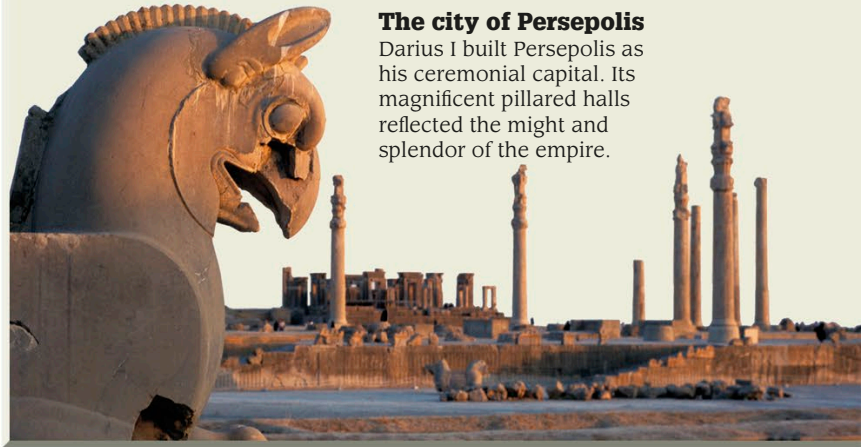
African pharaohs

The kings of Nubia, a kingdom on the Nile in what is now Sudan, made their residence at Meroe. The Nubian rulers modeled themselves on the pharaohs. They wrote in a type of hieroglyphs and buried their dead in pyramid tombs.

559–486 BCE

THE PERSIAN EMPIRE

In a little over 30 years, King Cyrus the Great of Persia (ruled 559–530 BCE), a small unimportant kingdom in what is now southern Iran, conquered the largest empire the world had yet seen. It was known as the Achaemenid Empire, from the name of its ruling dynasty. Under King Darius I (ruled 522–486 BCE), the empire set its sights on the lands of Greece.



The city of Persepolis

Darius I built Persepolis as his ceremonial capital. Its magnificent pillared halls reflected the might and splendor of the empire.



600

580

560

587 BCE

Nebuchadnezzar

When the Jews rebelled against Babylonian rule, Nebuchadnezzar II ordered the destruction of their temple in Jerusalem. The city was burned and thousands of Jews were sent to Babylon.

Wheel of life symbol on each sole



“Even death is not to be feared by one who has lived wisely.”

The Buddha (563–483 BCE)

563 BCE

Birth of the Buddha

According to tradition, Siddhartha Gautama was born a prince in northern India. He was so distressed by human suffering that he gave up his life of luxury and fasted beneath a tree for six years until he reached enlightenment. He became known as the Buddha, the “enlightened one,” whose teachings are followed by millions of people today.

Carving of the Buddha's footprints, 1st century BCE

550 BCE

Birth of Confucius

Confucius (Kung Fuzi) was a Chinese philosopher and teacher whose writings stressed respect for family elders, authority, and tradition. Confucianism, the way of life based on his teachings, would have great influence on Chinese ideas and politics.

550 BCE

Rise of the Celts

In central Europe, the Celts began spreading out from their original heartland in the northern Alps (Austria and Switzerland). They controlled long-distance trade in salt and iron, and their rich burials included luxury goods of Greek and Etruscan origin, traded through the city of Massilia (Marseilles, France).





The Royal Road was a 1,600-mile (2,575 km) highway that ran from the city of Susa in Persia all the way to Sardis in western Turkey.

507 BCE

People power

The city-state of Athens chose a new form of government: democracy (meaning “rule of the people”). All male citizens were able to vote on major decisions affecting the city. Women, foreigners, and slaves were excluded.



Persian lands

Cyrus the Great's conquests stretched from Anatolia (Turkey) in the west, to Afghanistan in the east. His son Cambyses (ruled 530–522 BCE) added Egypt, and Darius I added Thrace (the southeast Balkans).

“I am Cyrus, King of the World, Great King, Mighty King!”

Cyrus the Great, 538 BCE



Immortal Persians

These soldiers, who once decorated the walls of Darius's palace, represent the Immortals, elite troops who formed the king's personal bodyguard. In real life, the king had 10,000 Immortals—if one was killed, a new recruit immediately replaced him.

540

535 BCE

Battle at sea

Phoenicians founded the city of Carthage (modern Tunis) in 814 BCE. Growing rivalry with the Greek city of Massilia led to a sea battle at Alalia, off Corsica.

The Greeks lost, leaving Carthage in control of the western Mediterranean.



The Roman Empire
See pages
68–69

520

509 BCE

Roman Republic

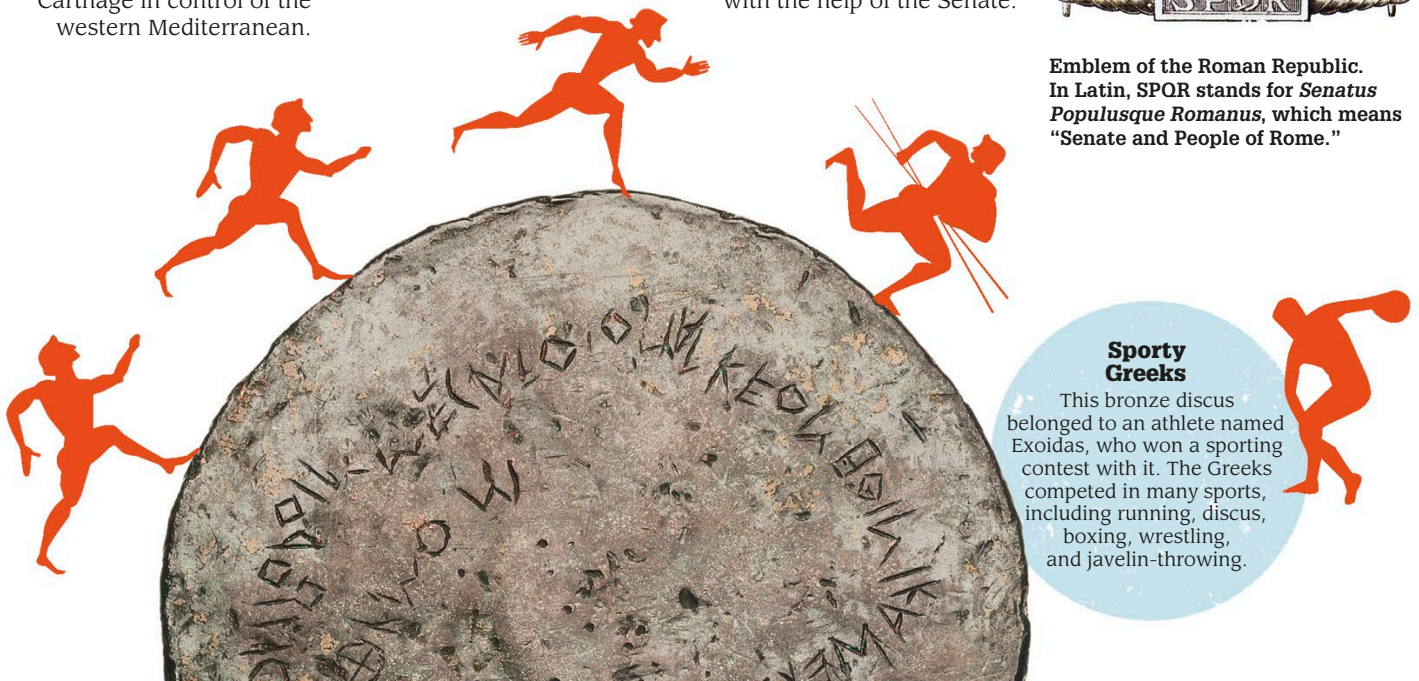
Rome was still a tiny city-state when its citizens decided to throw out their kings and govern themselves. They set up a republic headed by two consuls—elected magistrates who ruled with the help of the Senate.



Emblem of the Roman Republic. In Latin, SPQR stands for *Senatus Populusque Romanus*, which means “Senate and People of Rome.”

Sporty Greeks

This bronze discus belonged to an athlete named Exoidas, who won a sporting contest with it. The Greeks competed in many sports, including running, discus, boxing, wrestling, and javelin-throwing.



The Greek-Persian wars

In the early 5th century BCE, the Persians twice attempted to conquer Greece. The Greek city-states, especially Athens and Sparta, were always squabbling with each other but they united against the Persians. Though hugely outnumbered, the Greeks finally fought the Persians off.



Modern copy of a hoplite sword



Hoplites on the run

This vase painting shows Greek soldiers (hoplites). The Greeks fought on foot in formations called phalanxes, of 8 to 50 ranks (rows). With their shields locked tightly together to form a protective wall and the spears of those in front pointing toward the enemy, the phalanx advanced at a run.

Quick-moving Persian

The Persians had greater mobility on the battlefield thanks to their lighter equipment. This archer is wearing a soft felt cap and mail coat in contrast to the heavy bronze helmets and body armor of the Greeks. The Persians fought at a distance, using their archers to break up the advancing enemy and bringing in cavalry to ride them down.



Persian archer painted on a cup, c. 300 BCE

Key events

547 BCE

Cyrus the Great, king of Persia, conquered the Ionian city-states of Anatolia (modern-day Turkey).

499 BCE

During the reign of Darius I, the Ionian city-states revolted against Persia. Athens came to their aid.

490 BCE

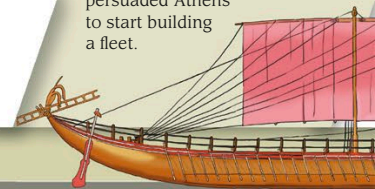
Darius I sent a huge army to punish Athens. The Athenians defeated the Persians at Marathon.

484 BCE

Two years into his reign, Xerxes began preparations for a massive invasion of mainland Greece.

483 BCE

The Athenian general Themistocles persuaded Athens to start building a fleet.



“Come and get them!”

Leonidas's answer to Xerxes when he ordered the Spartans to lay down their weapons at Thermopylae

Who's who?



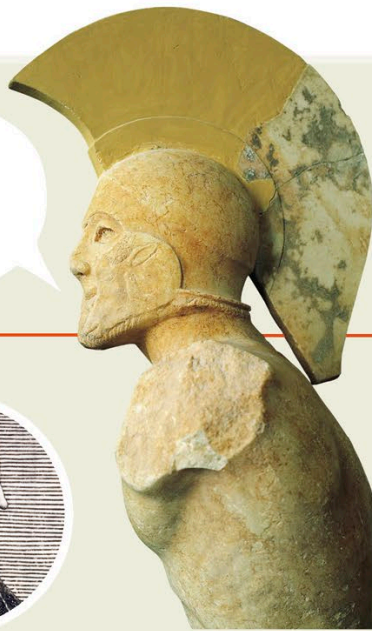
Xerxes

Darius I's son, Xerxes, became king of Persia in 486 BCE. Six years later, he invaded Greece in revenge for his father's defeat at Marathon.



Artemisia

Queen of Halicarnassus (a city on the site of Bodrum, Turkey), Artemisia sent five ships to join Xerxes' fleet. She took part in the Battle of Salamis.



Leonidas

Known as Leonidas the Brave, this king of Sparta led an elite force of 300 Spartans on a suicide mission at Thermopylae.

Major battles

490 BCE Marathon

This battle was fought on the plain of Marathon, north of Athens. Led by the Athenian general Miltiades, a much smaller Greek army defeated Darius I's invasion force.

Forces

Greeks: 10,000 hoplites; 9,000 from Athens, 1,000 from Plataea
Persians: 25,000 foot soldiers; 1,000 cavalry; 600 ships

480 BCE Thermopylae

As Xerxes' invasion force moved south into Greece, the outnumbered Greeks met it at a mountain pass. They held it up for two days before the Persians found a route around.

Forces

Greeks: 7,000, including 300 elite Spartan troops
Persians: Up to 250,000, including 10,000 "Immortals" (elite infantry)

480 BCE Salamis

Themistocles, commanding the Athenian fleet, lured the Persian fleet into an ambush off the island of Salamis. King Xerxes watched from the shore as his much larger fleet was rammed and destroyed.

Forces

Greeks: 378 ships
Persians: 800 ships

479 BCE Plataea

The Greek and Persian armies clashed on Theban territory. A surprise Spartan phalanx charge made the Persian army turn and flee, giving the Greeks final victory.

Forces

Greeks: 40,000
Persians: 120,000 (including Greek allies)

The Battle of Thermopylae

This 19th-century painting shows the heroic Spartan king Leonidas. The Greeks met Xerxes' invasion force at a narrow mountain pass. Knowing defeat was inevitable, Leonidas sent the rest of the Greeks away while he and his Spartan force delayed the Persian advance. They all died.



Marathon man

Pheidippides was a Greek messenger who ran all the way from Athens to ask the Spartans for help before the Battle of Marathon but they refused to come. Another story says that he ran 25 miles (40 km) from Marathon to Athens to announce the Greek victory—the origin of the modern marathon.



480 BCE

Xerxes crossed the Hellespont into Europe to march on Greece.

480 BCE

The Persians reached Athens and burned the city.

479 BCE

The Persians were defeated at Plataea and never invaded Greece again.

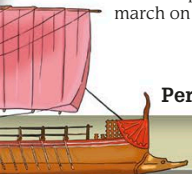
477 BCE

Athens headed an anti-Persian alliance of city-states. Sparta refused to join.

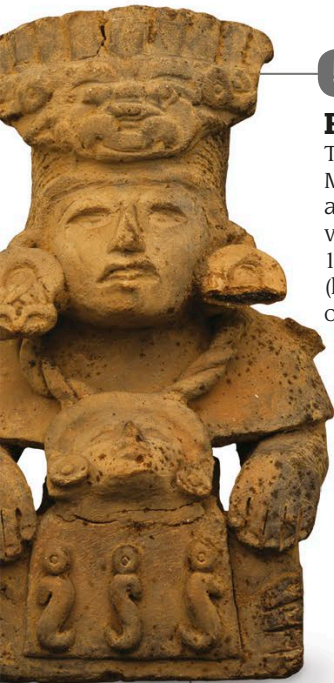
c. 440 BCE

The history of the Greek and Persian wars was written down by Herodotus, the ancient Greek historian.

Persian ship



500 ▶ 400 BCE



500 BCE

Rise of the Zapotecs

The Zapotec people of southern Mexico built a ceremonial center at Monte Albán, in the Oaxaca valley. The site stayed in use for 1,000 years. This clay burial urn (left) was crafted in the shape of a Zapotec god.

494 BCE

Trouble in Rome

The plebs (ordinary people) of Rome went on strike until the patricians (nobles) agreed to let them elect two of their own officials. These two elected magistrates were called tribunes.



King Xerxes looks across the sea toward Greece

480 BCE

Xerxes at the Hellespont

The Persian king Xerxes assembled a huge army to invade Greece. At the Hellespont, the stretch of water that separates Asia from Europe, Xerxes ordered a bridge to be built by lashing lines of boats together so that his army could cross.



▶▶ 500

480

460

475 BCE

484–405 BCE THE GOLDEN AGE OF ATHENIAN THEATER

Drama originated in Athens with plays put on each year at a festival to honor the god Dionysus. From there, it spread across the Greek world. The works of three Athenian dramatists—Aeschylus, Sophocles, and Euripides—are still performed today.



Funny face

Both tragedies and comedies were put on. The actors in comic plays wore grotesque masks. This mask is of a slave, a popular butt of jokes.



Acting in the open air

Each city had its own theater. Ancient Greek theaters consisted of tiers of stone seats built in a semicircle into a hillside. The action took place in the central area, called the orchestra.



Ancient Greek actors

Warring China

China, which was much smaller than it is today, entered the Warring States period. The Zhou kingdom broke up into seven states, whose princes competed with each other for dominance. It was a time of great technological advances both in warfare and agriculture.



THE PARTHENON



When the Persians attacked Athens in 480 BCE, they burned the temples on the Acropolis, the sacred hill overlooking the city. The Athenians never forgave this act of blasphemy. They built a new temple on the site, the Parthenon, dedicated to the goddess Athena.

Classical architecture

The Parthenon, one of the most famous works of classical architecture, was constructed at the height of Athens's power in the mid-5th century BCE.

“Xerxes the King will cross you, with or without your permission.”

Xerxes defies the Hellespont after a storm has destroyed his first bridge

400 BCE

Celts on the move

Groups of Celts began to migrate into the Po valley in northern Italy, where they attacked the Etruscan cities, and into southeast Europe.

440

420

400



Chinese money

Ancient Chinese money was cast in bronze or copper.

It was made in the shape of tools, such as knives and spades, and pieces often had a punched hole, so that several of them could be strung together.

431 BCE

Greeks at war

The Peloponnesian War broke out between Athens and its allies on one side, and Sparta and its allies on the other. Athens was successful at first, but its army and fleet were destroyed in a misguided attack on Syracuse, in Sicily, in 415–413 BCE.

It surrendered to Sparta in 404 BCE.

Athenian warships at the Battle of Syracuse



In 430–429 BCE, a plague swept the city of Athens. Its victims included the Athenian leader and general Pericles.

Celtic warriors

The Celts (called “Gauls” by the Romans) were not a single people but consisted of scattered tribes ruled by warrior chiefs. Originally from an area north of the Alps, some tribes migrated south after 400 BCE, clashing with the Greeks and Romans. Archaeologists call the Celtic culture of this period La Tène, after a Swiss site. By 100 BCE, the La Tène culture had spread throughout Europe.

Celtic gods

Celtic religion was tied in with the farming year and nature. Hundreds of gods were worshipped under different names throughout the Celtic world. Here are four:

Belenus

The god of sun and fire, Belenus was associated with the Beltane festival on May 1, when fires were lit to purify cattle.

Brigit

Also known as Brigantia, Brigit was the goddess of healing, poetry, and fertility. In Ireland, she was later adopted as a Christian saint.

Cernunnos

This horned god was associated with fertility, nature, harvest, and the underworld.

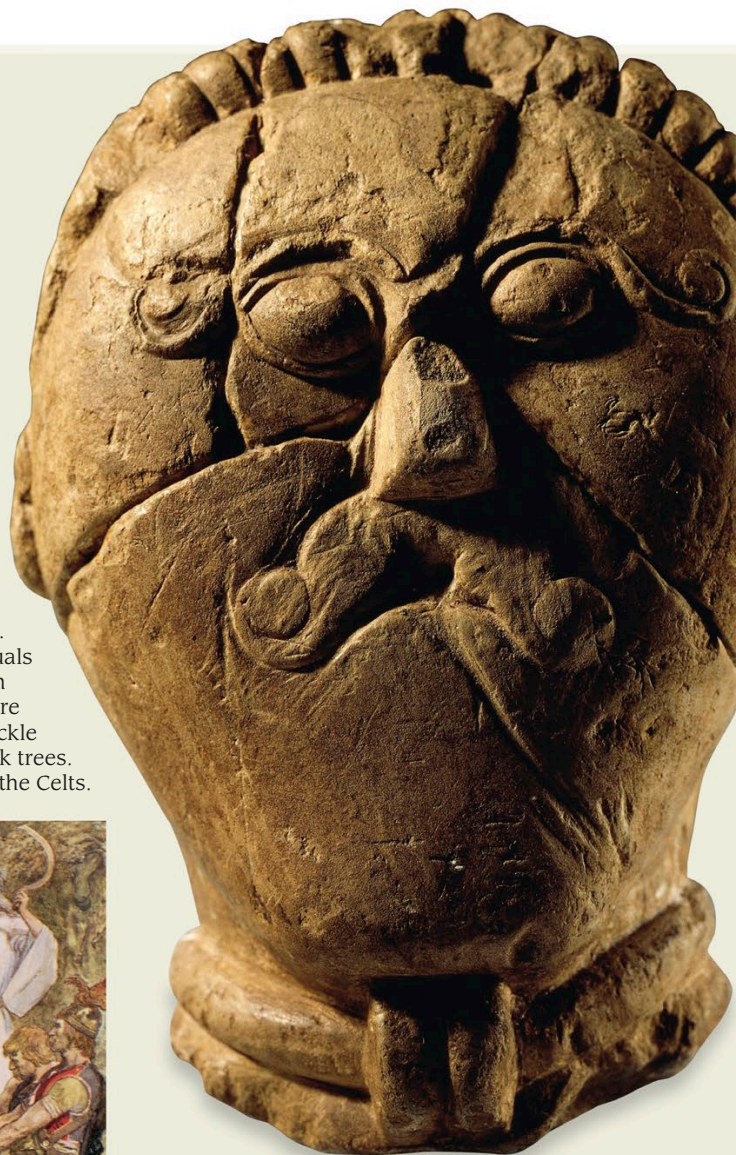
Epona

The goddess Epona (left) was the protector of horses. Roman soldiers adopted her, and built her a temple in Rome.



The world of the druids

Celtic priests were called druids. The druids carried out many rituals and may have offered up human sacrifices to the gods. This picture shows a druid using a golden sickle to cut mistletoe in a grove of oak trees. Mistletoe was a sacred plant to the Celts.



Celtic hero

This Celtic head, found at a site near Prague, in the Czech Republic, has staring eyes and a swept-back mustache. Around its neck is a torc—the metal neck ring worn by Celtic warriors. The Romans admired the courage of the Celts, but thought they were boastful and drank too heavily.

Key events

400 BCE

Groups of Celts invaded the Po Valley in northern Italy and settled there.

390 BCE

The warrior leader Brennus led an army of Gauls to attack and capture the city of Rome.

279 BCE

An army of Celts invaded Greece and sacked the sacred shrine of Delphi.

225 BCE

The Romans defeated the Gauls of northern Italy at the Battle of Telamon.

Sacred mistletoe





A horned helmet, probably for ceremonial use

Wild warriors

Brennus

This chieftain led an army of Gauls to attack Rome in 390 BCE. Guard geese sounded the alarm, but the Romans had to give Brennus gold to make him leave.

Caractacus

From his Welsh hideout, Caractacus resisted the Roman invasion of Britain for six years, but eventually he was captured and taken to Rome.

Boudicca

Queen of the Iceni, a tribe in eastern England, Boudicca (right) led a rebellion against the Romans in 61 CE.



Working in metal

The Celts were skilled craftspeople, working in gold, bronze, and iron. They loved to decorate their metalwork with intricate patterns of circles, curves, whorls, and spirals, and with animal and plant motifs.



A bronze mirror with a richly decorated back



A bronze brooch of two coiled hoops

“Some shave their cheeks but leave a moustache that covers the whole mouth and, when they eat and drink, acts like a sieve, trapping particles of food.”

Diodorus of Sicily describing the Celts, c. 35 BCE



A fortified Celtic village in Anglesey, North Wales

After the Romans

In Gaul and Britain, Celtic culture merged with that of the occupying Romans. After the Romans left, Germanic invaders pushed the surviving Celts back into Brittany in France, and into Wales, Cornwall, and southwest Scotland in Britain.

101 BCE

The Roman general Marius defeated the invading Cimbri at the Battle of Vercellae.

58–51 BCE

Julius Caesar fought a series of campaigns to conquer Gaul (France and Belgium).

43 CE

Emperor Claudius sent an army to begin the Roman conquest of Britain.



Celtic shield

61 CE

Boudicca led a revolt of the Celtic tribes of Britain against the invading Romans.

400 ▶ 300 BCE



Socrates takes the cup of hemlock

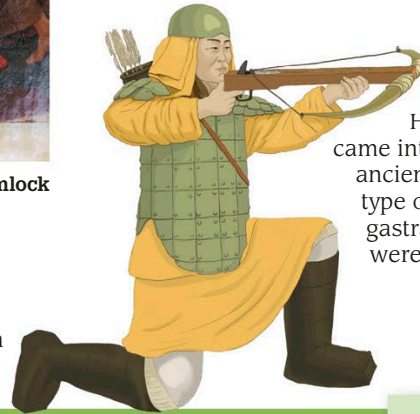
399 BCE

Death by hemlock

The Greek philosopher Socrates was sentenced to death by swallowing poisonous hemlock. He had been found guilty of corrupting young Athenians with his ideas—a charge brought by his political enemies.

“The hour of departure has arrived, and we go our ways.”

Socrates, on learning of his death sentence



350 BCE

Crossbows

Handheld crossbows came into use in China. The ancient Greeks also had a type of crossbow called a gastraphetes. Crossbows were used in warfare for hundreds of years.

▶▶ 400

380

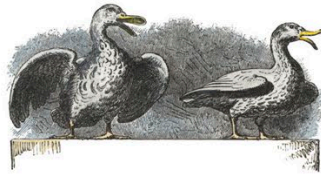
360



400 BCE

Chavin culture

The Chavin people, who lived in the Andean highlands of Peru, were flourishing at this time. They domesticated the llama and made pottery vessels of jaguars, monkeys, and other animals.



390 BCE

Goose alarm

Cackling geese sounded the alarm when an army of Gauls (Celts) tried to seize the Capitoline Hill in Rome. The geese woke the guards, but the warning came too late to save the rest of the city, which was sacked.

378 BCE

Coup in Thebes

Led by their general, Epaminondas, the Thebans drove a Spartan garrison out of their city. Thebes now became the most powerful Greek city-state. It headed a Greek uprising against Alexander the Great, who destroyed the city in 335 BCE.

Classic game

Knucklebones was a very popular game among both Greek men and women (who played it separately from the men, as they were not allowed to mix). It was similar to jacks but the pieces were animal bones.

Terracotta sculpture of knucklebone players, c. 330–300



356–323 BCE ALEXANDER THE GREAT

One of the finest generals in history, Alexander became king of Macedon, in northern Greece, at age 20 after his father Philip II was murdered in 336 BCE. Alexander fulfilled Philip's plan to invade Persia. In eight years, Alexander created an empire that stretched from Greece to northern India. When he died, at age 32, his warring generals carved up his empire among themselves.

Legendary hero

Alexander's military exploits made him a legend in his own lifetime. He founded and named many cities after himself, including Alexandria in Egypt, and believed he was a god. However, he died before producing an heir (his son was born after his death).



KEY DATES

334 BCE Alexander invaded Asia at the head of an army of 37,000 men.

332 BCE Alexander conquered Egypt and made himself pharaoh.

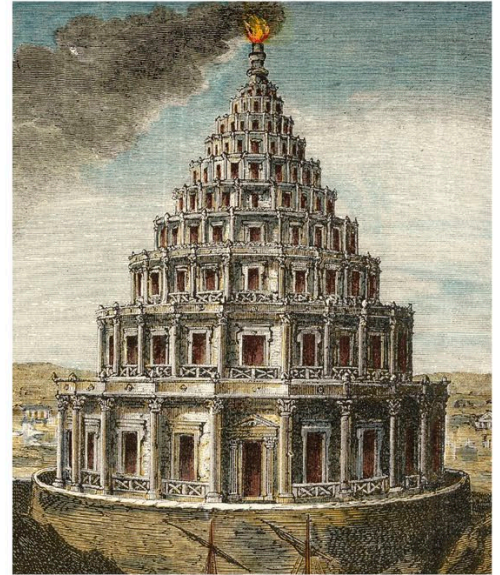
331 BCE He returned to Persia, defeated King Darius, and destroyed Persepolis.

326 BCE After reaching northwest India, his men refused to go any farther east.

323 BCE Alexander died suddenly in Babylon after drinking with his companions.

Battle of Issus

This Roman mosaic shows Alexander at the Battle of Issus (333 BCE), where he defeated his rival Darius III for the first time. He is riding his favorite warhorse, Bucephalus, whose name meant "ox head." By 330 BCE, Alexander had conquered all of the Persian Empire.



The lighthouse at Alexandria

305 BCE

Pharaoh Ptolemy

Ptolemy, one of Alexander the Great's Macedonian generals, made himself pharaoh, founding the last dynasty to rule Egypt. He began work on building the lighthouse at Alexandria, one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

300

305 BCE

War elephants

Chandragupta Maurya, founder of the Mauryan Dynasty of north India, gave 500 war elephants to Seleucus, another of Alexander's generals, in exchange for most of Afghanistan. Seleucus used them in his wars against his rivals.

Terracotta statue of a Mauryan war elephant



The Greek philosopher Aristotle was a tutor of the 13-year-old Alexander the Great.

300 ▶ 200 BCE

Stone gateway carved with scenes from the Buddha's life



The Great Stupa at Sanchi, India



The Roman Empire
See pages 68-69

290 BCE

Roman domination

The city of Rome ruled nearly all of Italy after winning a 50-year war against the Samnites. Only the north (occupied by the Gauls) and a handful of Greek cities in the south remained unconquered.



The term "Pyrrhic victory" is named after a Greek king, Pyrrhus. He defeated the Roman army in 280 BCE, but with such terrible losses that he soon retreated.

262 BCE

Buddhist ruler

Appalled by the violence of war, the Mauryan emperor Ashoka (ruled 268-232 BCE) became a convert to Buddhism. He built the Great Stupa at Sanchi to house relics of the Buddha.

▶▶ 300

300 BCE

Peruvian mummies

Hundreds of mummies from around 300 BCE have been found in the dry Paracas Peninsula of Peru. The bodies were seated and wrapped in long layers of brightly colored cloth. It is believed that the cultures of the Andes treated the mummies of their ancestors as sacred objects.



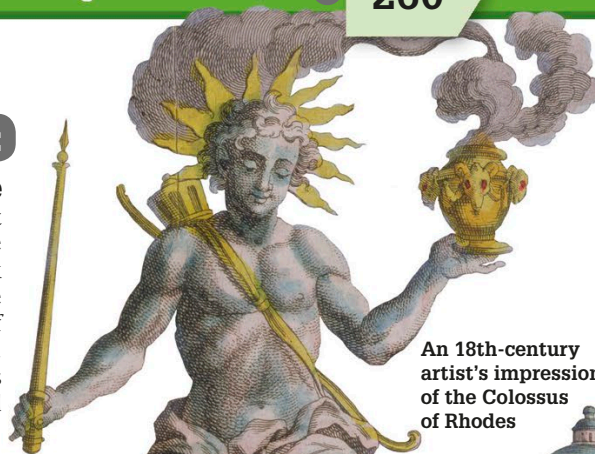
Paracas mummy from Peru

280

280 BCE

Colossal statue

The Colossus was a vast statue erected in the harbor of the Greek island of Rhodes. The giant bronze statue of the sun god, Helios, stood for only 56 years before being toppled by an earthquake.



An 18th-century artist's impression of the Colossus of Rhodes

260

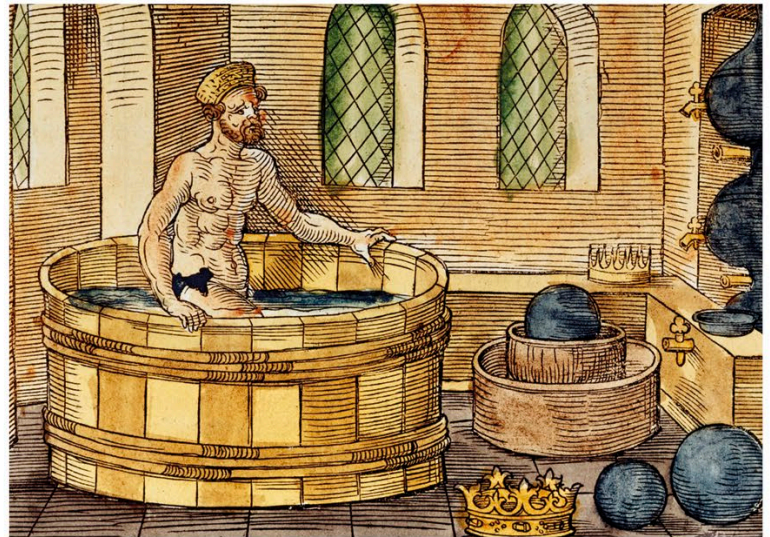
221 BCE

First emperor of China

Zheng, ruler of the kingdom of Qin, conquered the other six warring states of China and proclaimed himself Qin Shi Huangdi ("First Emperor"). This portrait comes from an 18th-century album of Chinese emperors.



240



Archimedes in his bath

212 BCE

Death of Archimedes

The Greek mathematician Archimedes was killed by Roman soldiers at the siege of Syracuse. A great scientist, he is supposed to have set fire to the Roman ships using a large mirror to reflect the Sun's rays. Archimedes is also said to have figured out how to measure volume while sitting in his bath.

**Tomb
army**
See pages
62–63

220

200

**264–146 BCE THE THREE PUNIC WARS**

The Punic Wars were fought between Rome and the city of Carthage in North Africa for control of the western Mediterranean. The Third (149–146 BCE) resulted in the final destruction of Carthage. "Punic" derives from *Poeni*, the Latin name for the Carthaginians.

War at sea

The First Punic War (264–241 BCE) was fought for control of Sicily. The Carthaginians were expert sailors, but the Romans built a fleet and defeated them at sea to win the war.



Roman war galley

**Hannibal crosses the Alps**

In 218 BCE, the Carthaginian general Hannibal crossed the Alps with a large army and 37 elephants to attack Rome from the north. He destroyed the Roman army at the Battle of Cannae, but Rome went on to win the Second Punic War in 201 BCE.

Tomb army

In 1974, men digging a well near the ancient Qin capital in China broke into a large pit that contained thousands of life-size clay soldiers. The statues were guarding the tomb of Qin Shi Huangdi, the First Emperor. Records say that it took more than 700,000 men to build his massive tomb. Qin Shi Huangdi united China and made everyone obey the same laws. He standardized weights and measures and even established how wide the axles on wagons should be. He claimed that his Qin Dynasty would rule for 10,000 generations. In fact, it only lasted from 221 to 206 BCE.

“Great is the virtue
of our emperor, who
pacifies all four corners
of the Earth, who punishes
traitors, roots out evil men,
and... brings prosperity.”

Inscription on a tower built on
Mount Langya, Anhui Province,
to glorify Qin Shi Huangdi



Ranks of warrior soldiers



200 ▶ 100 BCE

164 BCE

Jewish revolt

Judah Maccabee, a Jewish freedom fighter, captured Jerusalem and rededicated the temple to God, an event commemorated each year by the Jewish festival of Hanukkah. Maccabee and his followers were fighting to regain the independence of Judea (Israel) from a tribe called the Seleucids.



A 15th-century depiction of the fight for Jerusalem, where the men resemble medieval knights

171 BCE

Powerful Parthian

Mithridates I, king of Parthia (northeastern Iran), seized Mesopotamia from the Seleucids, the dynasty that ruled western Asia.

His victory created an empire that stretched from Iraq to Afghanistan.



Silver coin showing Mithridates

146 BCE

Mighty Rome

On the orders of the Senate, a Roman army destroyed the city of Carthage in North Africa, burning it to the ground. That same year, Rome captured Corinth and completed its conquest of Greece.

Rome captured Corinth and completed its conquest of Greece.

▶▶ 200

150

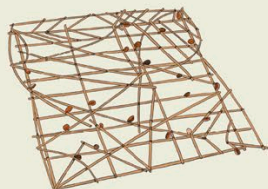
200 BCE–800 CE

PACIFIC VOYAGERS

Polynesian settlers were venturing from the islands of Fiji and Tonga far across the Pacific. Using their knowledge of the stars, currents, and the flight patterns of birds to navigate the vast ocean expanses, they reached Rapa Nui (Easter Island) by 300 CE and Hawaii by 800 CE.

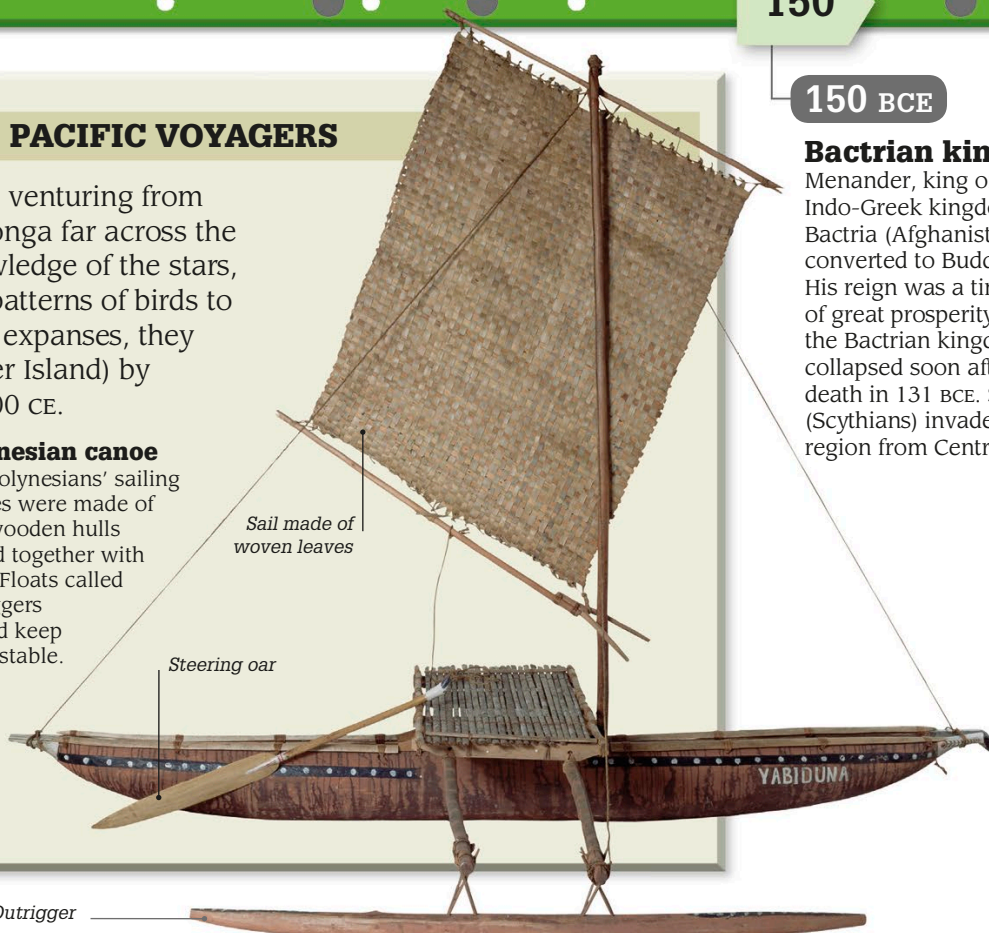
Polynesian canoe

The Polynesians' sailing canoes were made of two wooden hulls lashed together with rope. Floats called outriggers helped keep them stable.



Stick chart

The Polynesians made sea charts using sticks to show the currents and shells to represent the islands.



150 BCE

Bactrian king

Menander, king of the Indo-Greek kingdom of Bactria (Afghanistan), converted to Buddhism. His reign was a time of great prosperity, but the Bactrian kingdom collapsed soon after his death in 131 BCE. Sakas (Scythians) invaded the region from Central Asia.

Outrigger

 **The Hopewell people were gardeners. They grew plants such as sunflowers for their tasty seeds.**



Copper crow

This bird sculpture was made by the Hopewell people, who flourished in eastern North America from 200 BCE to 500 CE. They built ceremonial mounds and crafted objects of copper.

110 BCE

Silk Road from China

The Silk Road, the land trade route that ran across the mountains and deserts of Central Asia to the Mediterranean, named for the silk trade, was busy at this time. Only the Chinese knew the secret of making silk, which was highly prized in Rome.

100

121 BCE

Han emperor

Emperor Wudi expelled the Hsiung-Nu, nomadic raiders from Mongolia who had invaded China. Wudi was the seventh emperor of the Han Dynasty, which had come to power in 202 BCE. He was a strong ruler, who built up the authority of the emperor at the expense of the nobles and made Confucianism the state religion.



A 17th-century silk painting showing Emperor Wudi greeting a Confucian scholar

105–101 BCE ROME'S NEW ARMY

Rome's unending wars of conquest were causing difficulties—only landowning citizens were allowed to fight in the army and they were reluctant to leave home for long periods. Gaius Marius, an ambitious general and politician, changed this by opening up the army to all citizens, turning it into a disciplined, professional force. With his new army, he won victories in North Africa and northern Italy.



Roman soldier's gear

Marius expected his soldiers to carry their own gear and cook their own food. A soldier's pack could weigh as much as 90 lb (40 kg).

“[Gaius Marius] vied with the common soldiers in frugality and endurance, thereby winning much goodwill among them.”

Greek scholar Plutarch (46–120 CE) in his book *Lives*



Wudi sent an explorer to bring back horses from Central Asia.

100–44 BCE

JULIUS CAESAR

Born into a noble family, Julius Caesar was an ambitious politician who rose to power in the midst of civil war. After conquering Gaul, he returned to Rome, defeated his main rival, Pompey the Great, and had himself named dictator, an office giving him extraordinary powers.

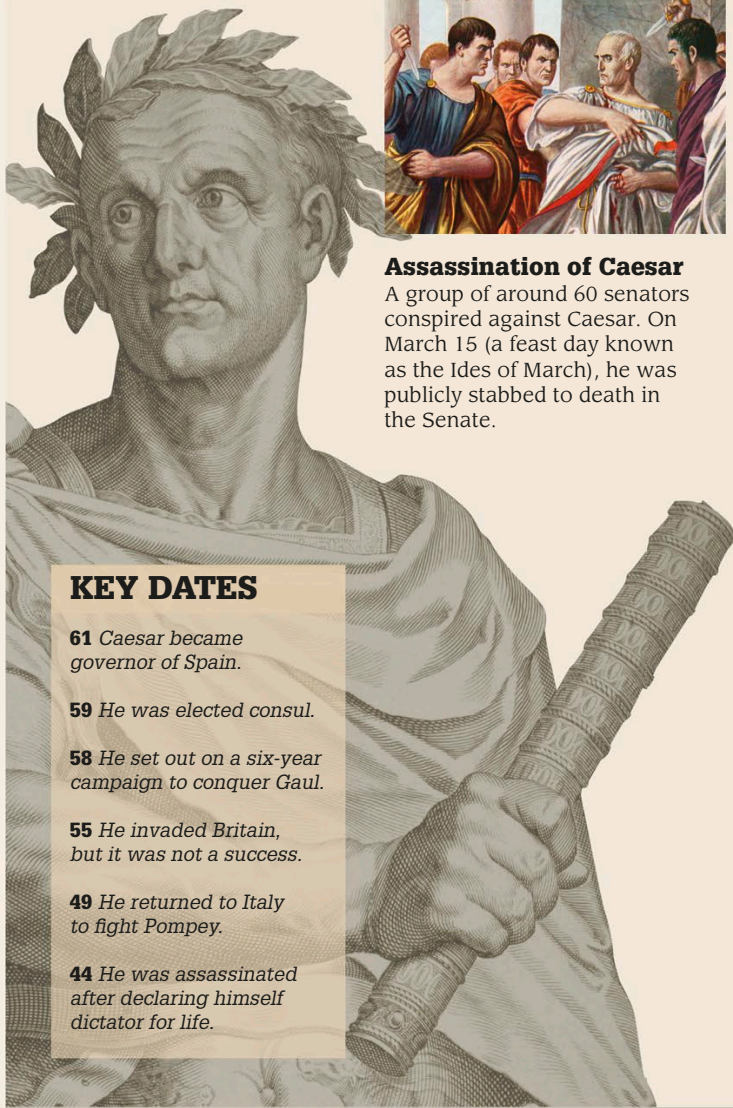
Caesar in charge

As dictator, Caesar carried out many reforms. The Julian calendar is named after him. But in 44 BCE, he was declared dictator for life, leading his enemies to fear that he planned to make himself king of Rome.



Assassination of Caesar

A group of around 60 senators conspired against Caesar. On March 15 (a feast day known as the Ides of March), he was publicly stabbed to death in the Senate.



KEY DATES

- 61 Caesar became governor of Spain.
- 59 He was elected consul.
- 58 He set out on a six-year campaign to conquer Gaul.
- 55 He invaded Britain, but it was not a success.
- 49 He returned to Italy to fight Pompey.
- 44 He was assassinated after declaring himself dictator for life.



73 BCE

Slaves' revolt

Spartacus, an escaped gladiator, started a revolt of slaves near Naples in southern Italy. More than 70,000 slaves flocked to join him. The rebels roamed Italy for two years before being crushed by a Roman army led by Crassus. Some 6,000 rebels were nailed on crosses as a warning to others.

100

80

100 BCE

Hill forts

Around this time, the Celts (Gauls) of northwest Europe and southern Britain were building large hilltop settlements surrounded by lines of ditches and stockades. These forts served as tribal capitals, and some held several thousand inhabitants. The Romans called them *oppida* (towns).

Celtic offering

This bronze shield, discovered in the Thames River in London, may have been thrown into the river as an offering to a Celtic god.



The story of Silla

King Pak Hyokkose is said to have founded the Korean kingdom of Silla in 56 BCE. According to legend, Pak Hyokkose had hatched from a large red egg brought to Earth by a flying horse.

**52 BCE****Last of the Gauls**

Vercingetorix, war leader of the Gauls, surrendered to Julius Caesar after the siege of Alesia, a hill fort in eastern France. Caesar had Vercingetorix sent to Rome, paraded through the streets, and then strangled.

Vercingetorix's defeat ended the wars in Gaul.



Vercingetorix throws down his arms in defeat to Caesar, seated.

“Vercingetorix rode out... and made a turn about Caesar.”

Plutarch, the Greek historian, describes the surrender in his *Lives*, c. 100 CE

27 BCE**First Roman emperor**

Octavian was granted the title of Augustus, in effect making him emperor. Octavian, Caesar's adopted nephew, had taken control of the Roman world after winning the war against Caesar's assassins and defeating his former ally, Mark Antony.

In 53 BCE, 9,000 Parthian archers from Persia defeated a Roman army of 40,000 at the Battle of Carrhae (Turkey).



60

40

20

1

69–30 BCE**CLEOPATRA**

Cleopatra (ruled 51–30 BCE) was the last of the Macedonian Dynasty that ruled Egypt for 300 years. At first, she shared power with her brother, Ptolemy XIII, but later she overthrew him.

After Cleopatra's death, Egypt became a Roman province.

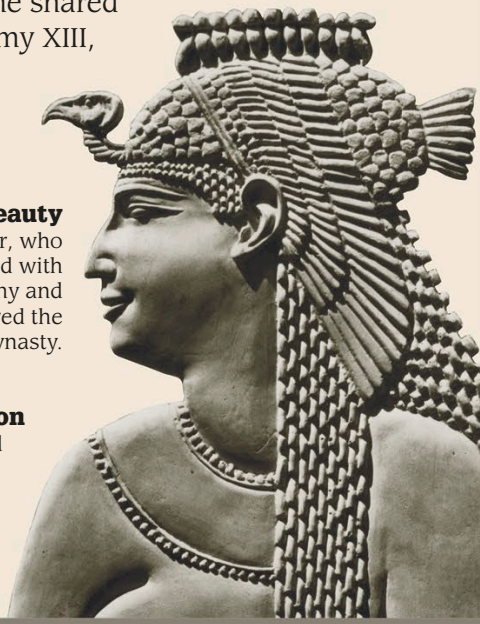
Egyptian beauty

Cleopatra had affairs with Caesar, who supported her against her brother, and with Mark Antony, a Roman general. Antony and

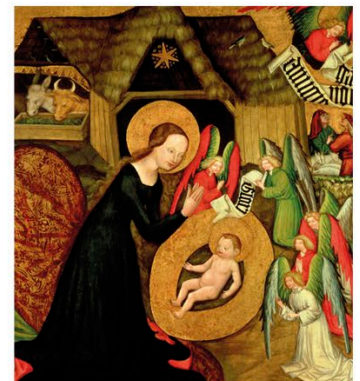
Cleopatra's political enemies feared the couple would found a powerful new dynasty.

Death by poison

When she learned of Mark Antony's death, Cleopatra killed herself with a bite from a snake.

**4 BCE****Birth of Jesus Christ**

Nobody knows for certain, but many historians believe that Jesus Christ was born in this year. The star of Bethlehem, described in the Gospel of Matthew, may have been a comet visible in the night sky.



15th-century painting of the birth of Christ

The Roman Empire

The Roman Empire grew slowly at first—it took 500 years for the small city of Rome to conquer the whole of Italy—but by the 1st century CE, its frontiers stretched from Spain in the west to Syria in the east. This vast empire of more than 60 million people was held together by a strong and efficient system of provincial government, backed by the army.



The Roman world

Shown in red on the map above is the Roman Empire in 118 CE, during the reign of Emperor Hadrian. The empire was divided into about 45 provinces, each headed by a governor.

Enemies of Rome



Samnites

The Samnites lived in the mountains of southern Italy. They were always ready to make trouble for the Romans, who fought three major wars against them in the 4th and 3rd centuries BCE.



Carthaginians

The Carthaginians were Rome's bitterest enemies in the 3rd century BCE. Their empire, which at times included North Africa, Spain, Corsica, Sardinia, and most of Sicily, blocked Roman expansion in the Mediterranean.



Parthians

The Parthians, who ruled Persia from the 3rd century BCE, were a threat on the eastern frontier. The Romans never forgot their humiliating defeat by the Parthians at Carrhae (Harran, Turkey) in 53 BCE.



Cimbri and Teutones

The Cimbri and Teutones were two tribes from northern Europe who threatened northern Italy in the 2nd century BCE. The Cimbri defeated two Roman armies at Arausio (Orange, France) in 105 BCE.



Marcomanni

The Marcomanni, a Germanic tribe from north of the Danube frontier, invaded Roman territory in the 2nd century CE. Emperor Marcus Aurelius expelled them but had to fight a lengthy war against them.



Head of Rome

Standard coins were issued across the empire. They were stamped with the head of the emperor to show who was in charge.

Brilliant engineers

The Romans built this impressive aqueduct to carry fresh water across the Gard River to the city of Nemausus (Nîmes) in southern France. The Romans were skilled engineers. Their network of paved, all-weather roads linked towns and cities across the empire.



Key events

753 BCE

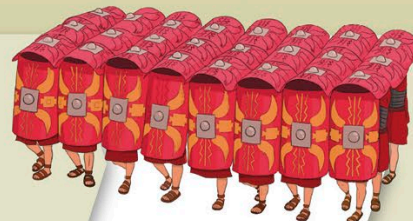
The city of Rome was said to have been founded by twins Romulus and Remus.

509 BCE

The people of Rome overthrew their king, Tarquin the Proud, and formed a republic.

209 BCE

Rome had overcome its neighbors and become the dominant power in Italy.



Soldiers in tortoise formation

27 BCE

Octavian founded the Roman Empire. He ruled as its first emperor, under the name Augustus.

Famous generals

Scipio Africanus

Leading the fight against the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, Scipio took the war to Africa, where he defeated Hannibal at the Battle of Zama (202 BCE).



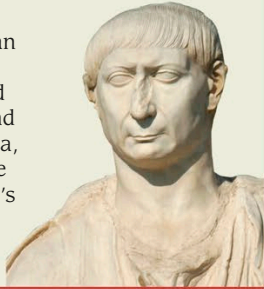
Pompey the Great

A famous general of the 1st century BCE, Pompey won victories in the east and in Spain. In 67 BCE, he defeated the pirates who had been terrorizing traders in the Mediterranean.



Trajan

Born in Spain, Trajan became emperor in 98 CE. He conquered Dacia (Romania) and part of Mesopotamia, and his victories are displayed on Trajan's Column in Rome.



Roman society

During the reign of Augustus (ruled 27 BCE – 14 CE), only a tenth of the empire's population were full citizens—women and slaves were among those excluded. People's place in society depended on their birth—whether they were a patrician (noble) or pleb (ordinary citizen)—and their wealth.



Dressed for success

Only citizens could wear a toga—this toga's purple stripe indicates that the man is a senator. His wife wears a *stola* (dress) and *palla* (cloak).



Soldier and captive

Prisoners taken in war were sold into slavery. They might become gladiators and fight in the arena, or be sent to row in war galleys.



Former slaves

Many working people in Rome were former slaves who had been freed by their masters. Their children automatically became citizens.

Roman gods

The Romans had hundreds of gods and goddesses associated with every aspect of life. These are some of the major ones:

- ★ Jupiter, king of the gods
- ★ Juno, queen of the gods
- ★ Mars, god of war
- ★ Venus, goddess of love and beauty
- ★ Neptune, god of the sea
- ★ Apollo, god of the Sun and the arts
- ★ Diana, goddess of the Moon and hunting
- ★ Minerva, goddess of wisdom
- ★ Vulcan, blacksmith of the gods
- ★ Vesta, goddess of the hearth



Neptune in his sea chariot

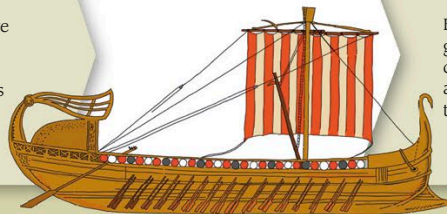
1 CE

The population of the city of Rome reached approximately one million, making it the world's largest city.

117

The Roman Empire reached its fullest extent, thanks to Trajan's conquests in the east.

Roman war galley



212

Emperor Caracalla granted full Roman citizenship to all free adult males living in the empire.

476

Barbarians overthrew the Western Roman Empire. The Eastern (Byzantine) Empire lasted until 1453.



The four Roman emperors who followed Augustus—Tiberius, Caligula, Claudius, and Nero—all died violent deaths.

63 BCE – 14 CE

EMPEROR AUGUSTUS



Augustus, the name Octavian took in 27 BCE, meant “revered one.”

Augustus’s great achievement was to end the civil wars and bring peace and stability to the empire. He rebuilt Rome and reorganized the government and the army. When he died at age 75, he was succeeded by his stepson, Tiberius.

“I found Rome a city of bricks and left it a city of marble.”

Emperor Augustus

A clean custom

The Romans built heated baths all over the empire. Instead of using soap, they cleaned their skin with olive oil, which they scraped off with metal strigils (curved tools).



Flask of olive oil

Metal strigil

43

Into Britain

Emperor Claudius sent an army of 40,000 to invade Britain. The conquest of Britannia (the Roman name for Britain) took 40 years to complete and most of Scotland was never subdued.



1

20

40

23

China in turmoil

A rebel army overthrew the emperor Wang Mang, who had seized the throne for himself in 9 CE. China was plunged into chaos until a

Han prince, Liu Xiu, took control. Ruling as Emperor Guang Wudi, he managed to reunite China by 36 CE, and founded the Eastern Han Dynasty.



High-rise house

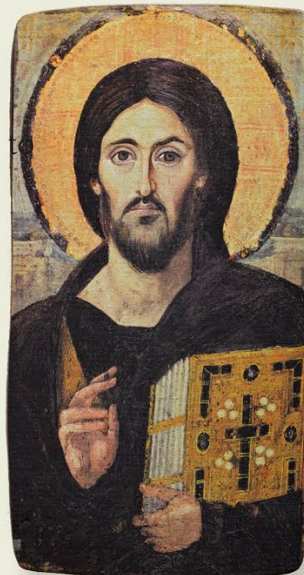
This model of a multistory building buried in the tomb of a Chinese noble shows the architecture during the Han Dynasty. Animals lived at ground level, living quarters were in the middle, and there was a watchtower on top.

c. 33–300

CHRISTIANITY

In 33 CE, Jesus Christ, a charismatic Jewish religious leader, was put to death in Jerusalem. His followers believed that he was the son of God. They founded a new religion, Christianity, which spread to many parts of the Roman

Empire. Christians were persecuted because they refused to make sacrifices to the Roman gods.



Jesus Christ

Four of Christ’s early followers, Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John, recorded his life and teachings. Their accounts were written down in four books, the Gospels, several decades after his death.





The fort of Masada in modern-day Israel

66

Jewish revolt

A Jewish revolt broke out in the Roman province of Judea. Vespasian (who became emperor in 69 CE) and his son Titus crushed the rebellion, destroying the Temple in Jerusalem. Jewish resistance fighters retreated to the hilltop fort of Masada, which fell to the Romans in 73 CE.



In 64 CE, a fire swept through Rome. Emperor Nero blamed the Christians, but many said he started it himself so he could build a palace.

80

Open for business

Emperor Titus arranged 100 days of gladiator fights and wild animal hunts to mark the opening of the magnificent Colosseum in Rome. It had taken eight years to build.



60

80

100

79

Vesuvius erupts

The sudden eruption of the volcano Vesuvius buried the Roman towns of Pompeii and Herculaneum, in Italy, under thick layers of ash and mud. Thousands were killed by burning clouds of gas.

100

Pyramid building

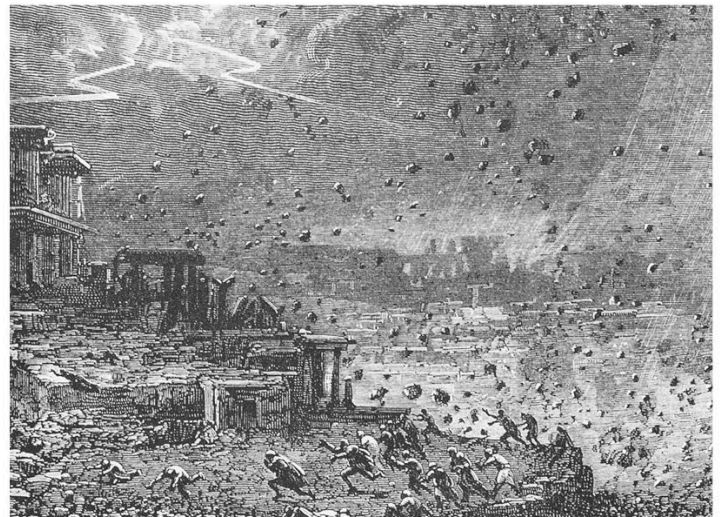
Work began on the enormous Pyramid of the Sun in the city of Teotihuacán, Mexico. When it was finished, about 100 years later, it stood 207 ft (63 m) high.



Paul's journey

Like Jesus himself, the first Christians were Jewish. Saint Paul, a Jew and a Roman citizen, became a Christian after seeing a great light while traveling to Damascus. Paul spread the new religion to non-Jews (Gentiles), journeying around the eastern Mediterranean and writing letters (the Epistles) to groups of Christians. He was probably executed in Rome around 67 CE.

On the road to Damascus, Saint Paul is blinded by a light from heaven.



Volcanic debris raining down on the people of Pompeii

71





Wall painting from a house in Pompeii, depicting fans rioting in 59 CE

Riot in Pompeii

In 59 CE, spectators from the nearby town of Nuceria poured into Pompeii to watch a gladiatorial show in the town's amphitheater. A scuffle broke out between rival fans, and many people died in the fighting that followed. Emperor Nero ordered the Senate to carry out an investigation, and after hearing the report's findings he banished the riot ringleaders and closed the amphitheater for ten years. It must have seemed a harsh penalty to the Pompeians, who—like people across the Empire—loved going to see the gladiator fights.

“A serious fight... arose out of a trifling incident at a gladiatorial show—abuse led to stone-throwing and then swords were drawn. The people of Pompeii, where the show was held, came off best.”

The Roman historian Tacitus describing the riot in *Annals*, c. 116 CE

100 ▶ 200



Moche mask

This copper-and-gilt mask was made by a Moche craftsman. The Moche were a warlike people who emerged in northern Peru between 100 and 200. They were also skilled workers in gold and pottery.

122

Hadrian's Wall

The first emperor to visit every part of the Roman Empire, Hadrian ordered the building of a stone wall to defend Britain's northern frontier from the Celtic tribes of Scotland. It took two years to construct the 76 mile (122 km) wall. Much of it is still standing today.

130

Wealthy Kushans

Under King Kanishka, the Kushan Empire extended from Afghanistan into northern India. The Kushans prospered from their control of the Silk Road, the ancient trade route between China and the Mediterranean.



Sculpture of a Kushan prince's head



100

120

140

105 THE INVENTION OF PAPER

Cai Lun, a Chinese court official, is credited with inventing paper in 105. In fact, paper was already being made in China—Cai Lun reported on the process to Emperor He and a note of it was made in the records. Paper was used both for writing and for wrapping. The Chinese even had toilet paper.

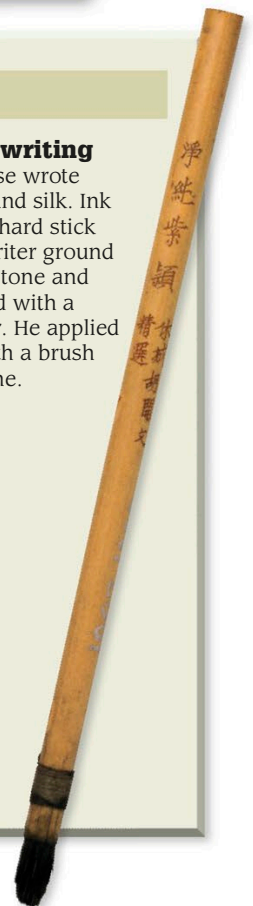
Making paper

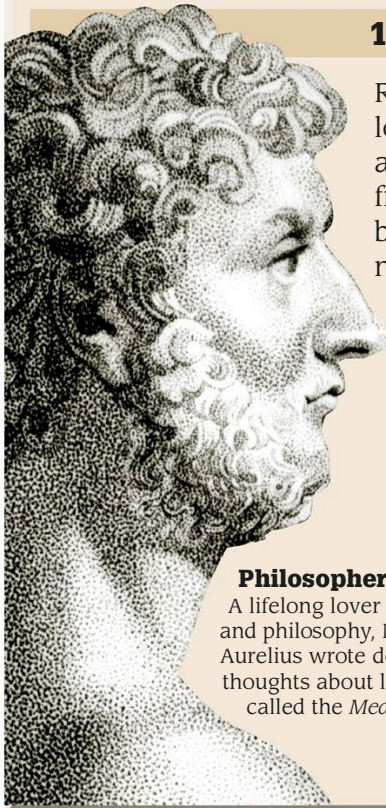
Paper was made from plant fibers. In this 19th-century engraving, two men beat and split bamboo stems, then a third soaks the bundles in water.



Chinese writing

The Chinese wrote on paper and silk. Ink came in a hard stick that the writer ground against a stone and then mixed with a little water. He applied the ink with a brush like this one.



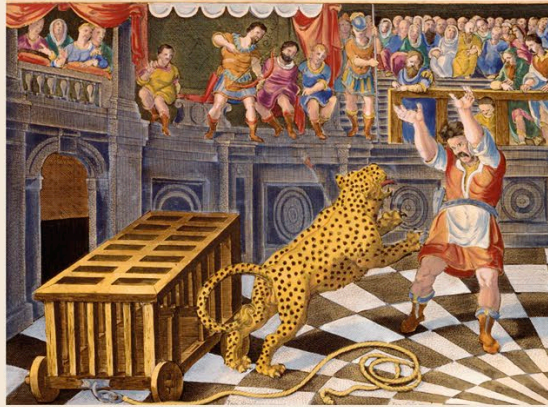


121–180 MARCUS AURELIUS

Roman emperor Marcus Aurelius was a peace-loving man who was constantly at war. First of all, he had to fight the Parthians on the eastern frontier. Then he had to deal with an invasion by the Marcomanni, Germanic tribes who lived north of the Danube River. He left the empire in good shape after his death.

Philosopher emperor

A lifelong lover of learning and philosophy, Marcus Aurelius wrote down his thoughts about life in a book called the *Meditations*.



KEY DATES

161 Marcus Aurelius became emperor, ruling at first with his adopted brother, Lucius Verus.

166 The Romans won the Roman-Parthian War.

179 Marcus Aurelius defeated the Marcomanni near Vindobona (Vienna).

180 Marcus Aurelius died, and his son Commodus became emperor.

Flesh and blood

Marcus's son Commodus had no interest in government and spent all his time at the games. He took part in staged animal hunts in the Colosseum, supposedly slaying 100 lions in one day.

160

180

200

184

Yellow Turban revolt

Up to 400,000 rebels wearing yellow turbans went on the rampage in China. They were crushed, but the authority of the Han emperor was fatally weakened. Cao Cao, a warlord, took over as the real power behind the throne.

“I’d rather betray others than have others betray me.”

Saying attributed to Cao Cao

A ruined Hindu temple in the Champa city of My Son

192

Champion Chams

The kingdom of Champa arose in Vietnam. The Chams were seafaring people who traded with India and adopted Hinduism. They came to rule most of present-day Vietnam and spent much of their time fighting the Chinese.

200

Mayan city

The city of Tikál, deep in the tropical rainforests of Guatemala, grew powerful around this time. It would become one of the largest cities of the ancient Mayan civilization, with a population of up to 100,000 at its peak.

The Maya
See pages
88–89



200 ▶ 300



Sculpture from a Three Kingdoms period tomb

220

Last of the Han

The Han Dynasty finally collapsed and China broke up into separate states during the Three Kingdoms period. In 280, China was reunited under the western Jin Dynasty.



Ardashir I

Artabanus V being trampled by Ardashir's horse

The god Ahura Mazda holding out the ring of kingship

224

Persian coup

Ardashir I overthrew the Parthian emperor of Persia, Artabanus V, to found the Sasanian (or Sassanid) dynasty of rulers. A symbolic scene carved on a cliff face at Naqsh-e Rostam in Iran shows Ahura Mazda, high god of the ancient Persians, making Ardashir a king.

The Maya
See pages
88-89

▶▶ 200

220

240

100-600 TEOTIHUACÁN

Teotihuacán in Central Mexico was the largest city of ancient America. Built between 100 and 250, it covered an area of more than 11 sq miles (30 sq km). Its people traded widely and its influence was felt as far as Guatemala. The city was at the peak of its power around 500, but fell into decline a century later.



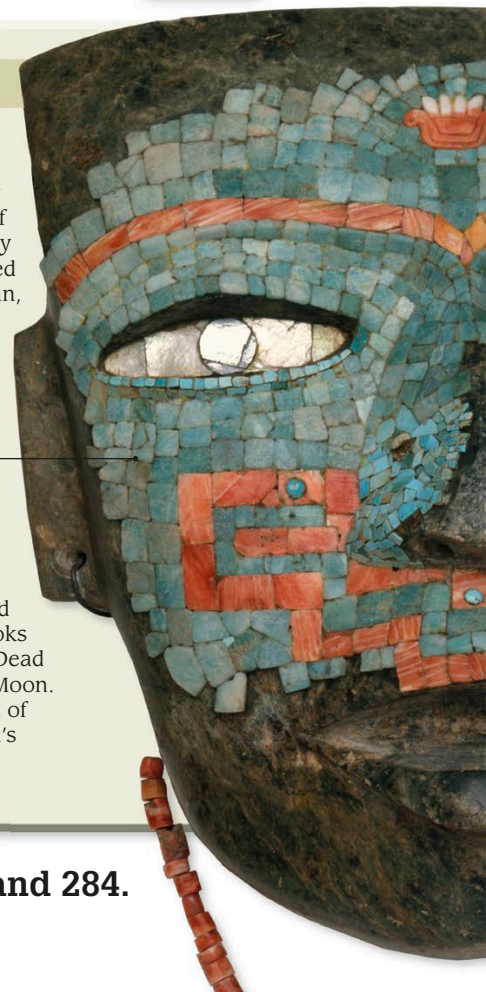
Face to face

This impressive stone mask was probably made for the statue of a god to wear. Skilfully worked, it is covered with turquoise, obsidian, and coral, and the staring eyes are of mother-of-pearl.

Turquoise mosaic pieces

City of the gods

Teotihuacán was laid out as a sacred site, dedicated to the gods. This view looks down the Avenue of the Dead from the Pyramid of the Moon. On the left is the Pyramid of the Sun, one of the world's largest pyramids.





Third-century ceremonial bronze bell from Japan

250

Japanese kingdom

In Japan, a kingdom was emerging in the Yamato region of Honshu Island. Its rulers extended their control across most of Japan over the next two centuries.

260

Empire in crisis

The Roman Empire was plunged into crisis after Emperor Valerian was taken prisoner by the Sasanian king Shapur I. Meanwhile, barbarian invaders threatened the Empire's northeastern frontiers, and a usurper set up a breakaway Gallic Empire in the west.



Lord of Sipán

This intricate ornament is one of hundreds of precious items buried with a Moche warrior-king. His coffin at Sipán in northern Peru has been dated to about 290.

The Roman Empire
See pages 68–69

260

280

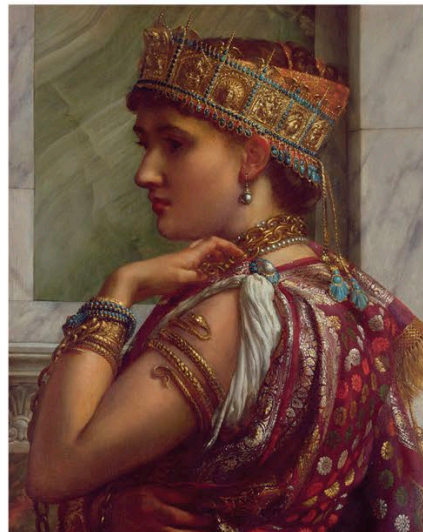
300



269

Warrior queen

Zenobia, queen of Palmyra, a wealthy city in Syria, took advantage of the Roman Empire's weakness. She carved out an independent kingdom for herself in Syria and Egypt. Defeated by Emperor Aurelian in 272, she was taken as a captive to Rome, where she died.



19th-century portrait of Queen Zenobia



Statue of the Empire's four tetrarchs (co-emperors)

285

Empire of two halves

Diocletian, a wise and efficient emperor, decided the Empire was too large for one man. He appointed Maximian to rule the west, while he ruled the east. In 293, each emperor took a junior colleague, making a rule of four (the tetrarchy).

“Her eyes were black and powerful... and her beauty incredible.”

Description of Zenobia in the *Historia Augusta*



“How she clung to her father’s neck! How she loved her nurses, her tutors, her teachers! How studiously and intelligently she read...”

The author Pliny describing a friend’s daughter, Minicia Minata, 106 CE

CHILDREN IN HISTORY

A Roman girl's life

When a Roman girl was eight days old, she was placed on her father's knee. If he did not accept her, she was put outside to die. This happened to boys too, if they were sickly, but more often to girls. Usually, however, the birth of a baby of either sex was a welcome event, and parents hung garlands on the front door of their house in celebration.

A charmed childhood

At eight days old, the baby had a naming ceremony. Her father placed a charm called a *bulla* around her neck, which she wore until she married. The baby was dressed in restricting swaddling clothes up to the age of two and, if she came from an upper-class family, was looked after by slaves.

School days

Like their brothers, well-off girls went to school from the ages of 7 to 11 to learn reading, writing, and math. But not all girls went to school. Most received just a basic education, after which they were taught household skills by their mothers. The daughters of slaves had to work from an early age.

Time for fun and games

Although Roman children were dressed like miniature adults, there was plenty of time for fun with balls, hoops, spinning tops, and wooden toys. Children also played games together with marbles, dice, and nuts. Girls had dolls. Some lucky children might have kept a pet, such as a small dog, rabbit, or even a goose.

Growing up and leaving home

On the eve of her wedding, a girl marked the end of childhood by dedicating her favorite doll to the household gods. Girls could marry at 12, though 15 was the usual age. As a wife, her duties would be to run the household, manage the slaves, and have children. However, wives could own property and many were successful businesswomen.

“During the time that I lived, I enjoyed myself and I was always loved by everyone. In fact, believe me, I had the face of a little boy, not of a girl... of pleasing and noble appearance, with red hair, short on top and long behind...”

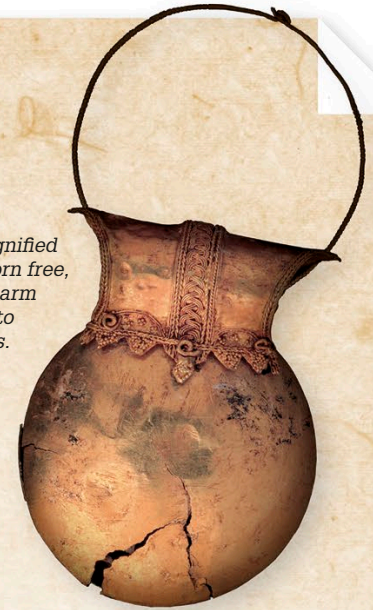
From an epitaph to a five-year-old Roman girl who died in the 1st century CE

Girl with a stylus

This girl taps her stylus (pen) to her mouth as she ponders what to write on the wax tablet. She appears on a wall painting in Pompeii, Italy, that dates from the first century.

Golden locket

Wearing a *bulla* signified that a child was born free, not a slave. The charm was also believed to ward off evil spirits.



“My daughter is very close to my heart... For what has nature wanted to be more delightful to us, what has nature wanted to be more dear to us than our daughters?”

The Roman politician Cicero, c. 70 BCE

A precious doll

This wooden doll was found in the tomb of a Roman girl named *Crepereia Tryphena*. The fact that it was buried with her reveals that she died before reaching adulthood.



272–377 CONSTANTINE THE GREAT

Constantine I was proclaimed emperor in the west in 306 but was immediately plunged into civil wars against his co-emperors and rivals. He claimed that the Christian God helped him secure victory for the control of Rome against the usurper Maxentius in 312, and the next year he and his

co-emperor Licinius issued the Edict of Milan, allowing freedom of worship throughout the empire. For Christians, this put an end to the constant threat of persecution.



Sole emperor

In 324, Constantine became the sole emperor after defeating Licinius and ordering his execution. Constantine continued to support Christianity and ordered the building of churches throughout the empire. However, he was not formally baptized a Christian until just before his death.

KEY DATES

306 Constantine was proclaimed emperor.

312 He won the Battle of the Milvian Bridge.

313 Constantine ended the persecution of Christians.

324 Constantine founded Constantinople as a new capital to rival Rome.

337 He was baptized as he lay on his deathbed.

Constantinople

Constantine's greatest legacy was the city of Constantinople (Istanbul), the new capital he founded for the Eastern Empire. This medieval map shows some of its early churches and monuments.



“By this sign [of the cross], conquer!”

Words that Constantine is said to have seen written in the sky at the Battle of the Milvian Bridge



Buddha head from Gupta, India

320

Indian ruler

Chandragupta I became king of the small state of Gupta in northern India. Conquering far and wide, he founded the Gupta Empire that dominated India for 200 years.

317

China divides

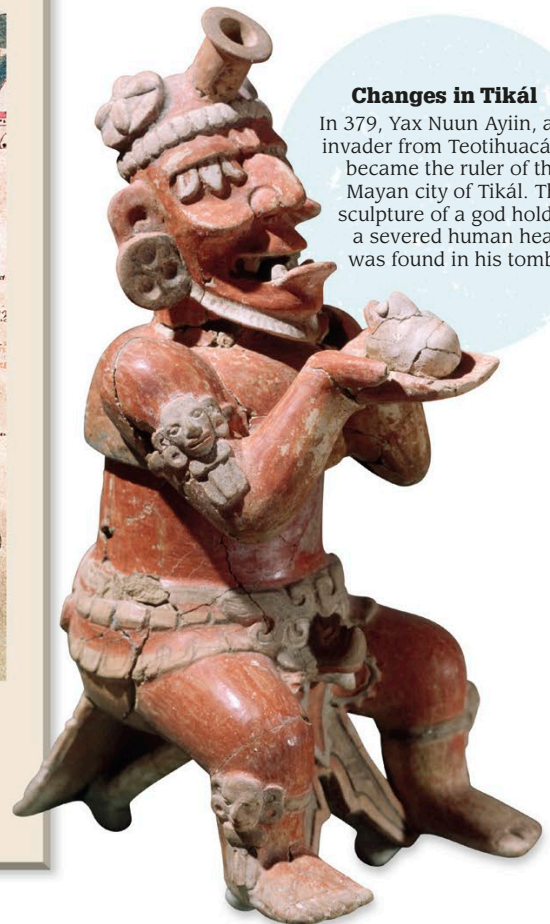
Northern China was overrun by nomads and broke up into 16 kingdoms. The Eastern Jin Dynasty (317–420) established itself in the south of the country, ruling from Nanjing.

300

320

Changes in Tikál

In 379, Yax Nuun Ayiin, an invader from Teotihuacán, became the ruler of the Mayan city of Tikál. This sculpture of a god holding a severed human head was found in his tomb.





Obelisk in Aksum, Ethiopia



An early Christian couple

391

Theodosius I

Having made Christianity the official religion of the Roman Empire in 380, Theodosius I went on to outlaw pagan sacrifices in 391. He ordered the destruction of many pagan temples.

The last Olympic Games of the ancient world were held at Olympia in 393.



340

African convert

King Ezana of Aksum (modern Ethiopia) was converted to Christianity by a Syrian missionary, Frumentius. The burial places of the kings of Aksum were marked by tall granite obelisks. This one is 78 ft (24 m) high.

361

Return of the gods

Civil wars followed the death of Constantine I. His nephew Julian, who became emperor in 361, tried to restore paganism in the empire, but died fighting the Persians two years later.

340

360

380


400


376–395 BARBARIAN ATTACK


When the Huns, nomads from Central Asia, migrated into eastern Europe, they caused panic among the Germanic tribes on the edge of the Roman Empire. In 376, the Goths asked to settle within the empire. They were refused and Emperor Valens died fighting them. They entered anyway and were given land in the Balkans. In 395, Alaric led the Goths in an uprising against Rome.


Germanic tribes

The Romans gave the name “barbarian” to all peoples from outside the Empire. The Germanic tribes originally lived to the north and east.

 **Goths** This tribe migrated south from Scandinavia to the Black Sea area.

 **Franks** This group of tribes settled on the lower Rhine (northern Germany).

 **Vandals** This people eventually set up a kingdom in North Africa.

 **Jutes, Angles, and Saxons** These peoples invaded England from Denmark and northern Germany.



Heavy iron head to cause maximum injury

Combat weapon

The favorite weapon of the Franks was a throwing ax that they hurled at the enemy.

Visigothic warrior

The Goths later split into two groups—Visigoths and Ostrogoths. The Visigoths went west, invaded Gaul, and later founded a kingdom in Spain. The Ostrogoths (eastern Goths) founded a kingdom in Italy.



400 ▶ 500

A scramasax, a single-edged knife carried by the Angles and Saxons



Leather sheath

407

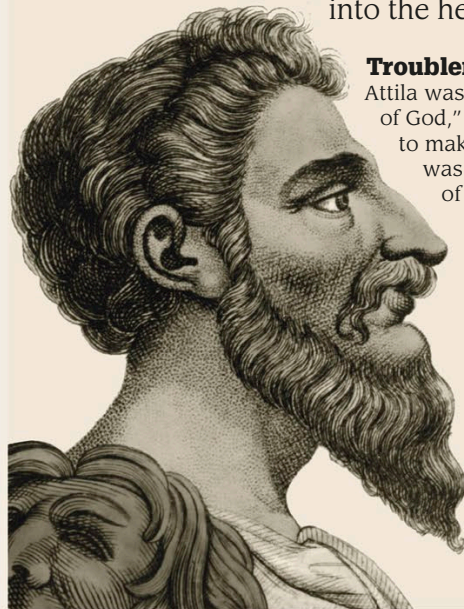
Britain, farewell!

Constantine III, a general serving in Britain, declared himself emperor. He crossed to Gaul, taking the troops remaining in Britain with him. Britain no longer had links with the Roman Empire. After 450, Angles, Saxons, and Jutes from Denmark began migrating into southern and eastern Britain.

410–453

ATTILA THE HUN

Attila was the leader of the Huns—nomadic warriors from Central Asia who had settled in what is now Hungary. Attila united the Huns and led them on a series of raids, plundering everything in their path and striking fear into the hearts of the Romans.



Troublemaker

Attila was nicknamed the “scourge of God,” meaning that he wanted to make trouble. His long skull was due to the Huns’ custom of binding babies’ heads.

KEY DATES

433 Attila became the ruler of the Huns.

441 He began raiding the Eastern Empire.

451 Attila was defeated at the Battle of Châlons.

453 He died of a nosebleed on his wedding night.

▶▶ 400

406

Rhine crossing

On the last day of the year, a barbarian horde crossed the frozen Rhine River from Germany to invade the Roman Empire. They swept through Gaul until they reached the Pyrenees.

410

Sack of Rome

Alaric, leader of the Visigoths, invaded Italy and captured Rome. He asked for gold and silver in return for sparing it. When this was refused, his troops looted the city. In 455, Vandal raiders from North Africa sacked Rome even more thoroughly.

420

425

Japanese burial mounds

The Yamato rulers of Japan were building large, keyhole-shaped burial mounds (*kofun*). The largest, the Daisen Kofun, was said to be that of Emperor Nintoku. Yamato Japan had close links with China and Korea.

440



Alaric riding into Rome



Guardian boar

When the Yamato rulers were buried, large clay figures of animals such as boars, horses, and chickens were placed in and around the *kofun* mounds. These guardian figures are known as *haniwa*.



Fierce warriors

The Huns attacked the Eastern Empire year after year, draining it of the men and resources needed to defend itself. Superb riders, the Huns controlled their horses at high speeds as they rained arrows and javelins on their enemies. In 451, Attila invaded Gaul but left after being defeated by an army of Romans and Goths at the Battle of Châlons in central France.

“... the best horsemen of the whole Hunnic race rode around in a circle... and recited his deeds in a funeral chant.”

A Roman historian, Priscus of Panium, describing Attila the Hun's funeral



Theodoric on a gold coin

493

Ostrogoths take over

Theodoric, ruler of the Ostrogoths, invaded Italy and replaced Odoacer as king after a three-year campaign. He made his capital at Ravenna on Italy's Adriatic coast, and adopted Roman customs.

460

476

Rome falls

Italy was virtually the only part of the Western Empire still under imperial rule. Odoacer, a barbarian general in the Roman army, overthrew the last emperor, a young boy called Romulus Augustulus, to make himself king of Italy. After 500 years, the Roman Empire in the west was at an end. The Eastern, or Byzantine, Empire with its capital at Constantinople survived until 1453.

480



500

500

Town in Africa

Jenné-Jene on the Niger River in present-day Mali was the first town to emerge south of the Sahara in West Africa. The inhabitants were farmers who built mud-brick houses and knew how to make iron.

400-650

THE NAZCA LINES



The people who lived in the Nazca desert of southern Peru made huge pictures of birds, animals, and geometric shapes on the ground. They created the outlines by removing the reddish pebbles from the surface to uncover the whitish soil underneath. The designs can only be viewed from the nearby foothills and no one knows why they were made.

Desert spider

The dry, windless conditions have preserved the mysterious lines in the desert. This photograph of a giant 150 ft (46 m) long spider was taken from a plane.





500–1450

The marvelous Middle Ages

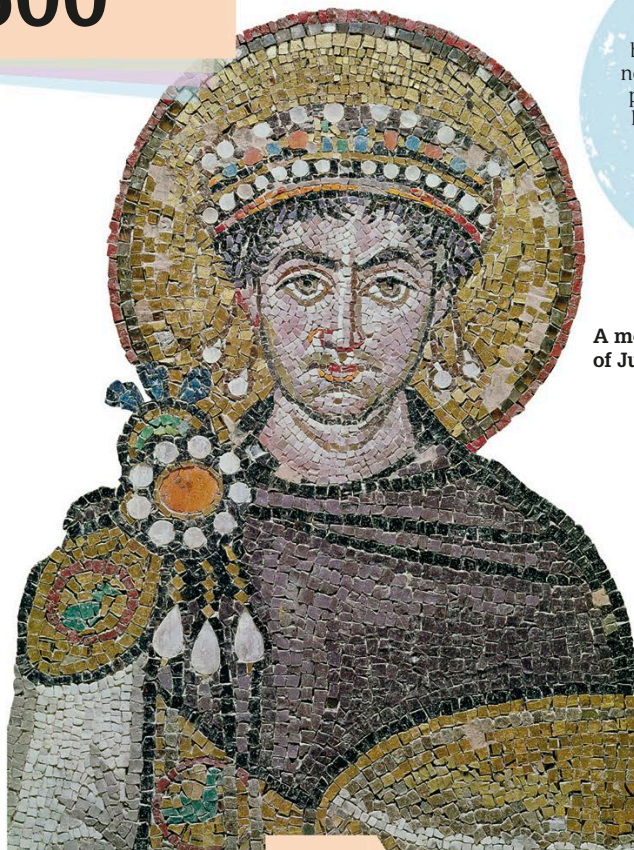
The end of the Roman Empire plunged Europe into the Dark Ages, but by 1000 powerful kingdoms had formed, trade had revived, and medieval Christianity was flourishing. The birth of Islam saw the creation of a dynamic Arab Empire that stretched from Spain and North Africa as far as India. Mighty China was way ahead of the West in technology, but the Mongol invasions and Black Death brought widespread destruction to both Asia and Europe. In the Americas, great civilizations such as the Aztecs and Incas were at their height.



507

Frankish victory

Clovis, king of the Franks, defeated the Visigoths at the Battle of Vouillé and began to drive them out of southwest France into Spain. This 15th-century painting shows Alaric II, the defeated Visigothic king, kneeling before Clovis.



A mosaic portrait of Justinian

Eagle brooch

This beautiful brooch belonged to an Ostrogoth noblewoman—or perhaps a princess. The Ostrogothic kingdom of Italy held out against Justinian's armies for 20 years, but was finally conquered in 553.



532

Riot in Constantinople

Justinian, the Byzantine (Eastern) emperor, seemed in danger of losing his throne after rioting in Constantinople. However, the riot was crushed and the 30,000 rebels killed. Two years later, Justinian's position was made even stronger when his general Belisarius retook North Africa from the Vandals.

500

520

540



Boy monk
See pages
104-105



A 13th-century plaque of St. Benedict

529

Monastic life

Benedict founded a monastery at Monte Cassino in Italy. He laid down rules for how the monks should live, dividing the day between prayer and work. Monasteries following St. Benedict's Rule spread across Europe and were centers of learning during the Dark Ages.

542

Plague!

An outbreak of bubonic plague struck the city of Constantinople. It had broken out two years earlier in Egypt and spread around the Mediterranean, probably carried on grain ships by infected rats. The huge loss of life weakened the empire and in particular the army, overstretched by Justinian's campaigns in Italy and North Africa.



According to the historian Procopius, at the height of the plague 10,000 people a day were dying in Constantinople.





Silk woven in Constantinople in the 9th century

553

The secret of silk

A silk-making industry developed in Constantinople with the arrival of the first silkworms. The insects were said to have been smuggled from Persia by two monks, who hid them inside their hollow canes. Before this, silk had to be imported at great cost because the Chinese refused to reveal the secret of silk production.

570

Birth of Muhammad

The Prophet Muhammad was born in Mecca, in what is now Saudi Arabia. A member of the minor Quraysh clan, he was orphaned at the age of seven and brought up in the household of his uncle, Abu Talib. At that time, the people of Arabia worshipped many gods.

The world of Islam
See pages 96–97

593

Buddhist prince

Prince Shotoku, one of Japan's great cultural heroes, became regent, ruling on behalf of his aunt, Empress Suiko. A devout Buddhist, Shotoku encouraged the spread of Buddhism, which became the state religion. He also created a document that set out the principles that should govern Japanese society.



560



A silk painting showing boats on the Grand Canal

580

581

China reunited

Emperor Wendi, founder of the Sui Dynasty, made himself sole ruler of China, reuniting the country after three centuries of division and instability. Under his successor, Emperor Yangdi, work began on the 1,240-mile (2,000 km) Grand Canal network. Linking the south and north of the country, it is still the longest canal system in the world.

597

Augustine's mission

After encountering a group of Anglo-Saxon slaves in a market, Pope Gregory I sent Augustine, a Roman churchman, to Britain to convert the Anglo-Saxons to Christianity. Augustine baptized King Ethelbert of Kent, whose wife was already a Christian, and founded a church at Canterbury.

“Not Angles, but angels.”

Pope Gregory I, on seeing fair-haired Anglo-Saxons in a Roman slave market

Mayan ruins

The Maya built complex stone buildings without metal tools or wheeled transportation. Ruins are known at more than 40 sites.



Uxmal

A dwarf is said to have built the Magician's Pyramid at Uxmal in a day. In reality, it was built over 400 years.



Palenque

This city in northern Mexico was covered by jungle until restoration began in the 1920s. Its Temple of the Sun is well preserved.

Chichen Itzá

This site is home to an impressive 78 ft (24 m) high stepped pyramid. Each side had a staircase leading to the Temple of Kukulcan at the top.

Temple of Kukulcan

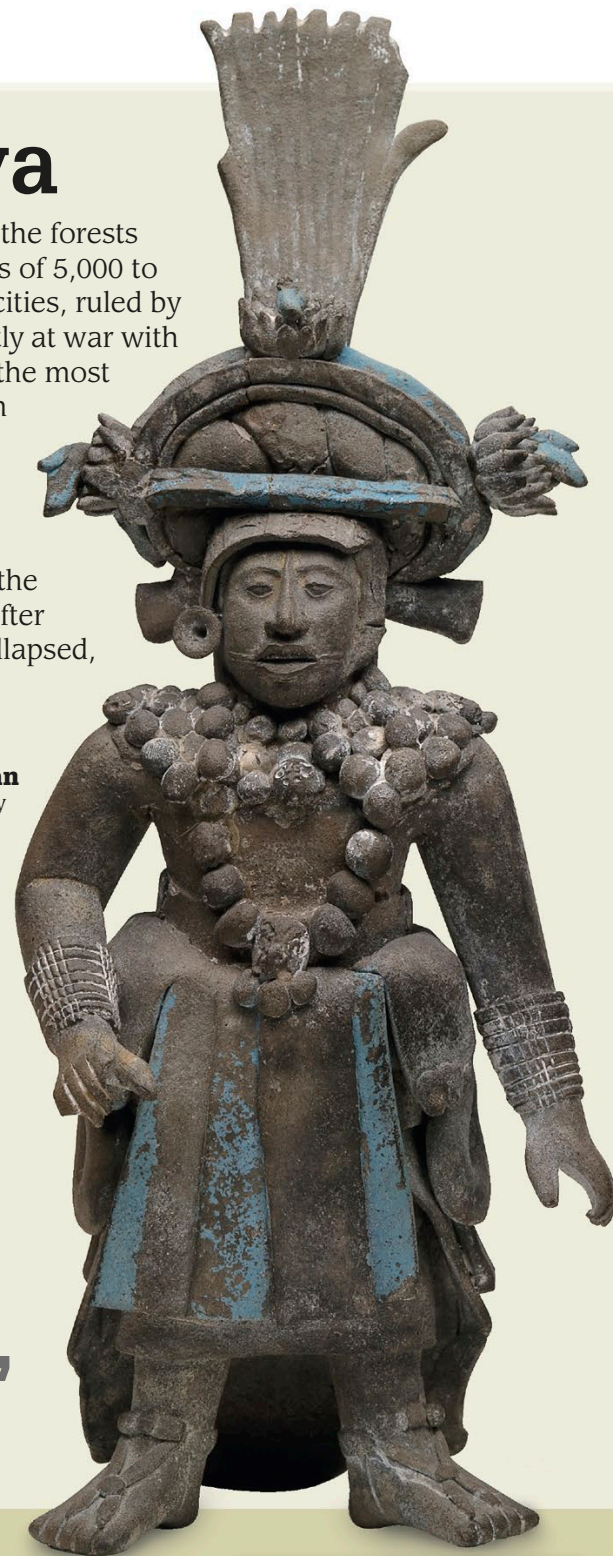


The Maya

The Mayan people lived in the forests of Central America, in cities of 5,000 to 15,000 inhabitants. These cities, ruled by "god-kings," were constantly at war with each other. The Maya had the most advanced writing system in ancient America, which used symbols called glyphs. Around 300, the Maya began to erect stone monuments that recorded the deeds of their god-kings. After 800, many Mayan cities collapsed, probably due to famine.

Mayan nobleman

Each Mayan city was ruled by its own noble family. Mayan nobles spent a lot of time on their appearance—this pottery figure shows a nobleman in all his finery, with a heavy bead necklace, feather headdress, and earplugs.



“There was neither man, nor animal, birds, fishes, crabs, trees, stones, caves, ravines, grasses, nor forests; there was only the sky.”

From the Maya account of creation

Key events

250

The Classic Mayan civilization emerged in the central lowlands of Guatemala. They began to build magnificent temples and keep records of their kings.

450

Tikal, in Guatemala, was now the largest and most important of the Mayan cities. Its closest rival was Calakmul, with which it was constantly at war.

750

The warring between the Mayan cities was at its height at this time.

800

The Classic Mayan cities of the central lowlands began to decline.

869

Construction stopped at Tikal as the city entered its final days.



A Mayan bloodletting ritual

Blood sacrifices

The Maya believed that their rulers could communicate with the gods and their dead ancestors through bloodletting rituals. They also believed that the gods wanted sacrifices of human blood.

- ★ The Maya pierced their tongues, lips, or ears with stingray spines, pulled a thorny rope through their tongues, or cut themselves with an obsidian (stone) knife.
- ★ One reason for fighting wars was to collect prisoners who could be sacrificed to satisfy the gods.
- ★ The victim in a human sacrifice had his or her heart removed. Sometimes the skin was flayed (cut off) and worn by the priest. Parts of the body might be eaten.
- ★ Men, women, and children were drowned in sacred wells or hurled from cliffs to appease the gods.

Gods of the Maya

The Maya worshipped hundreds of gods, who had multiple personalities—some good and some bad. Mayan gods could morph between human and animal shapes.



Ah Bolon Tzacab

This leaf-nosed god of farming was associated with royal power and the offering of human blood. Kings often held a scepter in the shape of this god.



Ah K'in

Also known as Kinich Ahau, Ah K'in was the god of the Sun and controlled drought and disease. He was often shown as a man with a hooked nose.



Buluc Chabtan

This was the god of war, violence, and sudden death (including human sacrifices). He was usually portrayed with a black line down one cheek.



Chac

The rainmaker god, Chac was often shown covered in scales, with fangs and a hooked snout. He carried a serpent as a symbol of lightning.



Ah Puch

The god of death and the underworld, Ah Puch was often depicted as a skeleton or rotting corpse.

Other cultures

Olmec (1500–400 BCE)

The Olmec inhabited Mexico's Gulf Coast region, and are known for carving colossal stone heads.

Teotihuacans (200 BCE–700 CE)

These mysterious people from northern Mexico built the largest city in ancient America.

Zapotecs (1500 BCE–700 CE)

The center of the Zapotec Empire was at Monte Albán in the Oaxaca valley of southern Mexico.

Mixtecs (900–1400)

The Mixtecs rose to power after the decline of the Zapotecs and took over at Monte Albán.

Toltecs (900–1187)

The warlike Toltecs from northern Mexico captured the Mayan city of Chichen Itzá in 987 and ruled it for 200 years.

Aztecs (1325–1521)

The Aztecs migrated into Mexico in the 12th century and ruled the last great civilization of ancient Mexico.

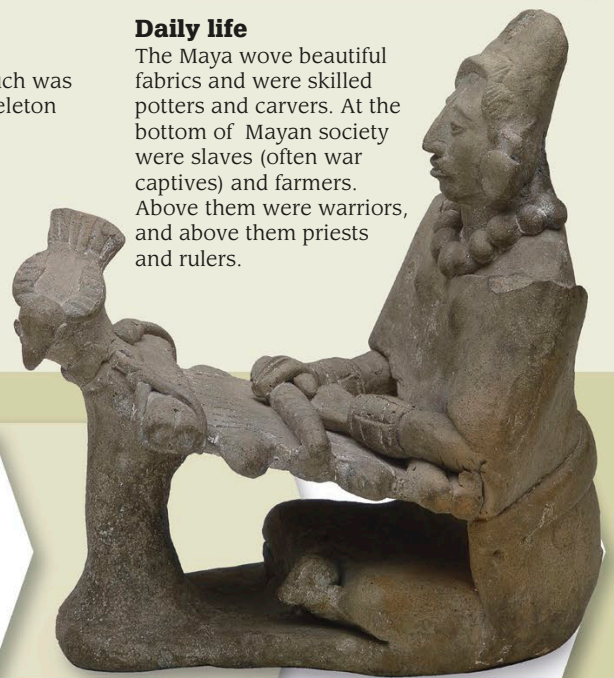


Aztec nobleman

Daily life

The Maya wove beautiful fabrics and were skilled potters and carvers. At the bottom of Mayan society were slaves (often war captives) and farmers. Above them were warriors, and above them priests and rulers.

Figure of a woman weaving



987

The Toltecs took over in Chichen Itzá, controlling the city until 1224.

1527–1546

The Spanish led three campaigns to conquer the Mayan people of the Yucatán Peninsula.

1697

The last Mayan outpost, Tayasal on Lake Petén Itzá, fell to the Spanish.

618

Tang takeover

Li Yuan, regent to the last Sui emperor, a boy, had him murdered and seized power for himself. He reigned as Gaozu, the first emperor of the Tang Dynasty. In 626, Gaozu's son Taizong forced his father to step down. Taizong's reign was the start of a golden age in China.

606

Indian empire

Harsha, king of a small Indian state, united the whole of northern India. Literature and culture flourished, but his empire broke up soon after his death in 647.

China's golden age
See pages 92–93



Muhammad's successors, the first four caliphs

637

Arab conquests

Following Muhammad's death in 632, the Arabs, united by Islam, embarked on a campaign of conquest. By 637, they had seized Jerusalem and Damascus from the Byzantine Empire, and soon they had conquered the Persian Empire. Syria, Palestine, and Egypt fell next, and by 698 they controlled the whole of North Africa.



▶▶ 600

620

640

610

Greek replaces Latin

Heraclius became the Byzantine (Eastern) emperor, ruling until 641. He fought off the Persians, who were threatening to invade. Since most people in the Eastern Empire spoke Greek rather than Latin, he made it the official language of government.



Heraclius on horseback

610–629

THE BIRTH OF ISLAM

Muhammad was a merchant in Mecca, Saudia Arabia, before he grew discontented and took up a life of contemplation. In 610, around age 40, he received a series of divine revelations and began preaching the message that there is one God: Allah. His revelations are contained in the Quran, which is for Muslims the direct word of God. The new religion that Muhammad taught was called Islam, meaning "submission to God."



Medina and Mecca

The people of Mecca turned against Muhammad and in 622 he fled to Medina. That journey marks the start of the Islamic era. In 629, Muhammad returned to Mecca. Today, both cities are holy for Muslims.

12th-century illumination of Medina (left) and Mecca (right)



673

Secret weapon

When Arab ships reached Constantinople, the Byzantines brought out a new weapon—bronze tubes that fired a strange liquid. Known as “Greek fire,” the liquid caught fire on the water and produced raging flames. The weapon repelled the Arabs and saved the city.



A ship sprays Greek fire

“[Kallinikos] had devised a sea fire which ignited the Arab ships and burned them with all hands.”

Byzantine historian Theophanes, c. 810

Royal helmet

This is a replica of a magnificent helmet that may once have belonged to an Anglo-Saxon king. He was buried in a ship in around 625 with this and other treasures at Sutton Hoo, in eastern England.

690

Empress Wu

Wu Zetian became the only woman in Chinese history to rule as emperor in her own name. She ruled from 690 to 705 but had also been the real power in Tang China during the reigns of her husband, Gaozong (649–683), and son.



660

680

700



Crown from Silla

668

Golden success

Silla conquered the neighboring kingdoms of Paekche and Koguryo to take sole control of Korea. Silla had grown rich on gold. Its rulers, several of whom were women, were buried in tomb mounds with fabulous golden finery.

683

Warrior king

Pakal was a political ruler and living god of the Mayan city of Palenque. Dying at the age of 80 after a 68-year reign, he transformed Palenque into a powerful city with new palaces and temples, including his own tomb, the Temple of Inscriptions.

700

End of a city

Teotihuacán in Mexico, once the greatest city in ancient America, collapsed, bringing 600 years of history to a close. Drought, crop failures, and famine probably weakened the city and left it vulnerable to attack.

Funeral jade mask of King Pakal



The Maya
See pages
88–89

China's golden age

Two dynasties, the Tang (618–907) and the Song (960–1279), dominated medieval China, a time of great artistic and technological developments. The Tang period is often called the golden age of China. The Tang emperors were successful at fighting wars, and Chinese influence spread into Central Asia. After a period of disunity, the Song Dynasty brought a return to prosperity before it fell to the Mongols.

Four Tang emperors



Gaozu

The first Tang emperor, Gaozu, was born Li Yuan. He overthrew the last emperor of the crumbling Sui Dynasty in 618, but his son Li Shimin forced him to step down in 626.

Taizong

Li Shimin took the imperial name of Taizong. He was one of the greatest emperors in Chinese history, and his reforms brought lasting prosperity and stability to China. He died in 649.

Gaozong

Reigning from 649 to 683, Gaozong was a weak emperor. After suffering a series of strokes, he left affairs of state to his wife, Wu Zetian. She later took the title of *huangdi* ("emperor") for herself.

Xuānzong

The longest-serving Tang emperor was Xuānzong, who reigned for 43 years, from 712 to 756. Art and culture flourished during his reign, which is considered the highpoint of Tang success.

Curvy camel

The Bactrian camel was the principal form of transport along the Silk Road. Camel caravans carried glass, jade, crystal, and cotton into China, and silk, tea, paper, and fine ceramics out of China. Ceramic figures of camels and horses, standing only about 20 in (50 cm) tall, were often placed in the tombs of Tang nobles and important officials.



A palace concert

Elegant ladies of the Tang court drink tea while they play and listen to music. A small dog is curled up under the table. This painting by an unknown Tang artist is done in inks on silk.

Key events

618

The Tang Dynasty was founded by Li Yuan, who rebelled against the Sui.

Li Yuan on horseback



659

The Tang expanded into Central Asia, making the Silk Road safer for travelers.

751

The Arabs defeated a Chinese army at the Talas River (present-day Kyrgyzstan).

755–763

A rebellion led by General An Lushan weakened Tang rule.

907

The fall of the Tang plunged China into the "Five Dynasties" period, when China broke up into different kingdoms.

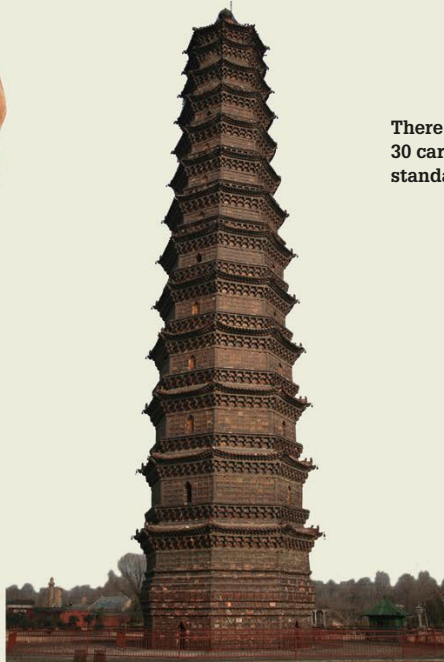


Tang capital

Chang'an (Xi'an), a busy trading city that attracted merchants from all over Asia, had a population of around two million people. Little survives of the Tang city today.

“Before my bed, the moon is shining bright,
I think that it is frost upon the ground.
I raise my head and look at the bright moon,
I lower my head and think of home.”

“Thoughts on a Still Night” by Li Bai (701–762),
a major poet of the Tang Dynasty period



Chinese pagoda

The Iron Pagoda of Kaifeng was built in 1049 under the Song. It owes its name to the iron-red color of its glazed bricks. Pagodas were associated with Buddhism, which was widespread in China.

There were 30 cards in a standard pack.



Cards were made of thin, flexible cardboard.

Tang and Song inventions

Woodblock printing

Using this technique, developed around 650, text was carved onto a block, pressed in ink, and then onto paper.

Paper money

When it appeared around 800, paper money was called “flying money” because the notes could easily blow away.

Mechanical clock

The first record of a clock with a mechanical device to keep time accurately was in China and dates to 725.

Porcelain

The Chinese had discovered the art of making porcelain—very hard, fine white pottery—by 900.

Magnetic compass

The Chinese were using magnetized iron needles to find north on land by the 1040s and at sea by the 1120s.

Playing cards

Ladies at the Tang court enjoyed a game called the “leaf game,” played with cards.

960

Song Taizu, founder of the Song Dynasty, reunited China, bringing a return to stability.

1127

The Song Dynasty moved south after Jurchen nomads overran northern China.

1234

Mongol armies conquered northern China and began attacking the Southern Song.

Mongol warrior

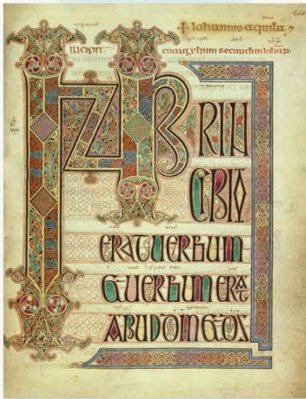


1279

The Mongol conquest of China was completed after the last Song emperor drowned in battle.

Gospel book

About 130 calfskins were used in the making of the Lindisfarne Gospels. This beautiful and richly decorated illuminated manuscript was written and decorated by one monk, Eadfrith, in northeast England around 715.



Battle of Tours

A Muslim army from Spain advanced as far as Tours in central France before being beaten by the Franks, led by Charles Martel. Though not a king himself, Charles Martel founded the Carolingian Dynasty of Frankish kings.

732

731

English historian

Bede, a monk at Jarrow in northern England, wrote the *Ecclesiastical History of the English People*. Bede, an outstanding scholar, has been called "the father of English history."



Charles Martel

750

Andean city

Tiwanaku, a city on the *altiplano* (high plains) of present-day Bolivia, was at its height. The Tiwanaku people built stone monuments and terraced the mountain slopes for farming.

700

720

740

760

711

Muslims in Spain

Tariq ibn Ziyad, a Berber from North Africa, came ashore at Gibraltar at the head of a large Muslim army. Within a year, he had overrun all of Spain, except for the small kingdom of Asturias in the northwest.

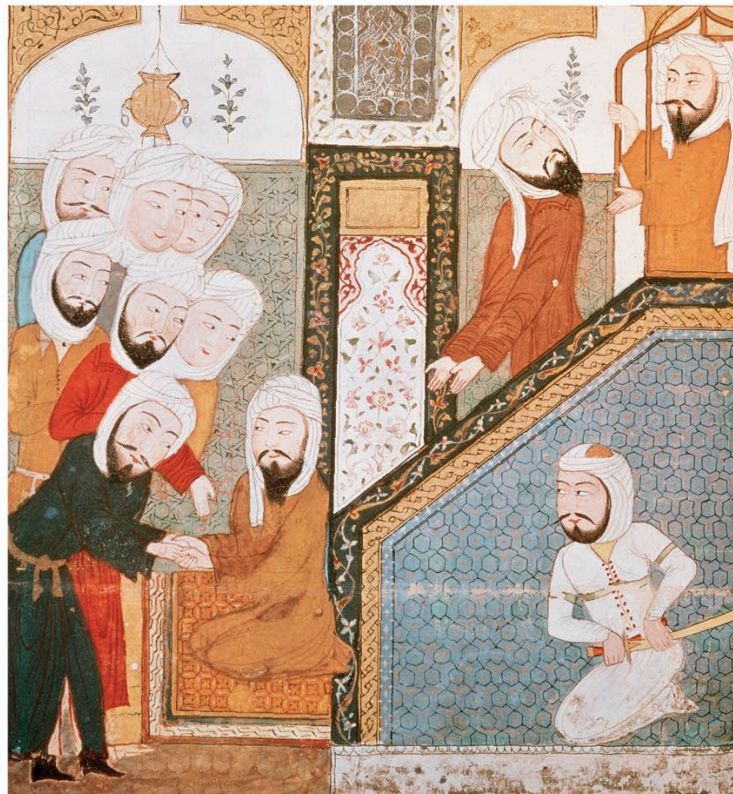


The name of Gibraltar comes from the Arabic *Jebel al-Tariq*, meaning "the hill of Tariq."

750

The Abbasids

Abu al-Abbas, head of a clan descended from Muhammad's uncle, overthrew the Umayyad caliphs, rulers of Islam since 661. Only one member of the Umayyad Dynasty, Abd ar-Rahman, escaped—he fled to Spain and established an emirate at Cordoba. The new Abbasid caliph defeated a Chinese army at the Battle of Talas River near Samarkand in 751.



Abu al-Abbas being proclaimed caliph

The world of Islam
See pages
96–97



Empress Irene

797

Mother love

Banished from court in 790 when her son Constantine VI was proclaimed sole ruler, Irene returned in 792 to resume her position as coruler of the Byzantine Empire. In 797, along with the bishops and courtiers, she had her son blinded and declared herself empress.

793

Raiders from the sea

Vikings, warriors from Scandinavia, attacked and looted Lindisfarne monastery in northeast England. The first recorded Viking raid, it came without warning and caused widespread horror and alarm.

780

800

786

Cultured caliph

Haroun al-Rashid became the fifth Abbasid caliph (head of state). He made the Abbasid capital of Baghdad a center of learning and encouraged scholars to translate ancient Greek and Roman texts into Arabic. Some stories in the *Thousand and One Nights* relate to him.

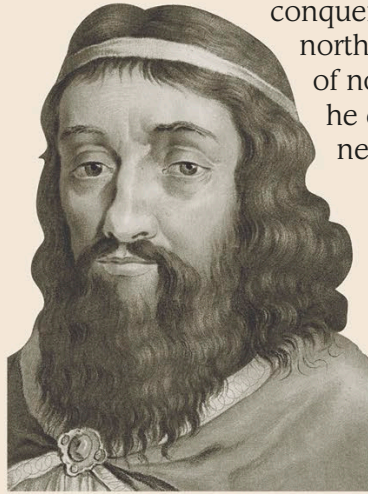


A gold water jug encrusted with jewels, which Haroun sent as a gift to Charlemagne

748–814

CHARLEMAGNE

Charlemagne, the grandson of Charles Martel, became the sole ruler of the Franks in 771. He was the greatest of the Frankish kings—Charlemagne means “Charles the Great.” In 30 years of campaigning, he doubled the size of the kingdom, conquering the Lombards of northern Italy and the Saxons of northern Germany. Although he encouraged learning, he never learned to read.

**KEY DATES**

774 Charlemagne conquered the Lombards of northern Italy.

778 His army was defeated at the Battle of Roncesvalles in Spain.

804 The war against the Saxons came to an end.

814 Charlemagne died in his palace at Aachen, Germany.

Crowned as emperor

On Christmas Day 800, Pope Leo III crowned Charlemagne as emperor in Rome. It was an unprecedented event. Charlemagne was the first emperor in the West for nearly 400 years.

“He took constant exercise in riding and hunting, which is natural to a Frank.”

Frankish historian Einhard, c.0 830

**Legendary hero**

This medieval manuscript shows Charlemagne and his knights in pitched battle against the Muslims in Spain. One of Charlemagne's knights was the hero of the poem *The Song of Roland*, a popular romance of medieval times.

Who were they?

★ **Umayyads**
The Umayyads were the first dynasty of hereditary caliphs, leaders of the *ummah* (Islamic community) from 661.

★ **Abbasids**
This dynasty ruled the Muslim world from 750 to 1258, though after 900 many areas broke away.

★ **Fatimids**
The Fatimids created an independent kingdom in Egypt and North Africa from 908 to 1171.

★ **Almoravids**
The Almoravids were Berbers from North Africa. In the 11th century, they founded an Islamic empire that included Muslim Spain.

The world of Islam

In the seventh century, Arab armies swept out of Arabia to conquer a vast empire that eventually stretched from Spain deep into Central Asia. They carried with them the religion of Islam revealed to the prophet Muhammad. Influenced by the Byzantine and Persian civilizations they conquered, the Arabs adopted new styles of art and architecture and ways of farming. Islamic scholars kept the study of philosophy, mathematics, medicine, and philosophy alive.

The Dome of the Rock

Completed in 691, the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem is one of the earliest surviving Islamic buildings. Its design was clearly influenced by Byzantine architecture but already possessed distinct Islamic features.

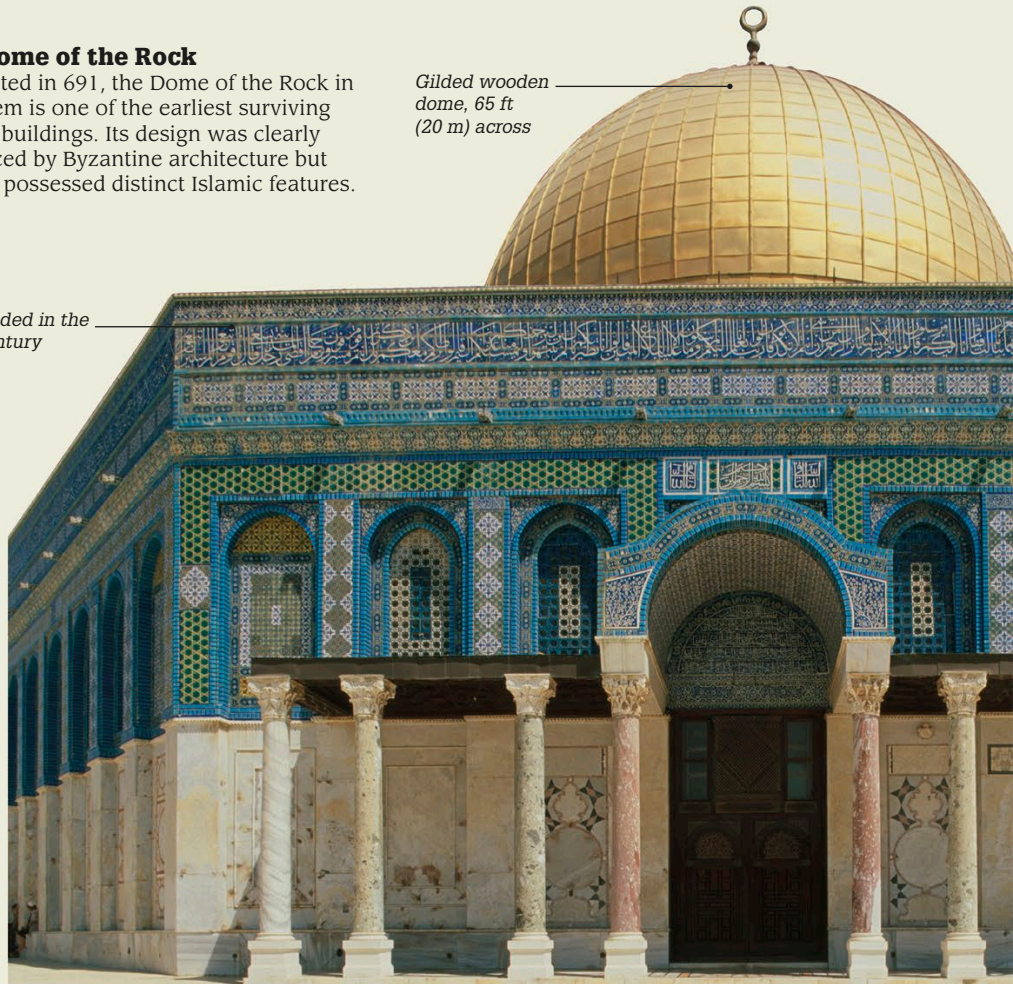
Gilded wooden dome, 65 ft (20 m) across

Tiles added in the 16th century



The Quran

Muslims believe that the Quran is a flawless record of God's word as revealed to Muhammad by the angel Jibril (Gabriel). It consists of 114 chapters, each known as a *sura*.



Key events

622

Muhammad fled from the town of Mecca to Medina in what is now Saudi Arabia, marking the start of the Muslim era.

632

After Muhammad's death, his father-in-law Abu Bakr became caliph (leader of Islam), the first of the four "rightly guided" caliphs.

638

The Arabs conquered Jerusalem. In the next 60 years, their armies overran Syria, Palestine, Persia, Egypt, and North Africa.

644

The standard version of the Quran was made on the orders of Caliph Uthman. It was sent to every Muslim province.

661

Ali, the fourth caliph, was assassinated. Mu'awiya, first of the Umayyad Dynasty, became caliph.



An astrolabe from Fatimid Egypt

Arab gifts to the world

■ Numerals

Today, Arabic numerals are used all over the world. Based on the Indian number system, they were adopted by Muslim scholars since they were simpler for calculations than Roman numerals.

■ Astrolabe

Arab astronomers developed the astrolabe, a device for measuring the height of the Sun and stars. It helped them calculate the direction of Mecca.

■ Chess

The game of chess was first played in ancient India. The Arabs learned it from the Persians. Popular in Muslim Spain, it spread from there across Europe.

■ Coffee

Sufis (mystics) in Arabia took up drinking coffee to keep them awake at night when they were praying. Coffee eventually reached Europe through Istanbul in the 1600s.



Muslims playing chess around 1238

Muslim scholars

Ibn Sina (980–1037)

Known as Avicenna in the West, Ibn Sina wrote hundreds of works on all areas of knowledge, including mathematics, astronomy, philosophy, and medicine.

Ibn Rushd (1126–1198)

Ibn Rushd (Averroes) was a great thinker. His writings on Plato and Aristotle, translated into Latin, revived the West's interest in classical philosophy.

Al-Jazari (1136–1206)

An inventor and engineer, Al-Jazari described more than 100 extraordinary machines in his great *Book of Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical Devices*.



A mechanical boat invented by Al-Jazari

Five Pillars of Islam

Every Muslim is obliged to perform five basic deeds, the Five Pillars, in his or her lifetime. They are:

Shahadah To recite: "There is no god but God (Allah) and Muhammad is the Messenger of God."

Salat To perform prayers five times a day, facing toward Mecca.

Zakat To support the poor and needy by setting aside some income.

Sawm To fast (go without food and drink) from dawn to sunset during the month of Ramadan.

Hajj To make the pilgrimage to Mecca at least once in his or her lifetime.



680

Islam split into two branches: Sunnis, who accepted the leadership of Abu Bakr, and Shiites, who only followed the teachings of Muhammad and his descendants.

711

A Muslim army from North Africa, led by Tariq ibn Ziyad, invaded Spain and overthrew the Visigothic kingdom.

750

The Abbasids overthrew the Umayyad caliphate. Their first caliph, Abu-al-Abbas, moved the capital from Damascus to Baghdad (in present-day Iraq).

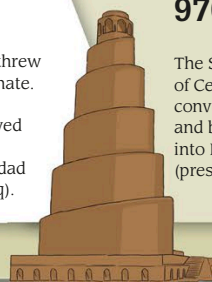
970

The Seljuk Turks of Central Asia converted to Islam and began migrating into Persia (present-day Iran).

1055

The Seljuk sultan Tughril seized power in Baghdad and took control of the Arab Empire.

Abbasid mosque at Samarra



802

Khmer king

Cambodia's Khmer Empire was founded by Jayavarman II, who proclaimed himself "king of the world." He would dominate this part of Southeast Asia for 500 years.



Charlemagne's empire divided into three

843

Treaty of Verdun

Charlemagne's empire was split between his three warring grandsons. Charles the Bald ruled West Francia (modern France), Louis ruled East Francia (modern Germany), and Lothair ruled Lotharingia, the central region from the Netherlands to northern Italy.



850

Gunpowder

The Chinese invented gunpowder, an explosive mix of sulfur, charcoal, and saltpeter. They used it to launch flaming arrows from tubes. Gunpowder did not appear in Europe for another 500 years.



800

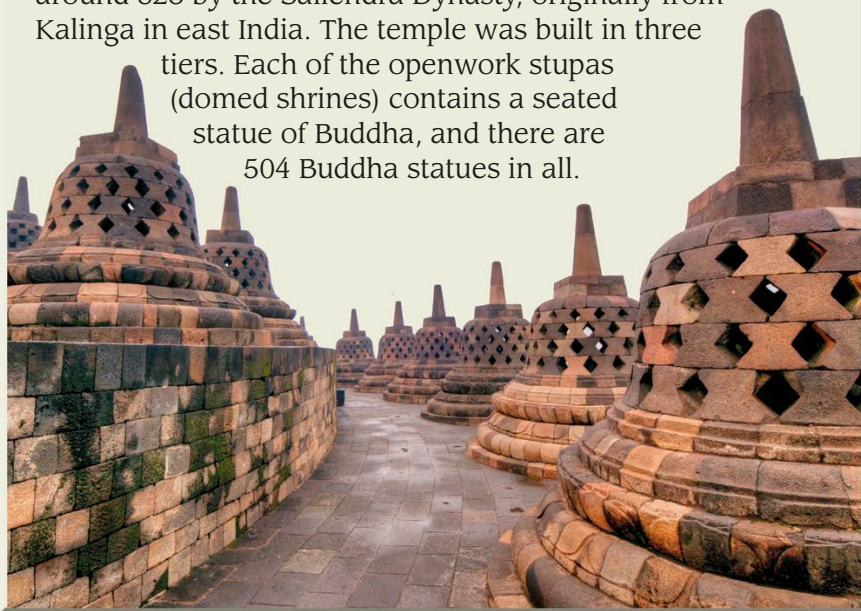
820

840

860

825 BOROBUDUR

The temple of Borobudur on the Indonesian island of Java is the largest Buddhist monument in the world. It was built around 825 by the Sailendra Dynasty, originally from Kalinga in east India. The temple was built in three tiers. Each of the openwork stupas (domed shrines) contains a seated statue of Buddha, and there are 504 Buddha statues in all.



850

Viking raids

Viking longships were raiding along the Atlantic coast and up rivers to attack towns and monasteries. Viking traders had settled in Dublin, Ireland, and warrior bands began to spend winters in England and France. Over the next two decades, Viking raids intensified.

858

Clan Japan

Ruling on behalf of his grandson, the child emperor Seiwa, Fujiwara Yoshifusa became regent. His Fujiwara clan was now the dominant power in Japan.

The Vikings
See pages
100–101



Viking longship



Brother monks

Cyril and Methodius converted the Slavs of Bulgaria to Christianity. They invented a script to write the Bible in Slavic. It became the Cyrillic script in which all Slavic languages, including Russian, are written today.



A copy of a Buddhist text known as the Diamond Sutra, dating from 868, is thought to be the oldest surviving printed book in the world.

880

900

869

The end of Tikál

The last known building was erected in Tikál. The city was abandoned about 50 years later, bringing an end to the Maya civilization in lowland Guatemala.

882

Swedish Vikings

Oleg, a Rus chieftain, became ruler of Kiev on the Dnieper River. The Rus were Viking traders from Sweden who traveled down the rivers of Russia to the Black Sea. Some continued to Constantinople, where they served as bodyguards to the Byzantine emperor.

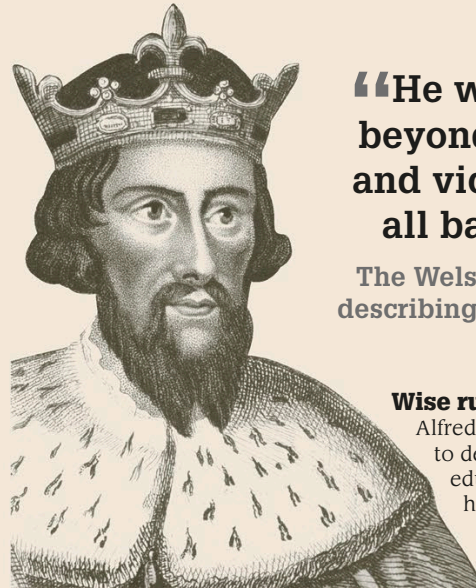


Vikings carrying their boat between Russian rivers

849–899

ALFRED THE GREAT

Alfred became king of Wessex, by then the largest of the Anglo-Saxon kingdoms of England, at a time when Danish Vikings looked set to take over. He succeeded in halting their advance by allowing the Danes to settle in northern and eastern England, an area that came to be known as the Danelaw.



“He was warlike beyond measure and victorious in all battles.”

The Welsh monk Asser describing Alfred in 893

Wise ruler

Alfred built fortified towns to defend Wessex. Well-educated for the time, he made laws and founded schools.



Legends of Alfred

There are many colorful tales of Alfred. He is said to have spied on the Danes in their camp disguised as a minstrel. Another tells of how he was given shelter by a peasant woman who asked him to watch her cakes cooking and he let them burn.

KEY DATES

871 Alfred succeeded his brother as king of Wessex.

877 The Danes attacked, forcing Alfred into hiding.

878 Alfred defeated the Danes at Edington.

c. 888 Alfred and Guthrum, the Danish leader, divided England between them.

Gold jewel

The inscription on this tiny gem of crystal and gold, known as the Alfred Jewel, says, “Alfred ordered me to be made.”



Famous Vikings

Guthrum

A Danish Viking, Guthrum was the ruler of the Danelaw (eastern England). He fought many battles against King Alfred the Great of Wessex in the 870s.

Eric the Red

An outlaw and a smooth-talker, Eric managed to convince a group of Icelanders to sail to Greenland in 985 and establish a colony there. It thrived for more than 450 years.

Harald Hardrada

Harald III of Norway, known as Harald Hardrada, traveled as a young man to Constantinople. He was killed in 1066, fighting King Harold for the English throne.



Guthrum greeting Harald I of Norway

The Vikings

The Vikings—pagan pirates from Denmark, Norway, and Sweden—burst upon Europe in the 790s, creating terror wherever they went. The Viking Age had dawned. Over the next two centuries, many Vikings settled in the lands they conquered in Britain, Ireland, and France, while some crossed the Atlantic to colonize Iceland and Greenland. Other Viking adventurers traveled down the great rivers of Russia to settle and trade with the Arab and Byzantine Empires.

Farmers and raiders

The Vikings were farmers as well as raiders. The women wove woolen cloth and took care of the crops and animals when the men were away.

Men's dress

Viking men wore baggy, woolen pants and a cloak fixed at the shoulder. They had helmets for battle, but these never had horns.



Women's dress

Viking women wore a linen cap and a long, linen tunic. Over the tunic was a wool pinafore, fastened on each side with a brooch.



Sails were square and made from wool cloth.



Longships

Viking ships were made of overlapping planks of wood, nailed together. They were powered by oars or by the wind. The sails were probably woven from wool.

“I have never seen more perfect physical specimens, tall as date palms, blond and ruddy... Each man has an ax, a sword, and a knife, and keeps them by him at all times.”

Ibn Fadlan, a tenth-century Arab traveler, describes Viking traders he met on the River Volga

Steering oar at the back

Key events

793

Vikings unexpectedly attacked a monastery on Lindisfarne, off the northeast coast of England.

841

Vikings from Norway founded a trading settlement on a swampy site in Ireland. It would become the city of Dublin.



Viking longship

862

The city of Novgorod in Russia was founded by Swedish Vikings trading down the rivers of Russia to the Black Sea.

866

Vikings captured the town of York in north England. They named it Jorvik and made it their kingdom's capital.



Fine jewelry

A high-ranking Viking woman would have worn this gold-and-silver brooch, which comes from Gotland, Sweden. Viking craftspeople created beautifully intricate jewelry.

Norse gods

The Vikings were Germanic peoples, and their gods and goddesses had their roots in the mythology of northern Europe.



Odin The god of war, Odin rode an eight-legged horse, and gathered up the bodies of fallen warriors to carry them to his hall, Valhalla.



Thor The god of the sky and thunder, Thor was armed with a great hammer, *Mjolnir*, to fight off dragons and demons.



Baldr The son of Odin and Frigg, Baldr was known as "the beautiful." His blind brother, Hodr, killed him with a mistletoe arrow.



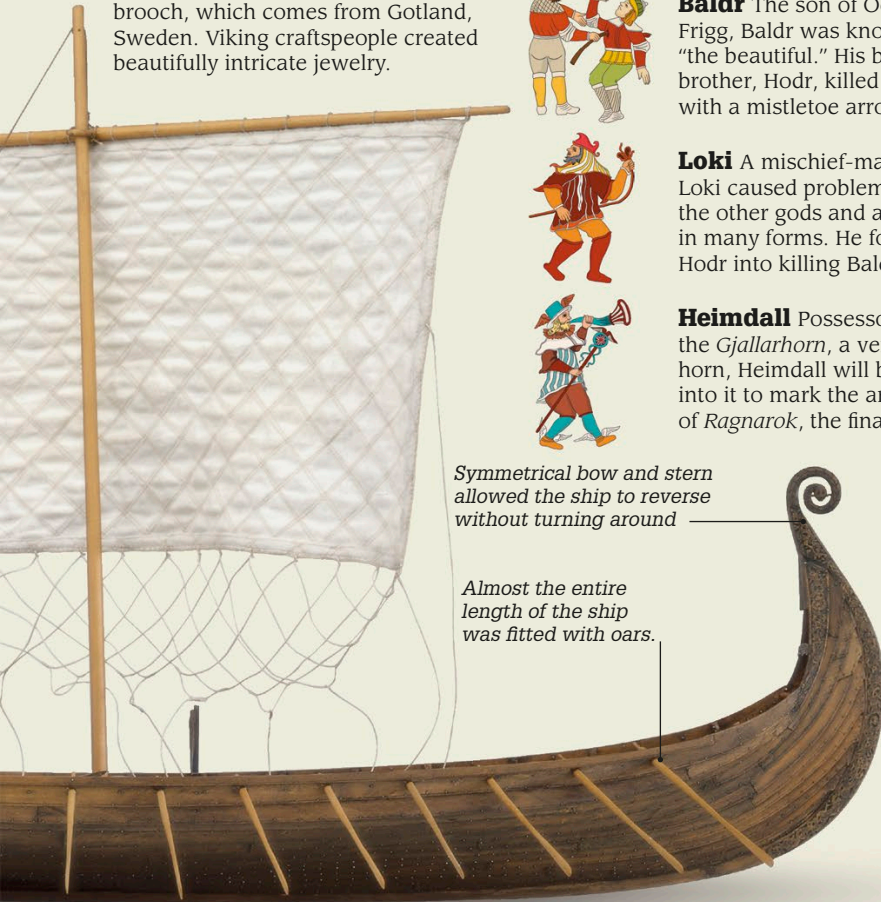
Loki A mischief-maker, Loki caused problems for the other gods and appeared in many forms. He fooled Hodr into killing Baldr.



Heimdall Possessor of the *Gjallarhorn*, a very loud horn, Heimdall will blow into it to mark the arrival of *Ragnarok*, the final day.

Symmetrical bow and stern allowed the ship to reverse without turning around

Almost the entire length of the ship was fitted with oars.



Remote settlements

Orkney and Shetland Islands

These island groups off the north coast of Scotland were settled by Viking farmers from Norway in the ninth century.

Faroe Islands

Viking settlers reached these North Atlantic islands around 825. They called them *Faereyjar* (Sheep Islands).

Iceland

Settlers arrived in Iceland from Norway around 870. Within 60 years the population had grown to more than 20,000.

Greenland

Icelanders led by Eric the Red settled here in 985. At that time, the climate was warm enough to grow crops and raise livestock.

Vinland

Leif Ericson found a land he called Vinland to the west of Greenland. It is thought to have been Newfoundland, Canada.



Reconstructed Viking houses in Newfoundland

Viking games

The Vikings were fond of playing board games such as *Hnefatafl* (king's table), played with pegs or counters. Chess became popular later.



A walrus-ivory chess piece

885

A large Viking army besieged Paris, France, for several months. Viking attacks weakened the kingdom of the West Franks.

960

King Harald Bluetooth of Denmark was the first of the Scandinavian Vikings to convert to Christianity.



Viking warriors

1014

Sweyn Forkbeard, king of Denmark, conquered England. His son Cnut would rule both England and Denmark.

1450

The Viking settlements in Greenland were abandoned around this time, since the climate became harsher and colder.

900 ▶ 1000



Coyote head

This magnificent mother-of-pearl headdress is in the form of a Toltec coyote god. The warlike Toltecs had their capital at Tula in central Mexico, a city they founded around 900.



The Great Mosque at Cordoba

929

Caliph of Cordoba

Abd al-Rahman III, emir of Cordoba in Spain and descendant of the Umayyads, took the title of caliph. He united all of Al-Andalus (Muslim Spain) under his rule, halted the advance of the Christian kingdoms in the north, and rebuilt much of the Great Mosque at Cordoba.

▶▶ 900

920

940

911

Normandy on the map

Charles III, king of the West Franks, gave Rollo, a Viking leader, land at the mouth of the Seine River on the condition he give up raiding and become a Christian. The area came to be known as Normandy (land of the Norsemen).

The Vikings
See pages
100–101

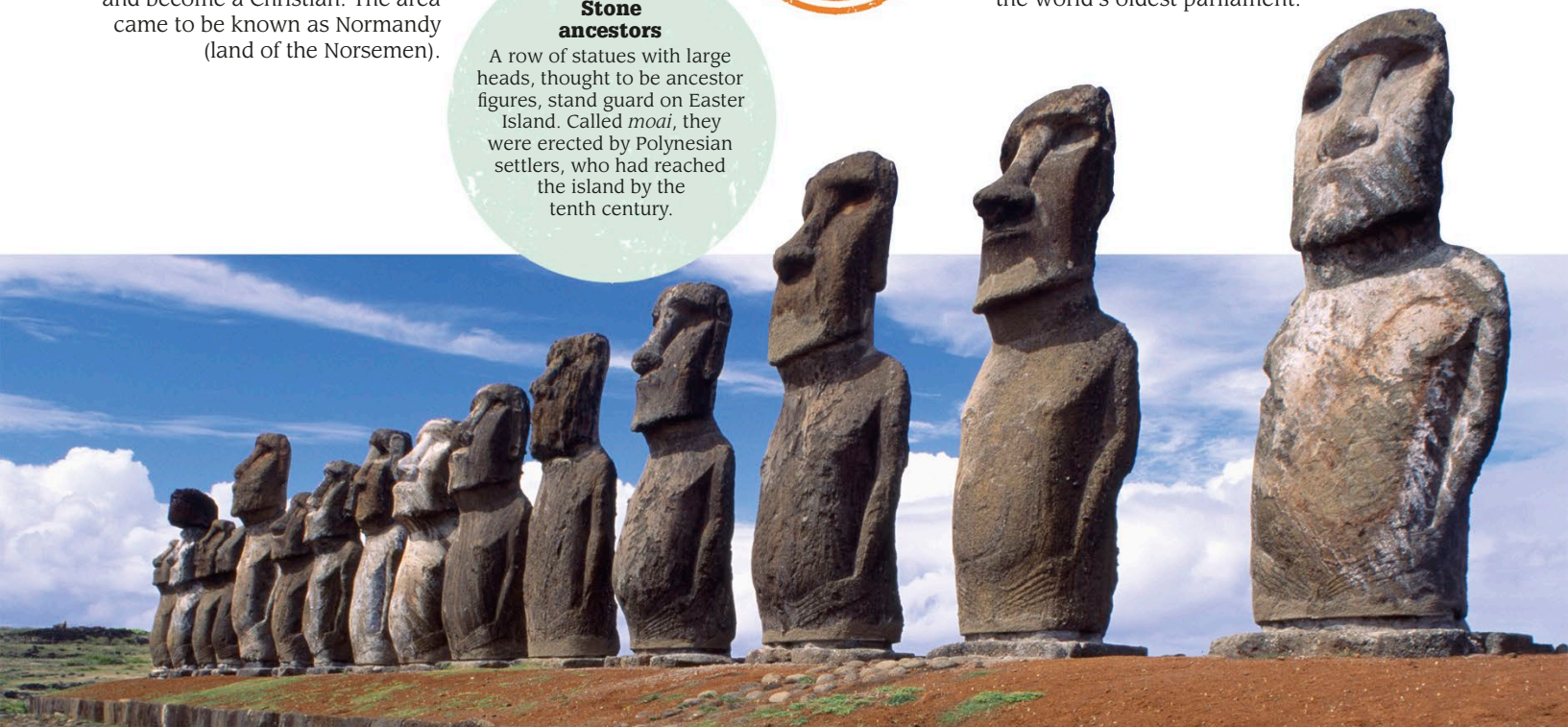
930

First parliament

Viking settlers in Iceland held their first *Althing*—an outdoor assembly that was open to all free men. The *Althing* is claimed to be the world's oldest parliament.

Stone ancestors

A row of statues with large heads, thought to be ancestor figures, stand guard on Easter Island. Called *moai*, they were erected by Polynesian settlers, who had reached the island by the tenth century.



After 991, the English paid the Danish Vikings to stay away. This annual tribute was known as the Danegeld.



960

Danish convert

Following the conversion of King Harald Bluetooth, Denmark became the first Viking kingdom to adopt Christianity. Harald built roads, bridges, and forts across Denmark.

962

German emperor

Otto I, king of Germany, was crowned emperor in Rome, reviving the idea of a Western Empire that had died with Charlemagne. Otto's empire came to be known as the Holy Roman Empire.



Otto being crowned by the Virgin Mary (in reality, Pope John XII crowned him)

960



960

China reunited

The 60 years of chaos that had followed the fall of the Tang Dynasty finally ended when an army general, Zhao Kuangyin, seized power. He ruled as Taizu, the first emperor of the Song Dynasty. The Song capital was at Kaifeng in the north of China.

The golden age of China
See pages 92–93

980

985

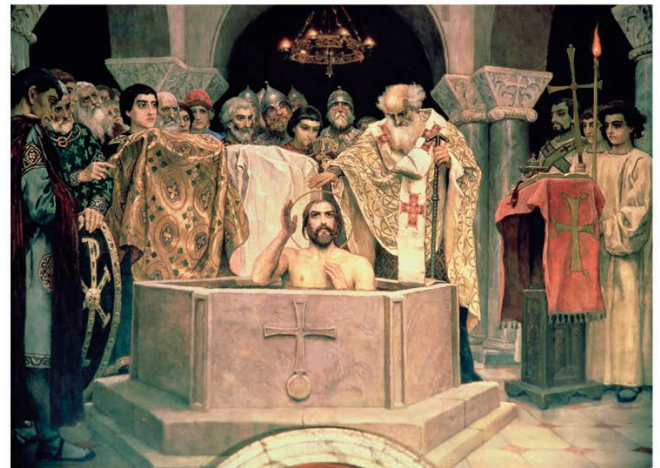
Going to Greenland

Viking explorer Eric the Red persuaded settlers from Iceland to sail west with him to Greenland. The Viking colony on Greenland survived until around 1450.

988

Baptism of Vladimir

Prince Vladimir of Kiev agreed to adopt the Greek Orthodox faith in return for marrying the sister of the Byzantine emperor, Basil II. His baptism sealed Russian ties with the Byzantine Empire and determined Russia's future religion.



Vladimir's baptism

Boy monk

With Christian faith serving as the focal point of life during the Middle Ages, many parents were eager for their children to follow a religious calling. Boys were sent to monasteries and girls to convents from a young age. In addition to being taught to sing the religious services, they learned to read and write in Latin, the language of the church and government. Later on, monastic schools developed to train boys for public life.

Entering a monastery

Boys entered monasteries from about ten years old. Parents brought their sons, sometimes taking monastic vows on their behalf if the boys were too young to take their own vows. The first vow was obedience to the abbot (head monk). Boys adopted the same clothing as the senior monks—a plain woolen tunic and sandals.

Daily worship

Monasteries followed a strict routine of study, work, and prayer. In between schooling, there was worship. With eight prayer time—beginning at midnight with matins and finishing at 9pm with compline—monastic life was regimented and must have been tiring for children.

Copying manuscripts

Since there were no printed works, all books had to be copied by hand. Senior monks helped the young boys in the art of replicating religious texts. Boys spent hours copying the Gospel books, psalms, works of theology, and lives of the saints. It was undertaken as a labor devoted to the service and glory of God.

Apprenticeship to adulthood

After years of study, it was time to decide on the future. Most young men became monks and remained in the monastery. Some went on to careers as officials in the church or clerks in the king's writing office.

“Let the boys be present with praises of the heavenly king and not be digging foxes out of holes or following the fleeting courses of hares. He who does not learn when he is young does not teach when he is old.”

Alcuin of York (735–804), writing to the monks of Jarrow, England

Scriptorium scribe

This young monk is carefully copying in the scriptorium (“writing room”). Monks used reed pens and fine brushes to produce their manuscripts.



Trainee tonsure

Here, a young monk is being tonsured—having the top of his head shaved. This ritual showed he had been accepted into the monastic order.

“If the boys commit any fault in the singing, either by sleeping or suchlike transgression, let them be stripped and beaten in their shirt only.”

Rules of the French medieval monastery, St. Benigne of Dijon



Illuminated manuscripts

Texts were copied onto fine parchment made of calf-, goat-, or sheepskin. In among the writing were decorative pictures (illuminations).

Oyster shells used as mixing palettes



Colored pigment to mix with water to produce ink





“From the age of seven I have spent the whole of my life within that monastery devoting all my pains to the study of the scriptures.”

The English monk and historian
Bede (673–735)

1000 ▶ 1100



The Anasazi complex of Pueblo Bonito contained more than 650 rooms.



1000

High-rise living

The Anasazi people of New Mexico were living in pueblos (villages), which consisted of apartmentlike complexes of multiroomed dwellings that were sometimes several stories high. The Anasazi built their houses from adobe (sun-baked mud).

“Real things in the darkness seem no realer than dreams.”

From *The Tale of Genji* by Murasaki Shikabu

1021

Courtly tale

Princess Murasaki Shikabu wrote *The Tale of Genji*, a story of love and intrigue set in the Heian imperial court. Considered by many to be the world's first full-length novel, it has about 400 characters, including the hero, Prince Genji.



Murasaki Shikabu



1000

1002

Vinland

Leif Ericson, son of Eric the Red, may have been the first European in America. Sailing west from Greenland, he reached a place thought to be Newfoundland that he called Vinland. The name may have meant “grapevine land” or “pasture land.”

Statue of Leif Ericson



1020

1016

Danish rule

Cnut, a Dane, was crowned king of England after defeating King Edmund Ironside. He then secured the throne of Denmark, ruling both countries for the next 20 years.

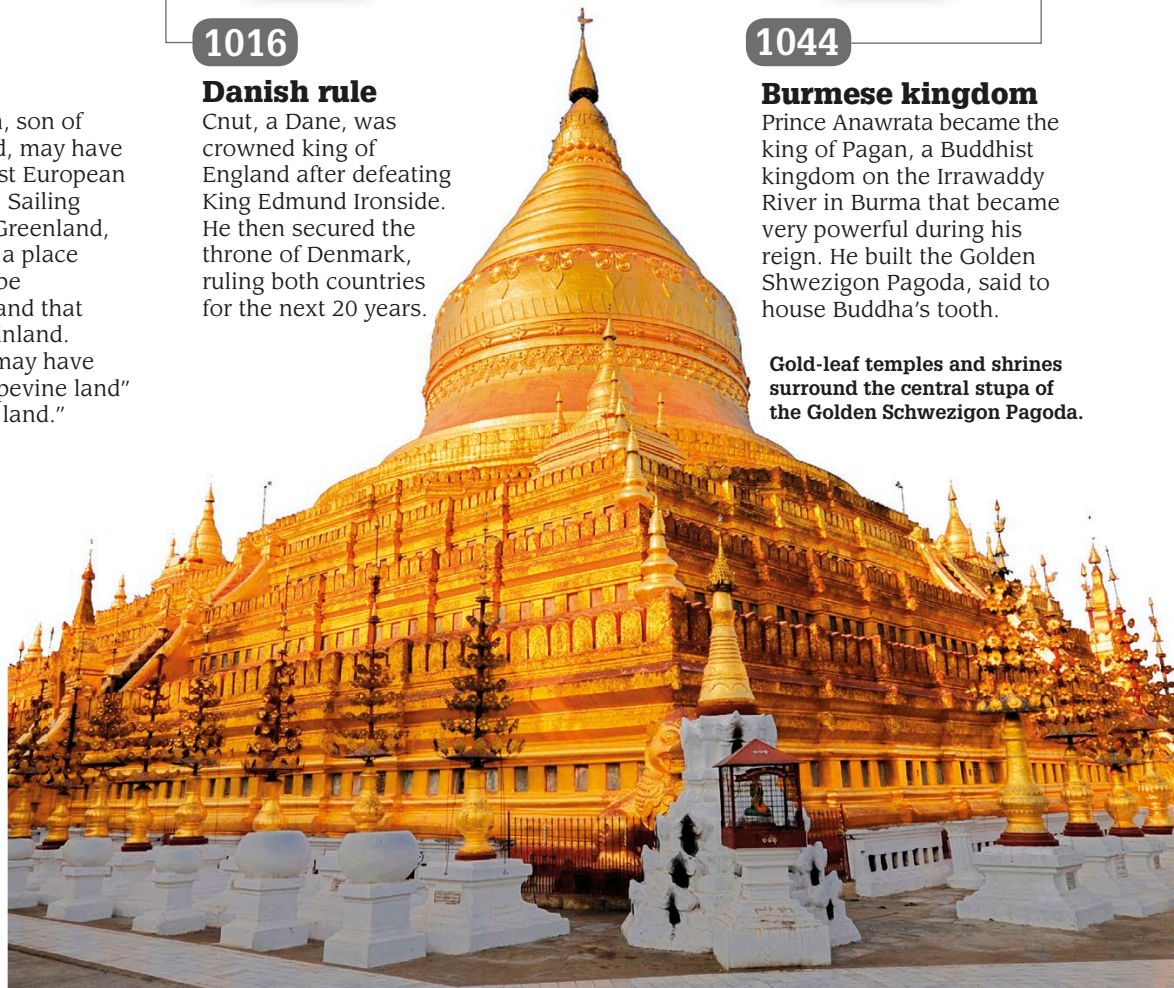
1040

1044

Burmese kingdom

Prince Anawrata became the king of Pagan, a Buddhist kingdom on the Irrawaddy River in Burma that became very powerful during his reign. He built the Golden Shwezigon Pagoda, said to house Buddha's tooth.

Gold-leaf temples and shrines surround the central stupa of the Golden Shwezigon Pagoda.



The Vikings
See pages
100–101

106



Coronation cloak of the Norman kings of Sicily

1053

Normans in Italy

A number of landless knights from Normandy went to Italy to seek their fortunes in the 11th century. One of them, Robert Guiscard, carved a power base for himself in southern Italy after winning the Battle of Civitate against the Pope. Between 1061 and 1091, the Normans conquered the Italian island of Sicily.

1071

Turkish victory

The Seljuk Turks inflicted a crushing defeat on the Byzantine army at the Battle of Manzikert before sweeping on to take most of Anatolia (Turkey), Syria, and Jerusalem. The Seljuks already controlled Persia and Iraq.



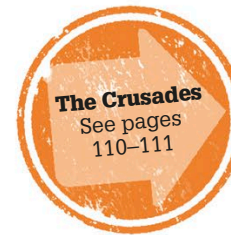
Modern replica of Su Song's clock

Chinese clock
Su Song, a Chinese statesman, built a 40 ft (12 m) tall water-powered clock that kept time and could be used to make precise astronomical observations.

1095

First Crusade

Pope Urban II called upon the knights of western Europe to free Jerusalem from the Muslims. Fired by religious zeal and the prospect of booty, thousands "took the cross."



1060

1080

1100

1066-1087 THE NORMANS CONQUER ENGLAND

In 1066, William, the duke of Normandy (in northern France), conquered England after defeating Harold II. He imposed Norman rule throughout the country and gave the land to his leading barons, who built strong stone castles. *Domesday Book*, a list of all the property in William's new kingdom, was compiled in 1086.

Decisive battle

The Bayeux Tapestry, made around 1080, tells the story of William's victory at the Battle of Hastings on October 14, 1066. Harold died on the battlefield. Here, Norman knights attack the king's bodyguards.



Harold II

Harold had become king on January 6, 1066, after King Edward the Confessor died without an heir.



William I

William claimed that Edward had promised the throne to him. He became known as William the Conqueror.



1100 ▶ 1200



Angkor Wat

1113

Temple mountain

The temple of Angkor Wat in Cambodia was built by the Khmer king Suryavarman II. The largest religious structure in the world, it was designed to resemble the Hindu sacred mountain of Meru.

1127

Southern Song

When nomads overran northern China and seized the Song capital of Kaifeng, a Song prince, Gaozong, escaped. He founded the Southern Song dynasty.

Inlaid turquoise

Sicán knife

This 9th- to 11th-century ceremonial gold knife, known as a *tumi*, was found in the tomb of a Sicán ruler from Peru. *Tumis* may have been used to cut the throats of sacrificial victims.

The golden age of China
See pages 92–93



▶▶ 1100

1120

1140

1137–1193 SALADIN

Saladin (Salah ad-Din in Arabic) was a great Muslim warrior. He began his career fighting for Nur ad-Din, the ruler of Syria. Having overthrown the Fatimid Dynasty, Saladin used Egypt as his power base

to attack the crusader kingdom of Jerusalem.



Chivalrous leader

Saladin won fame for being generous to his enemies. When the crusader Richard of England lost his horse, Saladin sent him another.

KEY DATES

1152 Saladin joined the service of Nur ad-Din.

1171 Saladin overthrew the Fatimids and made himself sultan of Egypt.

1187 Saladin recaptured Jerusalem, ending 88 years of crusader rule.

1192 Saladin and Richard signed a treaty, reducing the crusader kingdom.

“His power was manifest, his authority supreme.”

Saladin's secretary, Imad al-Din, c. 1200



Fall of Jerusalem

In July 1187, Saladin's army defeated the crusaders at the Battle of Hattin, fought in blazing heat. Saladin went on to capture Jerusalem, prompting the Pope to launch the Third Crusade.

1150

Cahokia city

A city at Cahokia in the Mississippi Valley of North America may have held up to 30,000 people. At its heart was a massive earth mound topped by a wooden building, either a temple or a palace. It is one of more than 100 mounds built at Cahokia.



Aibak enters Delhi.

1192

First shogun

Minamoto Yoritomo took the title of shogun ("supreme commander"). He was now the undisputed military ruler of Japan, and the emperor was reduced to a figurehead.



1175

Muslims in India

Muhammad of Ghur, an emir (prince) from Afghanistan, established a great Muslim empire in northern India. It broke up after his death in 1206, but his general Qutb-al-Din Aibak founded the first sultanate of Delhi.

1160

1180

1200

1158

Seat of learning

The university of Bologna, Italy, was formally established, though its origins date back to 1088. Paris had a university by 1150 and Oxford by 1167. They developed out of cathedral schools where students would gather at the feet of a teacher.



1170

Unholy murder

Four knights, who claimed to be acting on behalf of King Henry II of England, murdered Thomas Becket, the archbishop of Canterbury. Henry was angry with Thomas, his former friend and advisor, for putting the rights of the church above those of the crown. Thomas was made a saint in 1173.

“The sword struck... and the crown of the head was separated from the rest.”

Life of St. Thomas by Edward Grim, 1172



The murder in Canterbury Cathedral

The Crusades

In 1095, after a plea for help from the Byzantine emperor, Pope Urban II called upon the Christian knights of Europe to travel to Jerusalem and recapture it from the Muslims. He believed the Muslims were denying access to Christian pilgrims. The mission was the first of the Crusades—a series of wars fought over the next two centuries between Christians and Muslims for Jerusalem, a sacred place to both religions.



Crusader castles

Crusaders built huge fortresses to house garrisons and also to guard the pilgrim routes. The Krak des Chevaliers (“fortress of the knights”) in Syria was a base for up to 2,000 knights, who controlled the surrounding lands and raided Muslim territories.

Fighting monks

Some crusaders were knights who had taken religious vows.

Knights Hospitaller

Also known as the Order of St. John of Jerusalem, they formed to care for sick pilgrims but later provided armed escorts.

Knights Templar

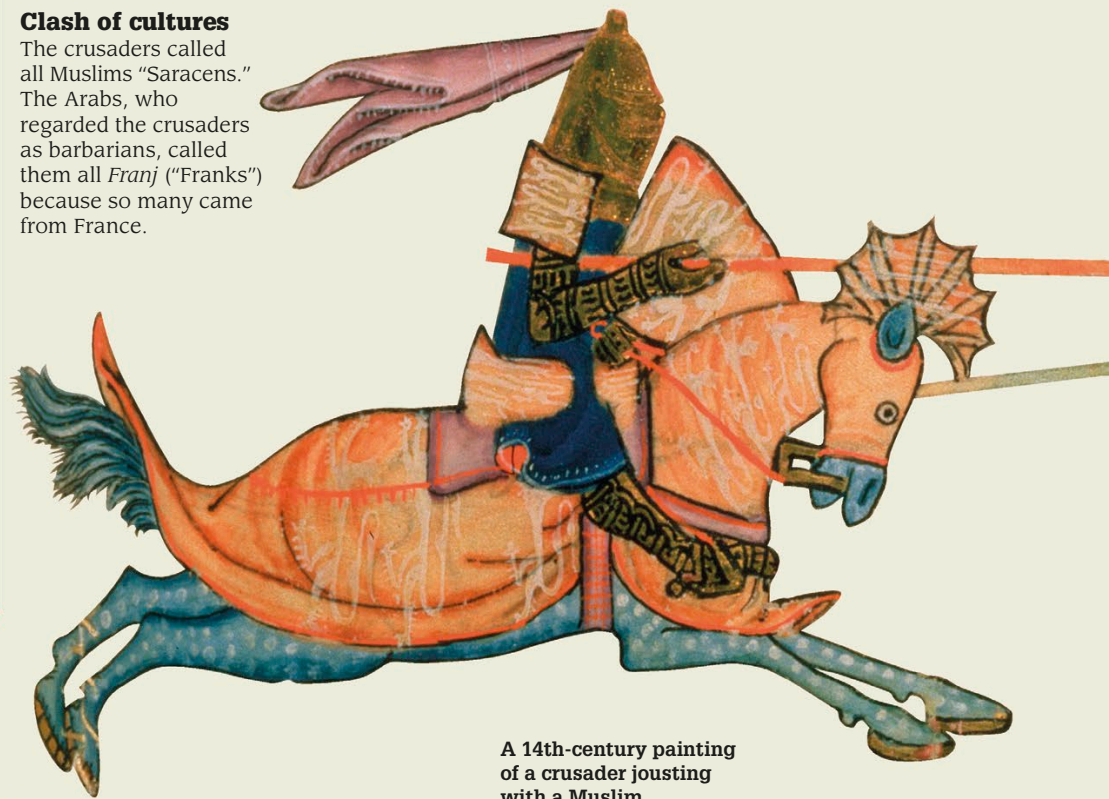
The Templars wore a white mantle (cloak) with a red cross in battle. The order grew wealthy as people gave the knights land and money.

Teutonic Knights

After the fall of the crusading kingdoms, this German order of knights began to convert the pagans of the Baltic area.

Clash of cultures

The crusaders called all Muslims “Saracens.” The Arabs, who regarded the crusaders as barbarians, called them all *Franj* (“Franks”) because so many came from France.



A 14th-century painting of a crusader jousting with a Muslim

Key events

1095

Pope Urban II proclaimed the First Crusade (1095–1099). Crusaders took Jerusalem and established four states in the Middle East: Edessa, Antioch, Jerusalem, and Tripoli.

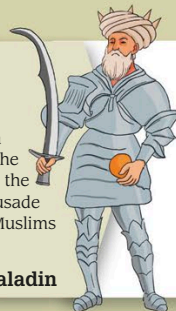
1144

The crusader state of Edessa in Syria fell to Zengi. The Second Crusade (1145–1149), launched by the French churchman St. Bernard of Clairvaux, failed to win back Edessa.

1187

Saladin defeated a crusader army at the Battle of Hattin. In the resulting Third Crusade (1189–1192), the Muslims were victorious.

Saladin



1204

The Fourth Crusade (1202–1204) reached the Byzantine capital of Constantinople. Believing the emperor had betrayed them, the crusaders attacked the city.

1217

The Fifth Crusade (1217–1221) tried but failed to seize Jerusalem by first conquering the Muslim state of Egypt.



Venice in the 1270s

West meets East

The crusaders learned a lot from Arab culture. They discovered foods such as dates, figs, ginger, and sugar. Venetian and Genoan ships carried pilgrims and soldiers to and from the Middle East, returning laden with cottons, silks, spices, and other exotic goods.

“There was such a slaughter that our men were up to their ankles in the enemy’s blood.”

A French eyewitness describes the fall of Jerusalem, 1099



Who's who

Peter the Hermit

French monk Peter the Hermit led an army of peasants to Constantinople before the First Crusade. However, they were killed by the Seljuk Turks after arriving in Asia.

Godfrey of Bouillon

A knight of the First Crusade, Godfrey was made the first king of the crusader kingdom of Jerusalem and the surrounding lands.

Zengi

The Turkish governor of northern Syria, Zengi started the Muslim offensive against the crusader states.

King Richard I

This king of England was known as Richard the Lionheart because of his fierce fighting in the Third Crusade.

Saladin

The greatest Muslim military leader of all, Saladin reclaimed Jerusalem in 1187, but ordered his soldiers not to kill, rob, or harm.



Peter the Hermit

Welcome home

Crusaders' wives had to look after their husbands' estates while they were away—and they often proved astute businesswomen. Thousands of men did not return.

Statue of a returning crusader and his wife



1229

Emperor Frederick II regained Jerusalem by making a treaty with the sultan of Egypt during the Sixth Crusade (1228–1229).

1248

Led by Louis IX of France, the Seventh Crusade (1248–1254) targeted Muslim Egypt again, but was another defeat.

1270

Louis IX of France (St. Louis) and his son John Tristan died of fever in Tunis, North Africa, during the short-lived Eighth Crusade (1270).

1291

Muslims seized the port of Acre, the last major crusader stronghold in the Middle East. Europeans lost interest and the Crusades ended.



相模五郎

一勇齋
國五郎

新中納言平知盛



一勇齋
國五郎



A 19th-century woodblock print showing Taira Tomomori and a drowned retainer (servant) at the bottom of the sea

Samurai battle

On March 24, 1185, two samurai (warrior) clans, the Taira and the Minamoto, fought a naval battle at Dan-no-Oura, on Japan's Inland Sea. The fighting lasted half a day, with fierce hand-to-hand combat. Rather than surrender, Taira Tomomori and other Taira leaders committed suicide by jumping into the sea—to this day, the crabs in the bay are said to hold the spirits of the drowned warriors. The Battle of Dan-no-Oura ended the five-year Genpei War. The victorious clan leader Minamoto Yoritomo took the title of shogun (ruler of Japan) in 1192.

“Then Hoichi [made his lute sound] like the straining of oars and the rushing of ships, the whirr and hissing of arrows, the shouting and trampling of men, the crashing of steel upon helmets.”

A minstrel, Hoichi, tells the story of the Battle of Dan-no-Oura in *The Tale of Heike*

1200 ▶ 1300

Mongol warriors
See pages 118–119

1206

Mongol warlord

Temujin, a chieftain from the steppes of Mongolia, succeeded in uniting all the Mongol tribes under his command. He took the name of Genghis Khan (“Universal Ruler”) before setting out on the first of his campaigns to conquer Asia.

1209

War on heretics

Pope Innocent III launched a crusade against the Albigensians—the name given to the Cathars of southern France who held religious views unacceptable to the Church. King Philip II of France used the Albigensian Crusade as a way to impose royal authority in the south. Thousands died in the savage persecution that followed.



Pope Innocent III

1215

Magna Carta

In England, a barons’ revolt forced King John to sign the Great Charter, or Magna Carta. An important document in the history of human rights, Magna Carta stated that the king was not above the law. In 1265, resistance to royal power also led to the first English parliament that included commoners as well as nobles.



King John’s seal

1200

1220

1240

1204

Crusader rampage

The Fourth Crusade never reached Jerusalem. Short of money, the crusaders diverted to Constantinople, where a claimant to the throne promised to pay them if they helped him take power. They sacked the city and set up a “Latin Empire.” The Byzantine Empire never fully recovered.

1212

Spanish reconquest

An army led by the kings of Aragon and Castile defeated a Muslim force at Las Navas de Tolosa. This marked a turning point in the struggle between Muslims and Christians in Spain. By 1248, most of Spain was in Christian hands.

1242

Battle of the Ice

Alexander Nevski, prince of Novgorod in Russia, defeated an army of Teutonic Knights (a German military order). The battle was fought on a frozen lake in what is now Estonia.



The crusaders attacking Constantinople

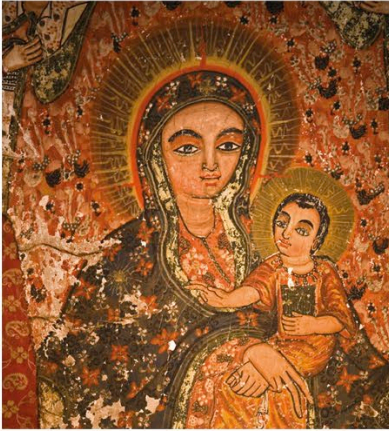
The Crusades
See pages 110–111

Rose window

This beautiful rose window of colored glass, one of three, is from Chartres Cathedral in France. The cathedral, constructed from 1194 to 1250, was built in the Gothic style that swept through Europe in the 13th century.



 **The Solomonids ruled Ethiopia for more than 700 years.**



A fresco in St. Mary's Church, Lalibela, built during Yekuno Amlak's reign

1271

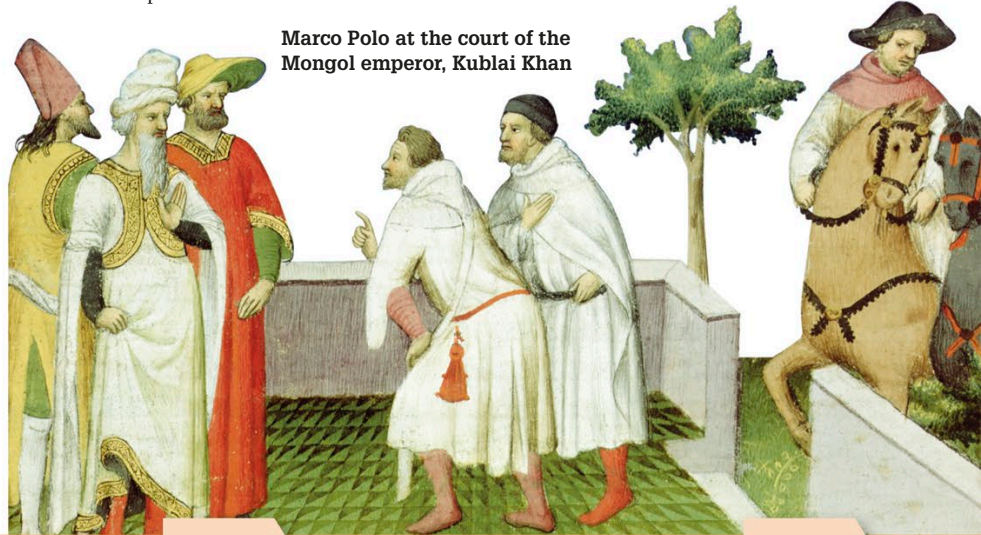
Traveler's tales

Marco Polo, a Venetian merchant, set out on a journey into Asia. He was away for 25 years. After his return, he wrote a memoir describing his adventures. His book opened up the unknown world of Asia to Europeans.

“I have not told half of what I saw.”

Attributed to Marco Polo

Marco Polo at the court of the Mongol emperor, Kublai Khan



1270

Heirs of Solomon

Yekuno Amlak became emperor of Ethiopia, restoring the Solomonid Dynasty of Aksum. The Solomonid kings claimed they were descended from the son of the biblical King Solomon and the Queen of Sheba.

1260

1280

1300

**1270–1450 GREAT ZIMBABWE**

Great Zimbabwe was the capital of a large empire in southern Africa, which had grown rich through its control of the trade in gold and ivory. The ruler and his entourage lived inside a walled palace called the Great Enclosure with walls up to 36 ft (11 m) high in places. The modern African country of Zimbabwe takes its name from this impressive site.



The outer wall of the Great Enclosure at Great Zimbabwe contains about 900,000 stone blocks.

Baker boy

Here, a master baker demonstrates how to cook bread. Though most apprentices were boys, girls were apprenticed as bakers as well as seamstresses (dressmakers) and cordwainers (shoemakers).



“I place [my son] for the purpose of learning the trade... to live at your house and to do work for you from the feast of Easter next for four continuous years, promising you... that my son does the said work and that he will be faithful and trustworthy.”

Apprenticeship agreement made in
Marseilles, France, c. 1250

CHILDREN IN HISTORY

Young apprentices

As towns in medieval Europe grew, trades developed to provide goods and services. This resulted in opportunities for children. Many became apprentices, gaining valuable training and experience in a profitable trade from a skilled master for a fixed period of time, usually five to ten years.

Placing a child

Parents were anxious to place children with a good master craftsman. Popular trades included goldsmiths, stonemasons, carpenters, vintners (wine merchants), and apothecaries (pharmacists). Most children were boys from age 10 to 15, and their parents paid a fee toward their care. The child was bound by law to work for his master during the apprenticeship.

Guild oaths

Every trade had a guild or association. Guilds controlled standards, set prices, protected their members, and also set the rules of apprenticeship. Apprentices had to take a ceremonial oath. This was a grand occasion, with guild officers dressed in liveries (robes) of velvet and fur. It was a daunting but very special moment for young apprentices.

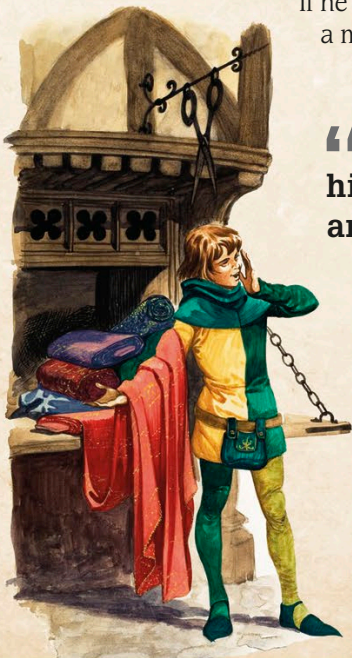
Apprentice life

Most apprentices formed close bonds with their master and his family. They lived in the master's home, ate with the family, and wore clothes supplied by the master. But they were primarily there to learn. Most of the day was spent in the workshop. Hard work was expected; otherwise, the master could release the apprentice and charge his family a fee.

Journeyman

At the end of the training, the apprentice became a journeyman ("dayworker"). He no longer lived in the master's household, and was free to travel around, making contacts and gaining experience.

If he saved enough money, he could become a master himself, running his own business.



Dick Whittington

The famous story of Dick Whittington is based on a real man. With no prospects of inheriting land, Richard Whittington (1354–1423) went to London and served an apprenticeship with a mercer (cloth trader). He was so successful that he became the Lord Mayor of London.



Workshops

On-the-job training took place in the master's workshop. Here, workers are busy in a goldsmith's workshop in Paris.

“And well and truly you shall serve your master for the terms of your apprenticeship. And ye shall be obedient under the wardens and to all the clothing [livery] of the fellowship.”

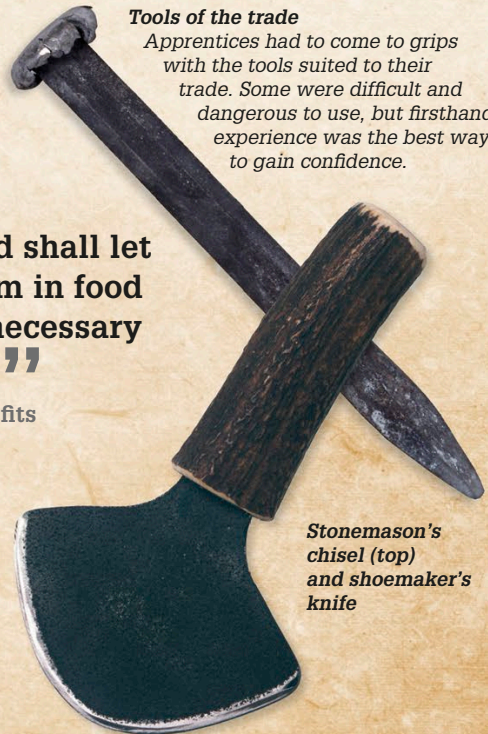
Guild oath of apprenticeship

Tools of the trade

Apprentices had to come to grips with the tools suited to their trade. Some were difficult and dangerous to use, but firsthand experience was the best way to gain confidence.

“[He] shall instruct and inform... and shall let him out reasonably and shall keep him in food and clothing, in shoes, and all other necessary things as other merchants do...”

Contract between a fletcher (someone who fits feathers to arrows) and his apprentice



Stonemason's chisel (top) and shoemaker's knife

Mongol warriors

In the 13th century, mounted Mongol warriors swept out of the steppes of northeastern Asia to terrorize the surrounding lands. Leading them was Genghis Khan, a soldier of genius who united the warring Mongol tribes and turned them into one of the most formidable fighting machines the world has ever known. It took the Mongols barely 50 years to conquer a vast land empire stretching from the Pacific Ocean to Eastern Europe.



Siege warfare

Here, Genghis Khan lays siege to a Chinese town. The Mongols learned siege warfare from the Chinese. They attacked fortified cities with siege machines and used giant catapults to hurl firebombs, flammable liquids, or dead animals over battlements.



Twin daggers

Ivory handle

Warrior weaponry

Mongol warriors carried a bow and arrows, battle-ax, curved sword, and lance. These finely crafted daggers (above) belonged to an elite warrior.



Key events

1206

Courageous leader Temujin was proclaimed Genghis Khan ("Universal Ruler") after uniting the Mongol tribes.

1215

Genghis Khan led an army to besiege and capture the Jin capital of Yanjing (Beijing) in northern China.

Mace used by a warrior of high status



1219

Genghis Khan invaded Persia and overthrew the Kharezmid Empire in a campaign notable for its great savagery.

1241

The Mongols destroyed a Hungarian army at the Battle of Liegnitz (Legnica in modern-day Poland).



The khanates

After Genghis Khan's death, the empire was divided into khanates (territories) among his sons. The khan (ruler) of each was subject to the Great Khan, but the western khanates soon broke away.

- ★ Khanate of Kipchak (Golden Horde)—Russia
- ★ Khanate of Chagatai—Central Asia
- ★ Khanate of Ilkhan—Persia
- ★ Khanate of the Great Khan—Eastern steppes and China

A map showing the capital of the Great Khan at Dadu (Beijing)

The Great Khans

Ögedai Khan

The third son of Genghis Khan was the second Great Khan of the Mongol Empire, succeeding his famous father. He reigned from 1229 to 1241, and continued the expansion of the empire in the east.

Güyük Khan

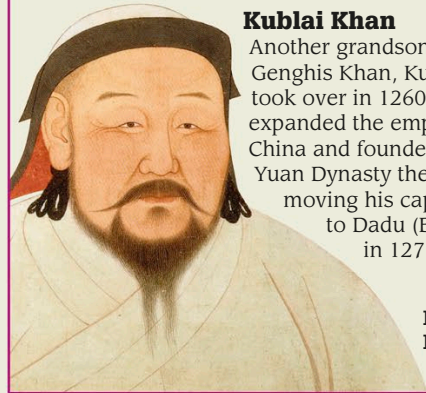
Eldest son of Ögedai, Güyük ruled only briefly, from 1246 to 1248. His enthronement at Karakorum in Mongolia angered his cousin Batu, who had conquered Russia and wanted to be elected as Great Khan.

Möngke Khan

Grandson of Genghis, Möngke was the last Great Khan to base his capital at Karakorum. During his reign (1251–1259), he conquered Iraq and Syria.

Kublai Khan

Another grandson of Genghis Khan, Kublai took over in 1260. He expanded the empire in China and founded the Yuan Dynasty there, moving his capital to Dadu (Beijing) in 1271.



Kublai Khan

“It is easy to conquer the world from the back of a horse.”

Saying attributed to Genghis Khan

Fearless fighter

Mongol cavalymen adopted hit-and-run combat tactics, swooping in to fire multiple arrows at the enemy from the safety of the saddle. Another favorite trick was to pretend to retreat and then ambush an opponent in hot pursuit.



Life on the move

The Mongols were nomadic herdsmen and traders, moving from place to place with their herds of horses, camels, sheep, and goats. They lived in *gers* or *yurts*, circular felt tents that could be erected and dismantled quickly. Genghis Khan ruled from a *ger* that was 30 ft (9 m) wide and richly hung with silks.

1258

The Mongols killed more than 200,000 prisoners during their siege and capture of the Abbasid capital, Baghdad.

1260

A Mamluk Muslim army defeated the Mongols at the Battle of Ain Jalut in the Jezreel Valley of modern-day Israel.

1271

Kublai Khan proclaimed himself emperor of all of China when he adopted the Chinese dynastic title of Yuan.

1281

Kublai Khan was prevented from invading Japan by a *kamikaze* (“divine wind”) that destroyed his fleet.

Mongol bow





The Black Death, which originated in China, killed 73 million people in Asia.

1347

The Black Death

An epidemic of bubonic plague raged throughout Europe, killing 45 percent of the population in four years. Victims suffered terrible swellings and internal bleeding. People thought God had sent the plague as a punishment and did all they could to seek his forgiveness.

1314

Victorious Scots

Robert the Bruce, king of Scotland, defeated the army of King Edward II of England at the Battle of Bannockburn. His victory put an end to English attempts to rule Scotland. One story tells how Robert, at an all-time low, took inspiration from a spider. Watching it spin its web, he realized that with perseverance he could succeed, too.

A procession of penitents asking for God's forgiveness



▶▶ **1300**

1320

1340

1324

Gunfire!

Knowledge of gunpowder had reached Europe from China via the Mongols and Arabs, and cannons were used for the first time in Europe at the Siege of Metz (now in eastern France). The coming of gunpowder would change the face of warfare.

1346

Longbow victory

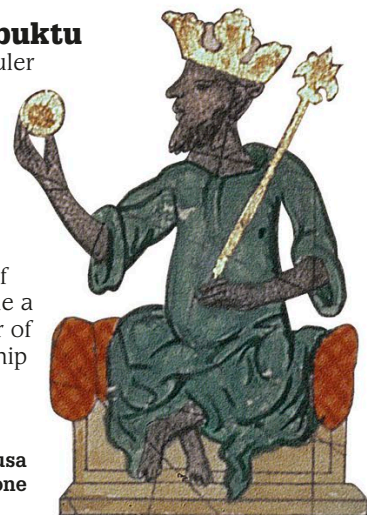
The Hundred Years' War between England and France had broken out in 1337. King Edward III invaded France to pursue his claim to the French throne. He won a great victory at the Battle of Crécy, thanks to the deadly accuracy of the Welsh and English longbows.



1325

Fabled Timbuktu

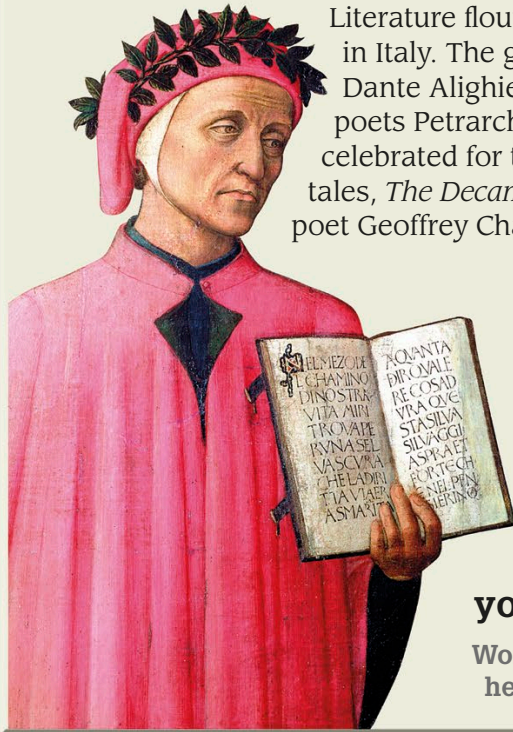
Mansa Musa I, ruler of the gold-rich Mali Empire of West Africa, made the pilgrimage to Mecca. Under Mansa Musa, the Malian city of Timbuktu became a renowned center of Islamic scholarship and culture.



Mansa Musa on his throne

1300–1400

AN AGE OF LITERATURE



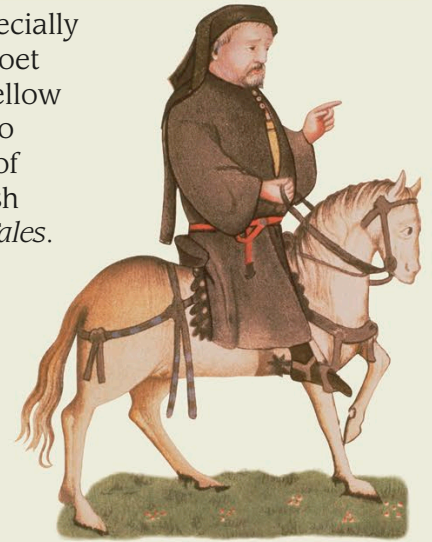
Literature flourished in 14th-century Europe, especially in Italy. The greatest writer of the age was the poet Dante Alighieri, author of *The Divine Comedy*. Fellow poets Petrarch and Giovanni Boccaccio were also celebrated for their verse. Boccaccio's collection of tales, *The Decameron*, greatly influenced the English poet Geoffrey Chaucer, who wrote *The Canterbury Tales*.

Dante's epic poem

Dante holds a copy of *The Divine Comedy*, which he wrote between 1307 and 1321. The poem describes a visionary journey through hell, purgatory (the "in-between" place where dead sinners try to make amends), and heaven.

**“Abandon all hope,
you who enter here.”**

Words written above the gate of
hell in Dante's *Divine Comedy*

**Pilgrim stories**

In *The Canterbury Tales*, Chaucer related the stories told by a group of pilgrims as he traveled with them to the shrine of Thomas Becket at Canterbury.

1360

1368

The brilliant Ming

Peasant-born general Zhu Yuanzhang overthrew the unpopular Mongol Yuan Dynasty to proclaim himself emperor. He founded the Ming Dynasty (1368–1644). *Ming* means “brilliant” in Chinese.

Palace of the Popes

In 1309, Pope Clement V, a Frenchman, moved the papal court from Rome to Avignon, southern France. Seven popes lived in the Palace of the Popes in Avignon until 1378.

1380



Sultan Murad, who died
at the Battle of Kosovo

1389

Battle of Kosovo

The Ottoman Turks defeated the Serbs at the Battle of Kosovo, although Sultan Murad I died in the fighting, as did the Serbian commander Prince Lazar. In less than a century, the Ottomans had expanded out of Anatolia to control most of the Balkans south of the Danube River.

**Ottoman
Empire**
See pages
144–145



1415, FRANCE



Battle of Agincourt

On October 25, 1415, during the Hundred Years' War, an English army led by King Henry V met a much larger French army outside the village of Agincourt in northern France. As the French knights charged, English and Welsh archers rained arrows down on them. The French knights fell on top of each other on the muddy ground and were slaughtered by the English. Following his great victory, Henry went on to conquer Normandy. In 1420, he married Catherine of Valois, the daughter of Charles VI of France, who named Henry as his heir. Henry died in 1422, leaving a baby son. The Hundred Years' War continued for another 20 years.



Trapped in their heavy armor, the French knights floundered in the mud.

“The English... throwing down their bows, fought lustily with swords, hatchets, mallets, and billhooks, slaying all before them.”

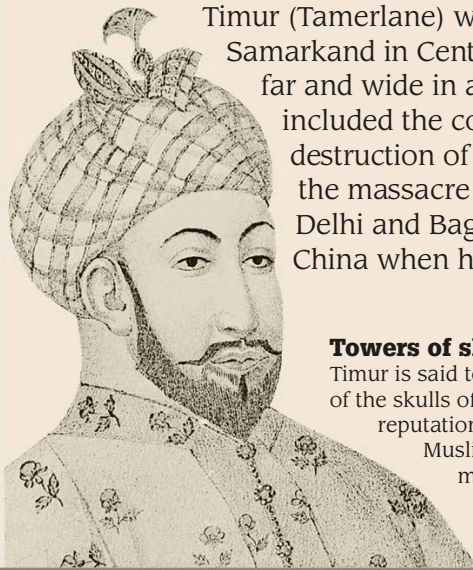
French historian Enguerrand de Monstrelet's *Chronicle*, c. 1450

1400 ▶ 1450



Zheng He's fleet contained 250 ships and 28,000 men.

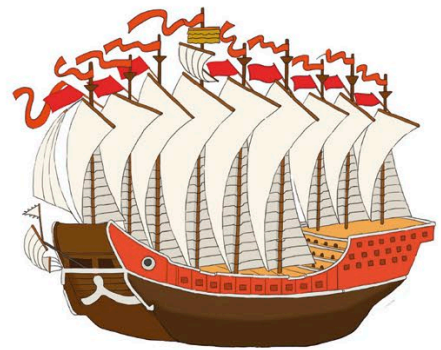
1370–1405 **TIMUR THE LAME**



Timur (Tamerlane) was a war leader from Samarkand in Central Asia. He spread terror far and wide in a 20-year career that included the conquest of Persia, the near-destruction of the Ottoman Empire, and the massacre of thousands of people in Delhi and Baghdad. He was heading for China when he died in 1405.

Towers of skulls

Timur is said to have made huge pyramids of the skulls of his victims, but despite his reputation for cruelty, he was a devout Muslim. He built many beautiful mosques and other buildings in his capital, Samarkand.



One of Zheng He's ships

1422

Chinese explorer

Zheng He, a Chinese admiral, brought back giraffes from East Africa as a gift for the Ming emperor. Between 1405 and 1433, he made seven expeditions with his huge fleet of treasure ships and may have visited up to 30 countries.

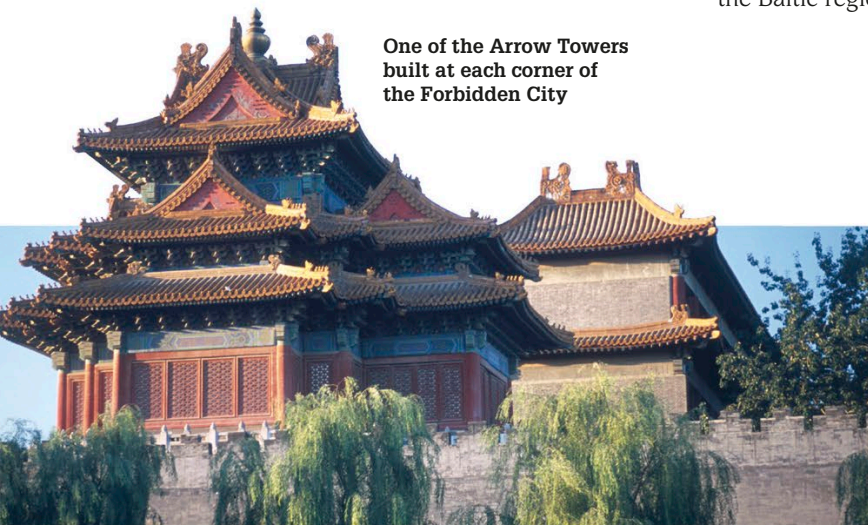


1400

1406

The Forbidden City

The Yongle Ming emperor began building the Forbidden City in Beijing, a huge complex of nearly 1,000 buildings to house the imperial court. Enclosed by a moat and a high defensive wall, it was called the "Forbidden City" because only the emperor, his court, and servants were allowed to enter it without permission.



One of the Arrow Towers built at each corner of the Forbidden City

1410

1410

Pitched battle

The Battle of Tannenberg was one of the largest cavalry battles of the Middle Ages. A huge army led by King Ladislaus Jagiello II of Poland and Lithuania defeated the Teutonic Knights, a religious order of knights that controlled the Baltic region.

1420

1415–1453

By 1415, the war that England and France had been fighting on and off since 1337 had all but ceased. Then, England's King Henry V decided to start it again. He invaded France and won a spectacular victory at

the Battle of Agincourt.



War maker

King Henry V reasserted the English claim to the French crown.

“I have been sent by God and his angels, and I shall drive you from our land of France.”

Joan of Arc's challenge to the English



Joan in her battle armor

1431

French heroine

Joan of Arc, a young peasant girl, persuaded the dauphin (son of the French king) to fight back against the English. She was captured and tried for heresy for claiming the saints spoke to her. Found guilty, she was burned at the stake.

Age of Exploration
See pages 136–137

1434

African voyages

Sponsored by Prince Henry the Navigator, who set up a school of navigation, Portuguese sailor Gil Eanes rounded Cape Bojador, a dangerous reef off West Africa that had challenged sailors before that time. The Portuguese developed a sturdy type of vessel, the caravel, for long ocean voyages.

1430

THE HUNDRED YEARS' WAR



The end of the war

Here, the French army besieges English-held Cherbourg. After Henry V's death in 1422, an English army occupied northern France. Joan of Arc rallied French resistance, and the English were expelled in 1453.

1440

1438

Inca ruler

High in the Andes of Peru, Pachacutec became the ruler of the Incas. He set about creating a great military empire that stretched for 2,500 miles (4,000 km) from Ecuador to central Chile.

1446

Korean alphabet

Hangul, an alphabet with 14 basic consonants and 10 basic vowels, was introduced to Korea on the orders of King Sejong.

Aztec knife

The warlike Aztecs had risen to power in central Mexico. They cut out the hearts of their sacrificial victims with knives like this one, made from obsidian, a very hard stone.

Aztecs and Incas
See pages 126–127



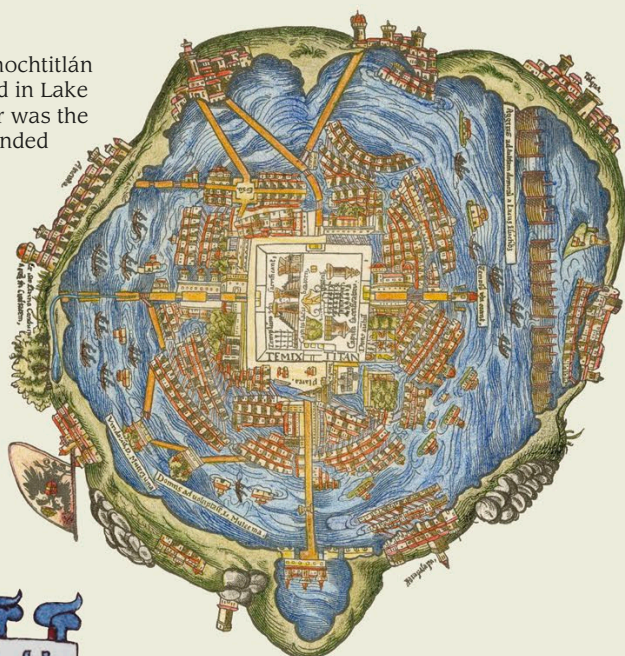
1450

Aztecs and Incas

The Aztecs and Incas were the last great civilizations of ancient America. Settling in the Valley of Mexico, the Aztecs developed a vast empire by waging war on neighboring lands. High in the Andes Mountains, the Incas forged their own empire, stretching from Ecuador to Chile. Both peoples were skilled and inventive, and both empires were overthrown by Spanish conquerors in the 1500s.

Tenochtitlán

The Aztec capital Tenochtitlán was built on an island in Lake Texcoco. At its center was the Great Temple, surrounded by palaces, warrior schools, and shrines. Beyond the city were *chinampas*—little floating farms.



A 16th-century map of Tenochtitlán, which now lies beneath Mexico City



The bloodstained Aztec temple at Tenochtitlán

Sacred sacrifices

Human and animal sacrifice was a religious ritual for both the Aztecs and the Incas. Priests performed sacrificial ceremonies in temples or on mountaintops, during festivals or in times of trouble.

“We beheld... cities and towns on the water... it was like the things of enchantment.”

Conquistador Bernal Diaz de Castillo describes entering the Aztec capital in 1519

Eagle warrior

For the Aztecs, the eagle symbolized bravery. This life-size sculpture depicts an elite eagle warrior. Aztec society depended on brave warriors serving the gods.



Key events

1325

According to legend, the Aztecs founded Tenochtitlán at the spot where an eagle on a cactus was wrestling a snake in its beak.

1428

The Aztec Empire expanded during the 12-year reign of the fourth emperor, Itzcoatl. His nephew Moctzeturma I took power after his death.



Aztec symbol for the Alligator day of the month

1438

Under Pachacutec, the ninth Inca leader of the kingdom of Cusco, the Inca Empire began to expand.

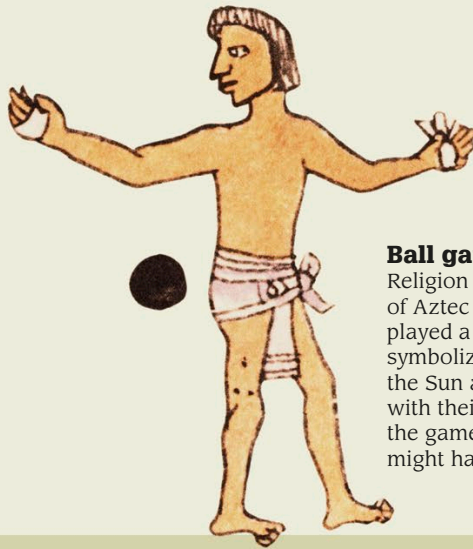
1470

The Inca ruler Tupac Inca Yupanqui conquered the great city-state of Chimú (now Trujillo, Peru).



Inca gold

Andean peoples were skilled metalworkers. They prized gold most, believing it to be the sweat of the gods. This golden mummy mask was made by a Chimú craftsman. After the fall of the Chimú Empire, the Incas took Chimú metalworkers back to their capital, Cusco.



Ball games

Religion influenced every area of Aztec life, even sports. The Aztecs played a ball game in which the court symbolized the world and the ball was the Sun and Moon. Players hit the ball with their hips. Bets were placed on the game and some losing teams might have been sacrificed.


Farming and food


Many foods enjoyed all over the world today were first cultivated by the ancestors of the Aztecs and the Incas in Central and South America:





- ★ Corn
- ★ Potatoes
- ★ Tomatoes
- ★ Quinoa (a grain)
- ★ Cocoa / chocolate
- ★ Squashes
- ★ Chili peppers


The Inca Empire

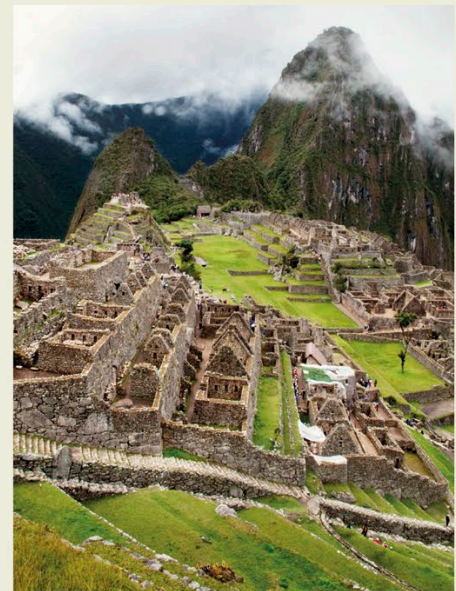
 The Inca Empire was linked by more than 12,500 miles (20,000 km) of roads, many of them paved.

 To cross steep mountain gorges, the Incas built suspension bridges of woven reeds.

 Foot runners carried messages from place to place using *quipu*—bundles of dyed and knotted wool and cotton threads. The lengths of thread and the positions of the knots were used to record and pass on information.

 The Incas did not have wheeled transportation. They moved heavy goods on the backs of llamas and alpacas.

 The Incas built rest houses at regular intervals, where travelers could spend the night and cook a meal.



Inca ruins at Machu Picchu, Peru

1502

Moctezuma II, the last ruler of the Aztecs, began his reign. At this time, the Aztec Empire was at its most powerful.



Aztec symbol for the Rain day of the month

1519

Led by Hernán Cortés, the Spanish army landed on the east coast of Mexico. It defeated the Aztecs two years later.

1525

Civil war broke out for five years as brothers Huáscar and Atahualpa fought for the Inca Empire, which was left weakened.

1532

Spanish conquistador Francisco Pizarro invaded Peru with an army of 180 men. He captured and killed the Inca emperor, Atahualpa.





1450–1750

Exploring and reforming

From 1450 to 1750, the world became a smaller place as explorers opened up sea routes and mapped new lands. Wealth from the New World, coupled with the profitable trade in spices, made Europeans rich, but religious upheaval divided the continent. As empires grew, so did the conflicts between them. Powerful Muslim states emerged in Asia, but China remained the world's largest empire. The dawning of the Renaissance period in Europe brought education and art to the forefront as established ideas were challenged.

1450 ▶ 1475



Constantinople falls to Mehmed II.



1453

Fall of Constantinople

The 1,000-year-old Byzantine Empire, the Christian empire first established by the Romans, ended when the cannons of Sultan Mehmed II, the Ottoman ruler, blasted through the walls of the capital, Constantinople.

Ottoman Empire
See pages
142–143

1456

Prince Dracula

Vlad III, known to history as “the Impaler,” became the prince of Wallachia (part of modern-day Romania). He owed his nickname to his habit of impaling his enemies on sharpened stakes—the origin of the legend of Dracula.

▶▶ 1450

1455

1460

1450

City of Victory

Vijayanagara (“city of victory”) was the capital of a Hindu kingdom that ruled all of southern India. Its population of around 500,000 was double that of any European city at the time. A Persian visitor wrote, “It had no equal in the world.”



Virupaksha Temple, in the city of Vijayanagara, was dedicated to the Hindu god Shiva.

1455 THE PRINTING PRESS

German inventor Johannes Gutenberg printed the first book in Europe in 1455 on a press using movable type (metal letters that could be used again and again). His invention opened up the world of learning as more people than ever before had access to books, many of them in local languages, as well as Latin and Greek.



Demonstrating the press

Although Gutenberg (above) was the first European to use movable type, the Chinese had invented a similar process in the 11th century.



Gutenberg's Bible

The first book produced by Gutenberg was a Latin translation of the Bible. About 185 copies were printed. Before printing, books were copied by hand, which was costly and time-consuming.

1469 UNITED SPAIN

In 1469, Isabella, heir to the kingdom of Castile, married Ferdinand, heir to the kingdom of Aragon. They would rule their Spanish kingdoms as joint monarchs, bringing stability to both after years of civil war. Isabella died in 1504 and Ferdinand in 1516. Their marriage led to a united Spain from 1516 onward.



Catholic monarchs

Both Isabella and Ferdinand were very devout Christians. The Pope gave Isabella and Ferdinand the title of the "Catholic Monarchs" in 1496.

Spanish kingdoms

Castile was the larger of the two realms, but Aragon had an extensive overseas empire. Their joint armies would take Granada, the last Muslim state, in 1492, and fully conquer Navarre in 1515.



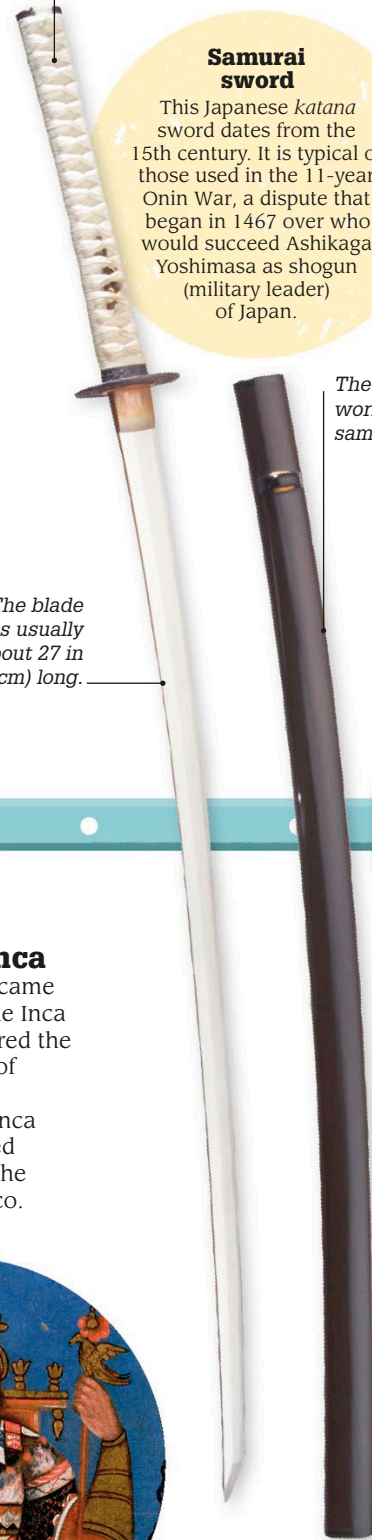
The long grip allowed the sword to be held by both hands.

Samurai sword

This Japanese *katana* sword dates from the 15th century. It is typical of those used in the 11-year Onin War, a dispute that began in 1467 over who would succeed Ashikaga Yoshimasa as shogun (military leader) of Japan.

The scabbard was worn outside the samurai's armor.

The blade was usually about 27 in (70 cm) long.



1465

1465

African empire

Sunni Ali, ruler of Songhai in west Africa, set about creating the largest empire that Africa had ever seen. He raided deep into Mali and captured the city of Timbuktu to take control of the trans-Saharan trade in gold and salt.

The tomb of Sunni Ali's successor, Askia Muhammad I, in Gao, Mali



1469

Wealthy patron

Lorenzo de' Medici, known as the Magnificent, took charge of the Italian city of Florence. He used his vast wealth, gained through the Medici family's control of banking, to make Florence the undisputed capital of the Renaissance world.



1470

1471

Conquering Inca

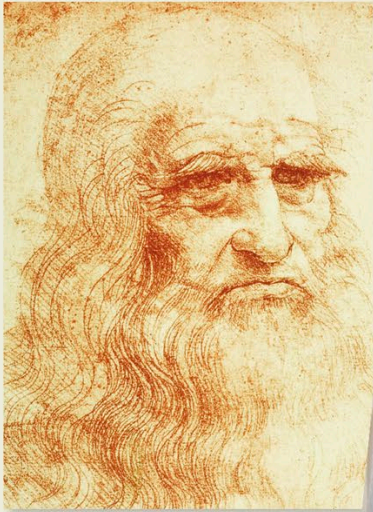
Tupac Yupanqui became the tenth ruler of the Inca Empire. He conquered the Peruvian kingdom of Chimor, the largest remaining rival to Inca power, and deported its goldworkers to the Inca capital of Cuzco.



1475

The Renaissance

In the early 1400s, artists and architects in Italy began working in styles that were inspired by those of the ancient Greeks and Romans. They were part of a cultural movement called the Renaissance, meaning “rebirth,” that was influenced by the rediscovery of classical culture, and that sparked a new interest in politics, philosophy, and science.



Renaissance man

Leonardo da Vinci, the most famous artist of the Renaissance, drew this self-portrait when he was about 60. He was also an inventor, scientist, and engineer. His notebooks—more than 13,000 pages in total—are full of studies of the human body and ideas for inventions. He wrote his most personal notes in mirror writing—reversed writing that appears the right way around when reflected in a mirror.



A page from one of da Vinci's notebooks

“The artist sees what others only catch a glimpse of.”

Leonardo da Vinci

Art out of stone

This masterpiece of sculpture, the *Pietà*, shows the body of Jesus being cradled by Mary, his mother. The sculptor, Michelangelo Buonarroti, once said that every block of stone has a statue in it, and it is the sculptor's task to discover it. Michelangelo designed much of St. Peter's Basilica in Rome, where this statue stands today.

Michelangelo's *Pietà*



Key events

1415

Architect Filippo Brunelleschi discovered that drawing lines coming together at a single point (converging) creates linear perspective, making things look as if they are far away.

1486

Florentine artist Sandro Botticelli painted *The Birth of Venus* as a commission for the Medici family.

1498

Leonardo da Vinci painted the mural of *The Last Supper* for a convent in Milan.

1503

After becoming Pope, Julius II attracted artists like Michelangelo and Raphael to Rome.



Pope Julius II

Renaissance gallery



Cosimo de' Medici
 Founder of the powerful Medici Dynasty in Florence, Cosimo was a key figure in the early Renaissance through his support of artists such as Fra Angelico and Donatello.



Desiderius Erasmus
 A Dutchman, Erasmus was an influential scholar and writer. His critical studies of Greek and Roman writers inspired the revival of learning in northern Europe.



Niccolò Machiavelli
 The name of this Florentine diplomat has become a word, *machiavellian*, that describes ruthless political cunning because of his book *The Prince*, a guide for Renaissance rulers.



Northern Renaissance

The Renaissance also flourished in northern Europe, particularly in the wealthy, wool-trading regions of Flanders and the Low Countries. *The Arnolfini Wedding* (above) by Belgian artist Jan van Eyck is a classic painting of the Northern Renaissance.

Architectural revolution

The dome of the Florence Cathedral, designed by Filippo Brunelleschi and completed in 1436, dominates the city. Brunelleschi made use of various techniques, including a special pattern of bricks that spread the weight, to make the first self-supported dome built in western Europe since Roman times. It is a triumph of Renaissance engineering and remains the largest brick dome in the world.



1504

Michelangelo's statue *David* was put on display outside the Palazzo Vecchio in Florence.



Michelangelo's *David*

1506

Leonardo da Vinci completed his most famous painting, the *Mona Lisa*.

1509

The scholar Erasmus published *In Praise of Folly*, a work of satire that was his best-known book.

1543

Doctor Andreas Vesalius published the first textbook of the human body, a major work of human anatomy and scientific investigation.

1475 ▶ 1500

1480

Rise of Russia

Ivan III, Grand Duke of Muscovy, refused to pay the annual tribute demanded by the Khan of the Golden Horde—the descendants of the Mongols. His actions laid the foundations of the Russian state.

1477

Land grab

The French crown seized hold of the Duchy of Burgundy after the death of its last duke, Charles the Bold. Burgundy's rich possessions—modern-day Belgium and the Netherlands—passed by marriage to the Hapsburg rulers of Austria.



The furious Khan is dragged away as Ivan III tears up his demand

“A horse, a horse, my kingdom for a horse.”

Richard III's dying words, according to Shakespeare

1485

Tudors on top

Henry Tudor defeated and killed King Richard III of England to become King Henry VII, the first monarch of the Tudor Dynasty. His victory marked the end of the War of the Roses, fought between rival groups of English nobles.



1475

1480

1485

1478–1492 CATHOLIC SPAIN

Ferdinand and Isabella set about unifying Spain by strengthening the power and position of the Catholic Church. In 1478, they introduced the Inquisition to root out heresy (ideas contrary to the Catholic faith). In 1492, their armies conquered Granada, the last Muslim kingdom in Spain. That same year, they ordered all Jews who refused to convert to Catholicism to leave Spain forever.

Burning of books

Tomás de Torquemada (right) was the infamous head of the Inquisition. He ordered the burning of books considered to be heretical, including the Jewish Talmud (sacred writings) and thousands of Arabic manuscripts.



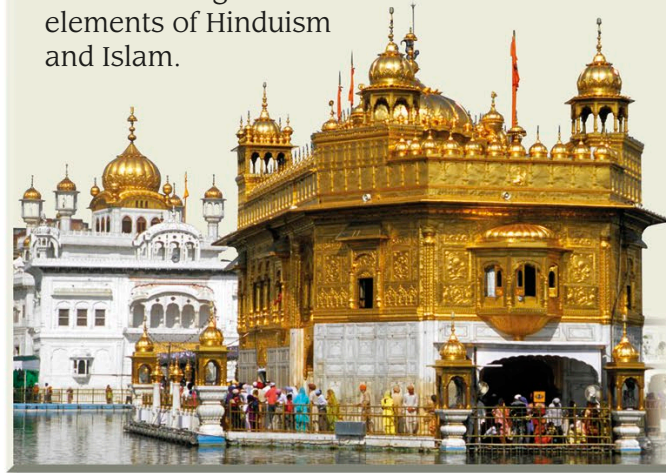
The Inquisition

The Inquisition was a royal court tasked with discovering heretics, particularly Jews and Muslims who falsely claimed to be Christian *conversos* (converts). It relied on informers and used torture (as pictured above) to extract confessions.

THE BIRTH OF THE SIKH RELIGION

Guru Nanak (1469–1539), born in modern-day Pakistan, founded the Sikh religion after meeting and debating with religious leaders in India, Tibet, and Arabia. Sikhs believe in one God, and their religion blends elements of Hinduism and Islam.

Holy teachers
Sikhs believe Guru Nanak (right) was the first of eleven gurus, or teachers. The eleventh is the Sikh scriptures, known as Guru Granth Sahib, which were completed in 1604.



Golden Temple

The holy scriptures are housed in the Harmandir Sahib, more popularly known as the Golden Temple (left). It is the Sikhs' holy temple at Amritsar in the Indian state of Punjab.



Black pepper was abundant in south India.

Nutmeg was traded in Indonesia.

Cloves came from Indonesia.

1498

Spice route

Portuguese navigator Vasco da Gama used the winds of the south Atlantic Ocean to aid his journey from Europe to the Indian Ocean, and on to the riches and spices of Asia—the goal of European explorers.

1490

1495

1500

1492

Atlantic crossing

Christopher Columbus sailed west from Spain across the Atlantic, looking for a route to Asia. Instead, he landed in the Bahamas, a place he named San Salvador.



Columbus made four voyages to the Americas between 1492 and 1503.

1494

Treaty of Tordesillas

Pope Alexander VI signed the Treaty of Tordesillas, which drew an imaginary line down the middle of the Atlantic Ocean and over modern-day Brazil. Land already or yet to be discovered to the west of the line belonged to Spain, and land to the east of it belonged to Portugal.

1497

Religious tyrant

Italian monk Girolamo Savonarola thought the citizens of Florence had grown greedy and sinful. To seek God's forgiveness, he persuaded them to make a great pile of all their valuables in the city's main square and set fire to them—the event came to be known as the "Bonfire of the Vanities."

1368–1644 THE GREAT WALL OF CHINA

The Great Wall of China, begun in 221 BCE, took on its present form under the Ming emperors, who ruled China from 1368 to 1644. They repaired and extended the fortifications to protect their northern border.



Age of Exploration

The European Age of Exploration began when Portuguese sailors started venturing out into the Atlantic and down the coast of Africa in the early 1400s, searching for a direct sea route to Asia—the source of spices and precious stones. Christopher Columbus was also looking for Asia when he sailed west across the Atlantic in 1492 and accidentally discovered the Americas, opening up new prospects for conquest, trade, and colonization.

Great explorers

Henry the Navigator

This royal prince spurred the discoveries by sending Portuguese ships to explore Africa's west coast.



Christopher Columbus

Although born in Italy, Columbus explored for Spain. He made four voyages to the Americas from 1492 to 1504.



Ferdinand Magellan

This Portuguese captain sailed from the Atlantic to the Pacific but died before completing the voyage around the world.



Jacques Cartier

This French navigator explored the St. Lawrence River in Canada and claimed the country for France.



“I and my companions suffer from a disease of the heart which can be cured only by gold.”

Hernán Cortés, 1519



The conquistadors

In the 50 years after Columbus's discovery of America, Spanish conquistadors (soldiers and adventurers) destroyed the civilizations of ancient America in their quest to find gold and make Christian converts. Seen here is Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés greeting Moctezuma II, the Aztec ruler of Mexico whose lands he would seize and conquer.

Seeing the world

This map shows the sea routes taken by some of the early pioneers of exploration.

-  **Christopher Columbus**
Reached the Bahamas on the first of four expeditions.
-  **Vasco da Gama**
Da Gama was the first to round Africa en route to India.
-  **John Cabot**
Crossed the North Atlantic from Bristol, England, to Newfoundland.
-  **Pedro Alvares Cabral**
Discovered Brazil on his way to India and claimed it for Portugal.
-  **Ferdinand Magellan and Juan del Cano**
Magellan's circumnavigation was completed by Juan del Cano.
-  **Jacques Cartier**
Discovered the Gulf of St. Lawrence on his first expedition.



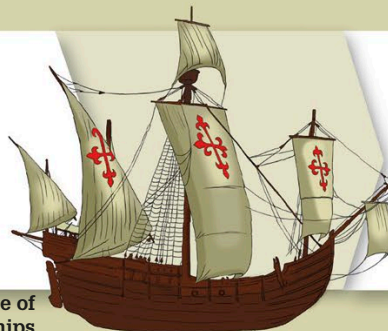
Key events

1488

Portuguese navigator Bartolomeu Dias rounded the Cape of Good Hope in southern Africa to reach the Indian Ocean.

1492

Christopher Columbus sailed west from Spain and discovered the Americas.



One of Columbus's ships

1498

Vasco da Gama crossed the Indian Ocean to Calicut on the Malabar coast of India.

1500

Pedro Alvares Cabral discovered Brazil while sailing to India.



Amerigo's land

The Italian navigator Amerigo Vespucci was the Chief Royal Pilot of Spain. This meant that all sea captains in Spanish service had to report to him with details of their journeys. Vespucci used the information to create maps of the New World and so sailors referred to the territory as "Amerigo's land," or America.

Give and take

The meeting between the Old World of Europe and the New World of the Americas changed both, with good and bad effects.



Taken to the New World

- ★ **Diseases** Smallpox, influenza, measles, chickenpox, typhus.
- ★ **African slaves** Up to 12 million slaves transported between 1500 and 1880.
- ★ **Technology** Wheeled transportation, weapons and tools of iron and steel, guns.
- ★ **Languages and religion** Spanish, Portuguese, French, and English; Christianity.
- ★ **Animals** Horses, cattle, sheep, pigs, chickens, brown rats.
- ★ **Food** Sugarcane, yams, bananas, rice, wheat, oats, barley, onions.

Taken from the New World

- ★ **Gold and silver** Shipped back in vast quantities.
- ★ **Food** Corn, potatoes, sweet potatoes, squash, tomatoes, bell and chili peppers, pineapples, peanuts, chocolate.
- ★ **Animals** Turkeys, guinea pigs, Muscovy ducks.



1507

The name *America* appeared for the first time on a world map made by German mapmaker Martin Waldseemüller.

1512

The Portuguese reached the Spice Islands (present-day Maluku Islands) of Indonesia.

1522

Magellan rounded Cape Horn to enter the Pacific Ocean from the Atlantic.

1535

Jacques Cartier sailed down the St. Lawrence River as far as present-day Montreal.

1580

Francis Drake completed his three-year circumnavigation of the world.

1500 ▶ 1525

1500

Brazil on the map

Pedro Alvarez Cabral, a Portuguese navigator, discovered the coast of Brazil by accident on his way to India. Sailing down the coast of Africa, he ventured out into the Atlantic to take advantage of favorable winds. Striking land, he claimed it for Portugal.

Cabral landing at Brazil's Bay of Porto Jeguro



The ceiling of the Sistine Chapel

1508

Sistine Chapel

Italian artist Michelangelo began work on painting the ceiling of the Sistine Chapel in Rome (above) for Pope Julius II. It took him four years to complete the masterpiece of Renaissance art, which included more than 400 life-size figures.

The Renaissance
See pages
132-133

▶▶ 1500

1505

1510

1501

Rise of the Safavids

In Iran, Ismail I proclaimed himself Shah (king) and went on to conquer Iraq until halted by the Ottomans at the battle of Chaldiran in 1514. The Safavid Dynasty he founded ruled Iran until 1722.



Ottoman and Safavid forces clash at Chaldiran.

1517-1529

THE REFORMATION

The Reformation was a religious revolt against the Catholic Church. It began in Germany when Martin Luther, a monk and university professor, demanded an end to corruption in the Church. As his ideas for reform spread, they were met with growing hostility from the Pope and the Holy Roman Emperor Charles V, a staunch Catholic. It led to a violent and lasting split in European Christianity between Protestants and Roman Catholics.



Public protest

In 1517, Luther nailed 95 Theses (statements) protesting against the Church to the door of a church in Wittenberg. In 1521, he appeared before Charles V at an imperial court (the Diet of Worms) and was found guilty of heresy, and excommunicated from the church.

1519–1522 SAILING AROUND THE WORLD

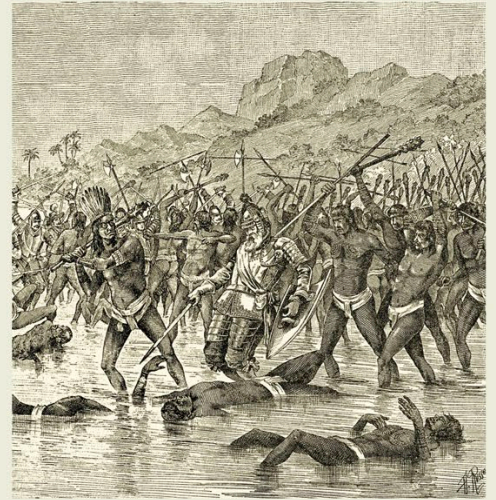
In 1519, Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese captain sailing under the Spanish flag, set off to find a route to the Spice Islands in the Pacific by heading west. In November 1520, he sailed around the tip of South America and entered the Pacific Ocean.



Seaworthy ships

Magellan had a crew of 270. His flagship, the *Trinidad*, was a sturdily built caravel. The other four ships were large merchant ships, called carracks, which had space to carry provisions for a long voyage.

Portugese caravel



Magellan's death

In April 1521, Magellan was killed in a fight with islanders in the Philippines. Sixteen months later, just one of his ships made it back to Spain. The 18 survivors on board had sailed all the way around the world.

1515

1520

1525



Luther's room in Wartburg Castle

Bible study

After the Diet of Worms, Luther went into hiding. He lived in secret for a year in the castle of Wartburg. Here, he brought the Bible to many by translating the New Testament into German.

Reformation spreads

As the Reformation spread through northern Europe, it moved in new directions. Ulrich Zwingli (right) was an influential

Swiss reformer who shared most, but not all, of Luther's beliefs. Zwingli was killed in battle by Swiss Catholics in 1531.



1519

Holy Roman Emperor

After the death of his grandfather, Charles I of Spain was elected Holy Roman Emperor—ruler of an empire of states centered around modern-day Germany. He was just 19, and took the name Charles V.

1519

Spanish conquest

Hernán Cortés, a Spanish soldier, landed in Mexico with 600 men. They were welcomed into the capital, Tenochtitlán, by the Aztec ruler Moctezuma II, but Cortés took him prisoner and in 1522 destroyed the city.

Moctezuma's feather headdress



1525 ▶ 1550



1526

Babur the Tiger

Babur, who claimed descent from the Mongol warlord Genghis Khan, conquered most of northern India. He was the founder of the Mughal dynasty of Indian emperors. His name means "tiger" in Arabic.

1527

The sack of Rome

The troops of the Holy Roman Emperor, Charles V, had not been paid for months. They went on a rampage in Rome, plundering its palaces and churches. The Pope was forced to flee the Vatican through a secret passage.

1532–1533

SPANISH CONQUER PERU

A Spanish army of 188 men led by Francisco Pizarro landed in Peru in 1532. It took them less than a year to conquer the Inca Empire of 5 million people. The stone weapons and padded cotton armor used by the Inca were no match for European guns and steel swords.



Francisco Pizarro

Spanish conquistador (soldier) Francisco Pizarro first set out to find the Inca civilization in 1524. Afterwards, he returned to Spain to win the king's agreement to back a military expedition to Peru.

Spanish treachery

In 1533, Pizarro imprisoned Atahualpa, the last Inca king. Pizarro agreed to spare Atahualpa's life in return for a roomful of fabulous gold items, but he had the king put to death before most of it had been paid.



Incan gold figurine

1525

1530

1535

1526

Victorious Suleiman

Suleiman the Magnificent, the greatest of the sultans, extended Ottoman power deep into Europe when he defeated the king of Hungary at the Battle of Mohacs (below) and overran most of the country.



Ottoman forces defeat the Hungarian army at the battle of Mohacs

1534

Royal divorce

The marriage of English king Henry VIII to Catherine of Aragon had produced no male heir. The king asked the Pope to grant him a divorce so he could marry Anne Boleyn, but the Pope refused. Henry broke with the Catholic Church and made himself head of the Church of England. He married Anne but later had her beheaded. He would go on to have four more wives.



Henry VIII and his six wives

Inca stronghold

Around 1450, the Incas built the city of Machu Picchu, high on a ridge in the Andes. The site was so remote that it escaped discovery by the Spanish during their conquest of Peru.





Copernicus's view of the Earth's orbit, with the Sun at the center

1543

Sun and Earth

Polish astronomer Nicholas Copernicus published a book that showed that the Earth and other planets orbit the Sun. This was against the Church's teaching that the Earth lay at the center of the Universe. Copernicus's ideas began a revolution in the sciences.

1545

Silver mountain

The Spanish discovered the world's biggest single source of silver at Potosí in present-day Bolivia. The huge quantities of silver shipped back from the New World paid for Spain's wars in Europe.

1545

Counter-Reformation

Pope Paul III summoned the Council of Trent to discuss ways of challenging the Protestant Reformation. It met 25 times between 1545 and 1563, and launched the Counter-Reformation, a movement to bring people back to the Catholic faith.



1540

1545

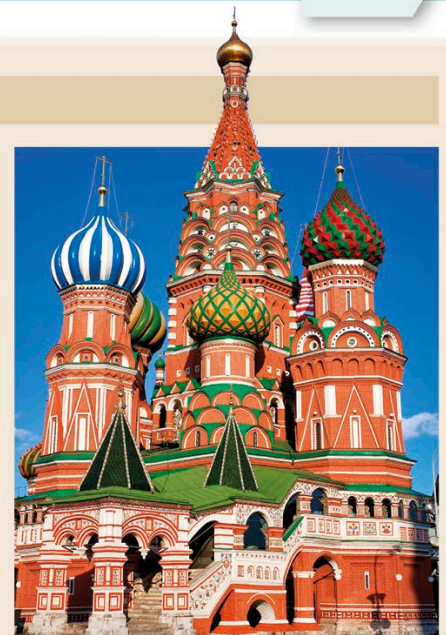
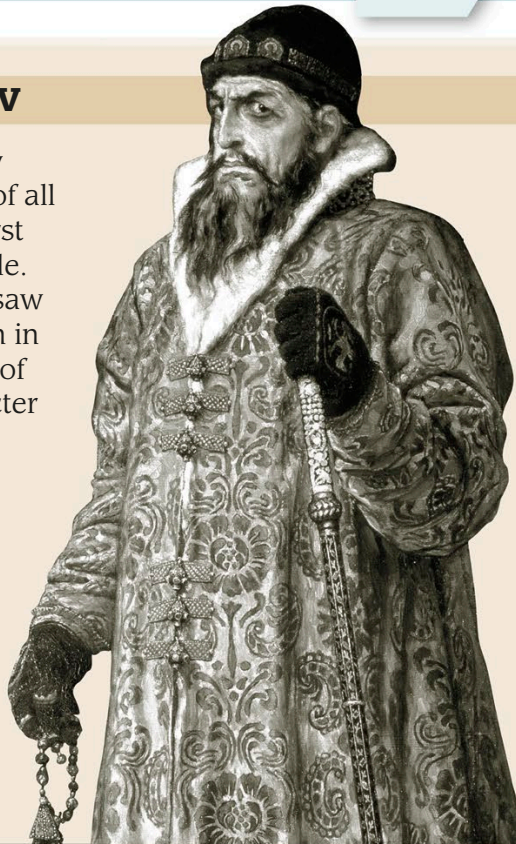
1550

1530–1584 IVAN IV

In 1547, Ivan IV, then a boy of 16, was crowned "Czar of all the Russias." He was the first Russian ruler to use this title. The early part of his reign saw expansion and legal reform in Russia. But after the death of his wife in 1560, his character changed and he became suspicious and violent. He is known to history as Ivan the Terrible.

Reign of terror

The later years of Ivan IV's reign were marked by war, terror, and famine. He became convinced that the nobility were plotting against him, and created a private army, who became known as Ivan's dogs, to terrorize them.



St. Basil's Cathedral

Moscow's most famous landmark, St. Basil's Cathedral (above), was begun by Ivan IV in 1552 to commemorate his victory over the state of Kazan.



Ottoman Empire

The Ottoman dynasty took its name from Osman, a Turkish *ghazi* (Islamic warrior), who founded a small state in Anatolia (modern-day Turkey) around 1300. In the 14th century, the Ottomans started to invade Europe. With the capture of Constantinople in 1453, the Ottoman state became an empire. Although the empire was at its peak in the 16th century, almost reaching Vienna, Austria, in 1529, the Ottomans ruled until 1922.

World conquerors

The Ottoman Empire was at its height in the 16th century, when it stretched from Hungary to the Arabian Gulf, and from Crimea to Algiers. Its navy dominated the Black Sea, the eastern Mediterranean, and the Red Sea. Its continual drive for conquest threatened not only Eastern Europe but also the Safavid Empire, the rulers of Iran and its rivals for power in the Middle East.

Received at court

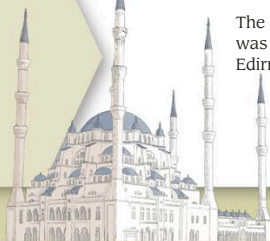
This painting by Italian artist Gentile Bellini shows Venetian ambassadors being received at the gates of the Ottoman court in Damascus, Syria. Bellini spent two years in Constantinople (modern-day Istanbul) as a cultural ambassador and visiting painter at the invitation of Sultan Mehmed II, who allowed Jews and Christians to settle in the city.



Key events

1300

Osman I, founder of the Ottoman Dynasty, established a small independent state in Anatolia (Turkey) on the frontier of the Byzantine Empire—the eastern remnant of the Roman Empire.



1366

The Ottoman capital was established at Edirne in Europe, which was the former Byzantine city of Adrianople.

Selimiye Mosque
in Edirne

1389

The Ottoman defeat of the Serbs at the Battle of Kosovo removed a major barrier to Ottoman expansion in the Balkans, and helped them reduce the Byzantine Empire to an area around Constantinople.

1453

Mehmed II conquered Constantinople (modern-day Istanbul) after a three-month siege, spelling the end of the Byzantine Empire.

Powerful sultans



Mehmed II "the Conqueror" (1444–1446 and 1451–1481)

A great military leader, Mehmed led more than 25 campaigns to conquer Constantinople, Greece, Albania, and the lands around the Black Sea.



Selim I "the Grim" (1512–1520)

Selim murdered all his male relatives to make sure he got the throne. He extended the empire into the Middle East and was made caliph (ruler of Islam) in 1517.



Suleiman I "the Magnificent" (1520–1566)

The empire reached its fullest extent during Suleiman's reign. He spoke five languages, wrote poetry, and presided over the golden age of Ottoman culture.

“I who am the sultan of sultans, the sovereign of sovereigns, the shadow of God on Earth, sultan and emperor of the White Sea [Mediterranean] and the Black Sea...”

Sultan Suleiman I addresses King Francis I of France, 1526



Ottoman pottery

The arts flourished under the Ottomans. Iznik pottery, named after the town in western Anatolia where it was made, was decorated with arabesques (intertwined flowing lines) and stylized flowers in blues, greens, and reds. Huge quantities of tiles were produced to adorn the walls of the sultans' palaces and mosques.

Domes and minarets

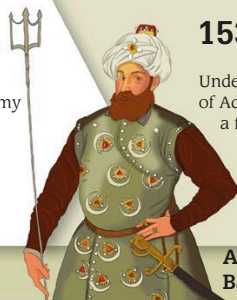
The Blue Mosque in Istanbul, completed in 1616, is named for the blue Iznik tiles that decorate its interior. The dome imitates the great Byzantine church of Hagia Sophia (Holy Wisdom), built in 537 and turned into a mosque by Mehmed II, but its six minarets (slender towers) are Ottoman in style.

1514

Selim I defeated a Safavid army at the Battle of Chaldiran in northern Iran and went on to take control of the Middle East.

1529

In a show of might, Suleiman I led a huge army to besiege the Austrian capital of Vienna, but withdrew after a month.



1538

Under the command of Admiral Barbarossa, a former pirate of Greek origin, the Ottoman navy controlled the Mediterranean.

Admiral
Barbarossa

1566

Suleiman I died in his tent at the age of 76 while leading a military campaign in Hungary. The Ottomans would progress no further into Europe.

1550 ▶ 1575



More than 850,000 people were killed in an earthquake that struck Shaanxi Province in northwest China on January 23, 1555.

Fossil study

In 1565, Swiss naturalist Conrad Gesner published a book called *On Things Dug Up from the Earth*. The book included the first descriptions of fossils, such as ammonites (left), although he was not sure exactly what they were.



1555

Peace of Augsburg

An agreement was reached between the Catholic and Protestant princes of Germany that the ruler of each state could decide the religion of his subjects. Charles V, the Holy Roman Emperor, refused to attend the negotiations and handed control of the empire to his brother Ferdinand.

1558

Queen of England

Elizabeth I became queen after the death of her half-sister, Mary I, who was a devout Catholic. Elizabeth restored the Protestant faith to England. To preserve her independence, she refused to marry and deliberately created a powerful image of monarchy.



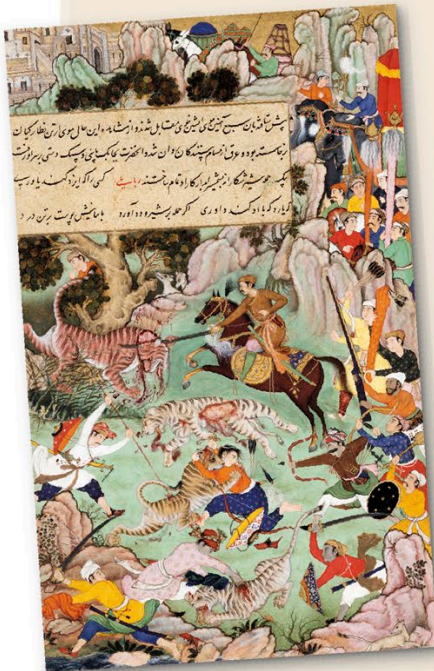
1550

1555

1560

1542–1605

AKBAR THE GREAT



The grandson of Babur, Akbar was the third Mughal emperor of India. He succeeded his father, Humayun—who had failed to preserve Babur's conquests—in 1556 at the age of 13. During his 50-year reign, Akbar created a mighty empire that stretched across northern India.

Tolerant ruler

Akbar was a Muslim, but he allowed his Hindu subjects to worship freely and encouraged debates with members of other religions, including Hindus, Zoroastrians (the religion of Persia), and Christians.

Tiger hunt

This miniature painting shows Akbar on a tiger hunt—one of the favorite pastimes of the Mughal emperors. Akbar was a great patron of the arts, especially miniature painting, which flourished at the Mughal court.



1566 DUTCH REVOLT

Philip II of Spain was also the ruler of the Netherlands. When Dutch Calvinists (followers of French Protestant John Calvin) began sacking Catholic churches, he sent Spanish troops to restore order. Their brutality sparked a major Dutch revolt.



Dutch independence

By 1572, the rebellion had turned to open warfare, with William the Silent leading the Dutch resistance. Spain eventually recognized Dutch independence in 1648.



Catholic monarch

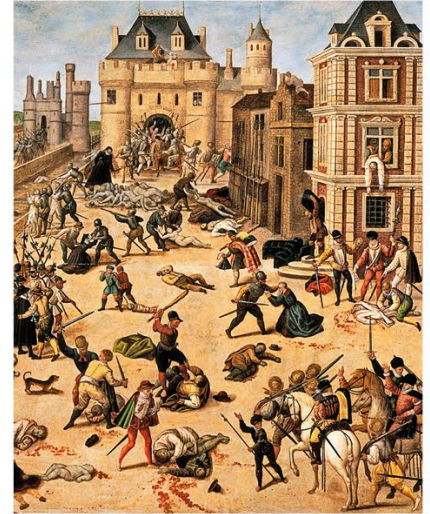
Philip II saw it as his divine mission to root out heresy, but his harsh policies and high taxes alienated his Dutch subjects. Wars had sapped Spain's economy, while the Dutch had become rich as a result of their Asian trade.

1572

Massacre in Paris

On August 24, St. Bartholomew's Day, 3,000 Huguenots (French Protestants) were massacred in the streets of Paris on the orders of King Charles IX and his mother, Catherine de' Medici. Thousands more were killed elsewhere in France.

St. Bartholomew's Day Massacre, Paris



1565

1568

Japanese overlord

Oda Nobunaga, leader of the Oda clan, seized the imperial capital of Kyoto and set about uniting Japan under his rule. His army was equipped with muskets, introduced into Japan by the Portuguese.



Oda Nobunaga

“Without destruction, there is no creation... there is no change.”

Oda Nobunaga

1570

1570

Maps galore

Abraham Ortelius, a mapmaker from Antwerp in modern-day Belgium, published the first modern atlas, called the *Theater of the World*. It contained 70 maps and was an instant success.

1571

Battle of Lepanto

A Christian fleet under the command of Don John of Austria defeated an Ottoman fleet at Lepanto off the west coast of Greece in the last major naval battle fought between galleys. The victory prevented the Ottomans from taking control of the Mediterranean Sea.



The Battle of Lepanto

1575



Mercator's map

In 1569, Gerard Mercator, a Flemish mapmaker living in Germany, produced a new world map. The Earth is round, so attempts to show it flat distort its appearance. Mercator's solution was to use a grid of interlocking lines of constant course, meaning a compass's needle would not change if you were to travel along one of the lines. His map allowed sailors to plot an accurate course, but was not commonly used for many years.



Mercator's map included an imaginary landmass in the south.

“We have progressively increased the degrees of latitude toward each pole.”

Gerard Mercator



Catholic response

The Counter-Reformation, which sought to reorganize the Catholic Church, was launched by Pope Paul III. Meanwhile, Charles V, who ruled Spain and the Holy Roman Empire (which included land in Austria, Germany, and the Netherlands), pushed for a military victory against the Protestants.

Europe's Wars of Religion

The Reformation split the countries of Europe along a deep religious divide. The followers of Martin Luther and John Calvin became the main Protestant opposition to the Catholic Church. As people across Europe sought the freedom to practice their religion, the continent was shaken by a series of conflicts that spanned more than 150 years and are known as the Wars of Religion.

Changing warfare

At the Battle of White Mountain of 1620 (below), the first major conflict of the Thirty Years' War, German Catholic forces defeated Protestant Bohemia (in the modern-day Czech Republic). The nature of warfare changed dramatically during this period. Armies grew in size, and were more professional and disciplined.

Religious wars

- **German Peasants' War (1524–1525)**

This was a social uprising sparked by the Reformation in Germany.

- **Schmalkaldic War (1546–1547)**

A war fought between an alliance of German Protestant princes and the imperial forces of Charles V.

- **French Wars of Religion (1562–1598)**

This bitter civil war between Protestants and Catholics in France ended when Henry IV, a Protestant, became a Catholic.

- **Dutch Revolt (1568–1648)**

The Protestant Dutch Republic fought an 80-year war to win its independence from Catholic Spain.

- **Thirty Years' War (1618–1648)**

This war between the Catholics and Protestants was fought mostly in Germany but involved most of the states of Europe.



Key events

1521

Emperor Charles V declared Martin Luther a heretic at the imperial Diet of Worms (assembly of the Holy Roman Empire), precipitating religious conflict.



1534

Ignatius Loyola, a Spanish nobleman and former soldier, founded the Jesuit Order, a Catholic teaching order.

Charles V

1545

Pope Paul III summoned the Council of Trent to bring about reforms within the Catholic Church.

1555

The Peace of Augsburg allowed German princes to decide the religion of their subjects, though the followers of French Protestant leader John Calvin were excluded.



Leading figures



Gustavus II Adolphus

Known as “the Lion of the North,” the intervention of the Swedish king on the Protestant side in the Thirty Years’ War widened the conflict.



Catherine de’ Medici

The mother of three French kings, she had great influence and some consider her responsible for starting the French Wars of Religion.



Albrecht von Wallenstein

A Czech Protestant by birth, he was the military commander for the Holy Roman Empire and its allies in the Thirty Years’ War.

Thirty Years’ War

This war between Protestants and Catholics in Germany escalated when other countries—Denmark, England, and Sweden—intervened to support the Protestant cause. Later, Catholic France led the fight against the Catholics in Germany. Religion had ceased to matter, and factors such as political and economic power became more important.

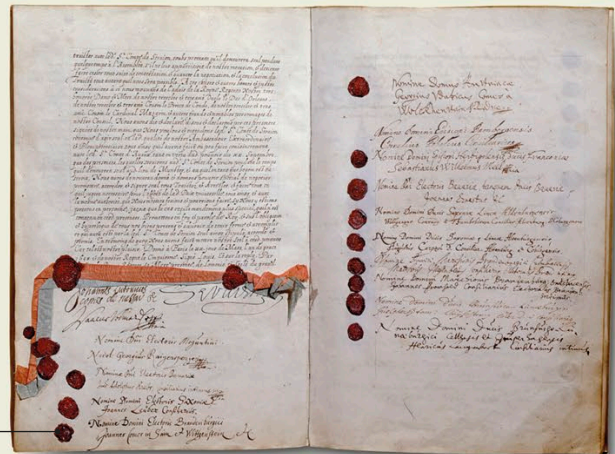
“War is one of the scourges with which it has pleased God to afflict men.”

Cardinal Richelieu, chief minister of France, 1624–1642



Peace of Westphalia

The treaty that brought the Thirty Years’ War to an end, known as the Peace of Westphalia, was signed by 109 delegates, representing the Holy Roman Emperor, the kings of France, Spain, and Sweden, the leaders of the Dutch Republic, and numerous German princes. It took four years to negotiate.



Seal of one of the 109 delegates

1576

Spanish troops slaughtered 7,000 people in Antwerp in one of the worst atrocities of the Dutch Revolt.

1618

Two Catholic officials were thrown out of a window by Protestants in Prague. This act led to the start of the Thirty Years’ War.



1632

Gustavus II Adolphus of Sweden was killed at the battle of Lützen after intervening in the Thirty Years’ War.

Two men wrestle with one of the Catholic officials

1648

Spain recognized Dutch independence as part of the Peace of Westphalia, ending the Thirty Years’ War.

1575 ▶ 1600



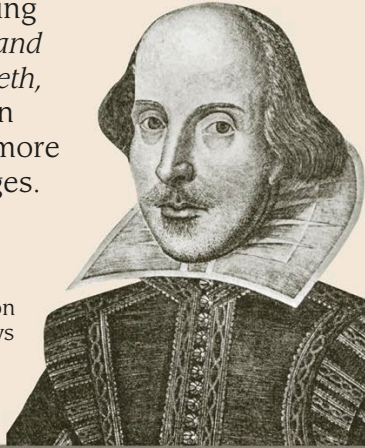
The world's first amusement park, Dyrehavsbakken in Denmark, opened in 1583 and is still open today.

1564–1616 WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

William Shakespeare is regarded as the greatest writer in the English language. He wrote at least 37 plays, including *Hamlet*, *Romeo and Juliet*, and *Macbeth*, which have been translated into more than 80 languages.

Rare portrait

This portrait from the first printed edition of Shakespeare's plays is one of only two known portraits.



The Globe Theatre

The London crowds flocked to see Shakespeare's plays performed at the Globe, an open-air theater on the bank of the Thames River. A modern reconstruction of the theater opened in 1997 (above).



1587

Mary, Queen of Scots

Mary, Queen of Scots, the Catholic cousin of Queen Elizabeth I, was an exile in England. Elizabeth ordered her execution, fearing that Mary would become the center of a plot to overthrow her and restore the Catholic Church in England.



1575

1580

1585

1580

Crisis in Portugal

When the king of Portugal died without an heir, Philip II of Spain—one of several claimants to the throne—sent an army to occupy Portugal and had himself crowned king. The enforced union between Spain and Portugal lasted until 1640. During this period, Portugal's prosperity declined.

1582

The Pope's new calendar

Pope Gregory XIII introduced a more accurate calendar, which he named the Gregorian calendar after himself. At first, only Catholic countries used the Gregorian calendar, but it gradually won general acceptance and is used throughout the world today.

1585

First English settlement

English courtier and explorer Sir Walter Raleigh founded a colony at Roanoke (in present-day North Carolina). He named it Virginia for Elizabeth I, the Virgin Queen. By 1590, the colony was abandoned, possibly due to attacks by American Indians.

Chocolate delights

In 1585, cocoa beans, the source of chocolate, became commercially available for the first time in Europe. People had been using it in a drink for centuries in the New World.



Cocoa beans came from South America's tropical forests.



The arrival of English ships in Virginia

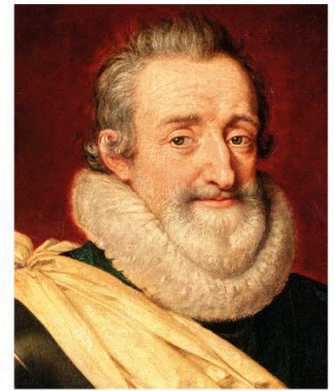
1588

Spanish Armada defeated

Philip II of Spain sent a large fleet (armada) of 130 ships from Spain with the twin aim of invading England and crushing the Dutch Revolt. His plan was a complete failure. The English fleet routed the Armada, inflicting heavy losses. Gales blew the surviving ships off course. Only 67 made it back to Spain.



English ships set off to attack the Spanish fleet.



1598

Edict of Nantes

King Henry IV of France signed the Edict of Nantes, which gave French Protestants the freedom to practise their religion. Henry, formerly a Protestant himself, had become a Catholic in 1593 to secure his throne and bring an end to the French Wars of Religion.

1590

Japan united

General Toyotomi Hideyoshi brought an end to the wars that had divided Japan since the Onin Wars. He defeated the Hojo clan and united all of Japan under his rule, although he did not take the title of shogun (military leader).

**Europe's
Wars of
Religion**
See pages
148–149

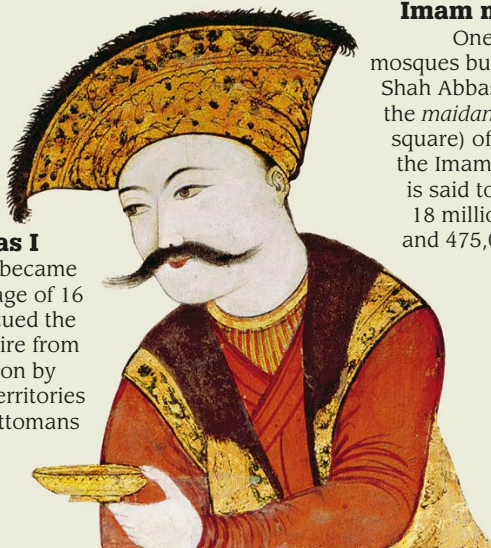
1590

1595

1600

1598 NEW SAFAVID CAPITAL

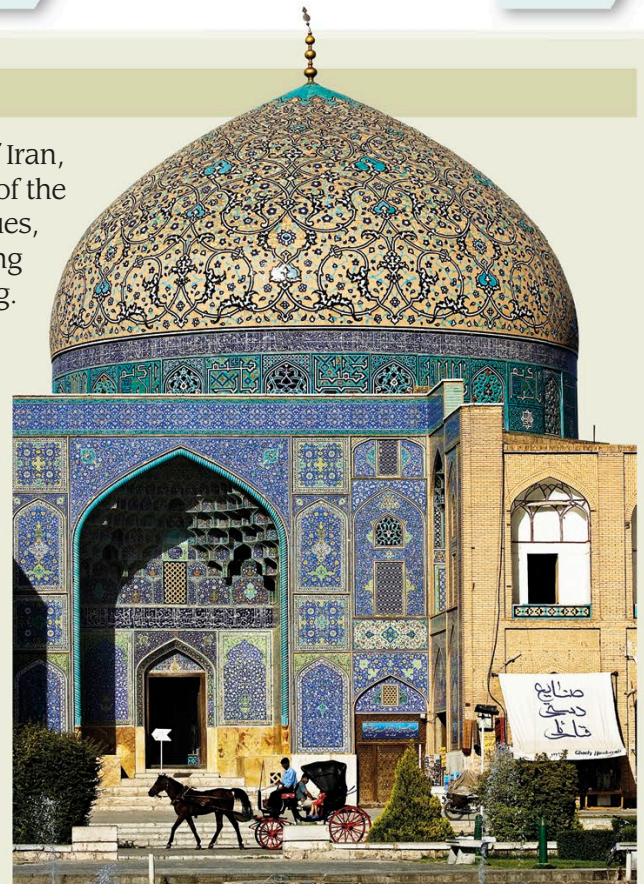
Shah Abbas I, the greatest ruler of the Safavid Dynasty of Iran, moved the capital to Isfahan. He transformed it into one of the most beautiful cities in the world, adorning it with mosques, colleges, baths, gardens, palaces, and a 3-mile (5-km) long bazaar. It became a center for the arts, especially painting.

**Shah Abbas I**

Abbas, who became shah at the age of 16 in 1587, rescued the Safavid Empire from near extinction by recovering territories lost to the Ottomans and Uzbeks.

Imam mosque

One of three mosques built by the Shah Abbas around the *maidan* (central square) of Isfahan, the Imam mosque is said to contain 18 million bricks and 475,000 tiles.



1600 ▶ 1625

1600

Trading rivals

The English East India Company was set up to trade with Asia. Two years later, the Dutch established the Dutch East India Company. Future rivalry between the two would spur bitter trade wars.

1603

A united kingdom

King James VI of Scotland became James I of England. In 1605, a group of 13 Catholics conspired to blow up the English Houses of Parliament and murder the Protestant king. The plot was foiled in the nick of time. The most famous member of the group, Guy Fawkes, was in charge of the explosives.

Edo Japan
See pages
156–157

1603

Shogun rule

Tokugawa Ieyasu became shogun (military leader) of Japan and moved the capital to Edo (Tokyo). The Tokugawa shogunate would rule Japan for the next 250 years.

Guy Fawkes



Don Quixote

The first European novel, *Don Quixote*, was published in 1605. Written by Spaniard Miguel de Cervantes, the book follows the comical adventures of the knight Don Quixote and his squire, Sancho Panza.

1612

Slave trade grows

The number of slaves taken by Europeans from Africa to Brazil had risen to 10,000 a year. Slave traders in Brazil sold the majority to the Spanish colonies to work in mines and on plantations, the proceeds of which went back to Europe.

1612

Up in smoke

Tobacco was first grown as a plantation crop in Virginia, USA. Not everyone welcomed it. King James I wrote a book denouncing the evils of smoking.

1600

1605

1610

1572–1610 GAZING AT THE UNIVERSE

Italian scientist Galileo Galilei's observations struck a blow to the belief that the Earth was the center of the Solar System, around which the Sun and the planets orbited. Other scientists at this time also demonstrated that Copernicus's view of a Sun-centered Universe was right.

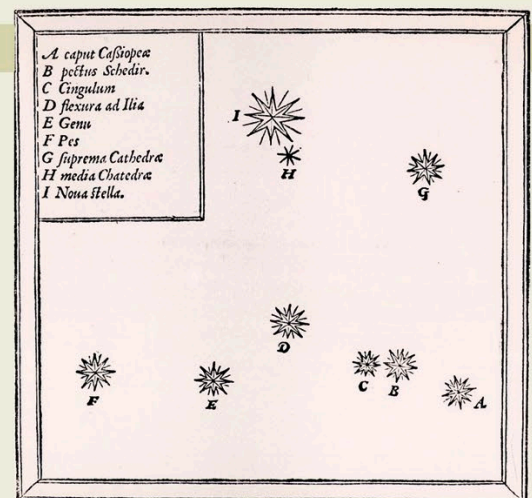


Galileo's telescope

Galileo built his own telescope (below), and used it to observe the effect of the Sun's light on the planets. In the telescope, he saw three moons of Jupiter that changed position over time, which proved that they did not orbit the Earth.

Planetary motion

German astronomer Johannes Kepler proved the Copernican system mathematically, demonstrating that the planets move around the Sun in elliptical paths, or orbits.



New star

In 1572, Danish astronomer Tycho Brahe identified a very bright star in the constellation of Cassiopeia as a "new star" (marked I on the map). It is now classified as a "supernova".



152



Tycho Brahe lost part of his nose in a duel over a mathematical formula in 1566. He wore a metal replacement for the rest of his life.



1614

Native wife

Pocahontas (above), an American Indian, married John Rolfe, a settler at Jamestown, Virginia. Pocahontas is said to have saved the life of John Smith, the colony's founder. She accompanied Rolfe to England and died there in 1617.

1620 PILGRIMS ARRIVE IN AMERICA

The *Mayflower*, carrying about 102 Puritan Pilgrims from England, made landfall at Cape Cod, Massachusetts. They planned to found a colony in America where they would find religious freedom. They arrived in late November, and set about building a settlement. More than half of them died that winter.

Atlantic crossing

The *Mayflower* sailed from the port of Plymouth in Devon. It was packed with passengers and supplies for the new settlement, including farm animals. The stormy crossing took 66 days.

**First Thanksgiving**

During the first spring, American Indians showed the colonists how to sow corn. Tradition says the pilgrims celebrated the first Thanksgiving after harvesting their crops.

1615

1620

1625

1613

First Romanov

Mikhail Romanov, a 16-year-old *boyar* (nobleman), was elected to the throne of Russia, ending a period of civil war known as "The Time of Troubles." Mikhail was so afraid of the task ahead of him that he burst into tears, but Russia prospered under his rule. He was the first of the Romanov Dynasty that ruled Russia until 1917.



This jewel-encrusted orb was used at Mikhail's coronation.

1618

Religious revolt

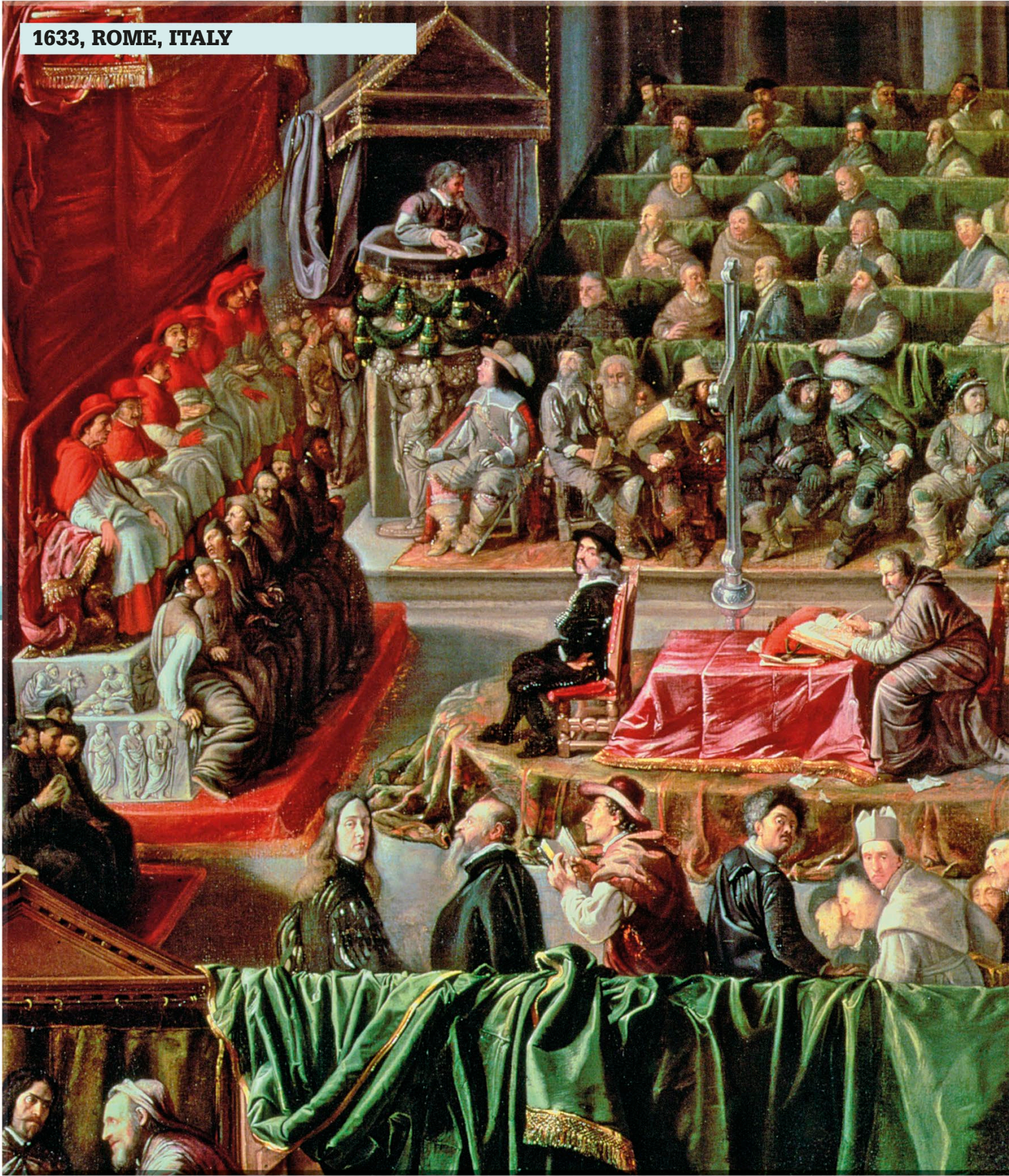
Ferdinand, king of Bohemia (in the modern-day Czech Republic) and future Holy Roman Emperor, tried to impose Catholicism on his Protestant citizens. They reacted with fury by throwing two of his officials out the window of Prague Castle. The rebellion erupted into the Thirty Years' War, one of the most destructive episodes in European history.

The officials are thrown out the window of Prague Castle.



Europe's Wars of Religion
See pages 148–149

1633, ROME, ITALY



The trial of Galileo

In 1633, the Italian astronomer Galileo Galilei was tried before the court of the Inquisition in Rome. The charge against him was heresy—an offense against the teachings of the Church. Galileo supported the view that the Earth was not the center of the Universe but, together with the other planets, orbited the Sun. Fearing torture and death, Galileo retracted his beliefs in court. But as he denied the Earth moved, it is said he muttered under his breath, “And yet it does move.” He spent the rest of his life under house arrest.

“I do not feel obliged to believe that the same God who endowed us with sense, reason, and intellect had intended for us to forgo their use.”

Galileo, in a letter written in 1615



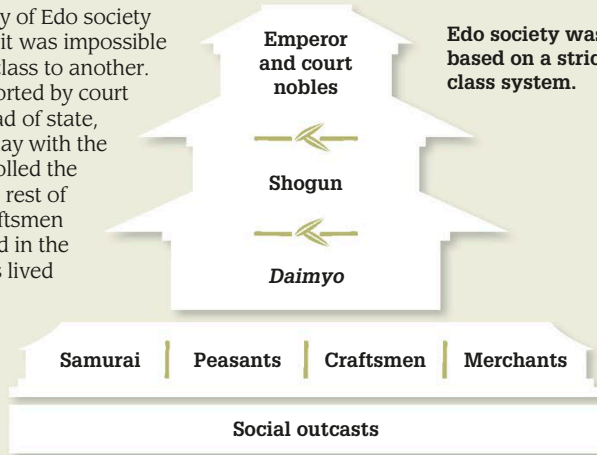
Galileo faces the court of the Roman Inquisition

Edo Japan

In 1603, the first Tokugawa shogun, Ieyasu, moved the capital of Japan to Edo, the city that was to become Tokyo. This marked the beginning of more than 250 years of political and social stability, during which the shoguns kept the *daimyo* (feudal lords) under close control. The Edo period was a time of great cultural and artistic activity, but over time Japan cut itself off from the outside world.

Edo society

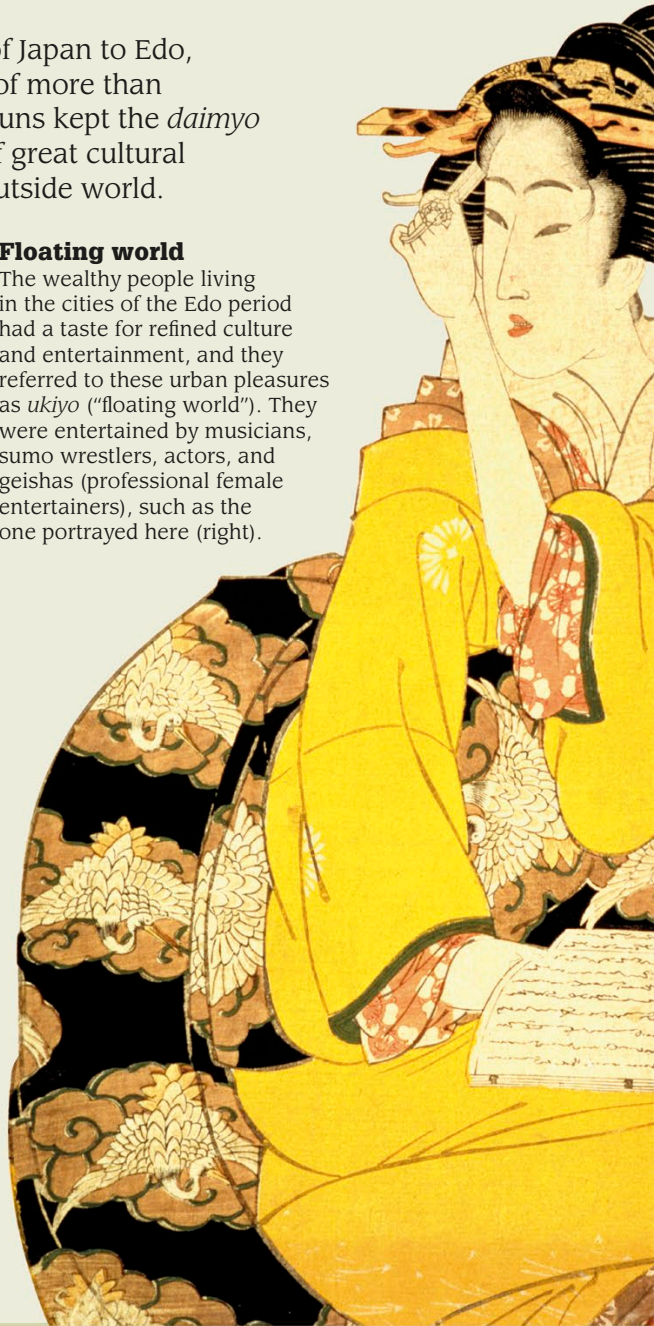
The feudal hierarchy of Edo society was very rigid, and it was impossible to move from one class to another. The emperor, supported by court nobles, was the head of state, but the real power lay with the shogun, who controlled the 200 *daimyo* and the rest of the population. Craftsmen and merchants lived in the cities, and peasants lived in the countryside. Entertainers, beggars, and undertakers were among the social outcasts.



Edo society was based on a strict class system.

Floating world

The wealthy people living in the cities of the Edo period had a taste for refined culture and entertainment, and they referred to these urban pleasures as *ukiyo* ("floating world"). They were entertained by musicians, sumo wrestlers, actors, and geishas (professional female entertainers), such as the one portrayed here (right).



Samurai

The samurai, or warrior class, wore helmets like this and were the only people allowed to carry swords known as *daisho*. They owed total loyalty to their *daimyo* and lived by the code of honor called bushido, or "the way of the warrior." During the Edo period, however, there were no wars, so most of the samurai became scholars and high-class administrators for their *daimyo*.



Bushido code

The samurai should:

- ★ Live simply
- ★ Behave honestly
- ★ Show respect and kindness to his parents
- ★ Be skilled with the sword and the bow
- ★ Keep physically fit
- ★ Give unquestioning loyalty to his *daimyo*
- ★ Be ready to commit *seppuku* (ritual suicide) rather than face the dishonor of fleeing the battlefield or being captured

Key events

1600

Tokugawa Ieyasu won the Battle of Sekigahara to take control of Japan. The battle ended 50 years of fighting, known as the Sengoku, or Warring States, period.

1603

The emperor granted Tokugawa Ieyasu the title of shogun. Ieyasu established his capital at Edo, then a small fishing village, which would later become Tokyo.

1609

The Dutch established a trading post at Hirado, Nagasaki, but they were not permitted to trade beyond the harbor.

1612

Ieyasu issued a ban on Christianity—Japanese Christians had to flee or faced death. The ban was relaxed in 1657.

1615

The Tokugawa army destroyed the Osaka stronghold of the Toyotomi clan—the last powerful opponents of the new regime.



Tokugawa Ieyasu

Born in 1543, Tokugawa Ieyasu rose to power as a *daimyo* during the clan wars of the 16th century. Over 43 years, he fought up to 90 battles, culminating in the Battle of Sekigahara in 1600, which gave him control over Japan. He became shogun three years later.

“To come to know your enemy, first you must become his friend.”

Tokugawa Ieyasu

Edo art

The coming of peace to war-torn Japan inspired a flowering of culture. Throughout the Edo period, poets, painters, and craftsmen created work of great beauty and delicacy that is now highly valued worldwide.

Noh mask representing a Samurai character



Theater

Traditional Noh theater, in which the actors wore elaborate masks, had been part of Japanese life since the 1300s. In the early 1600s, a new style of comic dance-drama—Kabuki—became popular in the “floating world” of Edo. Women originally played all the roles, but—like Noh—Kabuki soon became an all-male profession.



Imari

Exquisite porcelain, known as *Imari*, was made in Japan from the mid-1600s. It was vividly colored and often adorned with gleaming gold.



Netsuke

Men carried personal items in small boxes attached to their sashes by *netsuke*—beautifully carved miniature sculptures such as these figures.



Inro

The containers slung from *netsuke* were called *inro*. Each is a finely carved stack of interlocking boxes held together by a pair of cords.

1635

The shogun put *daimyo* under tight control by ordering them to spend several months each year living in Edo.

1637

More than 40,000 Christian peasants were killed by the shogun's forces during the suppression of the Shimabara uprising.

1639

All westerners except the Dutch were banned from entering Japan—and the Dutch were restricted to a single small island off Nagasaki.

1688

Beginning of the Genroku years—the “golden age” of Edo-period Japan, when urban entertainments and fine arts flourished.

1868

Following the opening up of Japan to foreigners, the last Tokugawa shogun resigned. Power passed back to the emperor, ending the Edo period.

Geisha



1625 ▶ 1650



1628

Heart of the matter

After years of research, English physician and anatomist William Harvey published a work that showed that the heart pumps blood around the body. It was a key breakthrough in the history of medicine.



The highest price paid for a single tulip bulb in 1637 was 5,500 Dutch guilders. A craftsman's annual earnings at that time amounted to about 250 guilders.

1631

Swedish victory

Sweden's Lutheran king Gustavus II Adolphus intervened on the Protestant side in the Thirty Years' War. In 1631, he won a crushing victory over the imperial army at the Battle of Breitenfeld but was killed the next year at the Battle of Lützen.



▶▶ 1625

1630

1635

1626

New Amsterdam

Dutch colonizer Peter Minuit purchased the island of Manhattan from local American Indians for 60 Dutch guilders (\$24), and named it New Amsterdam. In 1664, the English took over and changed the name to New York.

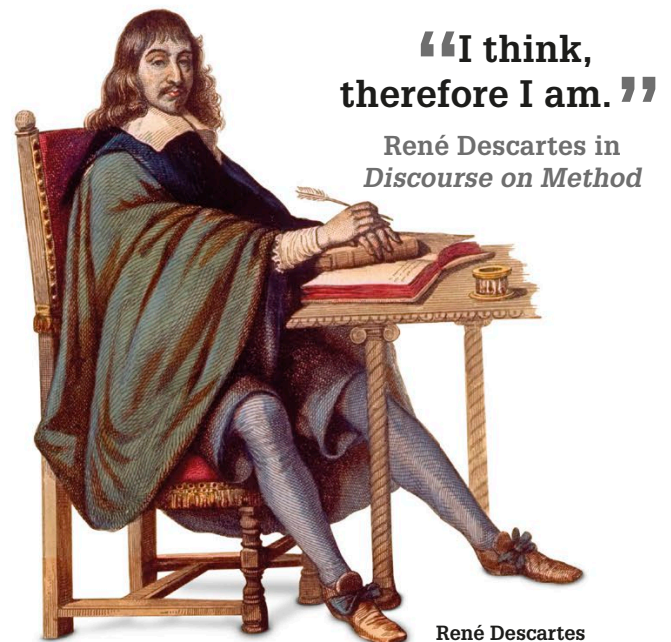
1637

Great thinker

French philosopher René Descartes (1596–1650) published *Discourse on Method*, one of the most influential works in the history of philosophy. Descartes's starting point was to doubt everything, even his own existence, but because he was able to doubt, he reasoned that he must exist.



Minuit trades goods in exchange for Manhattan Island.



“I think, therefore I am.”

René Descartes in *Discourse on Method*

René Descartes



1639

Japanese isolation

The Tokugawa shogunate of Japan was hostile to foreigners. It issued a series of edicts outlawing Christianity and limiting trade. In 1639, this led to a total ban on contact with the outside world, which lasted until 1853. The Japanese could not travel abroad and foreign ships could only visit a small island off Nagasaki.

1616-1642 THE DUTCH IN THE PACIFIC

In 1616, a Dutch expedition found a new route linking the Atlantic and the Pacific at the southern tip of South America. They named the island Cape Horn. The Dutch were also the first Europeans to explore the Pacific from their trading base at Batavia (modern Jakarta) in Java. They were hoping to find a southern continent full of untold riches.

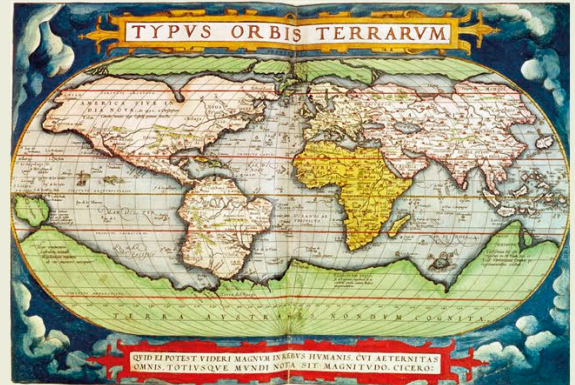


Voyage of Abel Tasman

In 1642, Dutch explorer Abel Tasman sailed farther south than anyone before, then turned east, missing the south coast of Australia but discovering the island of Tasmania. Sailing on, he sighted the coast of New Zealand and named it after a province in the Netherlands.

Terra Australis

European maps predicted that there would be a great southern continent, which they called "Terra Australis" (shown in green), in the Pacific Ocean. The Dutch were the first to find Australia in the early 17th century, but thought it was too barren to be Terra Australis, and called it New Holland.



1640

1645

1650

1642

Civil War

When relations between King Charles I and Parliament broke down, England and Scotland were plunged into civil war. Following initial success, the royalists were defeated and in 1649 Charles was put on trial, found guilty of treason, and executed. A republic was set up under Oliver Cromwell.



King Charles was executed outside the Palace of Whitehall.

1644

Ming collapse

The Ming dynasty came to an end as Manchu tribesmen from the north invaded China. They put in place the six-year-old Shunzhi emperor, who was the first emperor of the Qing dynasty.



1648

Fighting is over

After four years of negotiation, the Treaty of Westphalia ended the Thirty Years' War. Up to one-third of the German population had died during the conflict, either as a result of fighting, or from disease.

The dome of St Peter's is 265 ft (80.7 m) high.

St. Peter's

The great Basilica of St. Peter in Rome was completed in 1626, 120 years after building began in 1506. The piazza in front, a masterpiece of Baroque architecture, was finished in 1667.



Mughal India

Founded by Babur, a Muslim descendant of the Mongol emperor Genghis Khan, the Mughal Empire saw the creation of some of India's greatest monuments. It lasted for more than three centuries, but peaked during the reigns of the emperors Akbar, Jahangir, Shah Jahan, and Aurangzeb, from 1556 to 1707. After the death of Aurangzeb, the empire went into steady decline, but it has left a glorious legacy of magnificent architecture and Islamic art.



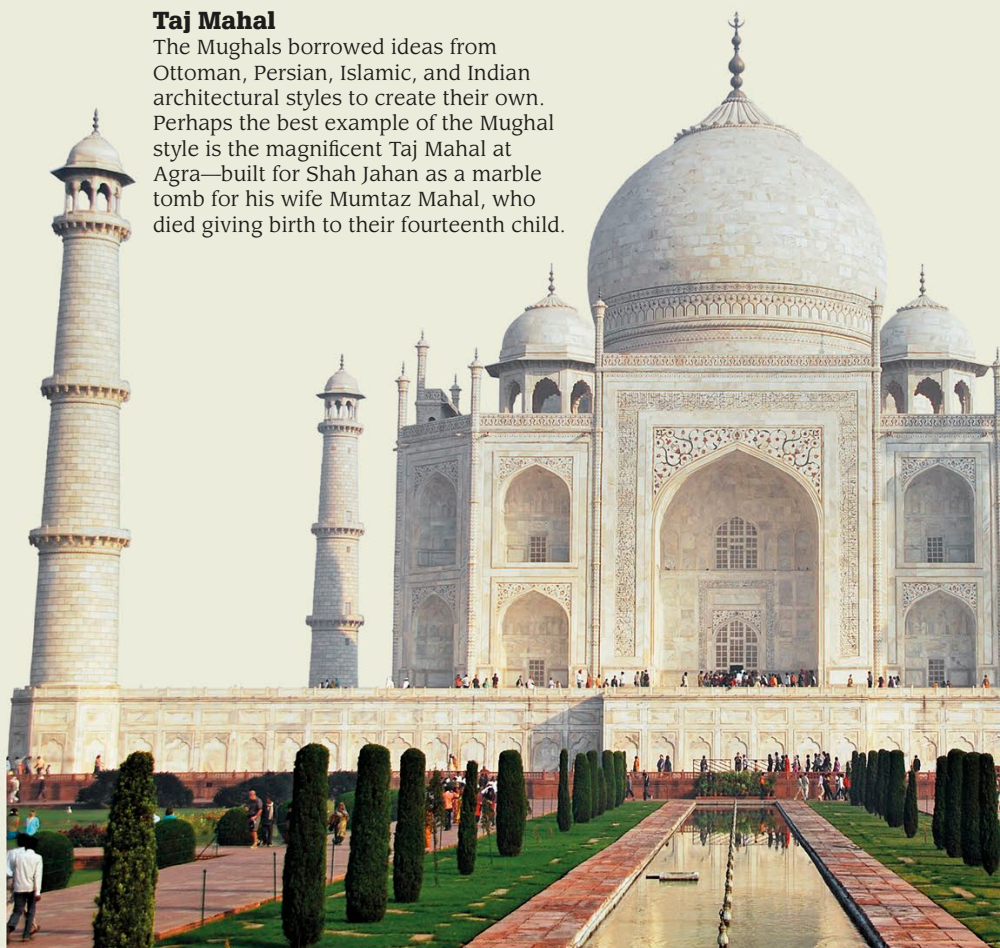
Mughal expansion

When Babur founded the empire, it covered a small area of northern India. He conquered more land, but it was lost during the reign of his son, Humayun. Humayun's son Akbar inherited a small domain, but expanded it to cover a much larger area. The empire reached its greatest extent under Akbar's great-grandson Aurangzeb.



Taj Mahal

The Mughals borrowed ideas from Ottoman, Persian, Islamic, and Indian architectural styles to create their own. Perhaps the best example of the Mughal style is the magnificent Taj Mahal at Agra—built for Shah Jahan as a marble tomb for his wife Mumtaz Mahal, who died giving birth to their fourteenth child.



Taj Mahal facts

- Started in 1632, the building took more than 20 years to complete.
- More than 20,000 workmen were employed to build it.
- 1,000 elephants were used to haul building stone to the site.
- Its design is perfectly symmetrical.
- The marble is inlaid with precious and semiprecious stones, including jade, turquoise, and sapphire.

Key events

1526

Babur marched into northern India and defeated the sultan of Delhi at the Battle of Panipat to found the Mughal Empire.

1540

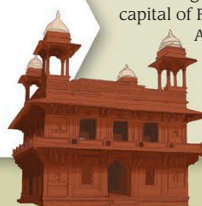
Babur's son Humayun was forced into exile for 17 years as power passed to a rival dynasty. He regained the throne in 1555, and passed it to his son Akbar.

1571

Akbar began building his new capital of Fatehpur Sikri near Agra in Uttar Pradesh. The empire was greatly expanded during his successful reign.

1613

Emperor Jahangir allowed the British East India Company to establish a factory, or warehouse, at Surat on the west coast of India.



A building in Fatehpur Sikri

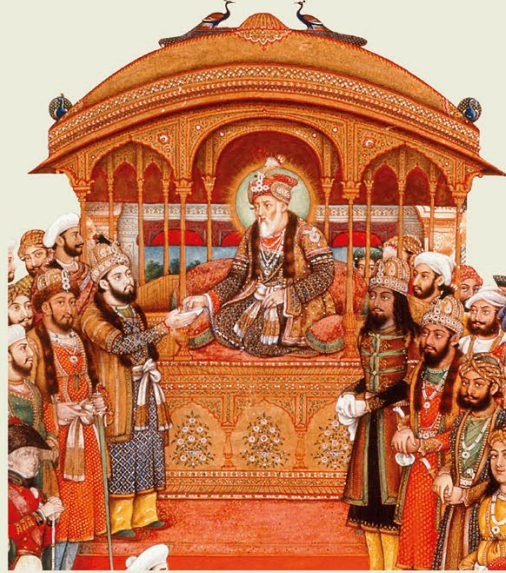


Mughal textiles

Mughal India was famous for its fine dyed and printed textiles, which became highly fashionable in Europe. Many Indian entered for cloth and clothing entered the English language, including *calico*, *chintz*, and *pajamas*.

Government and court

The Mughals were able to rule the Indian subcontinent because they gave previously independent princes a place in the Mughal system of government. At the center, the court was very lavish, with the emperor sitting on the Peacock Throne, inlaid with precious stones.



Akbar sitting on the Peacock Throne

Mughal emperors



Babur (1526–1530)

A lover of gardens and hunting, Babur founded the empire after defeating the ruler of northern India in 1526.



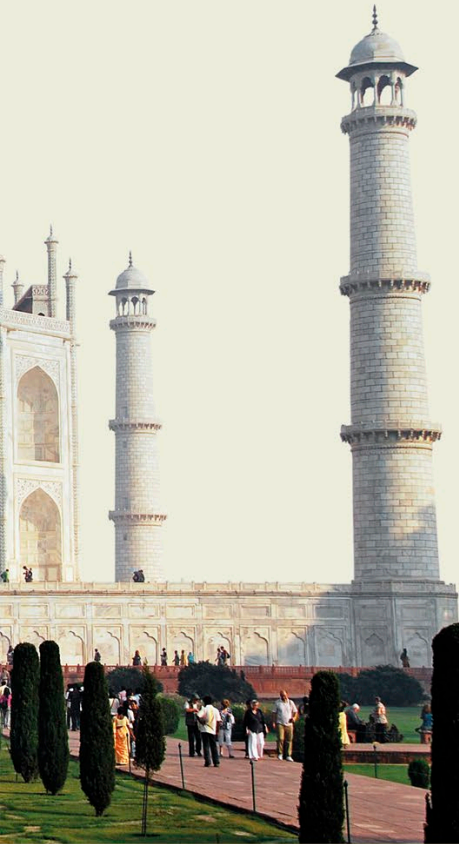
Jahangir (1605–1627)

Jahangir was considered a great emperor, but his wife Nur Jahan was the real power behind the throne.



Shah Jahan (1627–1658)

His passion for splendid buildings led to the creation of some of the finest monuments of the empire.

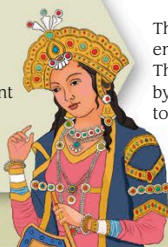


Elephant armor

The empire was created and extended by victories in battle, and the emperors often had to fight to retain power. Their armies used elephants that were trained to charge, trample, and terrify the opposing soldiers. The elephants were protected by armor that made it almost impossible to attack them, and some even wielded swords or metal clubs tied to the tips of their trunks.

1632

Shah Jahan began building the Taj Mahal at Agra as a memorial to his wife. This period marked the high point of the Mughal Empire.



Mumtaz Mahal, Shah Jahan's wife

1707

The last of the great Mughal emperors, Aurangzeb, died. The empire was plagued by rebellions, and began to decline rapidly.

1739

The Persian ruler Nadir Shah captured Delhi and removed the Peacock Throne. He agreed to withdraw, but the Mughal Empire's power had been destroyed.

1857

Bahadur Shah II, the last Mughal emperor, was deposed by the British as punishment for supporting the Indian rebellion.

1650 ▶ 1675

1654

The Swedish Empire

Queen Christina of Sweden abdicated to become a Roman Catholic. The Swedish Empire reached its greatest extent under her cousin and successor Charles X, after successful wars against Denmark and Poland-Lithuania.



The Swedish Empire under Charles X

Coffeehouses

Introduced to Europe through trade with the Ottoman Empire, coffee became all the rage in Paris and London. Coffeehouses acted as private clubs where men stayed all day discussing business and politics.



Coffee beans



King Charles II

1660

Monarchy restored

When Oliver Cromwell died in 1658, he left England in disarray. In 1660, the exiled son of Charles I was welcomed back as King Charles II. One of his first acts was to execute the men who had signed his father's death warrant.

1658

Mughal bloodbath

Aurangzeb, the last of the great Mughal rulers, proclaimed himself emperor after imprisoning his father Shah Jahan. He ruthlessly eliminated his three brothers, executing two and arranging the death of the third.

▶▶ 1650

1655

1660

1652

Cape Town founded

A party of Dutch settlers arrived at the southern tip of Africa to establish a supply station for ships traveling to and from the Dutch East Indies. It would become the modern city of Cape Town. At that time, the area was inhabited by the indigenous Khoikhoi people, who were sheep and cattle farmers.

1638–1715 LOUIS XIV

Louis XIV became king of France in 1643, at the age of four. In 1661, after the death of his chief minister, Cardinal Mazarin, he took sole charge of the government. Louis increased French influence in Europe and the New World, reformed the French legal system, and was a great patron of the arts. His 72-year reign was one of the longest in European history.



The Palace of Versailles

Louis built a vast palace at Versailles, outside Paris. It was lavishly decorated throughout, and a Hall of Mirrors (above) served as a central gallery. Louis expected all his nobles to live at Versailles so he could keep an eye on them.

The Sun King

Louis XIV gained the name of *le Roi Soleil* (the Sun King) after appearing as Apollo, the Greek god of the Sun, in a ballet as a teenager. Louis's numerous wars made France the leading nation in Europe.

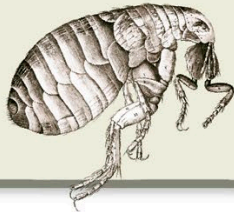


1665–1676 MICROSCOPIC LIFE

Scientists were experimenting with lenses at this time. In 1665, English scientist Robert Hooke published the amazing observations he made with his microscope in a book called *Micrographia*. Dutchman Antonie van Leeuwenhoek made powerful microscope lenses with a magnification of 250 times. He was the first person to see bacteria (which he called “animalcules”) in saliva from his own mouth.

Larger than life

In *Micrographia*, Hooke included huge, detailed illustrations of the tiny objects he had seen under the microscope, including insects, such as the flea.



Compound microscope

Compound microscopes have more than one lens. Hooke improved their design by passing light from an oil lamp through a glass flask of water to illuminate the specimen.



1674

Hindu king

In 1674, Shivaji, a warrior leader from Maharashtra in western India, was crowned with all the full ceremony and tradition of a Hindu king. He was the founder of the Maratha state that would go on to challenge the Mughals.



1665

1666

London burns

For three days, a fire that had begun in a baker's shop swept through London, destroying most of the buildings within the old city walls. The devastation came a year after the city had been the center of an outbreak of bubonic plague that had left 100,000 people dead.

1670

1669

Fall of Crete

The Ottomans captured the city of Candia (modern Heraklion) on the island of Crete in the eastern Mediterranean from the Venetians. Their victory came after a 21-year-long siege, one of the longest in history.

1675



More than 88 churches, including St. Paul's Cathedral, were destroyed in the fire of London.

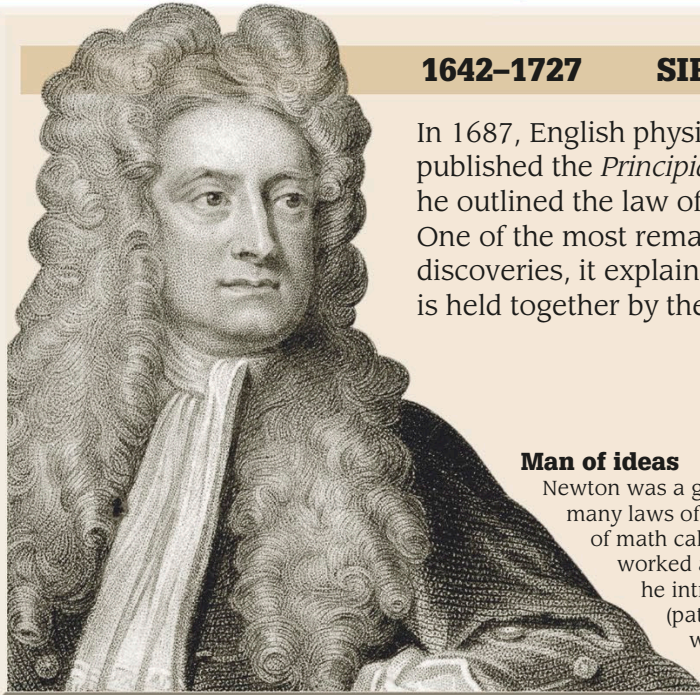


From the safety of boats on the Thames River, crowds watch the Great Fire of London.

1675 ▶ 1700

“To every action there is always an equal and opposite reaction.”

Isaac Newton



1642–1727 SIR ISAAC NEWTON

In 1687, English physicist Isaac Newton published the *Principia Mathematica* in which he outlined the law of universal gravitation. One of the most remarkable of all scientific discoveries, it explained that the Universe is held together by the force of gravity.

Man of ideas

Newton was a genius who established many laws of physics, and a new branch of math called calculus. He also worked at the Royal Mint, where he introduced coins with milled (patterned) edges so they were harder to forge.



The science of light

This reflecting telescope is a replica of one made by Newton in 1670. It used concave mirrors, rather than lenses, to gather and focus light. His interest in light also led to his discovery that white light is made up of all the colors of the spectrum.



1675

1680

1685

Dead as a dodo

The dodo was a large flightless bird found only on the island of Mauritius. It was not accustomed to humans, and was so slow and easy to catch that it was hunted to extinction by about 1693 by visiting sailors.



1683

Siege of Vienna

An Ottoman army laid siege to Vienna, but was driven off by a relieving army led by John Sobieski, king of Poland. The defeat marked the end of Ottoman expansion in Europe, and they were driven out of central Europe in 1697.



1685

Flight of the Huguenots

After Louis XIV revoked the Edict of Nantes, ending religious toleration in France, thousands of Huguenots fled abroad to escape forced conversion. Many were skilled craftsmen who found refuge in England and the Netherlands.

1688

The Nine Years' War

Louis XIV's army crossed the Rhine River to invade the Rhineland-Palatinate region in western Germany, an act of aggression that led to the Nine Years' War. All the European powers, including Britain, united against France, forcing Louis to give up gains he had made earlier in eastern and northern France.

1688

Revolution in England

The pro-Catholic policies of King James II of England alienated his Protestant subjects, some of whom invited William III (right), Prince of Orange, married to James's daughter Mary, to invade England. James fled abroad and Parliament offered the throne to William III and Mary II, who ruled as joint monarchs.



1694

Bank of England founded

The Bank of England was founded as a private venture and immediately loaned the government £1.2 million in return for the right to print banknotes. It meant that Britain was able to finance its part in the Nine Years' War.

1694

Number crunching

German mathematician Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz built a digital mechanical calculator known as a Stepped Reckoner. It was the first calculator that could add, subtract, multiply, and divide. Only three examples are known to have been constructed.



Modern replica of the Stepped Reckoner

1690

1689

Treaty of Nerchinsk

By the 1650s, Russian expansion into East Asia had reached as far as the Amur River on China's northern border. In 1689, China signed its first treaty with a foreign power when it agreed upon its frontier with Russia. The treaty put an end to further Russian advances, though it gained the right to send trade caravans to Beijing.



The elector Frederick William of Prussia encouraged 20,000 Huguenots to settle in Prussia by offering them special privileges.



1695

1692

Salem witch trials

Mass hysteria spurred a witch hunt in the small town of Salem, Massachusetts, after a group of young girls claimed to be possessed by the devil. Three women were accused of practicing witchcraft and hanged after a trial. By the time the witch trials ended in May 1693, 18 other women, and one man, had been put to death.

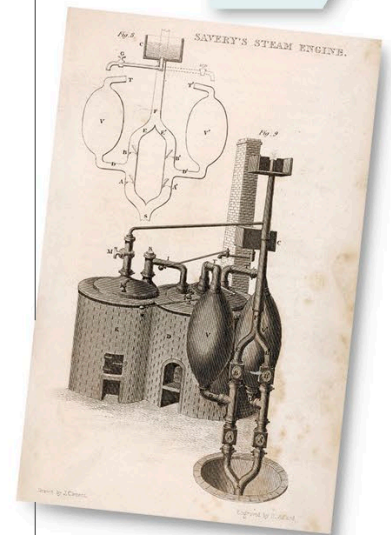
1700

1698

The first commercially successful steam engine

Steaming ahead

Thomas Savery, a military engineer, patented a design for a steam engine. It was intended to pump water out of mines, but the risk of explosions made it too dangerous to use underground and it proved more useful in supplying water to towns.



Qing China

In 1644, the Chinese Ming Dynasty was toppled by a revolution that led to an invasion from Manchuria in the far north. The invaders brought their own language and culture to China, but worked with the native Han Chinese to create a stable empire. Under their rule, China tripled in size, and by the late 18th century it was the richest state in the world.

Three great emperors

The Qing Dynasty survived until the early 20th century, but its golden era spanned the reign of three emperors, from 1661 to 1796.

Kangxi (1661–1722)

Kangxi became emperor at the age of seven and went on to rule for 61 years. His reign was a time of territorial expansion and increasing prosperity.



Yongzheng (1722–1735)

On the death of Kangxi, his fourth son seized the throne. Yongzheng was a strong ruler who stamped out corruption and reformed government.



Qianlong (1735–1796)

An art lover, painter, and poet, Qianlong was also a military leader. He ruled for 63 years, giving up the throne three years before his death at 88.



The emperor

The Qing emperors took a very active interest in the economy and government of their empire. Unlike the Ming emperors they replaced, they made long tours through the Chinese provinces, spending a lot of time far from the palace of the Forbidden City in the heart of Beijing. Despite this, they kept close control over state affairs via the officials who traveled with them.

Carved jade

The prosperity of the empire encouraged arts and crafts. New techniques, including glassmaking and portrait painting, thrived alongside traditional arts such as the fine carving on this jade cup.



Key events

1616

Nurhaci, a clan leader, united the Manchu people of what is now Manchuria in northeast China, and founded the Qing Dynasty.

1644

The Qing captured Beijing and replaced the Ming Dynasty, which had ruled China since 1368.

1645

All Han Chinese men were ordered to wear their hair in a plait as a sign of submission to the Manchus.



1673

A rebellion led by three Ming generals broke out in southern China. The revolt lasted eight years.

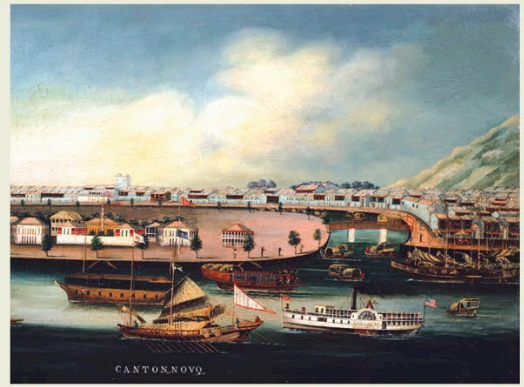
Queue hairstyle



The imperial procession of Kangxi in the city of Kiang-Han in 1699.

China and the silver trade

In the 18th-century, China was so big that it could produce everything it needed, except for the silver that it used to make coins. At that time, the Spanish colonies of Mexico and Peru were the biggest silver producers. Foreign merchants shipped it to the port of Canton (now Guangzhou) in southern China, where it was traded for silk, fine porcelain, and tea—all in high demand in Europe.



Canton harbor in imperial times

“Keep your hair and lose your head, or keep your head and cut your hair.”

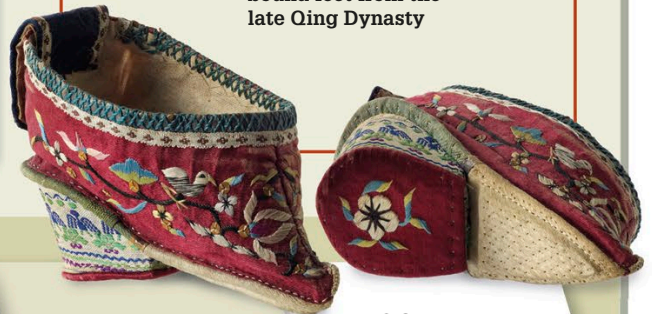
Qing slogan about the shaving of hair

Hair and feet

The Qing forced some of their own ideas on the Han Chinese population, but allowed other traditions to survive.

- ★ The Qing rulers made every Han Chinese man shave the front of his head and wear the hair at the back in a long plait, called a queue. Thousands of men were killed for resisting this order.
- ★ For centuries before the Qing dynasty, Chinese girls had their feet bound at an early age to stop them from growing properly. The binding was painful and made walking difficult, but tiny feet were considered beautiful. The Qing emperors thought foot-binding was barbaric, but despite this they did not ban it.

Pair of shoes for bound feet from the late Qing Dynasty



Biggest book collection

Qianlong ordered the creation of the largest library of books in Chinese history.

- ★ Work on the books began in 1773 and ended in 1782, and involved 361 scholars and 3,825 copyists.
- ★ Each Chinese character had to be copied by hand.
- ★ The result was known as the *Siku Quanshu* (“The Emperor’s Four Treasuries”).
- ★ 3,641 works were selected for inclusion. The books were bound in 36,381 volumes containing more than 79,000 chapters and 2.3 million pages.

1683

Qing forces conquered the island of Taiwan, giving the emperor Kangxi control over all of China.

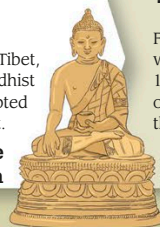
1722

Yongzheng took over after a power struggle with his brothers following Kangxi’s death.

1724

The Qing empire annexed part of Tibet, and Tibetan Buddhist culture was adopted at the Qing court.

A statue of Buddha



1757

Foreign traders were restricted to 13 trading posts, or “factories,” in the port of Canton.

1796

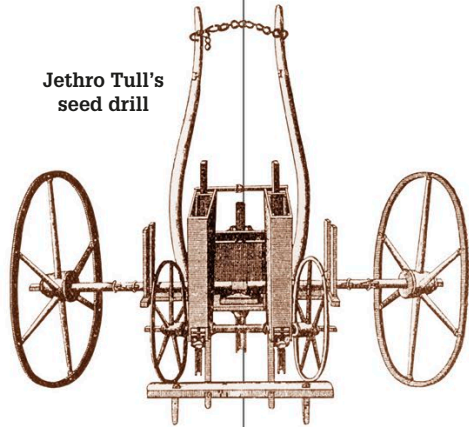
Emperor Qianlong abdicated, and died soon after. After this, the empire fell into a long decline.

1700 ▶ 1725

1701

Sowing seeds

English farmer Jethro Tull invented a wooden seed drill, a machine that sowed seeds in straight rows. It wasted much less seed than the traditional method of scattering it by hand.



Jethro Tull's seed drill



1710

Pretty porcelain

The Meissen factory near Dresden in Saxony began making fine porcelain wares (left). European pottery makers had long sought to discover the Chinese secret of making porcelain for themselves, and Meissen's finely modeled and painted products were an instant success.



1709

Swedish defeat

Czar Peter the Great's crushing defeat of a Swedish army at the Battle of Poltava ended Charles XII's overambitious plan to invade Russia. The victory confirmed Russia as a Baltic power.

1713

Britain's slave trade

As part of the treaty ending the War of the Spanish Succession, Britain won the right to supply African slaves to the Spanish colonies. The Triangle of Trade between British ports, Africa, and the Caribbean began.

▶▶ 1700

1705

1710

1715

1701

War of the Spanish Succession

Philip of Bourbon, son of Louis XIV of France, was named as heir to the Spanish throne in 1700. The following year, the rest of Europe, headed by Austria and Britain, went to war against France to prevent this. The war lasted until 1714.



The Battle of Blenheim (1704) was a major French defeat.

1716

Spanish in Texas

The Spanish intensified their efforts to establish a presence in east Texas, USA. Spain wanted to block French expansion west from Louisiana. At that time, the land was actively colonized by French settlers as part of New France, which extended from Hudson Bay to the mouth of the Mississippi River. The Spanish established a *presidio* (fortress garrison) at San Antonio.



1707

Death of Aurangzeb

Mughal emperor Aurangzeb died at the age of 88 after a reign of 49 years. A pious Muslim and a harsh ruler, he expanded the Mughal Empire far into southern India, but, after his death, the dynasty began a long period of decline.

Mercury thermometer

German physicist Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit invented the mercury thermometer with a standardized scale in 1714. This early mercury thermometer shows the scale from -13 to 217 degrees Fahrenheit.



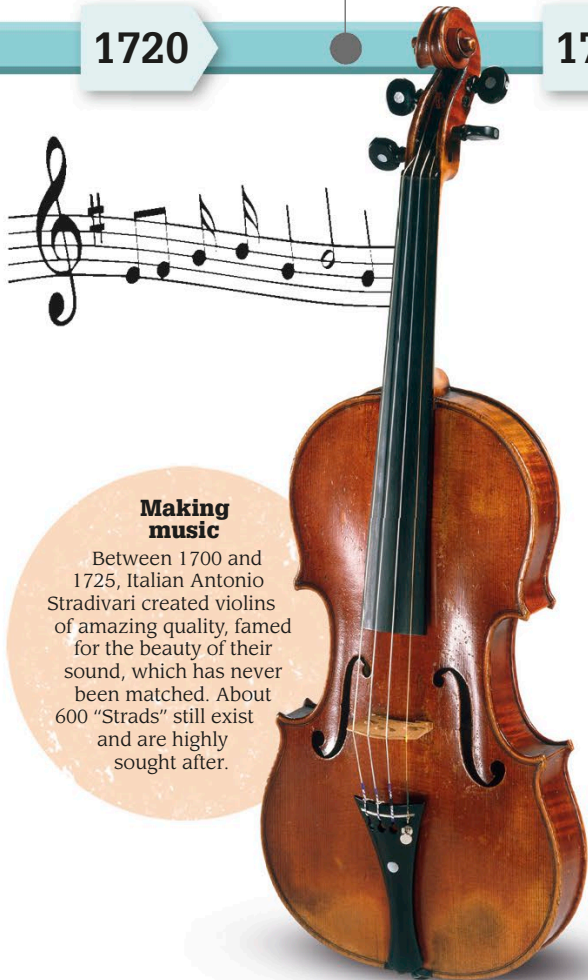
1722

Easter Island

Dutch explorer Jacob Roggeveen chanced upon an island in the eastern Pacific Ocean. It was Easter Day, and so he called it Easter Island (modern-day Rapa Nui). He found the island completely stripped of trees and with only 2,000 inhabitants. Land erosion, warfare, and food shortages had almost wiped out the Polynesian population.

1720

1725



Making music

Between 1700 and 1725, Italian Antonio Stradivari created violins of amazing quality, famed for the beauty of their sound, which has never been matched. About 600 "Strads" still exist and are highly sought after.

1716-1726 AGE OF PIRACY

The presence of Spanish treasure ships in the Caribbean had long been a target for pirates. In the early 1700s, Spanish ports were poorly defended and pirate activity intensified. There may have been as many as 2,400 pirates at this time, causing terror on the high seas as they plundered ships and seized the bounty.

Gold doubloons



Gold doubloons

The Spanish used gold and silver from the New World to mint gold doubloons and silver "pieces of eight"—the favorite booty of pirates. One doubloon was worth about seven weeks pay for a sailor. Pieces of eight were smaller change.



Blackbeard

English pirate Blackbeard (left) was said to have tied smoking fuses under his hat to frighten his enemies. He terrorized the Caribbean for two years before being killed in hand-to-hand fighting on the deck of his ship in 1718. His real name was Edward Teach.

Female pirates

Not all pirates were men. Irish-born Anne Bonny (right) joined the crew of pirate captain "Calico Jack" Rackham in 1718. She proved to be an excellent pirate, who was said to dress like a man, fight like a man, and swear like a man.



Blackbeard captured 40 ships during his time as a pirate.



The great modernizer

At first, Peter ruled jointly with his brother Ivan V. After becoming the sole sovereign in 1696, he set out to modernize Russia. He toured Europe, visiting Prussia, the Netherlands, and Britain to learn about the latest technologies, especially shipbuilding. Back home, he created a strong navy and reorganized the army.

“I built St. Petersburg as a window to let in the light of Europe.”

Peter the Great

The rise of Russia

In the 17th century, Russian settlement began to spread eastward from the Ural Mountains along the great rivers of Siberia. By 1639, Russians had reached the Pacific, and the trade in furs had become Russia’s most valuable asset. Even so, Russia was weak and backward compared to the rest of Europe. The man who changed this and turned Russia into a modern state was Peter the Great, who became czar in 1682.



St. Petersburg

Although he was born in Moscow, the capital of Russia, Peter had always disliked the city and longed to build his own capital from scratch. Victories against the Swedes provided him with land to the north of Moscow on the Baltic Sea, and in 1703 he founded the city of St. Petersburg. An intense period of building began, and in 1712 he was finally able to move the capital from Moscow to St. Petersburg.

Children play on a street in St. Petersburg in the late 1700s.

The Peter and Paul Cathedral in St. Petersburg

Key events

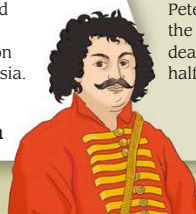
1632

Russian fur traders founded a fort at Yakutsk in Siberia, 3,000 miles (4,870 km) east of Moscow.

1670

Stenka Razin led a Cossack and peasant rebellion in southern Russia.

Stenka Razin



1696

Peter the Great became the sole czar after the death of his sickly half-brother, Ivan V.

1696

Peter the Great captured the fortress of Azov from the Ottomans, but lost it again in 1711.

1703

Peter the Great founded St. Petersburg on the Gulf of Finland, an outlet to the Baltic Sea.



Russian empresses

Unusually for the times, Russia had four women rulers in the period following Peter's death in 1725.

Catherine I (1725–1727)

The second wife and widow of Peter the Great, Catherine I rose from the peasantry in Lithuania to become the leader of Russia.



Anna (1730–1740)

The niece of Peter the Great, Anna spent most of her time fighting the Ottomans.



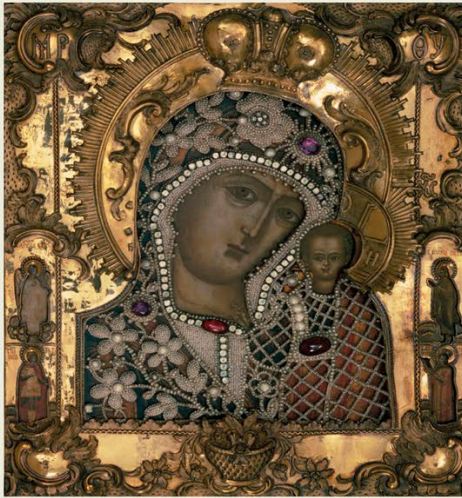
Elizabeth (1741–1762)

The daughter of Peter the Great, Elizabeth is remembered for building the beautiful Winter Palace in St. Petersburg.



Catherine II (the Great) (1762–1796)

Catherine II was a German princess who became one of Russia's greatest rulers. Russia truly became a great European power during her long reign.



Russian icon

This Russian icon (holy picture) shows the Virgin and Child, and dates from the reign of Catherine the Great. The subjects depicted on icons remained much the same over the centuries, and the icons were highly revered. Under the reforms of Peter the Great, the Russian Orthodox Church became a department of state.

Off with their beards!

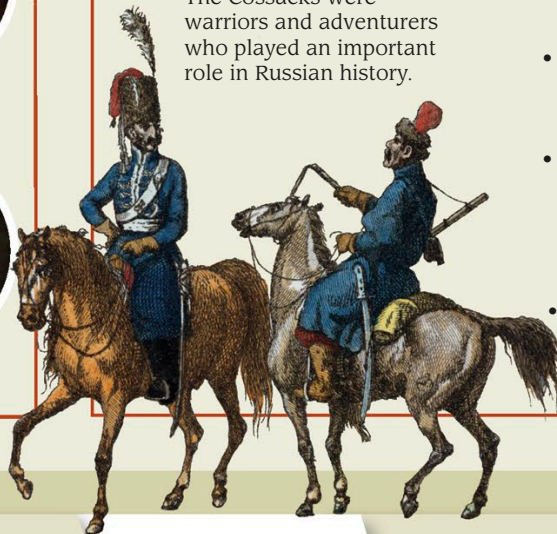
The *boyars*, Russia's hereditary nobles, were extremely proud of their long beards. Peter the Great made them wear European clothes and shave off their beards (or pay a beard tax) in an effort to modernize them.

Peter cutting a *boyar's* beard



Cossacks

The Cossacks were warriors and adventurers who played an important role in Russian history.



- Warrior bands of Cossacks originally formed in Ukraine and southern Russia to fight the Tatars.
- Cossacks were fiercely independent. Each group had its own elected *ataman*, or headman.
- In 1670–1671, Cossack leader Stenka Razin led a band of 20,000 rebels against the Russians. He was captured and executed. His exploits made him a popular folk hero.
- The Cossacks were later recruited as soldiers to guard the borders of the Russian Empire.

1709

Peter the Great defeated the army of Charles XII of Sweden at the Battle of Poltava.

1718

Alexei, the son of Peter the Great, was charged with treason and murdered on his father's orders.

1721

The Treaty of Nystad, which ended the Great Northern War with Sweden, gave Russia land on the Baltic.

1722

Peter the Great abolished the rank of *boyar* and based promotion in the army and civil service on merit.

1783

Catherine the Great annexed the Crimean region to the southwest and built a port on the Black Sea.

1725 ▶ 1750

Bering's ship was wrecked on his second expedition to Alaska in 1741.



1728

Alaskan explorer

Sailing under the Russian flag, Danish-born explorer Vitus Bering entered the narrow strait that separates Siberia from Alaska. It is now named the Bering Strait after him. In 1741, he made a landing on several of the islands off Alaska. He claimed the whole area for Russia.

1739

Looting of Delhi

Nader Shah, a military leader who had overthrown the last Safavid shah of Persia in 1736, invaded the Mughal Empire and looted Delhi in India. He carried off the Peacock Throne of the Mughals and many other treasures, including the Koh-i-Noor diamond, which is now part of the Queen of the United Kingdom's crown.



1725

1730

1735

1740

1733

Flying shuttle

British inventor John Kay patented the flying shuttle, an improvement to wool looms that enabled weavers to work faster. Kay's inventions led to protests from textile workers, who feared that he was depriving them of their livelihood.

1736

Discovery of rubber

French explorer Charles de la Condamine traveled to the Amazon and sent back samples of rubber obtained from the latex (milky fluid) of a rainforest tree, *Hevea brasiliensis*. The substance proved useful for rubbing out pencil marks, giving it the English name of rubber.

1735

Emperor Qianlong

Qianlong became the sixth emperor of China. Although he appreciated the West's technical abilities, he thought it had nothing to offer China. His reign lasted for 60 years—the longest in Chinese history.

1735

Classifying nature


Swedish botanist Carl Linnaeus published *Systema Naturae* (System of Nature), the first of three influential works, in which he devised a method of describing plants and animals by genus and species.



Classification of fish in *Systema Naturae*

172



 **Russia owned Alaska until 1867, when it was sold to the United States for \$7.2 million.**

Best breeding

English Leicester sheep (below) were bred by English agriculturalist Robert Bakewell. He improved sheep and cattle herds by selectively breeding them in order to produce more meat.



1745

1750

1746

Last battle in Britain

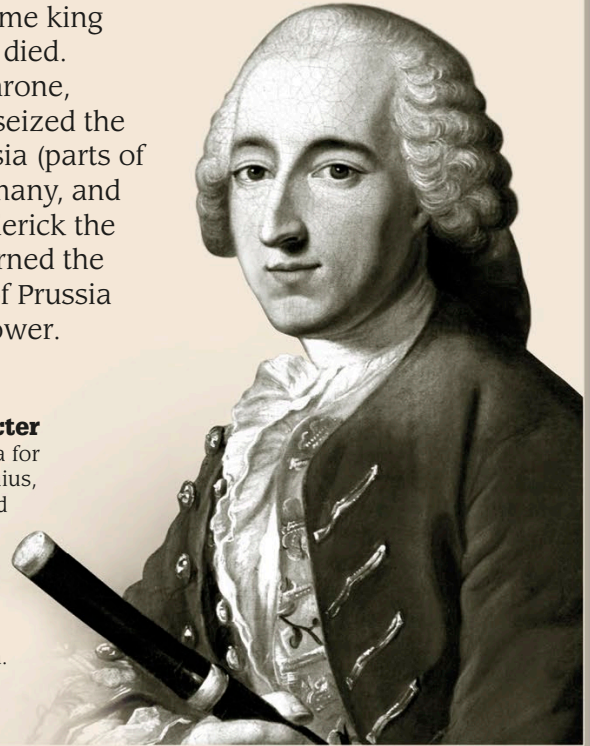
Prince Charles Edward Stuart (also known as Bonnie Prince Charlie), the grandson of the deposed King James II, landed in Scotland to reclaim the British throne. His army of Scottish Highlanders was destroyed at the Battle of Culloden (below), the last pitched battle fought in Britain.



1712–1786

FREDERICK THE GREAT

In 1740, Frederick II became king of Prussia after his father died. Shortly after taking the throne, Frederick II invaded and seized the Austrian province of Silesia (parts of present-day Poland, Germany, and the Czech Republic). Frederick the Great, as he is known, turned the small German kingdom of Prussia into a major European power.



Complex character

Frederick ruled Prussia for 46 years. A military genius, he loved literature, poetry, and philosophy, composed music for the flute, and corresponded with the French philosopher Voltaire. Despite introducing liberal reforms, he ruled as an absolute monarch.



Frederick the Great in battle

Battles won and lost

Frederick's invasion of Silesia in 1740 was the trigger for a Europe-wide war known as the War of the Austrian Succession, ended by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (1748). Frederick did not allow Europe to remain at peace for long. In 1756, he invaded Saxony, an act that led to the Seven Years' War (1756–1763), when Prussia, Great Britain, and Hanover fought an alliance of European states headed by Austria, France, and Russia. In the course of the war, Frederick successfully averted several attempts to conquer Prussia.

Frederick's gains

Brandenburg and East Prussia were the main Prussian territories when Frederick became king. Aside from adding Silesia and East Frisia, Frederick's largest territorial gain came about not through war, but as a result of the First Partition of Poland (1772), when Prussia acquired West Prussia after the breakup of the state of Poland-Lithuania.



“The boldest and biggest enterprise that any prince of my house has ever undertaken.”

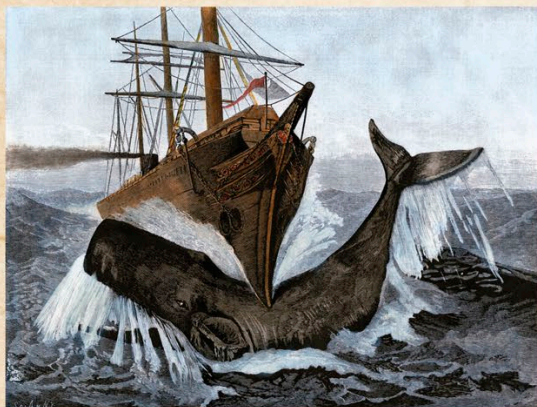
Frederick the Great on the seizure of Silesia

Life at sea



All hands on deck

As a French man-of-war prepares for battle, every man attends to his duties. A barefoot boy is shown running with a cannonball—in reality a heavy load for a grown man.



Sunk by a whale

In 1820, the whale ship Essex was sunk by a sperm whale. Thomas Nickerson, the 14-year-old cabin boy, was one of eight who survived 90 days adrift in a boat.

From the early days of sailing ships up until the 19th century, a boy as young as eight could seek his fortune at sea as a cabin boy. Cabin boys usually came from poor families, and were tempted by possible treasure or the excitement of exploring. Two boys were with Christopher Columbus on his first voyage to the New World. Generally, though, they did the most lowly jobs on board, but if a boy worked hard, he could learn the trade of a sailor, and even become an officer.

Powder monkey

On a warship, the nimblest and shortest boys might become “powder monkeys.” In battle, their job was to rush gunpowder and cartridges to the gun crews from the ammunition store, which lay deep inside the ship away from dangerous sparks. A short boy would be hidden by the sides of the ship and stood less chance of being picked out by enemy guns.

Midshipmen

Only the sons of wealthy or aristocratic families between the ages of 12 and 14 could join the navy as midshipmen to train as officers. The ship’s schoolmaster taught them how to read and perform the mathematical calculations necessary for navigation. They also learned about knots and the points of a ship, and carried out simple duties.

Harsh discipline

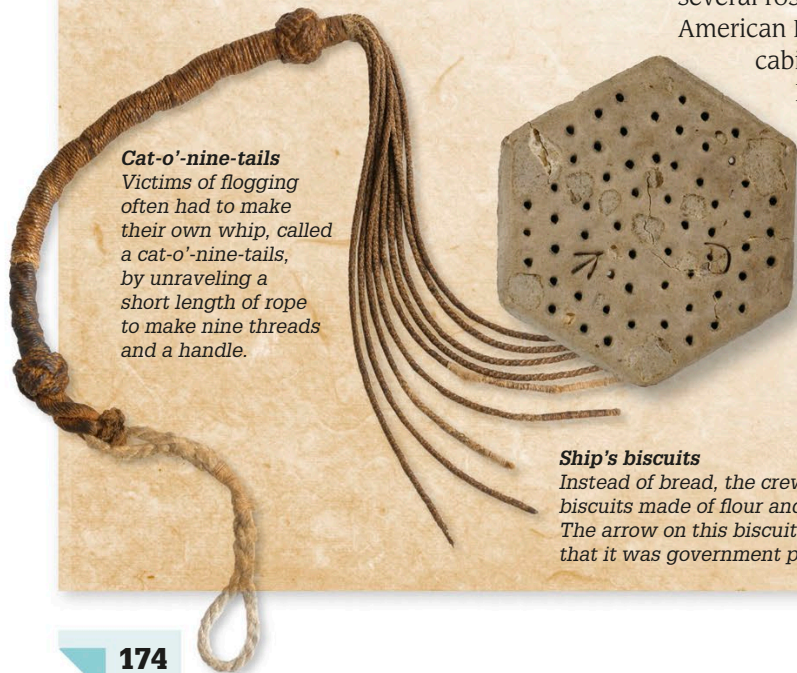
For all ranks, discipline was strict. It had to be, both for safety at sea and to keep the rough, restless crew under control in the cramped conditions on board. As punishment for a minor offense, a young sailor might be “masted”—sent up to sit near the top of the mast for a few hours, usually missing a meal. For a major crime, offenders were beaten or flogged.

Rising through the ranks

Despite the danger and harsh conditions of a career at sea, it offered many boys opportunities they would never have had on land, and several rose through the ranks. John Paul Jones, naval hero of the American Revolution, started as a ship’s boy at the age of 13. The cabin boy on Captain Cook’s first voyage to Australia, Isaac Manley, ended his career an admiral.

Cat-o'-nine-tails

Victims of flogging often had to make their own whip, called a cat-o'-nine-tails, by unraveling a short length of rope to make nine threads and a handle.



Ship's biscuits

Instead of bread, the crew ate hard biscuits made of flour and water. The arrow on this biscuit meant that it was government property.

“One morning after breakfast, all the midshipmen were sent for... and four of us were tied up one after the other to the breech of one of the guns, and flogged upon our bare bottoms with a cat-o'-nine-tails... Some received six lashes, some seven, and myself three.”

Jeffrey Baron de Raigersfeld,
Life of a Sea Officer, c. 1830

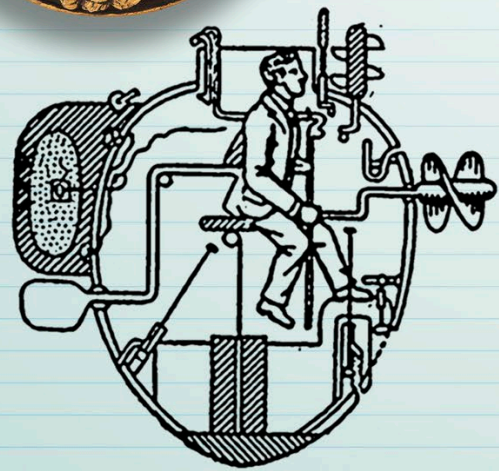
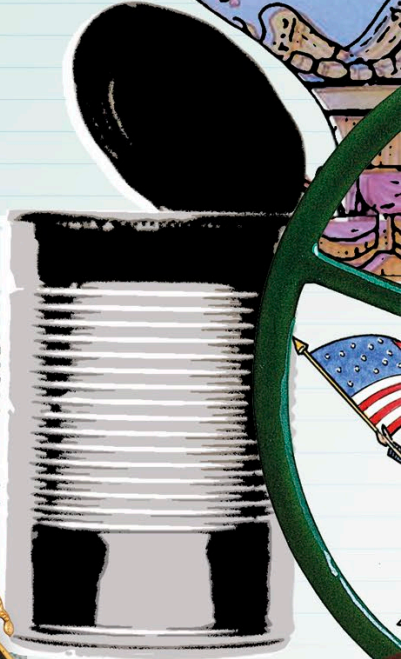
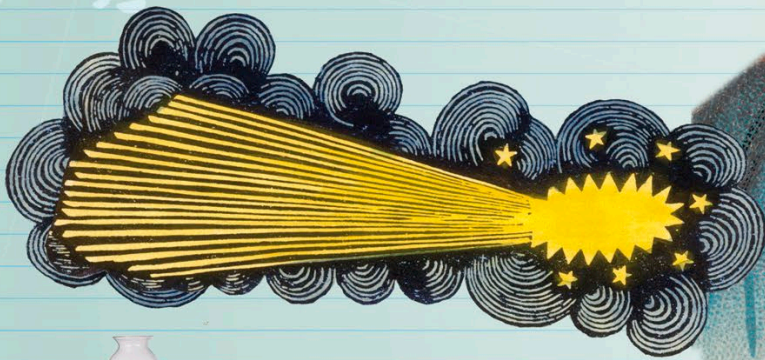
“I had made a confidant of a boy... who, like myself, considered his daily life on board the *Condor*, to be only a species of slavery.”

Daniel Weston Hull,
*Arctic Rovings: Adventures
of a New Bedford Boy*, 1861

Cabin boy

The duties of a cabin boy included waiting on the captain and crew, mopping the decks, and cleaning out the ship's pigsties and hen coops. This cabin boy is better dressed than most—bare feet and a plain shirt and pants would have been more usual.







1750–1850 Time for change

From 1750 to 1850, the world was radically transformed. Populations moved from the fields into the factories, where new technology was powering the Industrial Revolution. People dared to think differently and increasingly explained the world using science and reason rather than superstition and religion. These new ideas influenced political revolutions that toppled oppressive governments, threw off foreign powers, and hailed a new era in which people began to choose who would govern them.

1750 ▶ 1760

1752

Lightning power

American politician and scientist Benjamin Franklin experimented with the power of lightning. He flew a kite with a metal key attached to it in a storm. Sparks from the key proved that lightning is a form of electricity.



Franklin flies his kite in a storm.



A massive tsunami followed the Lisbon earthquake.

1755

Lisbon earthquake

On the morning of November 1, the people of Lisbon were preparing for All Saints' Day when an earthquake measuring about 8.5 in magnitude struck the city. Many grand buildings were destroyed as fires broke out and smoke filled the air. The city was left in ruins, with almost 40,000 dead.

“ I assure you this once opulent city is nothing but ruins... ”

Reverend Charles Davy,
eyewitness to the
Lisbon earthquake

1750

1752

Gregorian calendar

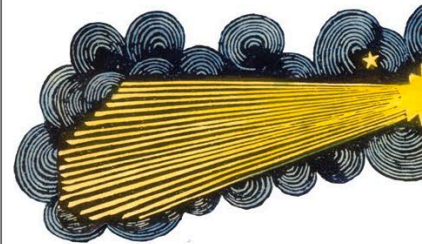
Following other European countries, Britain finally adopted the Gregorian calendar. It was first introduced by Pope Gregory XIII in 1582. Based on a cycle of 400 years consisting of 146,097 days, it makes one year 365.2425 days. This links to the tropical year—the time it takes for Earth to orbit the Sun.

1754

A new gas

Scottish chemist and physicist Joseph Black proved that a gas previously known as “fixed air” occurred in the atmosphere and also formed the breath exhaled by humans. It was made up of one part carbon and two parts oxygen, and became known as carbon dioxide.

1760



1758

Halley's Comet returns

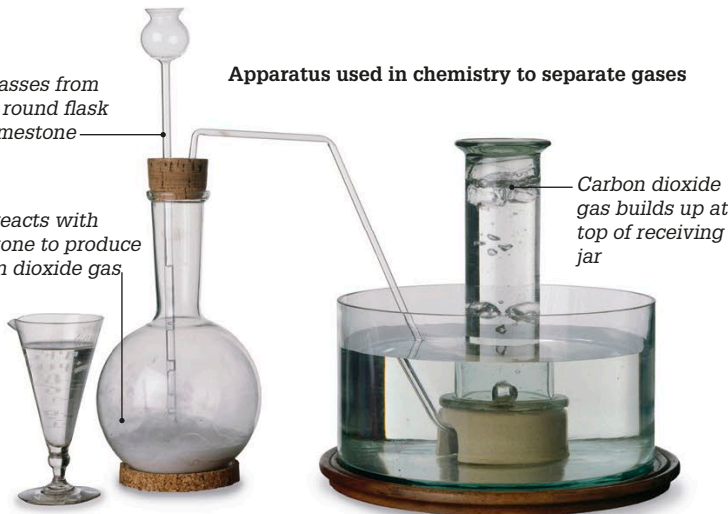
Astronomer Edmond Halley wanted to show that comets were part of the solar system and orbited the Sun in a similar way to the planets. He predicted the return of a particular comet in 1758, and was proved correct. The comet now bears his name and it comes back every 76 years.

Dilute acid passes from funnel into a round flask containing limestone

Acid reacts with limestone to produce carbon dioxide gas

Apparatus used in chemistry to separate gases

Carbon dioxide gas builds up at top of receiving jar



1756–1763 THE SEVEN YEARS WAR

The first large-scale global conflict, the Seven Years War (also called the French and Indian War) began in Europe, where the Prussians were fighting the Austrians and Russians over territory. Britain agreed to support Prussia, while France backed Austria. But since both Britain and France had colonies overseas and wanted to seize each other's territories, the fighting spilled over into North America and India.

Frederick the Great of Prussia

King Frederick II was a strong but ruthless military commander who wanted Prussia to become a wealthy European superpower. Despite battles won and lost, and the death of almost one-third of his army, Prussia held on to its territories.



King Frederick II on his horse Conde

War in India

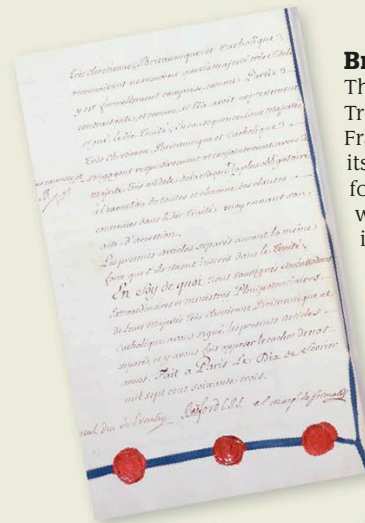
War broke out in India in 1756 when a French ally, the Nawab of Bengal, captured a British trading base at Calcutta (now Kolkata). He is said to have held 145 prisoners overnight in a small cell where almost all of them died of heat and suffocation. The famous incident became known as "the Black Hole of Calcutta."



British prisoners in "the Black Hole of Calcutta"

British Empire

The war finally ended with the Treaty of Paris (1763), when France was forced to hand over its lands in North America and forts in parts of the Caribbean and while Spain agreed to cede its Florida territory. Britain was now the world's leading colonial empire and much of America remained British.



Signatures on the Treaty of Paris

Battle of Quebec

In North America, most of the fighting took place in New France, now Canada. During the first years of the war, the French had the upper hand. That all changed in 1759 when British general James Wolfe sailed his army up the St. Lawrence River (below), taking the French by surprise and capturing the French fortress of Quebec from General Montcalm. Both Wolfe and Montcalm died from battle wounds.



1760 ▶ 1770

1760

Qing Dynasty

With the invasion of the Manchus, tribes from northeast Asia, the Qing Dynasty began. Qing emperors used military forces to extend the empire, conquering Mongolia, Tibet, Taiwan, and much of the land in western Asia that was inhabited by nomads.

Warrior on horseback

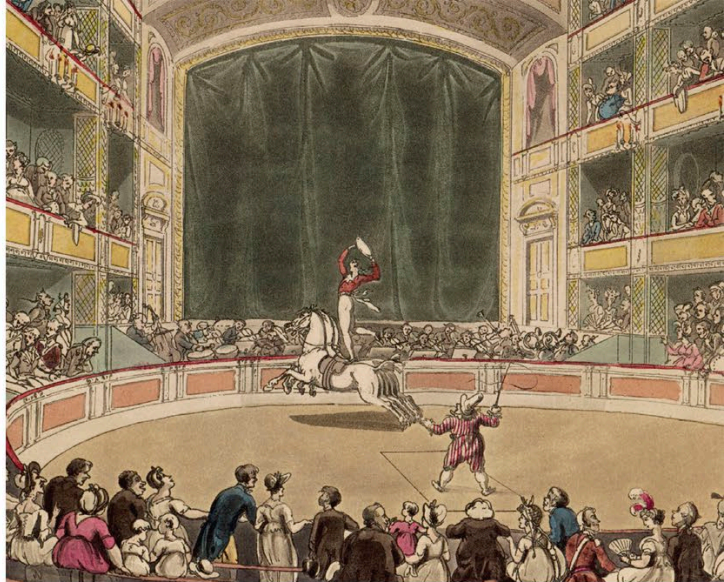


Mozart as a boy playing the piano

1764

Mozart the child star

From an early age, it was clear that the Austrian Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was a musical genius. In 1764, at the age of eight, he composed his first symphony. When he died at age 35, he left a legacy of more than 600 works.



Philip Astley's amphitheater in London

1768

Modern circus

Englishman Philip Astley was a gifted horse rider who had fought in the Seven Years War. After his return, he opened a riding school in London called Halfpenny Hatch, where he performed tricks on horseback in a ring. It was so successful that he added extra acts, including jugglers, acrobats, and musicians, creating the first true circus.

▶▶ 1760

1762

Catherine the Great

In Russia, Emperor Peter III was assassinated and his wife, Catherine, seized power. As Catherine II, ruler of Russia, she expanded its borders and also introduced reforms in agriculture and education.

Portrait of Catherine the Great



1764

Sugar Act

Eager to increase revenue from its American colonies, Britain introduced the Sugar Act, which taxed imported sugar. In 1765, it was followed by the equally unpopular Stamp Acts, which charged taxes on most printed papers, from newspapers to playing cards. This increased hostility to British rule.



Sugar was formed into cones for export.

1767

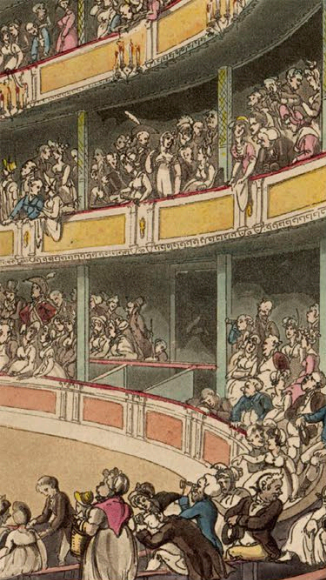
Soda water

English chemist Joseph Priestley, codiscoverer of oxygen, invented the first carbonated (soda) water after watching the reaction of gas from the brewery next to his home.



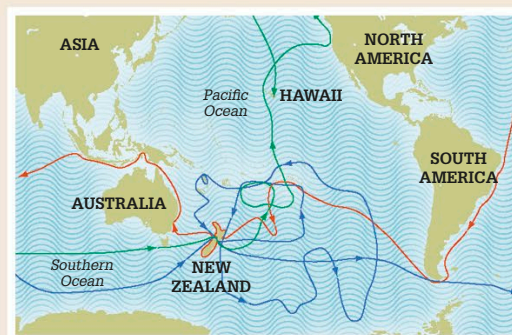
In 1762, John Montagu, the fourth Earl of Sandwich, created the now popular snack of two slices of bread with a filling in between them.





1728–1779 CAPTAIN COOK

Navigator James Cook was a farmer's son, born in Yorkshire, England, who developed his sailing skills in the ranks of the Royal Navy. In 1768, Cook was secretly ordered by the British government to find the fabled southern continent, *Terra Australis Incognita*, so he led a scientific voyage to the Pacific aboard his ship *Endeavour*. He was the first European to map out Hawaii, the eastern coastline of Australia, and the coastline of New Zealand.



Three voyages

Cook undertook three major expeditions to the Pacific Ocean. He made his first voyage in 1768 (red), the second in 1772 (blue), and the third in 1776 (green).

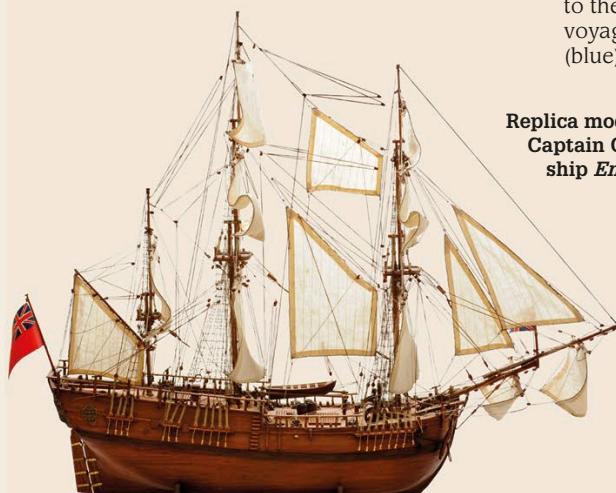
The Industrial Revolution
See pages 182–183

1770

1769

Industrial inventions

James Watt's improved steam engine and condenser were patented and manufactured. This was a key development in the Industrial Revolution that was starting in Britain. New machines and the use of steam power dramatically increased production levels.



Replica model of Captain Cook's ship *Endeavour*

Endeavour

The first ship, *Endeavour*, was chosen by Captain Cook because of its strong construction. The ship set sail with 96 men on board, including renowned botanist Joseph Banks. *Endeavour* narrowly avoided disaster after running aground near the Great Barrier Reef and had to undergo substantial repairs.

Natural world

While repairs were made to the ship, botanists searched for new species of plant and animal life. In Australia, Joseph Banks recorded tropical birds, flying fish, and stunning butterflies and plants.

Specimens discovered and recorded on the *Endeavour* voyage: hibiscus leaves and flowers, and one of the many butterflies collected



KEY DATES

1763 Cook sails to Newfoundland and makes surveys of the coast.

1768 First voyage: Cook takes Australia in the name of Great Britain.

1772 Second voyage: Cook becomes the first person to cross the Antarctic Circle.

1776 Third voyage: Cook sets sail in search of the Northwest Passage.



Britain's Coalbrookdale ironworks

Home of industry

The Industrial Revolution depended on a supply of raw materials such as water, iron, and coal—all readily available in Britain. The country also had a huge market for manufactured goods, as well as ships to transport them worldwide. There were plenty of wealthy people eager to invest money in enterprises that might make big profits.

Britain's products:

Mass production in the factories of industrialized Britain flooded world markets with a wide variety of machine-made goods. These included:

- Textiles
- Ceramics
- Metal tools
- Machinery
- Soap
- Cement



Wedgwood plate

“I sell here, Sir, what the world desires to have—power.”

Matthew Boulton,
British engineer, 1776

The Industrial Revolution

Until the mid-18th century, most people worked on the land, just as their ancestors had done for centuries. But this was about to change with new technologies that would create a different type of economy, based on manufacturing rather than farming. This Industrial Revolution started in Britain around 1750, changing society as people moved to towns to work in the new factories, and soon spread to continental Europe and the United States.



Changing landscape

As more and more factories were built in Europe, the landscape changed dramatically. Big towns sprang up around the factories to house the workers, and the air was filled with smoke from the factory chimneys. Many people lived—and died—in dirty, overcrowded conditions.

New factories at
Le Creusot, France,
in the mid-19th century

Key events

1709

Coke is used for the first time to produce iron at Coalbrookdale in northern England.

1712

Thomas Newcomen builds the first steam engine capable of pumping water.

1764

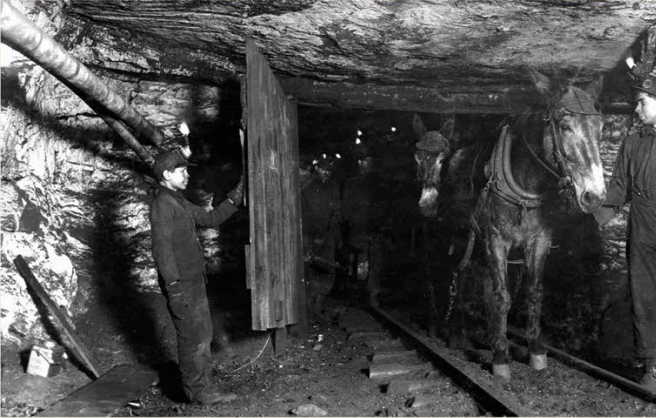
James Hargreaves invents the spinning jenny, the first multi-spindle yarn spinner.

1771

Arkwright's cotton mill uses mass-production manufacturing for the first time.

1802

The first Factory Act is passed in Britain to regulate factory working conditions.



Down in the mine

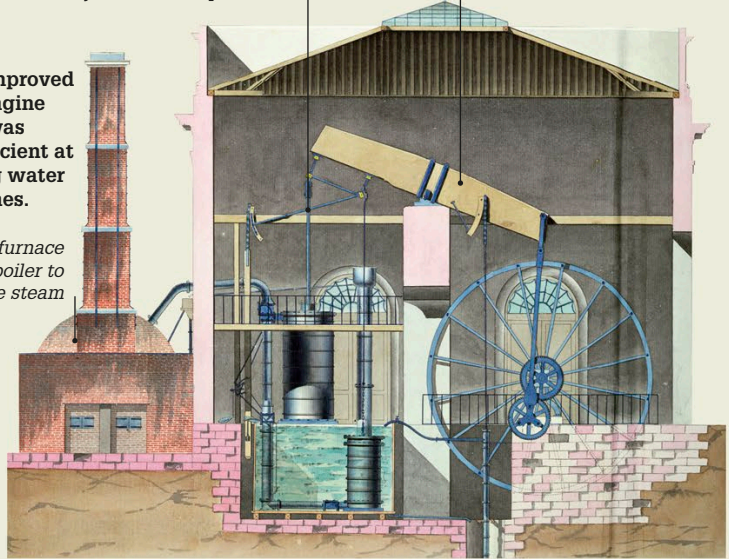
By 1800, industry relied on coal to power steam engines and to produce iron. The coal had to be mined from deep underground, which was hard and dangerous work. Men, women, and children worked long hours down in the mines. Ponies lived underground, transporting the coal through the shaft.

Watt's improved steam engine design was more efficient at pumping water from mines.

Coal furnace heats boiler to produce steam

Steam pressure in cylinder drives piston rod

Rocking beam transfers power to rotating wheel



Full steam ahead

The first practical steam engine was invented in 1712, but it was slow and jerky, and only good for pumping water out of mines. In 1776, Scottish engineer James Watt perfected an engine with a fast, smooth action that could drive machinery. This became the basis of the engines used in the first steamships and railroad locomotives.

Who's who

Isambard Kingdom Brunel

English engineer Brunel built the first high-speed railroad, reaching speeds of more than 60 mph (96 km/h) in the 1840s. He also built bridges and steamships.

Abraham Darby

In 1709, Darby perfected a way of using coke (processed coal) instead of charcoal for producing iron. This made iron much cheaper and more plentiful.

James Brindley

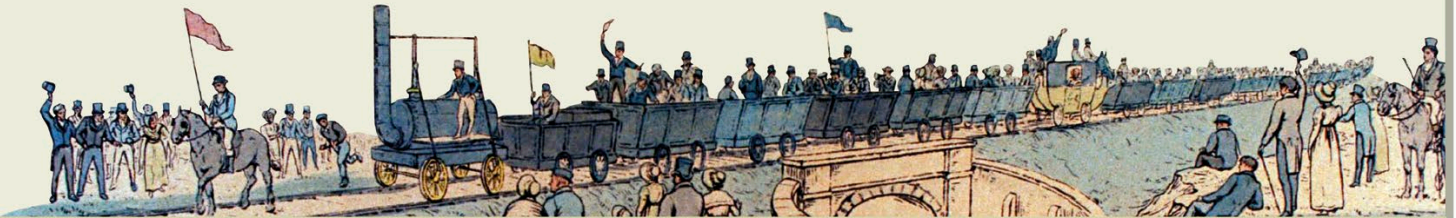
One of the most important engineers of the 18th century, Brindley created the Bridgewater Canal, which became the prototype for future canals.



Isambard Kingdom Brunel (1806–1859)

Timely travel

The first public railroad opened in England in 1825, and the network soon covered most of Britain. This radically speeded up long-distance travel, taking hours instead of days. In 1819, the American ship *Savannah* made a partly steam-powered crossing of the Atlantic, showing how steam could transform international travel as well. This marked the beginning of a brand new era of travel.

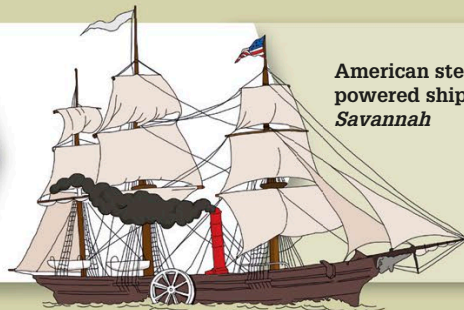


1804

English mine engineer Richard Trevithick exhibits the first steam railroad engine.

1807

American engineer Robert Fulton builds the world's first commercial steamboat.



American steam-powered ship Savannah

1825

The Stockton and Darlington Railway runs the world's first passenger train (above).



“Well, there was some little bitty children to grown old people worked in the mill, doing different things... from the cards onto the spinning and then to the weave room.”

Letha Ann Sloan Osteen, former child mill worker, South Carolina

CHILDREN IN HISTORY

Working at the cotton mill

Children's lives during the Industrial Revolution, in Europe and the United States, were very different from today. Education was not compulsory and cost money, and many families could not afford to send children to school. Instead, they worked alongside their parents. Cotton mills, in particular, employed many children, who were perfect for wriggling under the machines. Their small hands were also nimble with the threads, and they were cheaper to hire than adults.

Spinner girls

The cotton mill had a large spinning room with long rows of machines. This was where cotton was pulled into thread and wound onto spools. Girls often started out as spinners because they were considered to be more patient than boys.

Doffer boys

Young boys worked in the cotton mills as doffers. Their job was to replace full spools of thread with empty ones. While the spools were filling up, they could run off and play for short bursts. Boys could start off as doffers at age seven, and the shortest boys often had to climb up onto the working machines to reach the spools.

Dangerous equipment

The mill was a tough environment for child workers. Accidents were common because the children were inexperienced and easily distracted. Equipment was heavy and fast-moving, so in a split-second a worker's clothing, hair, or finger could get caught.

Hot work

The oppressive heat generated by all the machinery in use proved a challenge for children. Some managers at the mills let employees open the windows a little, but children would all end the day exhausted and leave in sweat-drenched clothes.

“We'd ride the elevator rope up to the pulley and slide back down. I was riding one day and was looking round over the spinning room and my hand got caught under the wheel... that thing was mashed into jelly.”

James Pharis, who began working in the Spray Cotton Mill in North Carolina at age eight

Break time

This girl is taking a break from her work in the spinning room of the Globe Cotton Mill in Georgia. Children could take breaks and less strict supervisors gave them permission to go outside to play.



Family business

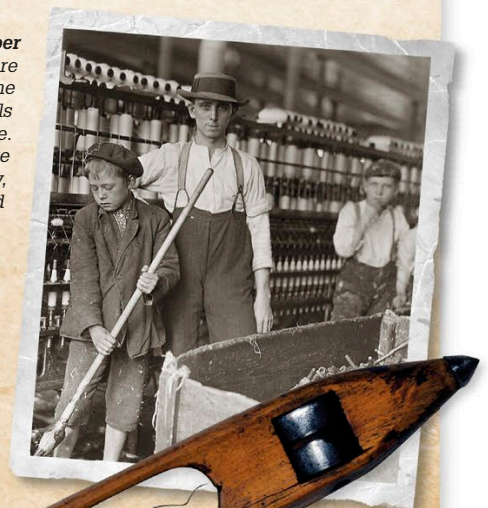
Mrs. Young's husband died, leaving her with 11 children. Two left to get married. Except for the youngest children, all the others worked at the Tifton Cotton Mill in Georgia.

“If a child becomes sleepy, the overlooker touches the child on the shoulder and says, ‘Come here.’ In the corner of the room there is an iron cistern filled with water. He takes the boy by the legs and dips him in the cistern, and then sends him back to work.”

Jonathan Downe, English cotton mill worker, 1832

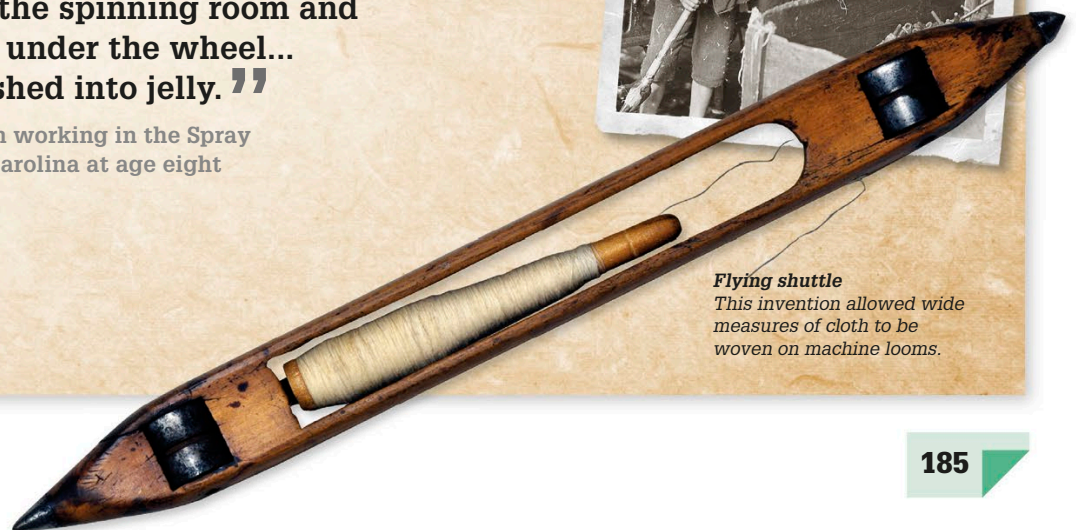
Sweeper

These boys are working at the Elk Cotton Mills in Tennessee. When they were not on doffer duty, they worked as sweepers, clearing the floors of stray cotton and lint.

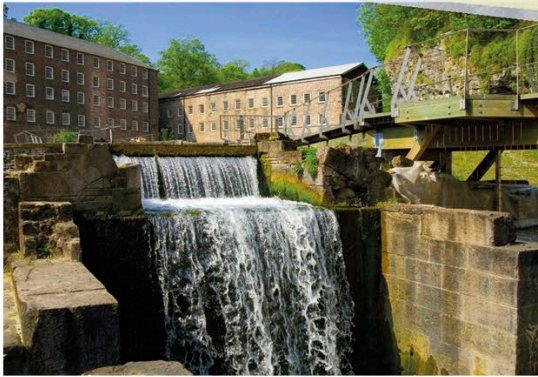


Flying shuttle

This invention allowed wide measures of cloth to be woven on machine looms.



1770 ▶ 1780

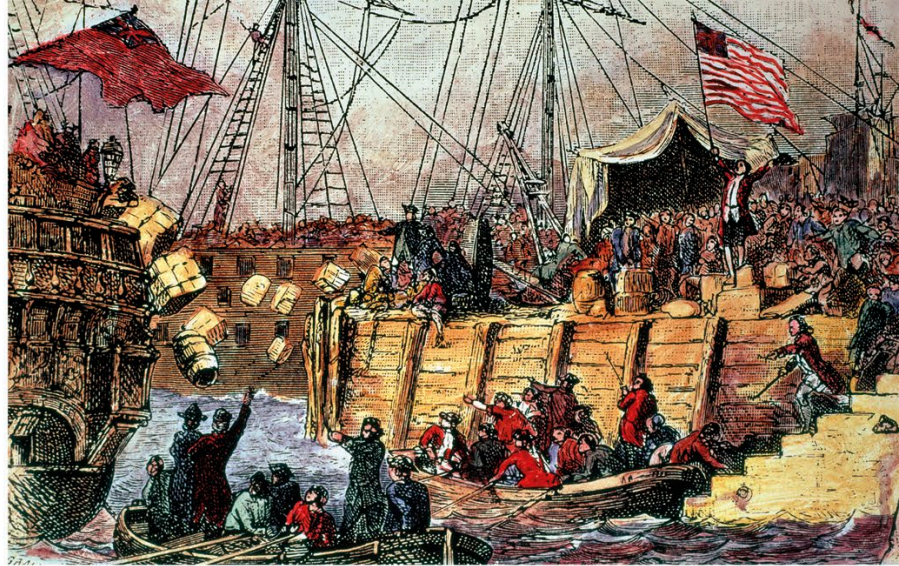


Arkwright's first water mill at Cromford in Derbyshire, England

1771

Arkwright's mill

When English inventor Richard Arkwright discovered he could harness the power of free-flowing water, he set up the first water-powered textile mill. Production increased so rapidly that he was able to open many more mills in England and Scotland.



A huge crowd watches as 342 chests of tea are thrown into Boston Harbor.

1773

Boston Tea Party

In protest at new laws imposed on tea imports by the British government, a group of American colonists boarded cargo ships in Boston Harbor and dumped their entire load of tea into the water. The event became known as the Boston Tea Party.

1775

Revolution in America

Following years of tension, the American Revolutionary War began in 1775, when colonists united against British rule. The first shots were heard at the battles of Concord and Lexington, where the colonists were victorious.

▶▶ 1770



When Marie Antoinette first became queen, she was admired for her beauty and charm.

1770

French connection

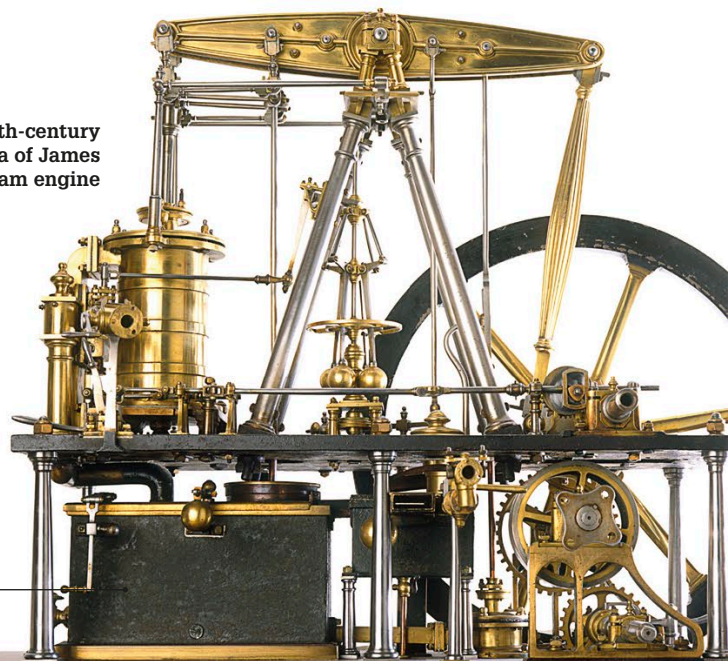
At age 15, the French king's eldest son, Louis-Auguste, entered an arranged marriage with 14-year-old Austrian archduchess Marie Antoinette. In 1775, he was crowned King Louis XVI and inherited a country in grave financial trouble.

1776


Steaming ahead

Scottish engineer James Watt, a pioneer of steam power, improved steam engine design with a separate condensing chamber that prevented the loss of steam and increased efficiency. The new engine would be used to power factories and mines.

18th-century replica of James Watt's steam engine



Separate cistern containing condenser and air pump

 In 1770, English chemist Joseph Priestley discovered how effective rubber is for erasing pencil marks.



1779

Murder in Hawaii

During his third voyage, English explorer James Cook made the fatal decision to return to Hawaii. A fight broke out over alleged thefts by the local inhabitants, and Cook and some of his men were killed in the skirmish.

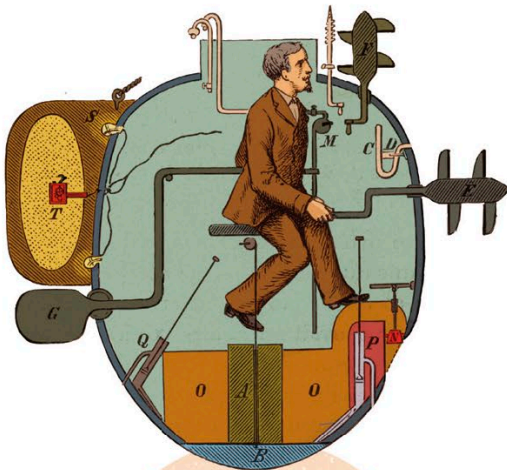


Hummingbird hawk moth (*Macroglossum stellatarum*)



Wide-mouthed purpura shells (*Purpura patula*)

1780



The Turtle

Built in 1776, the *Turtle* was the world's first submarine. It was used in the American Revolutionary War, when the operator attached a mine to an enemy ship, but the attack failed due to technical problems.

THE ENLIGHTENMENT

During the 18th century, people began to cast aside their old beliefs based on religion and superstition, and started to reason for themselves. Scientists and philosophers across Europe dared to think differently and their new ideas influenced politics, economics, and science. This exciting movement became known as the Enlightenment, or the Age of Reason.



Challenging ideas

A key figure of the Enlightenment was the French writer, historian, and philosopher Voltaire. He championed ideas, seen as very dangerous at the time, such as freedom of religion, freedom of expression, and the separation of church and state.

“Science is organized knowledge. Wisdom is organized life.”

Immanuel Kant, German philosopher

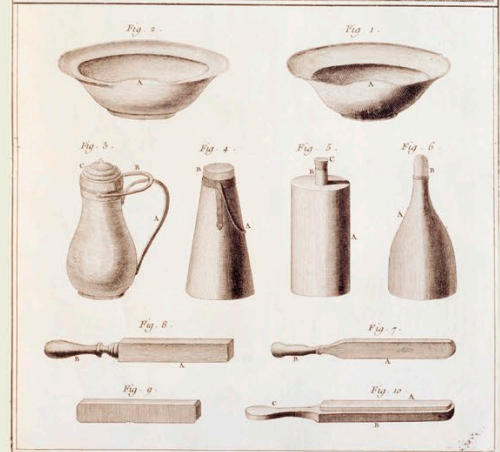


A scientific approach

The Swedish botanist Carl Linnaeus developed a universal system for describing plants and animals, using Latin names for their genus and species. This binominal (two-name) system is still used today.

The first encyclopedia

In 1751, French philosopher and writer Denis Diderot published the first volume of his encyclopedia, or “dictionary of science, arts, and crafts.” The work aimed to cover everything, including the ideas of the Enlightenment and information about all trades. It took more than 20 years to complete.



A page on the tools and craft of a wigmaker



American Revolution

During the 1760s, the provinces on the East Coast of North America were British colonies. But the colonists had no representation in the British parliament, so when it was decided to make them pay taxes, they refused. Fighting broke out and the Americans declared their independence. The war ended with British defeat in 1781, and the birth of a new nation—the United States of America.

Thirteen colonies

The Americans who rebelled against British rule lived in 13 colonies founded on the East Coast between 1607 and 1732. The 13 stars of this American flag represent the colonies, and it dates from around 1860.

- ★ Delaware
- ★ Pennsylvania
- ★ New Jersey
- ★ Georgia
- ★ Connecticut
- ★ Massachusetts Bay
- ★ Maryland
- ★ South Carolina
- ★ New Hampshire
- ★ Virginia
- ★ New York
- ★ North Carolina
- ★ Rhode Island

“We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal...”

US Declaration of Independence, 1776



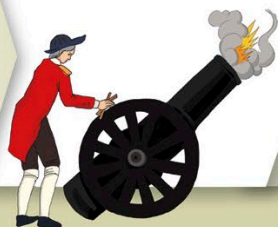
Declaration of Independence

After the first big battle of the war at Bunker Hill in June 1775, the English king, George III, denounced the colonists as rebels against British rule. The Americans responded with a Declaration of Independence, which was signed on July 4, 1776. The first draft was written by lawyer Thomas Jefferson, who would go on to become the third president of the newly created United States of America.

Key events

1764

The Sugar Act, and later the Stamp Act, are taxes imposed by the British on the American colonies against their will.



1770

Five colonists are killed by British soldiers during an anti-British rally in Boston—an event known as the Boston Massacre.

1773

At the Boston Tea Party, colonists dump valuable chests of tea into Boston Harbor as a protest against taxation.

1775

The war begins when the colonists defeat the British at the Battle of Concord, and then lose at Bunker Hill.



Redcoats



Loyalists

Who's who

The early battles of the war were fought between the British soldiers, known as redcoats, and part-time colonial militias, known as riflemen or minutemen (because they were ready to fight at a few minutes' notice). Some colonists sided with the British, and were known as loyalists. In June 1775, the new Continental Congress appointed George Washington commander of a properly trained Continental Army, but it took time to set up.



Riflemen



Minutemen



Continental Army



Musket

Heroes and villains



Paul Revere

American revolutionary hero Paul Revere (1734–1818) was best known for his “midnight ride” from Charlestown to Lexington in April 1775 to alert Patriots to an impending British attack.



John Paul Jones

Scotsman John Paul Jones (1747–1792) was a naval captain who settled in America and fought for the Revolution. He is famous for engaging the British navy in his ship *Bonhomme Richard*.



Benedict Arnold

As an American commander, Benedict Arnold (1741–1801) was highly effective, but he changed sides after losing faith in the war. His secret negotiations with the British made him a traitor.

Battles with the British

The first shots were fired at Lexington on April 19, 1775, leading to a British defeat at nearby Concord. A few weeks later, the British won a costly battle at Bunker Hill, but as the war continued, the Americans became better organized under the command of George Washington. After a British defeat at Saratoga in 1777, the French entered the war on the American side. The alliance was too much for the British, who finally surrendered after an 18-day siege at Yorktown, Virginia, in 1781.

This painting shows General Cornwallis surrendering his sword to Washington—in reality, Cornwallis refused to meet him.



1776

The Declaration of Independence is signed on July 4.



1777

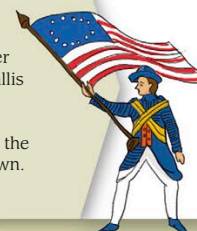
American forces under General Gates capture a demoralized British army at Saratoga in New York State.

1778

France enters the war on the American side, and is soon followed by Spain. Both begin fighting the British on land and sea.

1781

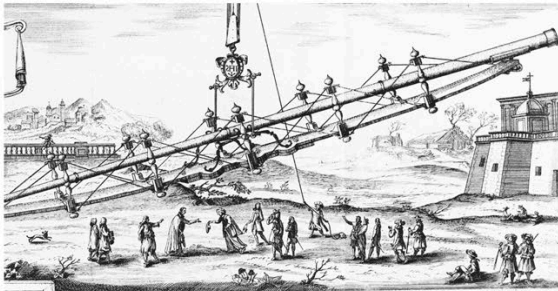
The British under General Cornwallis surrender to American and French forces at the Battle of Yorktown.



1783

Britain acknowledges the United States to be a free, sovereign, and independent nation under the Treaty of Paris.

1780 ▶ 1790



William Herschel's giant telescope

1781

A new planet

British astronomer William Herschel discovered Uranus, the first new planet since ancient times. Herschel built his own telescopes and constructed more than 400 in his lifetime, including one that was 40 ft (12 m) long.



1783

Balloon brothers

In June, French brothers Joseph and Étienne Montgolfier gave the first public demonstration of a hot-air balloon. On this occasion, the balloon was tethered to the ground, but in November, an improved design made the first manned free flight.

Straw and wool were burned to fill the Montgolfier balloons with hot air.

1785

Power loom

English clergyman Edmund Cartwright patented his steam-powered, mechanically operated loom for weaving cloth. It went on to revolutionize the textile industry.

1787

US Constitution

After the American Revolution, leaders from the 13 US states met to make rules about how the country should be run. These rules became known as the Constitution. Part of it decreed that there should be an elected president.

1780

1782

A new Thai dynasty

Siam, now Thailand, had been ruled by King Taksin for 15 years. After a power struggle following his death in 1782, a new dynasty was established by the Chakri. This dynasty still rules today.



Laki volcano in Iceland today

1783

Laki volcano

Clouds of poisonous gases from the dramatic eruption of Laki volcano destroyed crops and livestock and caused terrible famine in Iceland. There was also a global drop in temperature, and crop failure in Europe.

1784

East India Company

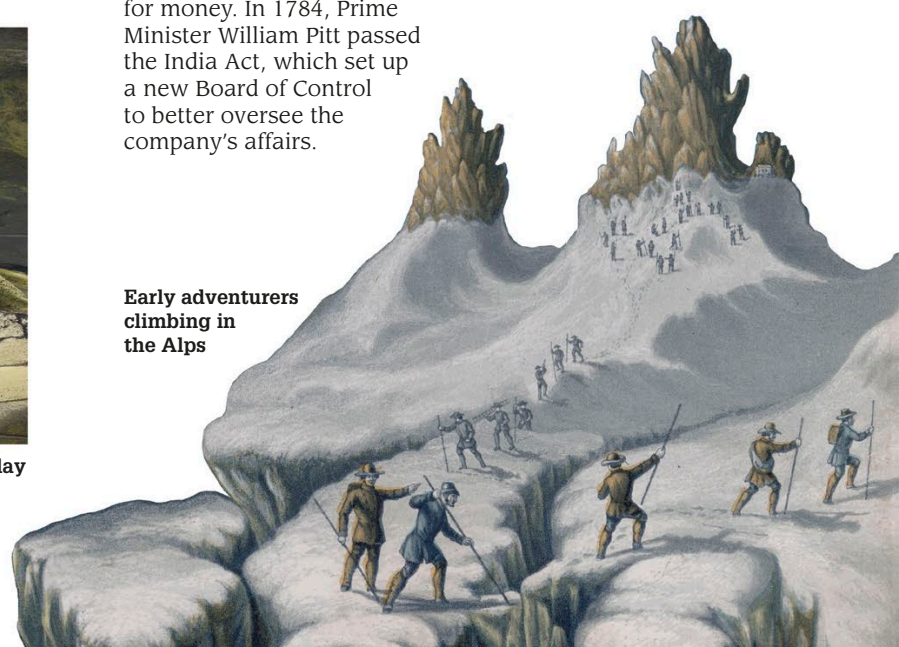
In 1600, British merchants established the East India Company to trade with India. Over the years, it formed its own military and administrative departments and made increasing demands on the British Government for money. In 1784, Prime Minister William Pitt passed the India Act, which set up a new Board of Control to better oversee the company's affairs.

Early adventurers climbing in the Alps

1786

Scaling Mont Blanc

The highest mountain in Europe, Mont Blanc in the Alps, was conquered for the first time by two Frenchmen, Dr. Jacques Balmat and Michel-Gabriel Paccard. They climbed without ropes or ice axes.





1789

First US President

General George Washington, commander-in-chief of the army and the navy, was elected as the first US President. He took the oath of office in New York City, the capital at the time. He led a new government, shaping its institutions, offices, and political practices.

1790



The French Revolution
See pages 192–193

1789

Storming of the Bastille

In Paris, an angry mob of French citizens stormed the Bastille prison, a symbol of the monarchy, to release prisoners and seize ammunition.



Frog's legs

In the 1780s, Italian biologist Luigi Galvani discovered that the muscles of a dead frog's legs twitched when struck by an electric spark. His experiments would go on to reveal the electrical nature of the nervous system.



In 1887, a settlement was established in Sierra Leone, West Africa, for freed slaves from British colonies.

1788 THE COLONIZATION OF AUSTRALIA

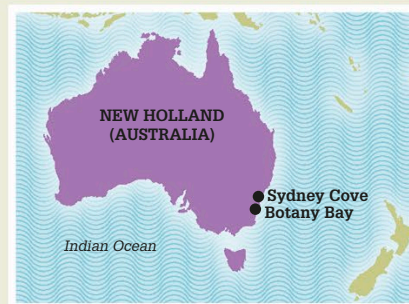
In 1788, 11 ships of the British First Fleet arrived at Botany Bay, Australia. About 778 of the passengers were convicts sent by the government to ease prison overcrowding. The fleet moved on in search of fresh water and landed in Sydney Cove, where a British flag was raised and the first European colony settled.

First Australians

The original inhabitants of Australia arrived more than 40,000 years before Europeans. They lived by hunting and gathering, and believed that their land went back to the Dreamtime—the ancient era of creation. When European settlement began, at least 300,000 Aboriginals lived in Australia. Relations between the two races deteriorated quickly as settlers spread across their land.



Boomerangs were used for hunting by the Aboriginal people.

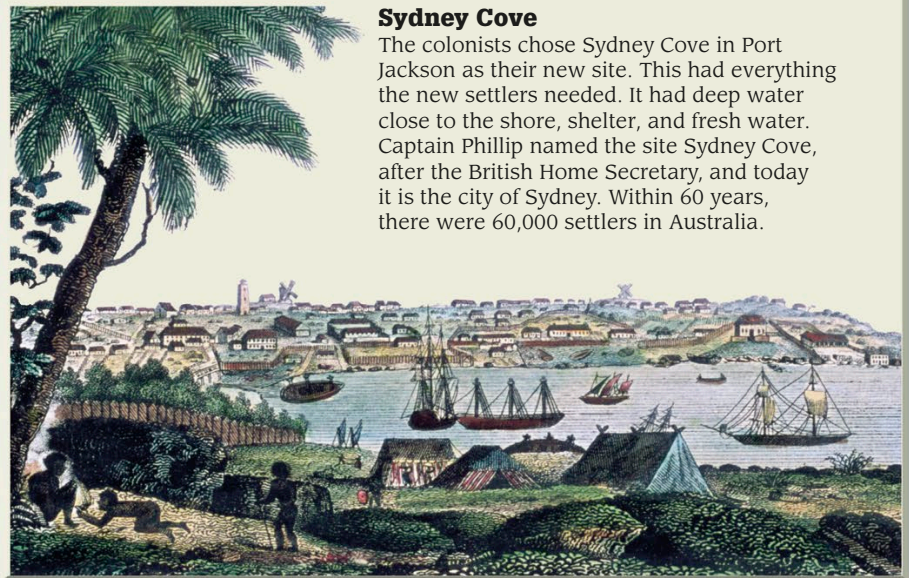


New Holland

The large landmass of Australia lies in the Indian Ocean. When Dutch explorer Abel Tasman first sailed around the land in 1642, he named it New Holland.

Sydney Cove

The colonists chose Sydney Cove in Port Jackson as their new site. This had everything the new settlers needed. It had deep water close to the shore, shelter, and fresh water. Captain Phillip named the site Sydney Cove, after the British Home Secretary, and today it is the city of Sydney. Within 60 years, there were 60,000 settlers in Australia.



The French Revolution

In 1788, France was ruled by a king, queen, aristocracy, and clergy who lived in luxury, while many of their subjects starved. Just five years later, the king and queen were dead, along with thousands of others, and the country was controlled by radical revolutionaries who abolished the monarchy and nobility, and attacked Christianity. Centuries of tradition and privilege were swept away, but the chaos cleared the way for a new era of political freedom and democracy.



Tennis Court Oath

When Louis XVI became king in 1774, France was bankrupt. His attempts at reform were blocked, and by 1789 bread shortages were causing riots. In a bid to raise taxes, Louis called a meeting of the Estates General parliament. It was the first meeting since 1614. But the representatives of the common people, the Third Estate, declared that they alone had the right to be the "National Assembly." Meeting in an indoor tennis court in June (above), they swore an oath to create a new constitution for France.

“Liberty, equality, fraternity!”

Rallying cry of the French Revolution



Storming of the Bastille

On July 14, 1789, a rumor that the king was going to shut down the National Assembly caused a riot in Paris. Around 600 rioters attacked the Bastille prison, a symbol of the absolute power of the king. They freed the seven prisoners held inside and proceeded to destroy the fortress. The Revolution had begun.

Key events

1789

The National Assembly is established and the Bastille is stormed. Later, there is the Versailles protest and the bread riots.



1790

The National Assembly abolishes the nobility.

1791

The king and queen try to flee France but are captured and kept under guard.

1792

The guillotine is used to execute prisoners for the first time.

1793

King Louis XVI is sent to the guillotine and the "Reign of Terror" begins.

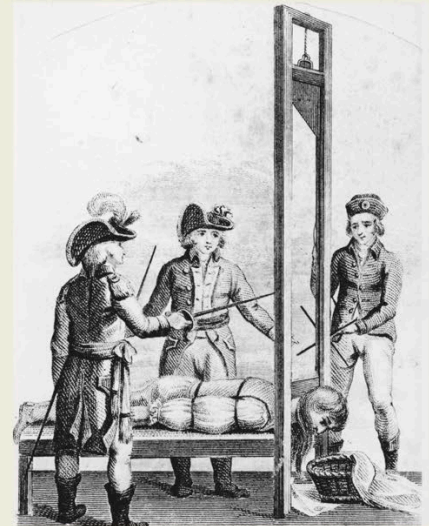




Armed female protesters head for Versailles.

March on Versailles

By September, the National Assembly was in virtual control of the government, but there were still bread shortages. On October 5, about 7,000 armed market women marched on the royal palace of Versailles, demanding bread for their hungry families and calling for the king to move from Versailles to Paris. He was forced to agree.



Reign of Terror

After the death of the king, the radicals, led by Maximilien Robespierre, began a ruthless campaign against aristocrats and other "enemies of the Revolution." Between 18,000 and 40,000 people were condemned and killed, mostly by public execution under the guillotine. The period was known as the "Reign of Terror."

Who's who

The French Revolution was driven by the anger of poor, hungry people ruled by rich aristocrats. They were encouraged by radical politicians who wanted to destroy the political power of the aristocracy and the Catholic Church. Some revolutionaries went by curious names:



Sans-culottes

The name means "no shorts," since the workers could not afford short silk *culottes*.



Les tricoteuses

The women who knitted as they watched the daily executions became known as "Les Tricoteuses" (knitters).



Jacobins

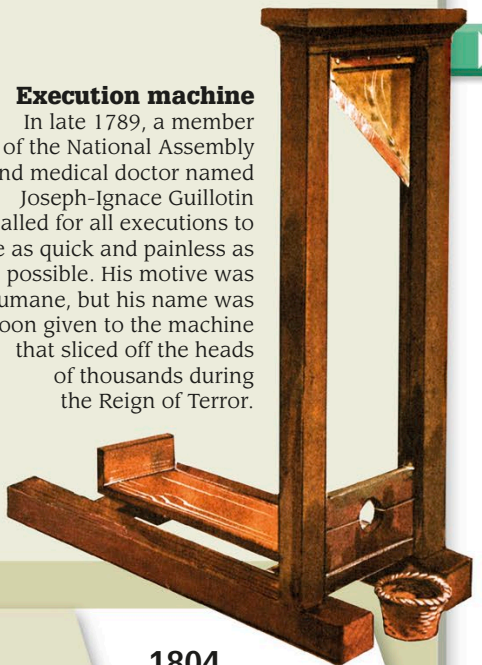
Radical activists called Jacobins took over the government and began the Reign of Terror.

Power shift

In 1791, Louis XVI and Queen Marie Antoinette tried to escape France in disguise. They were caught and sent back to Paris under armed guard, and all political power passed to parliament. In January 1793, Louis was executed, and Marie Antoinette followed nine months later.



The royal coach is captured.



Execution machine

In late 1789, a member of the National Assembly and medical doctor named Joseph-Ignace Guillotin called for all executions to be as quick and painless as possible. His motive was humane, but his name was soon given to the machine that sliced off the heads of thousands during the Reign of Terror.

1794

Maximilien Robespierre is arrested and sent to the guillotine.

1795

Heir to the throne Louis Charles dies in prison. The Jacobins are replaced by a less radical government called the Directory.

A blue-and-red cockade showed that a person was a revolutionary.



1799

The Directory is overthrown by Napoleon Bonaparte, who takes power as First Consul.

1804

Napoleon Bonaparte crowns himself Emperor of France.

1790 ▶ 1800



Engraving of L'Ouverture revolting against the French

1791

Haitian slave revolt

Inspired by the revolution in France, slaves working on plantations in the colony of Haiti seized the opportunity to revolt. Toussaint L'Ouverture emerged as the leader of the revolution, helping Haiti to become the first black-ruled state.

1790

1792

Women's rights

Writer, philosopher, and feminist Mary Wollstonecraft published *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*. Her radical book argued that women only appeared inferior to men because girls never had an equal right to education.



Mary Wollstonecraft (1759–1797)

1793

Fruity cure

When it was discovered that the disease scurvy was caused by a lack of vitamin C, the British admiralty began supplying citrus fruit to its sailors on board ships.



Lemons, used to prevent scurvy

1793

Death of Louis XVI

The French king was charged with treason, found guilty, and condemned to death. On January 21, he was guillotined.

Early vaccination kit



1796

First vaccination

English doctor Edward Jenner carried out the first vaccination—giving a patient a mild or reduced-strength injection of something in order to prevent a more serious disease.

Volta battery

After years of experimenting, Italian inventor Alessandro Volta built the voltaic pile, or battery. This was the first practical method of generating electricity. Volta published his findings in 1800, and the unit “volt” is named after him.



Voltaic pile

1799

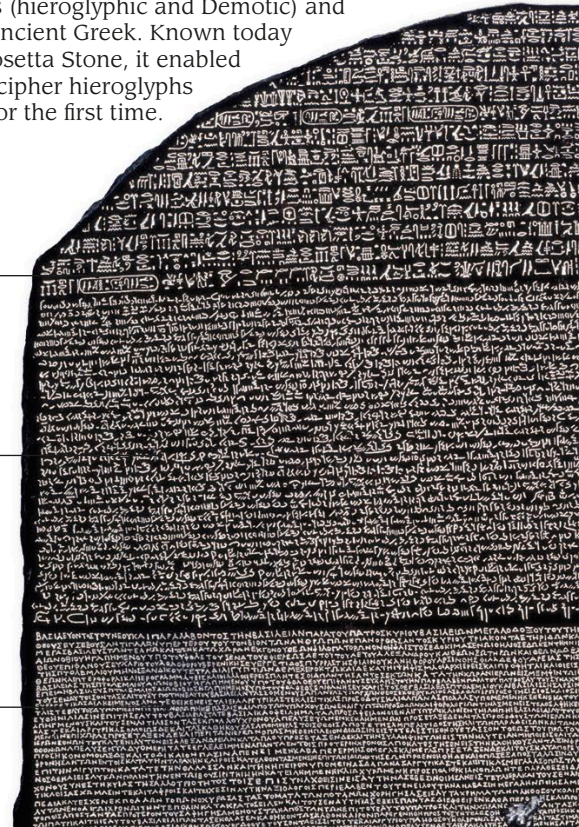
Rosetta Stone

French soldiers in Egypt unearthed a stone inscribed with three versions of the same passage, two written in Egyptian scripts (hieroglyphic and Demotic) and one in ancient Greek. Known today as the Rosetta Stone, it enabled experts to decipher hieroglyphs for the first time.

Ancient Egyptian hieroglyphic

Demotic

Ancient Greek





Napoleon's throne

1769–1821 NAPOLEON BONAPARTE

A driven and fearless soldier, Napoleon Bonaparte came to power at the end of the French Revolution. His military genius brought him many victories and resulted in much of Europe coming under French control. He also introduced a system of law, the *Code Napoléon*, that gave poor people in France new rights. However, his ambition was his undoing and he ended his life in exile.

Empire of France

Napoleon was crowned emperor in 1804 at the Notre Dame Cathedral in Paris, thus ending the Republic. His reorganization of the territories he conquered, in Italy and parts of Germany, had a profound impact, including the ending of the Holy Roman Empire.

Military hero

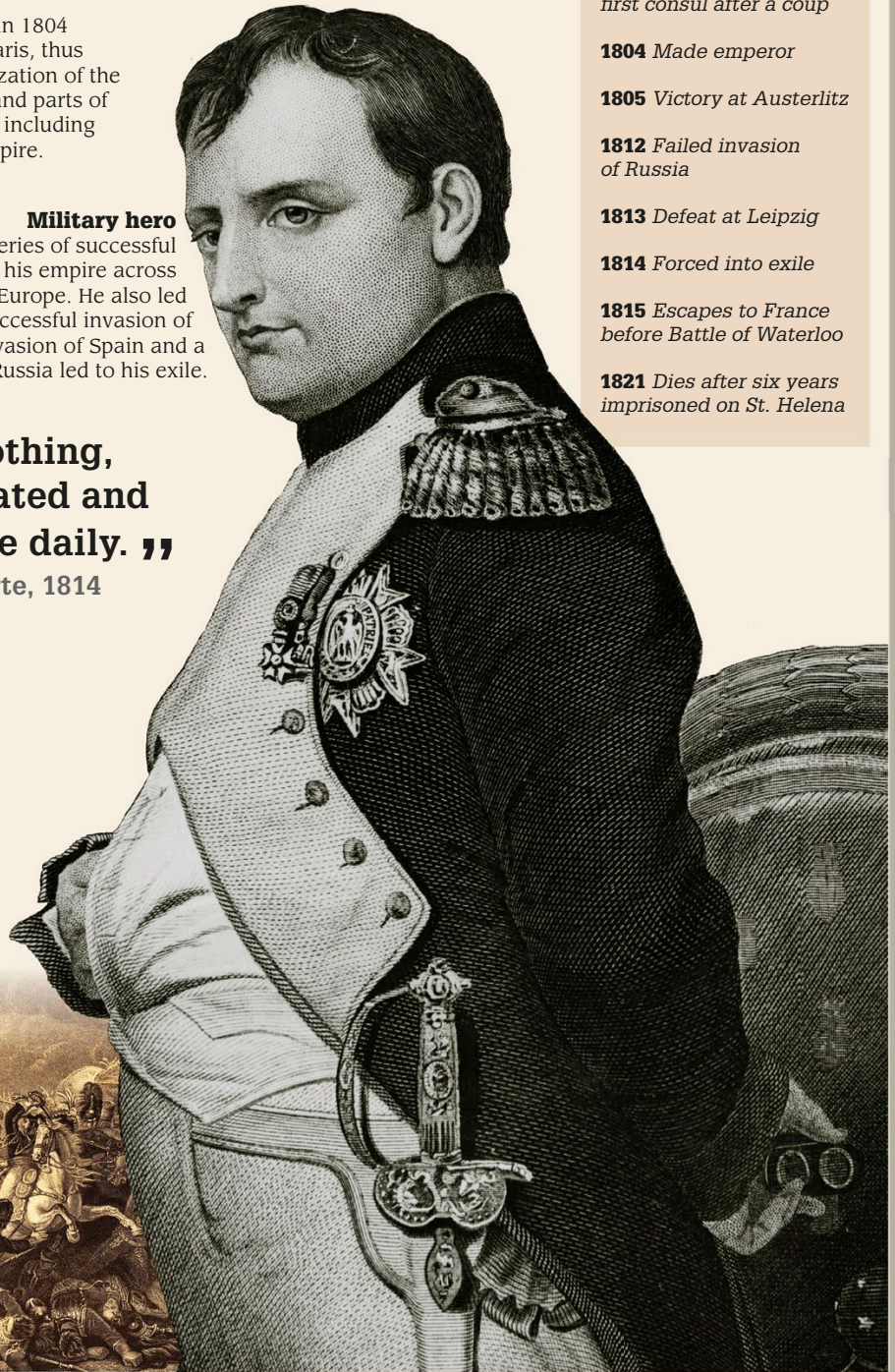
Napoleon headed a series of successful battles and expanded his empire across western and central Europe. He also led the French army to a successful invasion of Egypt. However, the invasion of Spain and a disastrous invasion of Russia led to his exile.

“Death is nothing, but to live defeated and inglorious is to die daily.”

Napoleon Bonaparte, 1814

Battle of Waterloo

Napoleon escaped to France and continued to wage war. The Battle of Waterloo, near Brussels, in 1815, was the last military engagement of the Napoleonic Wars. It was fought between Napoleon's army and coalition forces, led by the Duke of Wellington from Britain and General Blucher from Prussia. The outcome of this closely fought battle saw the end of 26 years of fighting between European powers and France.



KEY DATES

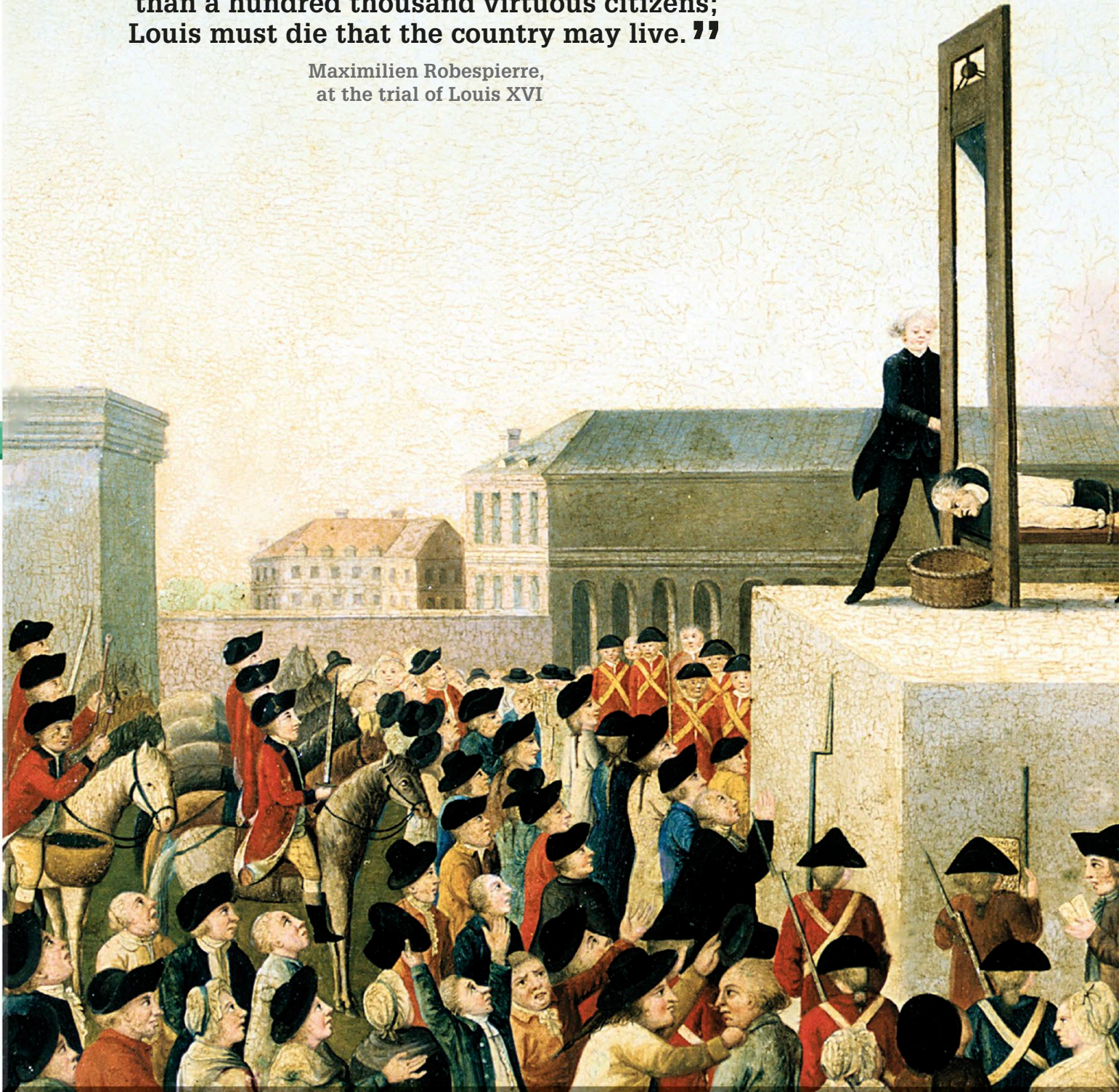
- 1769** Born in Corsica
- 1796** Made commander of the French army in Italy
- 1798** Conquers Ottoman-ruled Egypt
- 1799** Appoints himself first consul after a coup
- 1804** Made emperor
- 1805** Victory at Austerlitz
- 1812** Failed invasion of Russia
- 1813** Defeat at Leipzig
- 1814** Forced into exile
- 1815** Escapes to France before Battle of Waterloo
- 1821** Dies after six years imprisoned on St. Helena

1800

JANUARY 21, 1793, FRANCE

“It is with regret that I pronounce the fatal truth: Louis ought to perish rather than a hundred thousand virtuous citizens; Louis must die that the country may live.”

Maximilien Robespierre,
at the trial of Louis XVI



Louis XVI was executed in the Place de la Révolution.

Execution of Louis XVI

On a bleak winter's morning in January 1793, a green coach trundled through the streets of Paris on its way to the Place de la Révolution. Inside was Louis XVI, king of France, guilty of high treason and sentenced to death. After more than 1,000 years of monarchy, France had become a republic in 1792 and was now ready to execute its former king. The blade fell at 10:22 a.m., watched by 20,000 people. One of the assistants showed the king's head to the crowds, and their cheers and artillery fire rang out to celebrate a new era.



1800 ▶ 1810

1801

Act of Union

Negotiated by Prime Minister William Pitt, the Act of Union was passed by the Irish and British parliaments despite much opposition. It created the United Kingdom, abolished the Irish parliament, and united the Church of Ireland and England.



Union flag—the flag of the United Kingdom

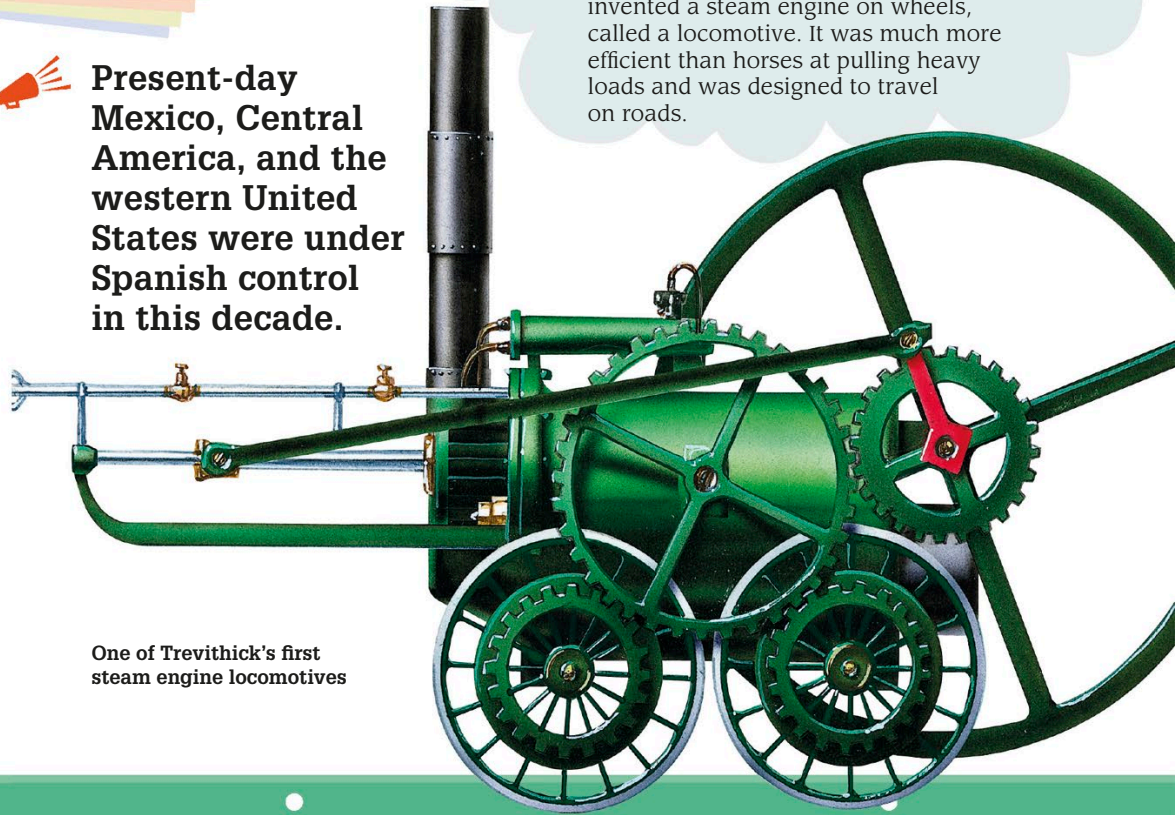


Present-day Mexico, Central America, and the western United States were under Spanish control in this decade.

1804

Steam locomotives

English engineer Richard Trevithick invented a steam engine on wheels, called a locomotive. It was much more efficient than horses at pulling heavy loads and was designed to travel on roads.



One of Trevithick's first steam engine locomotives

1800

1803 LOUISIANA PURCHASE

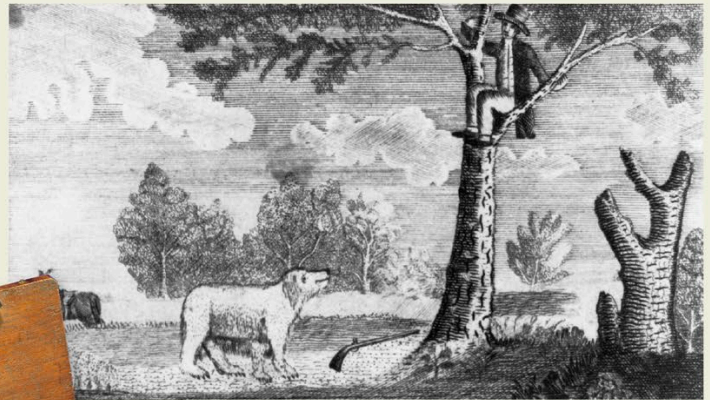
With France's finances in trouble, Napoleon decided to raise funds by selling the Louisiana Territory to US president Thomas Jefferson. This transaction doubled the size of the United States and gave it control of the Mississippi River and the port of New Orleans.



Louisiana Territory

Louisiana was a large territory that covered what is now Oklahoma, Nebraska, Kansas, Missouri, and Iowa, plus parts of nine other states.

Pocket compass used during the Lewis and Clark expedition



Lewis and Clark

Facing unknown dangers, Meriwether Lewis and William Clark set out on a two-year trek across the Louisiana Territory to find and explore the best trade route through the area by water. They confronted American Indian tribes and saw wild animals that had never been described before, including new species of beaver.

This engraving shows one of Lewis and Clark's team hiding in a tree, taking shot at a bear.



THE ROMANTIC MOVEMENT

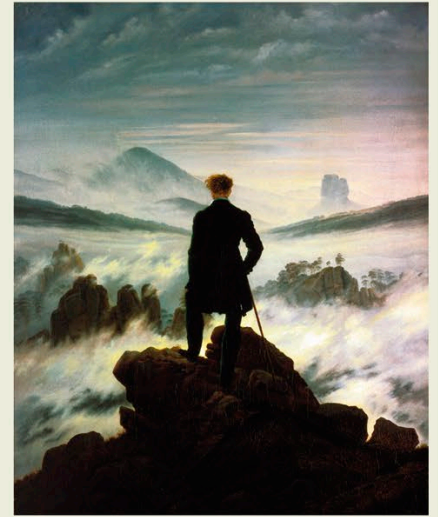
The Romantic Movement was a reaction to the industrial world of the time, influencing art, literature, philosophy, and music. Artists wanted to convey emotion and imagination, often setting them within the natural world. This

was a direct challenge to the scientific reasoning of the Enlightenment. It was most active in western Europe, especially England and Germany.



Beethoven's music

German composer Ludwig van Beethoven (1770–1827) wrote some of the most famous symphonies and sonatas for the piano at this time. Although he gradually lost his hearing, Beethoven continued composing.



Wanderer above the Sea of Fog (1818)

German landscapes

Caspar David Friedrich was a German Romantic artist whose work emphasized the beauty of nature. When people appeared in his paintings, they were shown in silhouette.

1806

Empire's end

The Holy Roman Empire—a Central European empire ruled by emperors appointed by the pope—was an unusual union of territories that had existed since 962 CE.

It was finally ended when the last emperor, Francis II, abdicated.

1810

1805

Battle of Trafalgar

For five hours, the Battle of Trafalgar raged at sea, pitting the navies of France and Spain against Great Britain. It ended with a clear victory for the British, although Lord Horatio Nelson died from his battle wounds.



Warring ships at the Battle of Trafalgar

The slave trade
See pages
200–201

1807

Abolition of slave trade

During the 18th century, Britain had one of the largest fleets of slave ships. But in 1807, the slave trade was brought to an end by William Wilberforce, a member of the British parliament who fought tirelessly for the abolition of all forms of slavery.

William
Wilberforce
(1759–1833)



1808

Peninsular War

This six-year war was fought for control of the Iberian Peninsula with Spanish, Portuguese, and British forces pitted against the French under Napoleon. Defeat at the Battle of Vitoria in 1813 contributed to Napoleon's demise and established the British Duke of Wellington's reputation.

“ You may choose to look the other way but you can never say again that you did not know. ”

William Wilberforce,
discussing slavery in 1789



The slave trade

Since the beginning of history, there have been people forced to work as slaves, with no reward and no liberty. In ancient times, many slaves were prisoners of war or criminals. But in the 16th century, slavery became a profitable trade that stole the lives of more than 12 million Africans. They were kidnapped, sold to traders, then shipped to the Americas in such appalling conditions that many died on the way.

Forced labor

The Atlantic slave trade exploited the labor of African men, women, and children who were forced to work in the colonies of Brazil, the Caribbean islands, and mainland North America (now the United States). They worked as farm laborers on the plantations, as miners, and as servants. They had no rights, and most were granted only the most basic necessities and brutally punished for any disobedience.

“I should have quitted it sooner, had I considered it, as I do now, to be unlawful and wrong. But I never had a scruple on this head at the time.”

John Newton, former slave trader turned abolitionist, from *Thoughts Upon the African Slave Trade*, 1788



Slave auctions

By the 1780s, between 80,000 and 100,000 enslaved Africans were being forcibly transported to the Americas every year. Those who survived the voyage were sold at auction, and became the legal property of their buyers. The strongest and fittest slaves brought the highest prices. Families might be split up, never to see each other again.

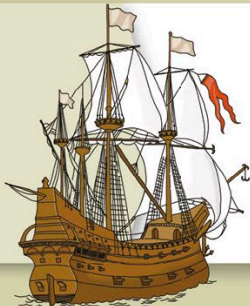
Slaves were transported in chains.



Key events

1510

The first African slaves to cross the Atlantic are shipped to South America by Spanish traders.



1672

The Royal African Company is set up in London to trade goods with Africa and buy slaves.

1780

The Atlantic slave trade reaches its peak. Most of the slave traders are British-born.

1787

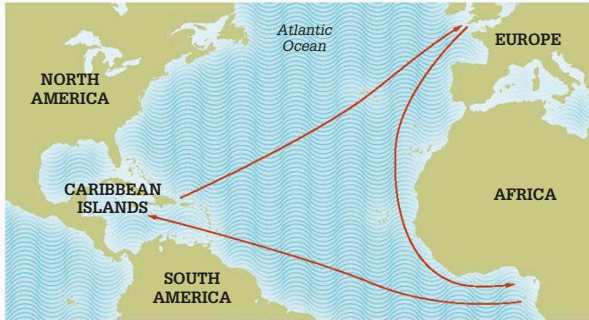
A campaign for the abolition of the slave trade is launched in Britain by William Wilberforce.

1803

Denmark becomes the first European country to abolish slavery and the slave trade.

Trading system

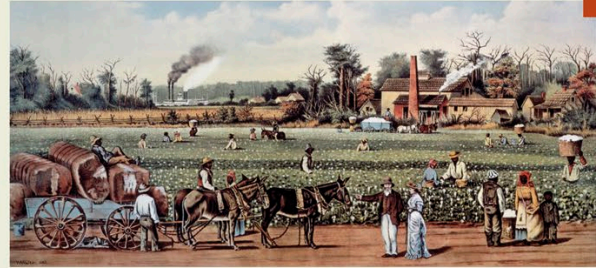
Slave ships set sail from ports around Europe, loaded with iron, guns, wine, and textiles. They headed to West Africa where the goods were exchanged for slaves. The slaves were shipped across the Atlantic to sell to land owners in the Caribbean and North America. The ships returned to Europe laden with sugar, coffee, and tobacco.



Triangular trade

The route taken by the slave ships from Europe to Africa to the Americas and back again was known as the triangle of trade.

Slaves were bought in West Africa, where they boarded slave ships.



Cotton plantation on the Mississippi

Plantations

Slaves in America and the Caribbean were made to work on plantations—big estates where crops were grown. Slave labor reduced costs, so owners made huge profits.

Plantation goods included:

- Sugar
- Cotton
- Cocoa
- Tobacco
- Coffee
- Rice

Inside a cocoa bean

Coffee beans



Abolition of slavery

After 20 years of campaigning, activists such as British politician William Wilberforce succeeded in getting Britain to outlaw the Atlantic slave trade in 1807. Slavery throughout the British Empire was abolished in 1834, as commemorated by this coin. In the United States, it continued until the end of the Civil War in 1865. Slavery was outlawed in Brazil in 1888, finally ending it entirely in the Western Hemisphere.



Slave ships

The slaves were crammed so tightly below the decks that they could barely move during a voyage lasting up to ten weeks. During the 1700s, up to 10,000 slaves were dying on board the ships every year.



A model of the slave ship *Brookes* showing how the slaves were packed close together on board

1807–1808

Britain declares the abolition of the slave trade, but not the institution of slavery itself, as does the US in 1808.

1825–1850

Almost 70,000 slaves are shipped from Africa each year in defiance of the slave-trade ban.

1833

The American Anti-Slavery Society is founded by abolitionists in the United States.

1860

There are 4 million slaves in North America and their value is estimated at \$4 billion.

1865

Slavery is abolished in the United States under the presidency of Abraham Lincoln.

1810 ▶ 1820



Mural showing Miguel Hidalgo

1810

Call to arms

In Mexico, Priest Miguel Hidalgo called people to join him in a revolt against the government. His rallying speech became known as *Grito de Dolores*, or Cry of Pain, and led to the Mexican War of Independence.

1811

Luddites

Skilled workers, later known as Luddites, wrecked looms in textile mills to protest against the new machinery that was making their jobs redundant.

1812

War of 1812

America declared war on Great Britain as a result of numerous disputes. The main reasons cited were the British navy forcing American sailors to join its warships and British ships blockading US ports. The war ended with the Treaty of Ghent in 1814.

1812

Grimm's Fairy Tales

German brothers Jacob and Wilhelm Grimm published the first volume of folk tales. The 86 stories included the tales of Snow White, Hansel and Gretel, and Rapunzel.

Snow White and Rose Red, one of the stories in *Grimm's Fairy Tales*



1814

Congress of Vienna

Following the fall of Napoleon's army, a congress of the great powers of Europe met in Vienna, Austria, to settle the future boundaries of the whole continent. This resulted in the restructuring of Europe, which stood until World War I in 1914.

1810

1810

Tin can

British merchant Peter Durand patented his idea for preserving food in tin cans. The first cans had to be hammered open.



1811-1825

INDEPENDENCE IN SOUTH AMERICA

For most of South America, independence from Spain and Portugal came between 1811 and 1825. In Colombia, Venezuela, and Ecuador, Simón Bolívar led the way. In the south, Jose de San Martin and Bernardo O'Higgins liberated Argentina and Chile. Brazil declared itself independent of Portugal in 1822.



The Liberator

Simón Bolívar was a Venezuelan military hero who played a leading role in the fight for independence and earned the nickname *El Libertador*. He freed Peru, and Bolivia was renamed in his honor.

Miranda and Bolívar sign the Declaration of Independence.

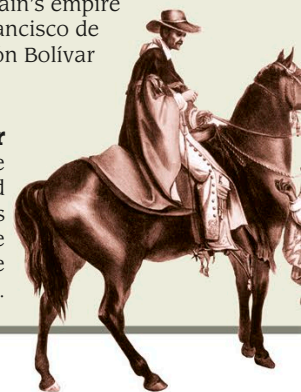


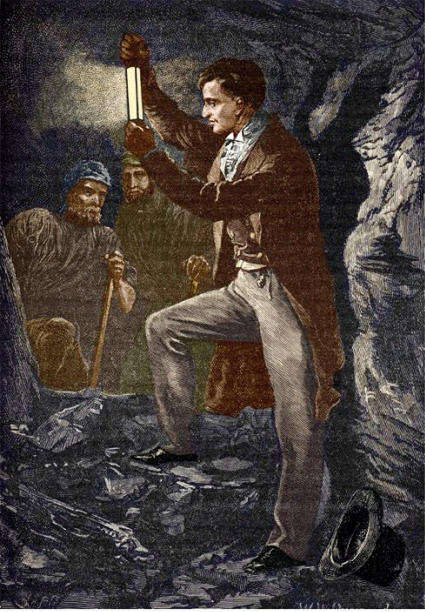
Venezuela

In 1811, Venezuela became the first part of Spain's empire to break away. Francisco de Miranda and Simón Bolívar led the campaign.

Civil war

Argentina gained independence in 1816, but a civil war followed between city dwellers and ranchers of the provinces. Argentine ranchers, called gauchos, were opposed to government.





1815

Sir Humphry Davy testing his lamp

Safety lamp

Miners' lives were made safer when English chemist Sir Humphry Davy invented a special lamp for use in gas-filled coal mines. This replaced earlier lamps, which could spark off a fire.

1817

Basic bicycle

German Baron von Drais introduced a new machine to the public in Paris. It had two wheels connected by a wooden frame. The rider sat astride and pushed it along with his feet while steering the front wheel.



The Draisienne or "hobby horse"

1820

1816

First stethoscope

French physician René Laennec invented the first stethoscope using a rolled paper tube to funnel the sound. In addition to magnifying the heartbeat, it also helped doctors understand how blood moves through the heart. The tube design was later adapted to have two earpieces.



Argentine gauchos



Laennec's single-tubed stethoscope enabled him to listen to a patient's heartbeat.



1818

Science fiction

Considered one of the earliest examples of science fiction, English novelist Mary Shelley wrote *Frankenstein* during a trip to Switzerland. In the book, Victor Frankenstein, an arrogant Swiss chemist, conducts an experiment to create life. Instead, he creates a monster who will haunt him forever.

1819

Singapore

Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles, an agent of the British East India Company, arrived in Singapore in search of a suitable trading port. After signing a treaty with the Temenggong—the local Malay chief—and Sultan Hussein, he established the free port of Singapore, and the Union Jack flag was officially raised.



The year 1816 was known as "the year without a summer" as clouds of gas and dust from the volcanic eruption of Indonesia's Mount Tambora circled the world, causing heavy rain and snowfall.

1820 ▶ 1830



Present-day Antarctica

1820

A new continent

Although others had sailed close, Russian explorer Thaddeus von Bellingshausen was the first person to see the ice shelf that edges the continent of Antarctica. The sound of penguins convinced him that land was nearby.

▶▶ 1820

1822

Florida handover

Florida was ruled by Spain until, in 1819, Spain handed over the territory to the US and it was admitted to the Union in 1822. This was part of a deal to cancel \$5 million in debts owed by the Spanish. In 1845, Florida officially became the 27th state.

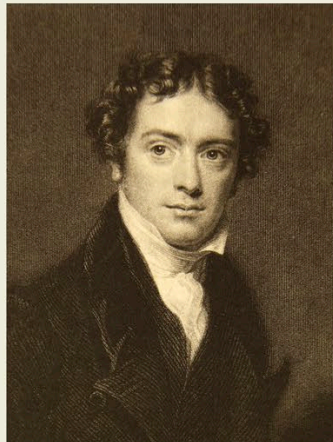
1822

Independent Brazil

When the Portuguese royal family fled their country in 1808 as Napoleon invaded, they sailed to their colony in Brazil. Although King Jao VI returned to Portugal in 1821, his son Pedro remained in Brazil and became Emperor Pedro I. He declared Brazil's independence the following year.

ELECTRICITY

The energy of electricity had always fascinated scientists and, during the first half of the 1800s, the understanding of its true potential advanced rapidly. In 1821, following Danish physicist Hans Christian Oersted's discovery of electromagnetism, Michael Faraday demonstrated how to make electricity from magnetism.



Michael Faraday (1791–1867)

Michael Faraday

The son of a poor blacksmith from the north of England, Michael Faraday received very little formal education. However, he had an intuitive understanding of physics and became one of the most influential scientists of his time.

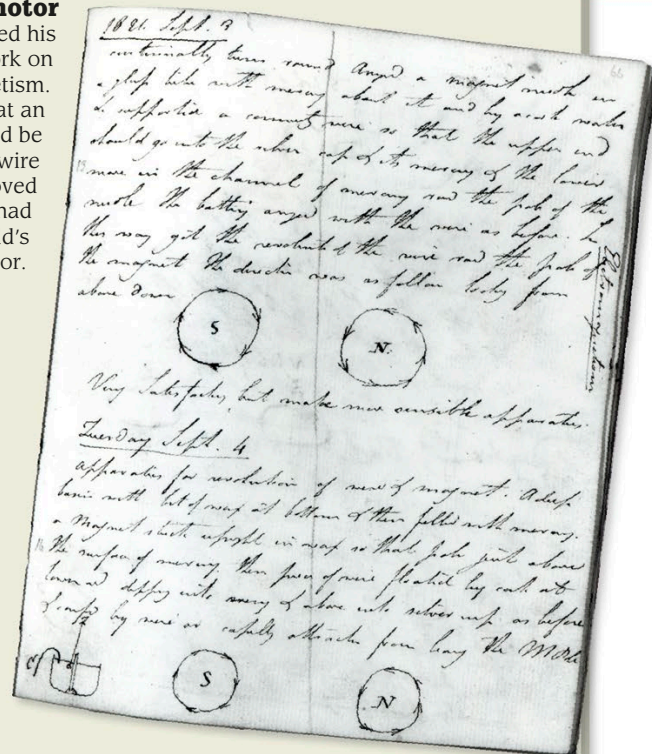
“ Nothing is too wonderful to be true if it be consistent with the laws of nature. ”

Michael Faraday,
from his diary, March 19, 1849

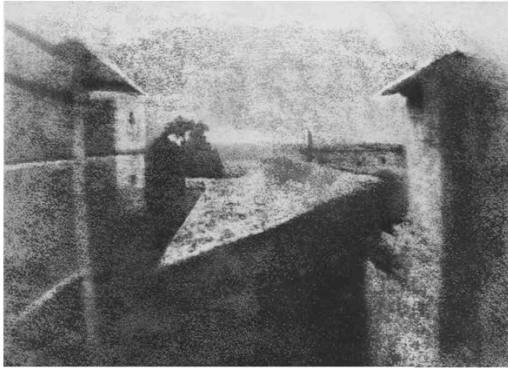
Electric motor

In 1821, Faraday started his most important work on electricity and magnetism. He demonstrated that an electric current could be produced in a coil of wire when a magnet was moved through the coil. He had invented the world's first electric motor.

Details of Faraday's electric motor were recorded in his laboratory notebook.



In 1824, **Australia** is finally adopted as the name of the country once known as New Holland.



View from the Window at Le Gras, the world's first photograph

1826

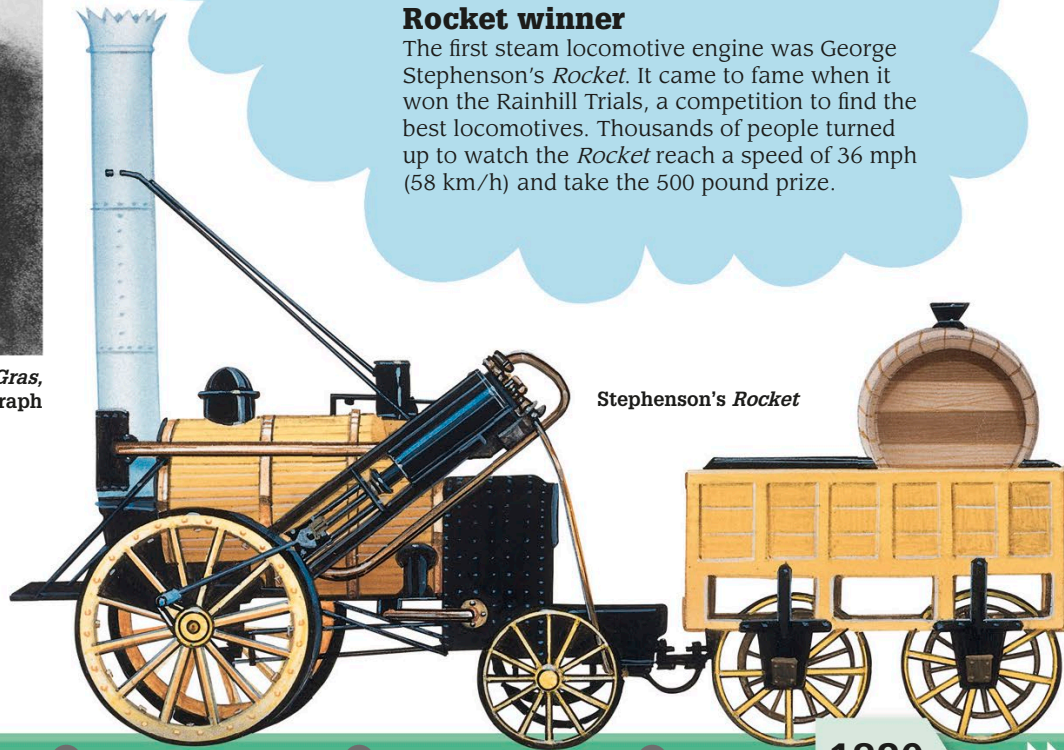
First photograph

Frenchman Joseph Niépce took the world's first photograph. It captured farm buildings and the sky, and the exposure time was eight hours. Niépce called his work a "heliograph" as a tribute to the power of the Sun.

1829

Rocket winner

The first steam locomotive engine was George Stephenson's *Rocket*. It came to fame when it won the Rainhill Trials, a competition to find the best locomotives. Thousands of people turned up to watch the *Rocket* reach a speed of 36 mph (58 km/h) and take the 500 pound prize.



Stephenson's *Rocket*

1830

1825

Steam railroad

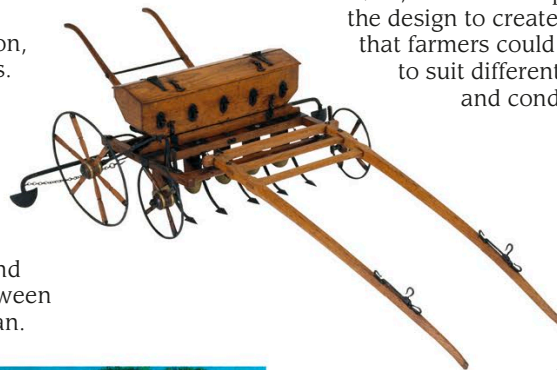
Britain's Stockton and Darlington Railway became the world's first permanent steam locomotive railroad. The line, which was 26 miles (40 km) long, was built to take coal to Stockton, where it was loaded onto cargo boats.

1828

Sowing sensation

Following the invention of Jethro Tull's seed drill in 1701, S. Morton improved the design to create a drill that farmers could adjust to suit different crops and conditions.

Morton's seed drill ensured an even sowing rate compared to sowing by hand.



1825

New waterway

Begun in 1817, the Erie Canal finally opened eight years later. It was 363 miles (584 km) in length and provided a navigable water route between the Great Lakes and the Atlantic Ocean.



Tom Smith, a London bobby

1829

Books for the blind

Frenchman Louis Braille invented a system of reading for blind people. Blinded himself in a childhood accident, Braille's alphabet was made up of raised dots arranged in patterns that could be read by touch. In 1829, he published his first book to explain how his system worked.

1829

Bobbies on the beat

Robert Peel was a British politician, later Prime Minister, who introduced important reforms of criminal law. He also created the Metropolitan Police Force at Scotland Yard. The term *bobby*, meaning policeman, comes from his name.



Medical science

For centuries, most medicine was based on traditional remedies that were often useless, and when they did work no one knew why. Pioneers such as Galen, who lived in the Roman era, had a more systematic approach, but medical science really began in the 16th century with the work of doctors who studied the body by dissecting it. Breakthrough medical inventions and safer hospitals had transformed health care by the 19th century.

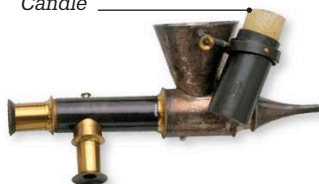
“The doctor of the future will give no medicine, but will interest his patients in the care of the human frame, in diet, and in the cause and prevention of disease.”

Thomas Edison,
American inventor

Medical inventions

Early 19th-century doctors and surgeons carried a basic tool kit of scalpels, forceps, probes, and small saws. But medical technology progressed quickly, and earlier versions of much of the equipment used today were developed during the 1800s.

Candle



Endoscope, 1880s

This was used to look inside a patient's ears, by the light from a candle.



False teeth, 1860

This spring-loaded set of porcelain and ivory "teeth" is mounted on metal.



Dentist's drill, 1864

A wind-up clockwork motor drove this early dental drill for about two minutes.



Ether inhaler, 1847

The glass jar contained sponge soaked in ether, an early general anesthetic.



Thermometers, 1865

The straight version was used in the mouth, and the angled one in the armpit.



Syringes, late 1800s

Invented centuries earlier, hypodermic syringes were perfected in the 1800s.

Blood pressure meter, 1880s

The pressure needed to stop blood flow in an artery was shown on the dial.

Key events

1796

Edward Jenner develops a vaccine for smallpox, derived from a similar but far less dangerous cattle disease known as cowpox. This is the world's first safe vaccine.



1800

The Royal College of Surgeons receives a royal charter. As an association dedicated to promoting the highest standards of surgical care, it has helped make surgery much safer.

1810

German physician Samuel Hahnemann (1755–1843) produces his first major work on homeopathy—an alternative to the medical techniques of his era. His theories are never proven.

1816

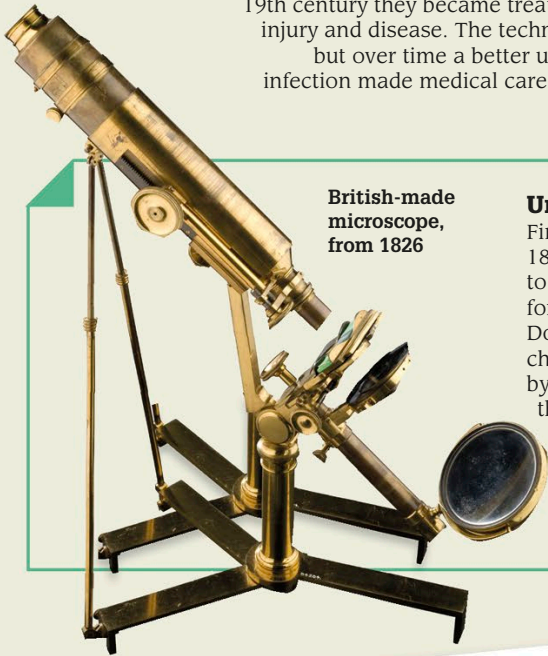
Frenchman René Laennec invents the stethoscope, allowing doctors to hear the heart and lungs, and check for sounds that indicate disease.



An English hospital in the early 1900s

New hospitals

Hospitals in the past had treated specific problems, such as military casualties or those suffering from leprosy, but by the 19th century they became treatment centers for all kinds of injury and disease. The techniques were primitive at first, but over time a better understanding of hygiene and infection made medical care far safer and more effective.



British-made microscope, from 1826

Under the microscope

First used for medicine in 1830, the microscope was to become a crucial tool for understanding disease. Doctors were able to check tissues for cancer by close examination of their cell structures, and positively identify bacteria and other microscopic organisms as causes of infection.

Who's who

Edward Jenner

In 1796, British scientist Jenner (1749–1823) developed a safe vaccine to prevent the deadly disease smallpox. It was the first vaccine created, leading to the global eradication of smallpox in 1979.

Florence Nightingale

As a volunteer nurse caring for casualties of the Crimean War, Nightingale (1820–1910) reorganized the hospital and cut patient death rates. Her work established nursing as a new profession.

Joseph Lister

British surgeon Lister (1827–1912) pioneered the use of chemical antiseptics and sterile equipment in surgery, making operations much safer.

Louis Pasteur

Experiments with the contamination of milk and other liquids convinced French scientist Pasteur (1822–1895) that diseases were caused by the transmission of microscopic germs. He went on to develop the first vaccines against the deadly diseases anthrax and rabies.



Louis Pasteur in his laboratory

Thirty seconds was all it took for surgeon Robert Liston to amputate a human leg—without anesthetic.

1817

The disease cholera spreads west from the Indian subcontinent through the crowded cities of industrial Europe. The pandemic lasts until 1824, killing hundreds of thousands of people.

1818

British doctor James Blundell performs the first successful blood transfusion from one human to another. He uses a syringe to transfer blood from donor to patient.

1822

The French chemist Louis Pasteur is born. He goes on to develop the theory of disease transmission by microscopic germs. This paves the way for antiseptics and antibiotics.

1846

US dentist Henry Morgan holds a public demonstration of the use of ether as a general anesthetic. Long, complex operations become possible without the patient feeling pain.





Flag of Greece

AMERICAN INDIANS

When European settlers arrived in America, the land had already been occupied for more than 11,000 years by native peoples. It is believed that they first arrived by traveling across a land bridge from Siberia to Alaska before making their homes in what is now the United States and Canada.

Way of life

The American Indians were grouped into tribes, or nations, usually based on where they lived and their culture, such as customs and language. They generally led a nomadic existence. Many, especially those on the Great Plains, hunted buffalo, but they treated the land with respect.

American Indian hunting buffalo



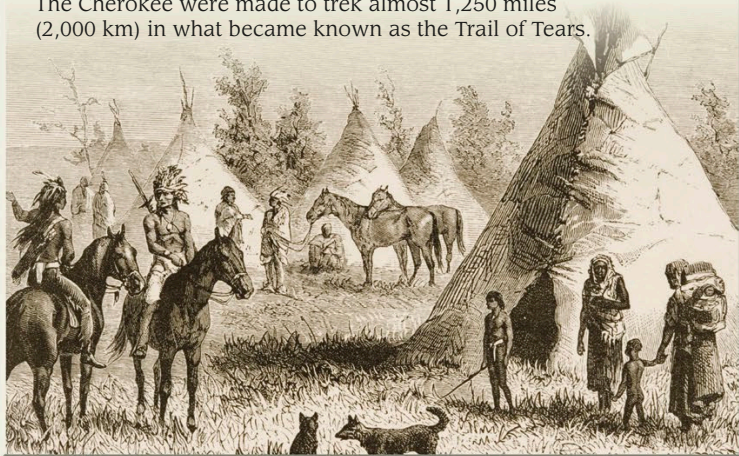
Ceremonial mask of the Kwakiutl tribe of British Columbia

Buffalo parts

Every part of the buffalo was used by the American Indians. The hide became clothing and teepees, the bones were crafted into tools, and teeth were used for ceremonial masks and rattles.

Trail of Tears

To facilitate the movement of settlers to the West, the US government passed the Indian Removal Act in 1830. This forced native tribes to move to reservation lands, though most did not want to leave their spiritual homes. The Cherokee were made to trek almost 1,250 miles (2,000 km) in what became known as the Trail of Tears.



1831

Independent Belgium

In 1814, the Congress of Vienna had joined Belgium with Holland to form the Kingdom of the Netherlands. In 1830, inspired by the July Revolution in France, discontented Belgians rioted in Brussels. By 1831, Belgium was declared an independent country.

1832

Greek getaway

A desire to break away from the Ottoman Empire was finally realized after the Greek War of Independence, which established Greece as an independent kingdom.

1832

Great Reform Act

Serious riots across England forced Parliament to pass new laws, which made the way people voted for Members of Parliament (MPs) more fair and less open to bribery and corruption.

1830

1833

Factory Act

To improve appalling conditions for children working in factories, the British government passed a Factory Act. The act ruled that there should be no child workers under nine years old.

1830

King of France

Charles X was forced to abdicate during the July Revolution. Louis Philippe, Duke of Orléans, was crowned King of France. During his reign, Louis improved France's position in Europe and introduced new democratic reforms. He would be the last king of France.

Louis Philippe I





Illustration from Hans Christian Andersen's book

1835

First fairy tales

Danish poet and storyteller Hans Christian Andersen published his first collection of *Fairy Tales Told For Children*. The book included stories such as *The Princess and the Pea* and *Thumbelina*.

1837

Photo finish

French artist Louis Daguerre refined Joseph Niépce's earlier work when he created a photographic image that did not fade over time.

1837

Queen Victoria

Heir to the British throne, Princess Victoria became queen after the death of her uncle William IV, who was childless. She was 18 years old. A year later, in 1838, she was crowned queen at London's Westminster Abbey.

Victoria's coronation



VOORTREKKERS

From 1835 onward, Dutch settlers or their descendants left the British Cape Colony in southern Africa to escape hardship and seek new land. Called Voortrekkers, they made the Great Trek into the fertile heart of what is now South Africa.



Wagons roll

The trekkers crossed the country in ox wagons that carried household goods, clothes, bedding, furniture, and agricultural tools. They established two states—the Orange Free State, between the Orange and the Vaal Rivers, and the Transvaal.

1836

Battle of the Alamo

US settlers in Texas had rebelled against the governing Mexican authorities in 1835, launching the Texas War of Independence. In 1836, about 200 Texans held the fort of the Alamo against the Mexican army. The siege ended with the capture of the Alamo and the death of the defenders. Texas became fully independent later this year, but a new war began with Mexico in 1846, ending two years later with the US annexing California, Arizona, Utah, Nevada, and New Mexico.



1838

Great Western

The first steamship built for trade across the rough Atlantic Ocean was the *Great Western*. This oak-hulled ship was designed by British engineer Isambard Kingdom Brunel. In April 1838, the vessel sailed from Bristol, England, to New York in 15 days and 12 hours.

1839

Opium Wars

Frustrated by Britain's refusal to stop importing the drug opium into China from India, a Chinese commissioner ordered a British warehouse and ships in Canton to be destroyed. This triggered the First Opium War between Britain and China.



Opium poppy



In 1830, the first American-built steam locomotive, *Tom Thumb*, was raced against a horse. The locomotive led until a technical fault caused the engine to lose power.

1831, UNITED STATES

“The most deeply affecting invention... in terms both of people’s lives and of the development of the American economy was surely Cyrus McCormick’s reaper.”

Carroll W. Pursell,
from his book *Invention in America*



McCormick's reaper at work in the American Midwest in 1870

Revolutionary reaper

The mechanical reaper was one of the major inventions that would revolutionize agriculture in the 19th century. Created by American Cyrus McCormick (1809–83), the reaper enabled farmers to harvest grain quicker than ever before. The horse-drawn machine had a rotating wheel to pull crop stalks against its cutting bar before dropping the cut ears onto a platform. Farmhands raked them up ready for gathering. The reaper made McCormick one of the country's richest men.



1840 ▶ 1850



1840

Penny post

In Britain, Rowland Hill introduced the first prepaid postage stamp. This cheap new stamp was called the Penny Black. Until that point, the cost of postage was paid for by the receiver, so letters were often delivered but not paid for.



1842

Young miner

Mines Act

In response to growing concern about women and children working in coal mines for up to 12 hours a day, the Mines Act came into force in Britain. It ruled that no females of any age or boys under 10 years were to work underground.



1844

Morse code

American inventor Samuel Morse proved that signals could be transmitted down a wire by tapping out a code of dots and dashes. The words of the first message between the Washington and Baltimore telegraph line were "What hath God wrought?" Samuel Morse had sent the first electrically coded message.

Machine for key-tapping Morse code



1840

1842

Treaty of Nanking

When China lost the Opium War in 1842, they also lost part of their country. The treaty stated that Hong Kong be given to Britain on a 99-year lease and that the Chinese ports of Canton, Amoy, Foochow, Ningpo, and Shanghai open to British trade.

Agreement in English (left) and Chinese (below)



The Treaty of Nanking gave Britain control of Hong Kong.

Oregon Trail

During the 1840s, hopeful families drove from Missouri across dangerous territory to find new homes in the West. This route was called the Oregon Trail. Most pioneers traveled in farm wagons with covers stretched over hooped frames.

A typical horse and wagon used by pioneer families to travel across America





Irish families crowd onto paddle steamers to Liverpool to escape the famine.

1845

Irish Potato Famine
For many years, Ireland's population had depended on potatoes for basic food. In September 1845, a disease called potato blight devastated the crop. England did little to help, and between 500,000 and 1.5 million Irish people died from famine, while millions of others fled the country.



Flag of Liberia—the white star represents freedom.

1847

Independence of Liberia

Freed slaves from America had been settled in Liberia (meaning "land of the free") since 1822. Under pressure from Britain, America granted the country independence, making the West African nation the first democratic republic in African history.

1848

Revolution in Europe

Toward the end of the decade, revolutions swept through Europe, fueled by the desire for political and social change. The rebellions began in France, forcing the French king to abdicate, and soon spread to Germany, Austria, and beyond.



Sound of the sax

Belgian manufacturer Adolphe Sax patented his new instrument—the saxophone—in 1846, having exhibited it to the world at the 1841 Brussels exhibition.

1850

1846

Mormon settlement

When the religious group known as the Mormons were driven from their community in Illinois, they needed to find somewhere free from persecution. A small group, led by missionary Brigham Young, found the perfect place in Salt Lake City. During the first four years of settlement, almost 12,000 Mormons joined the community.



Mormon leader Brigham Young

“It's enough. This is the right place. Drive on.”

Brigham Young, on finding Salt Lake City, July 24, 1846

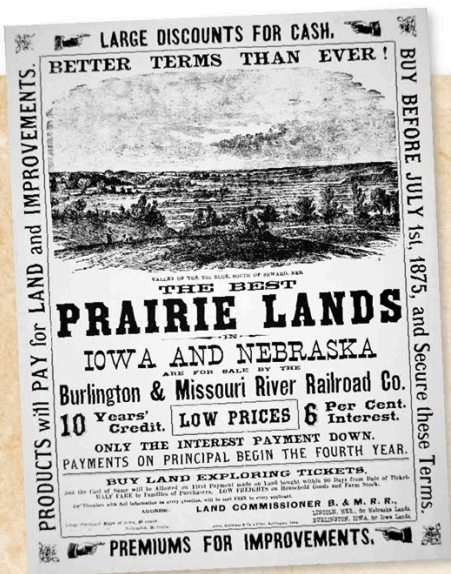


Panning and mining for gold in California

1848

Gold rush!

When James Marshall's work crew started building a sawmill for Swiss immigrant John Sutter on a river in California, they found a few tiny nuggets of gold. Further discoveries followed, and news of the find traveled fast. Before long, 500,000 people from around the world arrived in the hope of getting rich quickly.



Promised land

Pioneers were lured west by posters promising cheap land. Between 1839 and 1850, about 55,000 people had traveled west.

CHILDREN IN HISTORY

Heading west

In the middle of the 19th century, thousands of families living in the eastern United States packed all their belongings into wagons and headed west. Before them lay a journey of 2,000 miles (3,200 km) and the promise of land for farming, or even gold! Most pioneers traveled in large groups of families and friends, often with more children than adults. A strict routine was needed to keep them all in order, but every day on the trail was an adventure.

An early start

The days began at four o'clock, when a guard on the night shift fired a rifle to wake the camp. From wagons and tents, sleepy pioneers emerged to start their fires. The men and older boys would round up the cattle and horses and bring them back to camp, while the women and children made breakfast. Then everything had to be stowed in the wagons.

Wagons ho!

At seven o'clock, the cry went out—"Wagons ho!"—and the procession set off down the trail. Most wagons were pulled by oxen, which were strong but slow, with a speed of about 2 mph (3 km/h). Only the youngest children, or the sick, rode. The rest walked, so as not to add to the weight of the wagon.

Nooning time

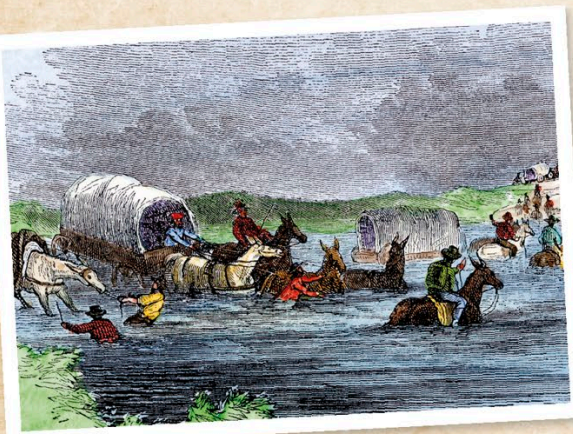
There would be a short stop around noon, then the walking continued. The pace was slower now, and tired children often walked in silence. Toward the end of the afternoon, a scout went ahead to find a campsite. He marked out a circle in the dust, and led the wagons in to form a barricade.

Camp life

The children had lots of chores, including sewing, milking the cows, fetching water, and collecting buffalo chips (dried dung) for the fire. But there was also time to play tag with friends, or with hoops, dolls, and jump ropes. Young people gathered to chat, sing, play the fiddle, and dance. Around eight o'clock, the pioneers settled down for the night, to sleep and dream of their future lives. Most of them ended up settling on farms in California or Oregon, where they built new lives for their families.

“The road was lined with the skeletons of the poor beasts who had died in the struggle... Sometimes we found the bones of men bleaching beside their broken-down and abandoned wagons.”

Luzena Stanley Wilson, gold rush entrepreneur, describing the deserts on her family's travels west in 1849



River crossing

The journey held many dangers and one of the greatest was getting the animals and heavy wagons across the rivers along their path.

“When we stopped, the boys' faces were a sight; they were covered with all the dust that could stick on. One could just see the apertures where eyes, nose and mouth were through the dust; their appearance was frightful.”

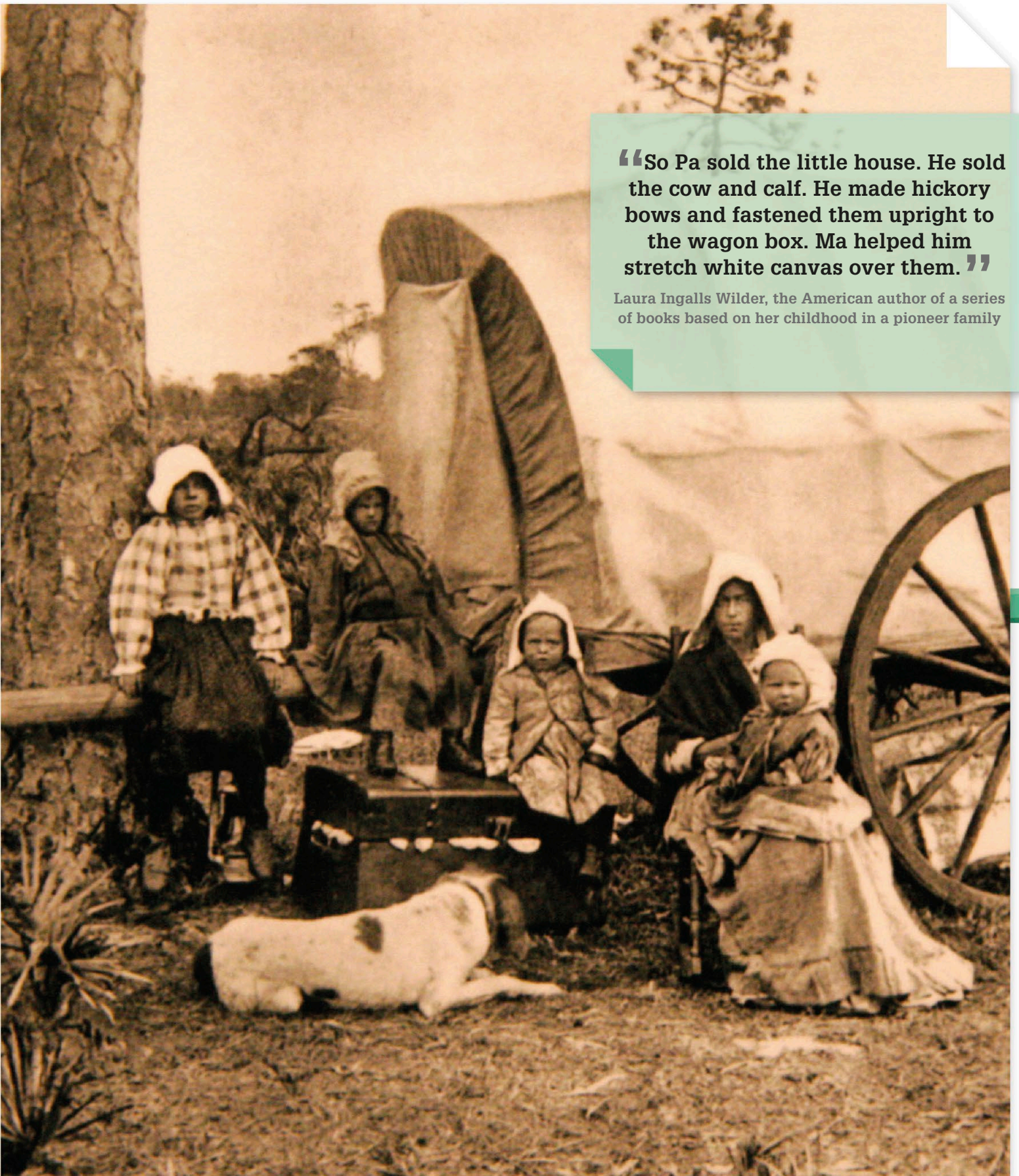
Sarah Raymond, from her diary of her journey in 1865

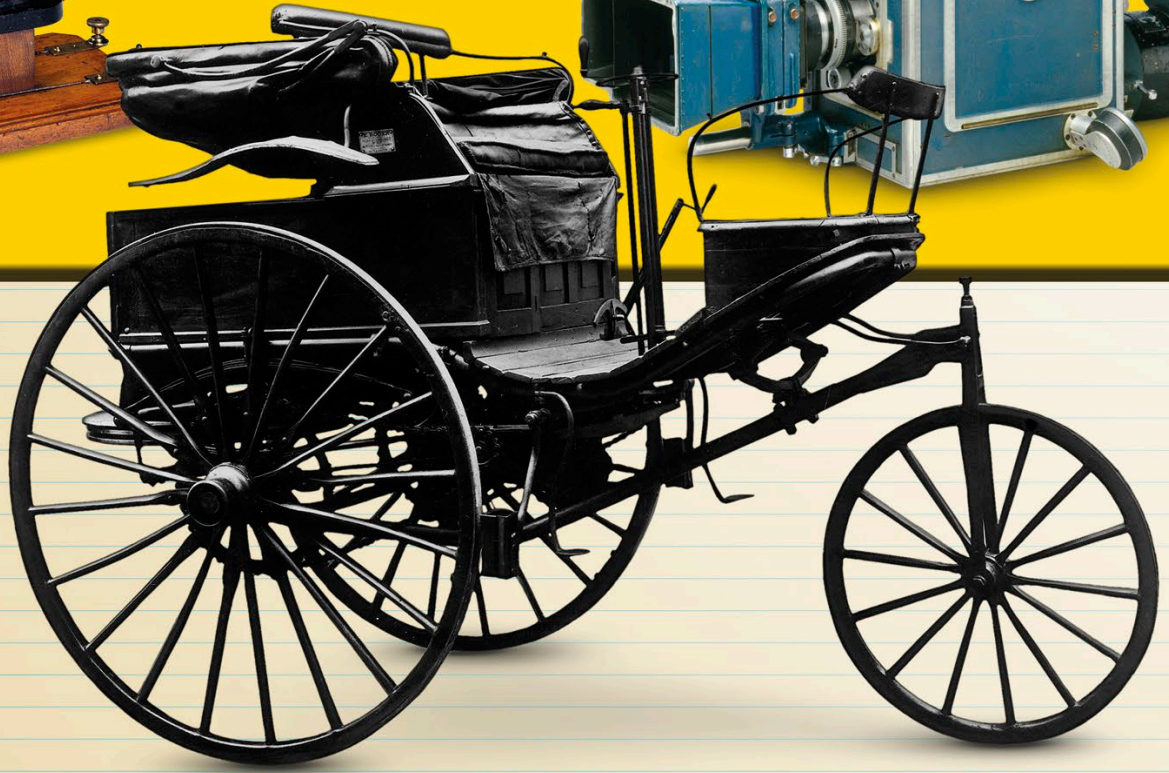
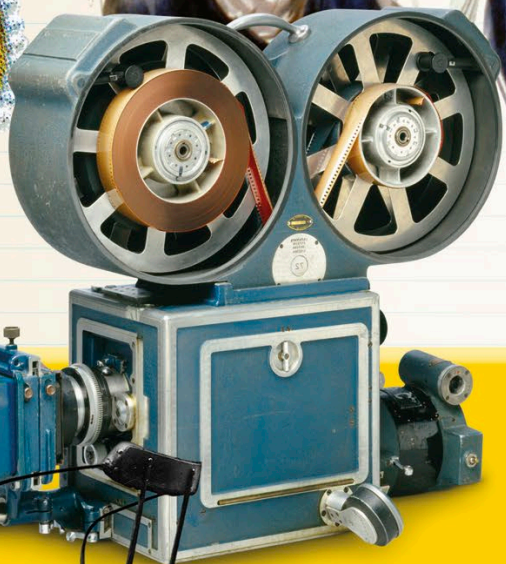
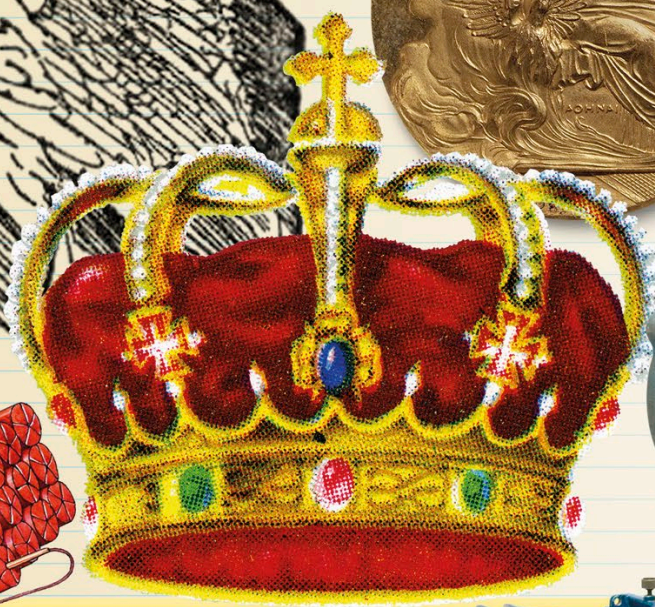
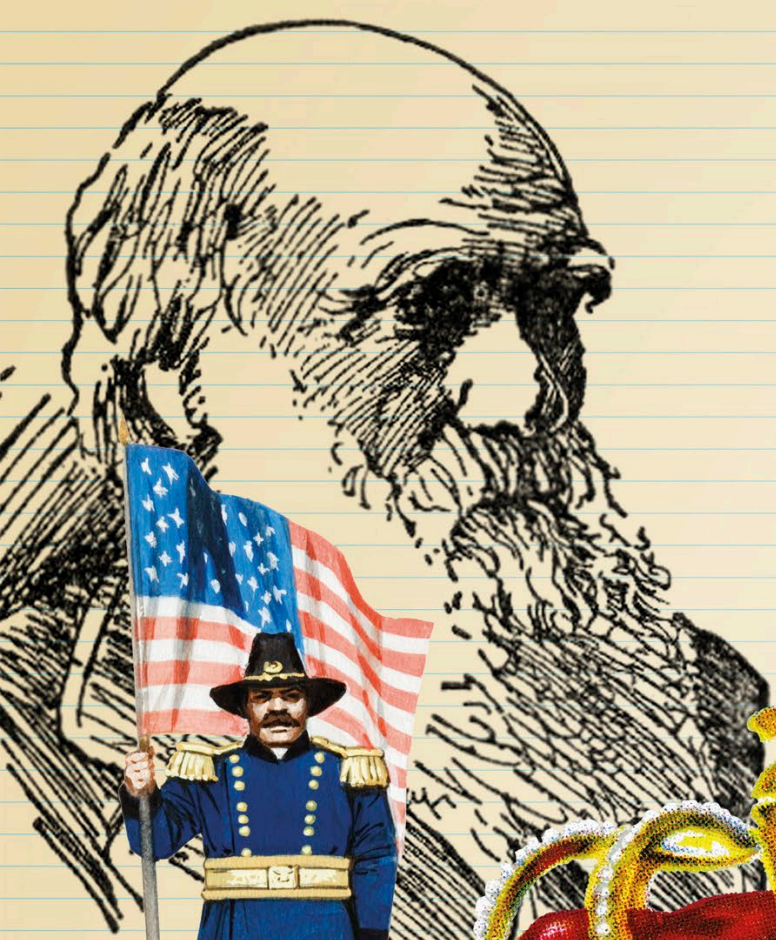
Family portrait

This photograph shows a mother, her young children, and their dog outside their wagon on the long journey west.

“So Pa sold the little house. He sold the cow and calf. He made hickory bows and fastened them upright to the wagon box. Ma helped him stretch white canvas over them.”

Laura Ingalls Wilder, the American author of a series of books based on her childhood in a pioneer family





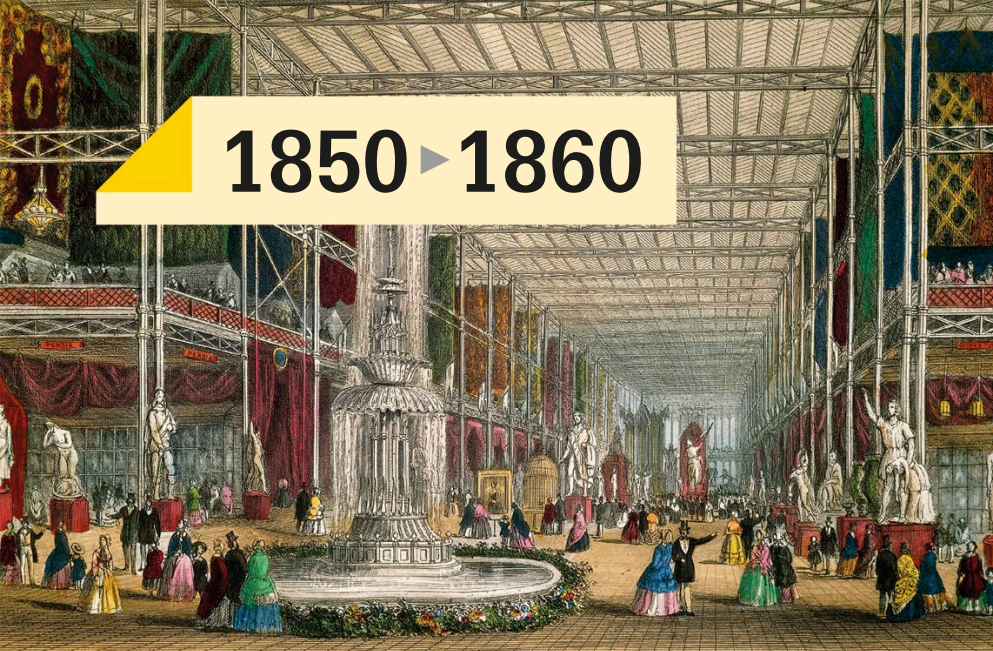


1850–1945

Empires and World Wars

Between 1850 and 1945, the world was brought together as never before. The development of telephones, radio, television, trains, cars, and airplanes got the whole world talking and moving. But as nations became more influential and powerful, they also came into conflict with each other. Vast areas of the planet were taken over by Europe's empire builders. Increasing international rivalries exploded in two global wars and resulted in the death of millions.

1850 ▶ 1860



The Crystal Palace was made of 293,655 panes of glass.

The Great Exhibition attracted more than six million visitors—a record for the time.

1851

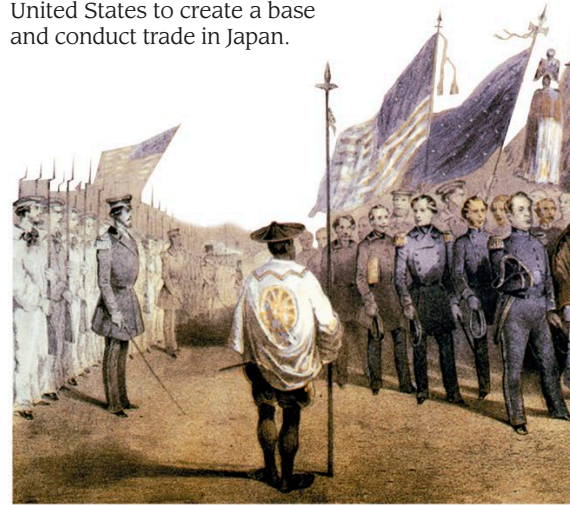
Great Exhibition

More than 14,000 exhibitors from around the world showed off the latest technological wonders at Britain's Great Exhibition. The venue was the Crystal Palace—a giant, temporary glass structure built in London's Hyde Park.

1853

Japan opens up

Since the 1600s, the Japanese rulers, the Tokugawa Shogunate, refused to engage with the outside world. In 1853, US commodore Matthew Perry sailed four warships to Japan, determined to open up trade between America and Japan. After a brief standoff, the Japanese agreed, and the following year the two nations signed the Kanagawa Treaty, permitting the United States to create a base and conduct trade in Japan.



1850

1850

Taiping rebellion

This was a period of unrest in China, in which people turned to outside ideas as a protest against the unpopular Manchu rulers. In an act of rebellion, Christian convert Hong Xiuquan formed the breakaway Taiping Heavenly Kingdom. This led to a civil war lasting 14 years and killing 20 million people before the government regained control.

1853–1856

THE CRIMEAN WAR



Crimean War medal

The two sides in the Crimean War were Russia and an alliance made up of the Ottoman Empire, Sardinia, Britain, and France. After three years of fighting, mostly in Crimea (modern Ukraine), the Russians were defeated. This was the first conflict to be reported and photographed in newspapers.

Charge of the Light Brigade

A misunderstood order spurred a brigade of British cavalry to attack a battery of Russian cannons. When the pointless charge was over, more than 150 British soldiers lay dead.



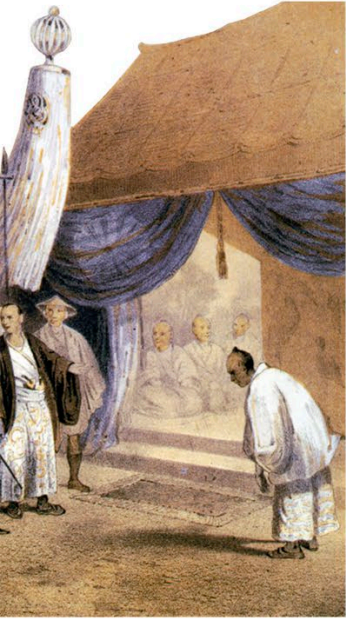
Casualties fall during the charge.



Florence Nightingale

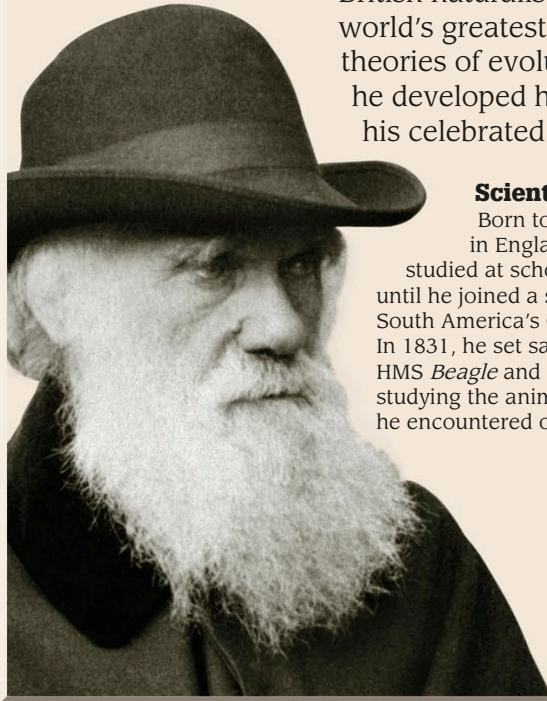
The British death toll was kept to a minimum by the work of the nurse Florence Nightingale. Known as the “lady with the lamp,” she improved the hygiene of the soldiers' hospital, which greatly reduced the disease and infection rate. In 1907, she became the first woman to be given the Order of Merit, an award for her services during the war.

Commodore Matthew Perry arrives in Japan to build relations.



1809–1882

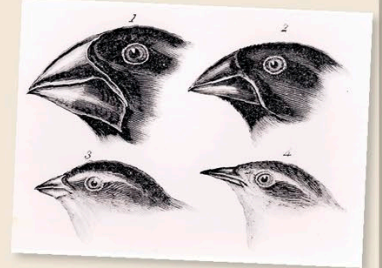
CHARLES DARWIN



British naturalist Charles Darwin is regarded as one of the world's greatest scientists thanks to his groundbreaking theories of evolution. After traveling in South America, he developed his theories for 20 years before publishing his celebrated book, *On the Origin of Species*.

Scientific voyage

Born to a large family in England, Charles Darwin studied at school and college until he joined a scientific voyage to South America's Galápagos Islands. In 1831, he set sail on board the ship *HMS Beagle* and spent five years studying the animal and plant life he encountered on the islands.



A variety of finch beaks

Natural selection

In the Galápagos, Darwin noticed each island had similar species that were slightly different. He realized that animals with the best characteristics for the environment survived, for example, birds with the best beak for finding food available on the island. Animals then passed on these characteristics to their young, and so the species gradually evolved by a process he called natural selection.

1860



1857

Indian rebellion

Resentment at the British presence in India was building. The native armies of the East India Company—the British business that ruled India at the time—finally revolted (left), following the introduction of a new rifle. Its cartridges were rumored to be greased in pork and beef fat, sparking outrage among Muslims and Hindus because these animal products were against their religions. The rebellion lasted a year, after which Britain took direct control of India as the British Raj.



Laying cables under the Atlantic Ocean



American inventor Elisha Otis designed and installed the world's first elevator in New York.

1858

Mexico's War of the Reform

During the 1850s, there were two main political groups in Mexico. The conservatives wanted the government controlled by the military and the Catholic Church, while the liberals wanted power to be spread among the people. The liberals introduced laws reducing the power of the Church and the military. The conservatives staged a rebellion, but were defeated by the liberals.

1858

Transatlantic communication

The first telegraph cable was laid across the Atlantic Ocean, signaling a new age of intercontinental communication. However, the first cable worked for only a few weeks before breaking down. A reliable replacement would not be in place until the middle of the next decade, laid by the *SS Great Eastern*.

1860 ▶ 1870

1861

American Civil War

In the United States, the Northern and Southern states went to war over slavery and states' rights. After four years of fighting and millions of casualties, the North proved victorious and slavery was officially abolished.



Infantry drum used during the American Civil War



London's Baker Street Station in 1863

1863

Underground travel

The world's first underground railroad, the Metropolitan Railway, opened in London, with 30,000 passengers traveling on the first day. The wooden carriages were pulled by steam locomotives belching thick clouds of smoke.

▶▶ 1860

1862

1864

1861

Freeing the serfs

In the 19th century, 23 million Russians were serfs—slaves who farmed the fields for rich landowners. In an effort to radically reform his country, Czar Alexander II gave the serfs their freedom.

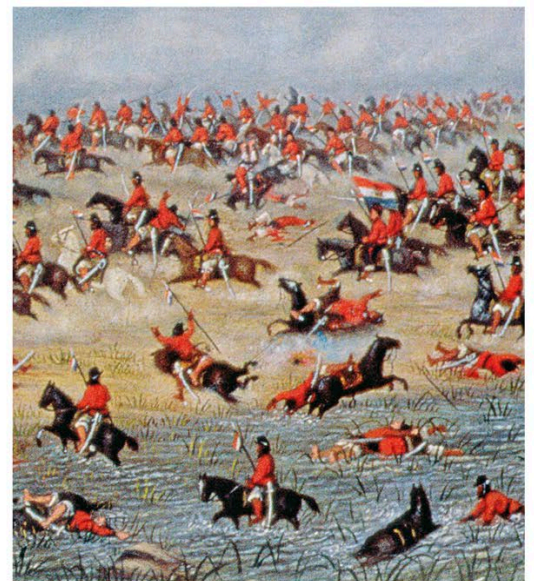
Czar Alexander II



1863

Second Mexican Empire

After gaining independence in 1821, Mexico briefly had a monarchy (1821-1823)—this was the First Mexican Empire. By the 1860s, conservative supporters of the monarchy, backed by France, overthrew the liberal government and made Austrian Duke Maximilian I the new emperor of Mexico. With support from the United States, the liberal forces rebelled. France withdrew in 1866, the liberal government was reinstalled, and Emperor Maximilian was executed.

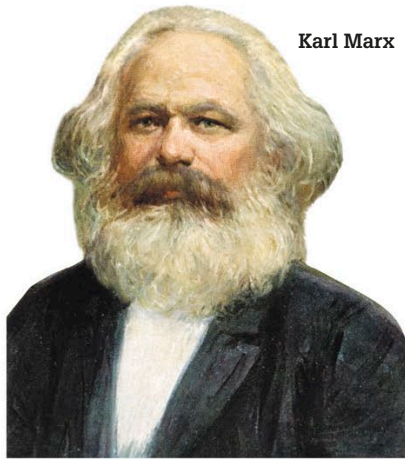


Paraguayan troops suffered huge loss of life during the War of the Triple Alliance.

1865

War of the Triple Alliance

In South America, Paraguay entered into a disastrous war with its three neighbors, Uruguay, Brazil, and Argentina. The country was devastated, experiencing some of its worst losses in battle, with the population reduced by more than half.



Karl Marx

1867

Das Kapital published

The German philosopher and socialist writer Karl Marx published the first volume of his book, *Das Kapital*, a criticism of capitalism. His theories would become a major influence on the Communist regimes of the 20th century.

1868 MEIJI RESTORATION

The military rulers of Japan—the Tokugawa Shogunate—still distrusted other nations and tried to limit their access to the country. Japan finally opened up to the outside world when the Tokugawa Shogunate was overthrown in 1868 and replaced by 15-year-old Emperor Meiji.

Emperor Meiji on horseback**Emperor Meiji**

Japan emerged as a major world power under Emperor Meiji (1852–1912), who introduced radical political, social, and economic change. His policy was to modernize Japan by taking the best from other nations, while keeping the distinctive Japanese culture.

Golden vase from the Meiji period**Meiji art**

During the Meiji (meaning “enlightened rule”) period, Japan experienced rapid change. The economy was modernized and international trade began. Art was now supported by the Japanese government and Meiji artifacts grew popular in Europe and the US.

1866

1866

German unification

Prussia and Austria went to war to see which country would dominate the German-speaking world in the years ahead. Prussia was victorious. Over the next few years, several German states joined forces with Prussia, resulting in the proclamation of a united German Empire in 1871.

Unification of Germany
See pages 226–227

1868

1867

Founding of Canada

The North American provinces of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were brought together to found Canada—a dominion of the British Empire. Ottawa was chosen as the capital of the new country, which was home at the time to more than three million people.

1870



Crowds gathered to watch the canal's opening.

1869

Transcontinental railroad

The Atlantic and Pacific coasts of the United States were linked together for the first time with the construction of the 1,777-mile (2,860 km) First Transcontinental Railroad. A golden spike was driven into the last section of track to signal the route's completion.

1869

Suez Canal

Egypt's Suez Canal opened in 1869. It sped up the sea trade between East and West, since ships no longer had to undertake the hazardous journey all the way around the bottom of Africa—a trip of several thousand miles. Instead, ships could take a shortcut through the new 102-mile (164 km) waterway between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean.

 Swedish scientist Alfred Nobel patented his invention—explosive dynamite—in 1867.

American Civil War

In the 1860s, the United States went to war over slavery and states' rights. The Northern states, where slavery was already illegal, wanted it abolished throughout the country. However, the Southern states wanted to keep slavery, since they relied on African slaves to farm their crops of cotton and tobacco. It was a bloody battle that tore the country apart before slavery was finally abolished.

Battle of Gettysburg

Union and Confederate troops clashed thousands of times over the course of the war. A major turning point came in July 1863, when Union troops halted the South's advance (below) at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. About 51,000 soldiers on both sides were killed.

Union versus Confederate

The Civil War resulted in a great loss of American life. About 620,000 Americans died, more than in any other conflict, including both world wars combined. The two sides were the Union (Northern states) and the Confederacy (Southern states).

UNION



Flag of the Northern states, or Union

- 23 states remained loyal to the Union at the start of the war. Another two, Nevada and West Virginia, joined during the conflict, making 25.
- Population: 22 million
- Soldiers: 2.1 million
- Number of deaths: 360,000
- Cost of war: \$6.2 billion
- Soldier's monthly pay: \$13



Union uniform

CONFEDERATE

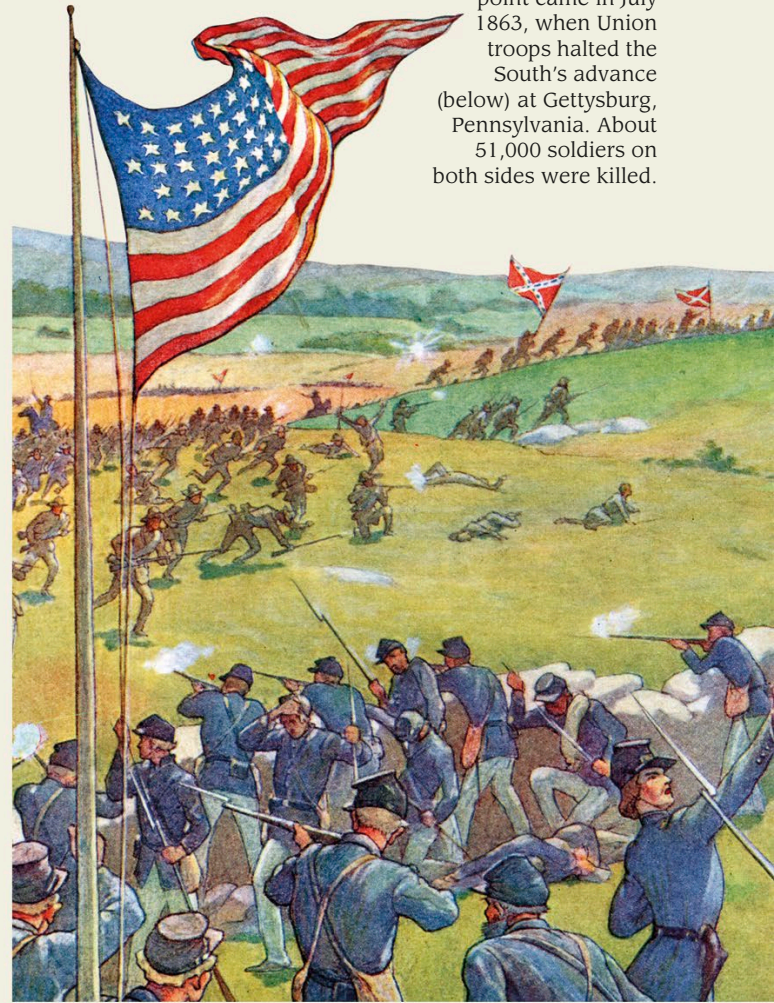


Flag of the Southern states, or Confederacy

- 7 southern states broke away from the Union at the start of the war. These were later joined by another 4 states, making 11.
- Population: 9 million
- Soldiers: 1.1 million
- Number of deaths: 260,000
- Cost of war: \$4 billion
- Soldier's monthly pay: \$11



Confederate uniform



Key events

1860

In November, Abraham Lincoln was elected as the 16th US president. In this decade, the country went to war over slavery, since the North wanted it abolished and the South wanted to keep it.

1860

In December, South Carolina was the first state to withdraw from the Union. By February 1861, six more states joined, forming the Confederacy.

1861

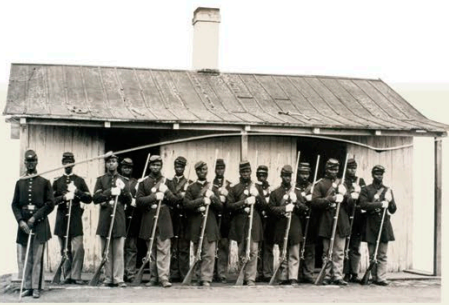
The opening shots were fired at Fort Sumter, South Carolina, when Southern forces opened fire on Union troops.

1861

The First Battle of Bull Run ended in victory for the Confederacy, as did the Second Battle of Bull Run a year later.

1862

The Battle of Antietam stopped General Lee's march north and saw the greatest number of Americans killed or wounded in a day.



African American soldiers

About 180,000 African Americans served in the Union army, making up approximately 10 percent of the total force (about 40,000 of whom died). Toward the end of the war, the South even raised the possibility of forming African American battalions, although these never materialized.



The dragoon pistol was a heavy single-shot weapon.



Sword bayonets could be attached to a rifle or used independently.



The 1861 Springfield rifle musket was used throughout the war.



Battlefield medicine

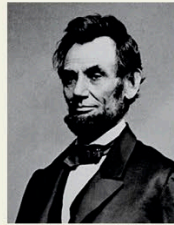
The war saw medical as well as military advances. With the men off fighting, women worked as nurses for the first time. They worked in portable field hospitals, such as this one in Virginia, set up to care for wounded soldiers.

Who's who

UNION

Abraham Lincoln

The election of the abolitionist Lincoln as president in 1860 jump-started the Civil War. He led the North to victory and signed the law freeing the slaves.

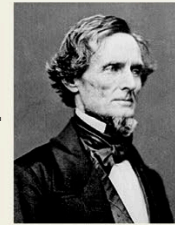


vs.

CONFEDERATE

Jefferson Davis

President of the Confederacy, Davis was a less effective leader than Lincoln. He failed to get support from foreign countries or devise a strategy to stop the North's advance.

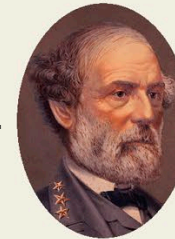


Ulysses S. Grant

He led the Union army from 1862 onward. Grant masterminded a series of victories over the Confederates. He served two terms as president after the war.



vs.



Robert E. Lee

Lee was such a hugely respected professional soldier that he was even asked to be commander of the Union army. But he remained loyal to the South.

1862

At the naval Battle of Hampton Roads, the Confederates failed to break the North's blockade.

1863

The Emancipation Proclamation was issued by Lincoln on January 1, declaring all slaves in the Confederacy to be freed.

1863

A month after the Battle of Gettysburg, Lincoln made his famous Gettysburg Address, vowing to continue the fight.

Grenade found at Gettysburg



1864

The Union army marched through Confederate territory from Atlanta to the sea at Savannah, destroying towns, railroads, and supplies.

1865

The Union captured the Confederate capital of Richmond, Virginia, and Lee surrendered to Grant. The Civil War was over.

1870 ▶ 1880

King Victor Emmanuel II on horseback



1871

Unified Italy

The French occupation of Rome began in 1849, when French troops overthrew the revolutionary Roman Republic. It ended in 1870, allowing the city to become part of Italy. Under King Victor Emmanuel II, Rome became the capital of a newly unified Italy the following year.



1874

British Gold Coast

The Asante people were rulers of a large stretch of West Africa. They fought off the British in the First and Second Anglo-Asante Wars of the 1820s and 1860s, but were less fortunate in the Third Anglo-Asante War, when the British took control of most of their territory. It became the British Empire territory of the Gold Coast (now Ghana).



1870

1872

1874

1870

Franco-Prussian War

Having defeated Austria a few years earlier, the Prussians, under Otto von Bismarck, provoked France, under Napoleon III, into war. The Prussians easily steamrolled the French in a series of battles, toppled Napoleon, and marched into Paris as victors in 1871.

Unification of Germany
See pages 226–227

Prussian soldiers on horseback attack the French army.





The Battle of Little Bighorn left hundreds dead, including Colonel Custer.

1876

Battle of Little Bighorn

Sioux and Cheyenne Indians joined forces to attack American troops under the command of Colonel George Armstrong Custer. It was a rare reversal for the US government in the ongoing American Indian Wars, which forced many American Indians from their lands.

1876

1876

The Porfiriato Era

Former Mexican soldier Porfirio Díaz overthrew the president of Mexico, and went on to rule the country as a dictator until 1911—a period known as the *Porfiriato*. He oversaw tremendous economic growth and industrial modernization, but he also grew increasingly unpopular, and was eventually overthrown after more than 30 years in power.



First Wimbledon

In the early 1870s, a new racket game, “Sphairistike,” grew in popularity in the UK. Renamed tennis, the sport’s first official championship was held at the All England Lawn Tennis and Croquet Club in Wimbledon in 1877.

A wooden frame and thick strings were typical of the 19th-century tennis racket.

In 1872, America’s Yellowstone National Park became the world’s first national park.

1878

Second Afghan War

Britain invaded Afghanistan to prevent Russia from gaining influence there. This was part of the so-called “Great Game,” in which the two powers competed for supremacy in Central Asia. Following its defeat in 1880, Afghanistan was forced to give up control of its foreign policy to Britain.

1878

1878

Treaty of San Stefano

Following the Russo-Turkish War of 1877–1878, the weakening Ottoman Empire lost control of a number of Balkan countries, which it had ruled for centuries. The Treaty of San Stefano in 1878 ended the war and granted Serbia, Romania, and Montenegro their freedom. Bulgaria received limited independence.



Lieutenant Melvill, on horseback, attempts to cut through Zulu lines.

1879

Anglo-Zulu War

At the Battle of Rorke’s Drift in Zululand, South Africa, 130 British troops repelled an attack by more than 4,000 Zulu warriors. The battle was part of the Anglo-Zulu War, in which Britain extended its colonial interests in South Africa through the conquest of Zulu territory.

Invention of the telephone

Scottish-born inventor Alexander Graham Bell patented his telephone design on the same day in 1876 that American Elisha Gray tried to patent his version. But Gray got there too late. Bell’s patent became the most valuable ever granted.



One of Bell’s early model phones, known as a box telephone, had a trumpetlike mouthpiece.

Unification of Germany and Italy

The map of Europe was constantly being redrawn during the 19th century as old empires crumbled and new powers emerged. In 1850, the countries of Germany and Italy didn't exist. Instead, there were many different German-speaking and Italian-speaking states, each with their own leaders, which formed part of several different unions, kingdoms, and empires. But in the 1860s and 1870s, ambitious politicians brought these states together, through a combination of warfare and political agreements, to create the countries of Germany and Italy.

“The main thing is to make history, not to write it.”

Otto von Bismarck (1815–1898)

Rival forces

Otto von Bismarck

Bismarck, prime minister of Prussia, was a crafty politician who provoked the wars and arranged the deals that resulted in a united Germany with him as the chancellor (political ruler).



Napoleon III

The emperor of France was the big loser of German unification. Following his army's defeat in the Franco-Prussian war, he was forced into exile in Britain.



The German states

In 1866, the armies of Prussia (a north-central European industrial power including what is now northern Germany and Poland) easily defeated those of the traditionally dominant German power of Austria. This allowed Prussia to unite several German states into the North German Confederation under its command.

- Prussian territory
- Other North German States
- South German States
- Border of the North German Confederation, 1867
- Border of the German Empire, 1871

Germania

This image shows Germania, the symbol of a united Germany. Germania is usually depicted as a woman carrying the *Reichsschwert* (imperial sword) and a shield bearing a black eagle. Following unification, Germany would become a major power by the late 19th century.



War and peace

In the Franco-Prussian War of 1870–1871, German states led by Prussia defeated France. This victory meant that France's domination in Europe was over. As part of the peace deal, France gave up two of its German-speaking provinces, Alsace and Lorraine. A new unified German Empire was proclaimed on January 18, 1871.



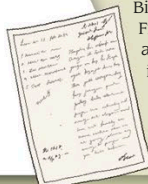
Key events

1864

Prussia and Austria united for a short war during which they captured the provinces of Schleswig and Holstein from Denmark.

1866

Prussia and Austria went to war, with Prussia emerging victorious and taking control of a number of German states.



1870

Bismarck dragged France into the Franco-Prussian War by publishing an edited telegram (left) that made it look like the Prussian king had insulted the French ambassador.

1871

Wilhelm I of Prussia was crowned emperor of the German Empire. The ceremony was held in Paris, further rubbing salt in France's wounds.



Italy's territories in 1815, with red line to show the country's unified borders in 1870

Italian divide

In the mid-19th century, Italy was split between a number of rulers, including Austria, which controlled the north; the Spanish branch of the Bourbons, who controlled the south; and the Pope, who controlled Rome. Between 1859 and 1870, Italy was unified into a single state.



Swiss businessman Henri Dunant founded the Red Cross because he was shocked by the slaughter at one of the battles for unification in 1859.

Influential Italians

Count Camillo di Cavour

The prime minister of the Kingdom of Sardinia provided the political leadership for the unification movement. He became Italy's first prime minister in 1861.



Giuseppe Garibaldi

If Cavour was the cool, calculating politician, then Garibaldi was the fiery, headstrong revolutionary who led a campaign of conquest through Sicily and southern Italy.



Waging war

In the north, the Italian Kingdom of Sardinia made an alliance with the French to force out the Austrians in conflicts such as the Battle of Magenta in 1859, shown here. The Battle of Solferino resulted in a French victory, but it was so bloody that it forced Napoleon III to consider the price of victory.

Crowning glory

Like the German Empire, the new united Italy was headed by a king. Victor Emmanuel II had been ruler of the Kingdom of Sardinia, the Italian state that led the unification process, before he was crowned king.

Crown worn by the Italian king until the fall of the monarchy in 1946



Key events

1852

Count Camillo di Cavour became prime minister of the Kingdom of Sardinia, later becoming one of the leading figures of unification.

1859

Piedmontese and French forces combined to force the Austrians out of most of northern Italy.

1860

Garibaldi led a popular uprising in Sicily and southern Italy, after which these states voted to become part of a united Italy.

1861

A united Kingdom of Italy was declared, but Rome, protected by the French, stayed separate.

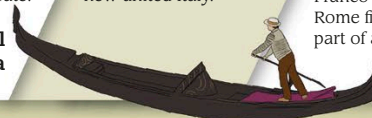
Traditional Venetian gondola

1866

The separate state of Venetia (including Venice) joined the new united Italy.

1870

After Rome's French protectors abandoned the city to fight in the Franco-Prussian War, Rome finally became part of a united Italy.



1880 ▶ 1890

📢 **One of the world's first electric street lights was installed in Indiana in 1880.**



The first automobile

Though many other inventors were working on creating an automobile powered by gasoline, it was German engineer Karl Benz who got there first in 1885. He was awarded a patent the next year.

Bertha Benz, wife of Karl, took his car on the first known road trip in an automobile.

1881

Alexander's assassination

The Czar of Russia, Alexander II, was assassinated by the terrorist organization Narodnaya Volya ("People's Will"). Russia's Jewish population was falsely accused of the crime, causing antisemitic hostility (violence against the Jews). Thousands of Jews emigrated to Europe, the US, and Palestine.

1882

Anglo-Egyptian War

Following a short war, Britain made Egypt a territory of its empire. Britain also faced a revolt in Sudan led by Muhammad Ahmad, who claimed to be the Mahdi—a great ruler prophesied in Islamic teaching. Sudan finally fell to the British in 1898.

1884

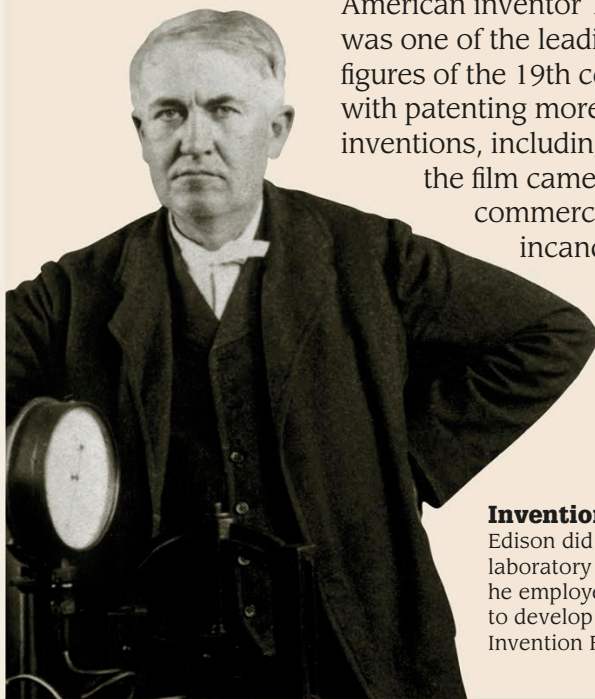
Scramble for Africa

The major European powers met at the Berlin Conference to discuss dividing up Africa between them. No African leaders were invited or even consulted. The so-called "Scramble for Africa" was underway.

Scramble for Africa
See pages 230–231

▶▶ 1880

1847–1931 THOMAS EDISON



American inventor Thomas Edison was one of the leading industrial figures of the 19th century, credited with patenting more than 1,000 inventions, including the record player, the film camera, and the first commercially practical incandescent light bulb.



Power system

In addition to the light bulb, Edison also invented a system for producing electricity to power the bulbs, as well as power plants to carry electricity to people's homes.

Invention Factory

Edison did not work alone. At his research laboratory in Menlo Park, New Jersey, he employed a vast number of workers to develop his ideas. He named it the Invention Factory.

1883

Eruption of Krakatoa

In what is believed to be the loudest eruption in recorded history, the Indonesian volcano Krakatoa blew its top in 1883. At least 35,000 people were killed. The explosion was heard more than 3,000 miles (5,000 km) away.





An early leather soccer ball

1888

First soccer league

The world's first soccer league competition took place in England between autumn 1888 and spring 1889. Twelve teams took part, and after 22 games, Preston North End were the champions. Soccer league competitions soon caught on all over the world.

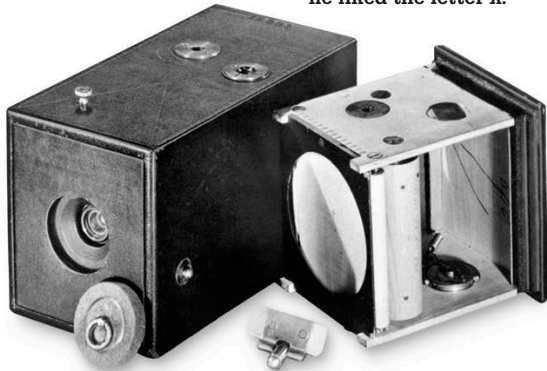


1888

Commercial camera

Invented by American entrepreneur George Eastman, the Kodak was the first camera to use photographic film. It came loaded with enough film for 100 photographs, but had to be sent back to the factory for the pictures to be developed. As Eastman put it in his advertisements, "You press the button, we do the rest."

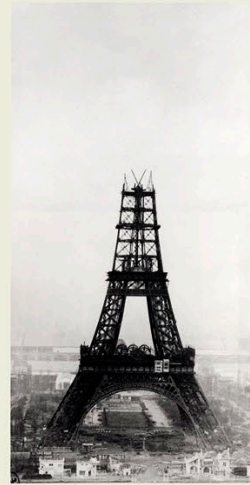
Eastman named his camera *Kodak* because he liked the letter *k*.



1887–1889

EIFFEL TOWER

France celebrated the centennial of the French Revolution with an international exhibition in Paris. The main attraction was a giant iron tower named after its creator, Gustave Eiffel. The iconic structure became one of the world's most recognizable buildings.



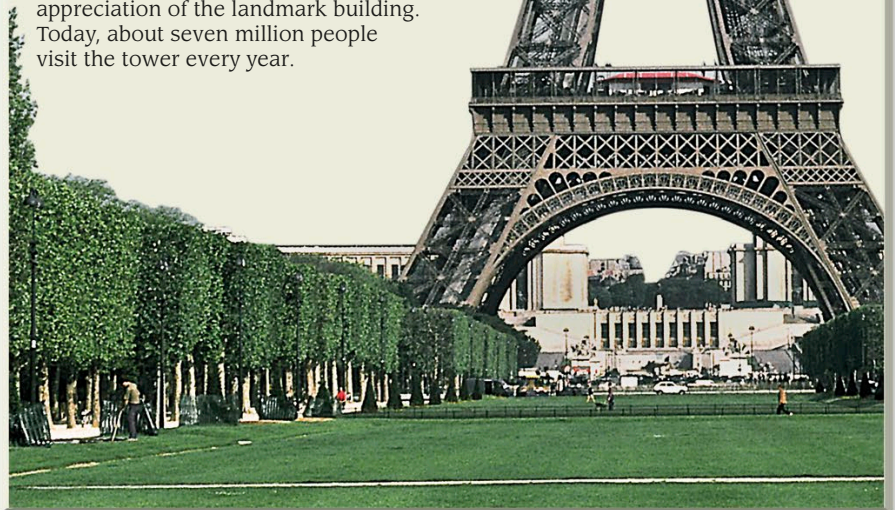
In 1889, the Eiffel Tower was by far the world's tallest structure.

Under construction

Designed by the same man responsible for building the iron supports of the Statue of Liberty, the tower was a marvel of engineering. Made of 18,000 separate parts, it weighs 10,000 tons and stands 1,050 ft (320 m) tall. It took 300 workers just under two years to build.

Tourist attraction

Not everyone liked the tower. After its construction, a group of Parisian artists signed a petition demanding its destruction, calling it an "atrocitiy." But as visitor numbers grew, so did public appreciation of the landmark building. Today, about seven million people visit the tower every year.

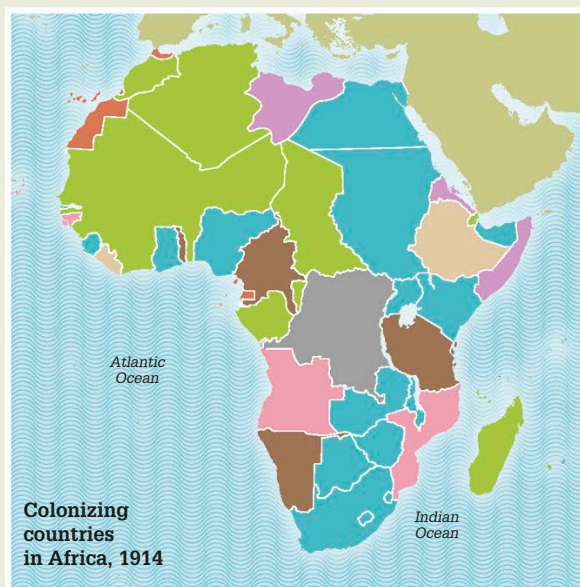


The Scramble for Africa

Europeans had been involved in Africa since the days of the slave trade, but had acquired little territory. However, the speed and scale of their colonization of Africa during the 1880s and 1890s was unprecedented. In 1870, just 10 percent of the continent was controlled by Europeans. By 1900, Europeans ruled 90 percent of the continent, or one-fifth of the globe's landmass. Only Liberia and Ethiopia remained free.

British takeover

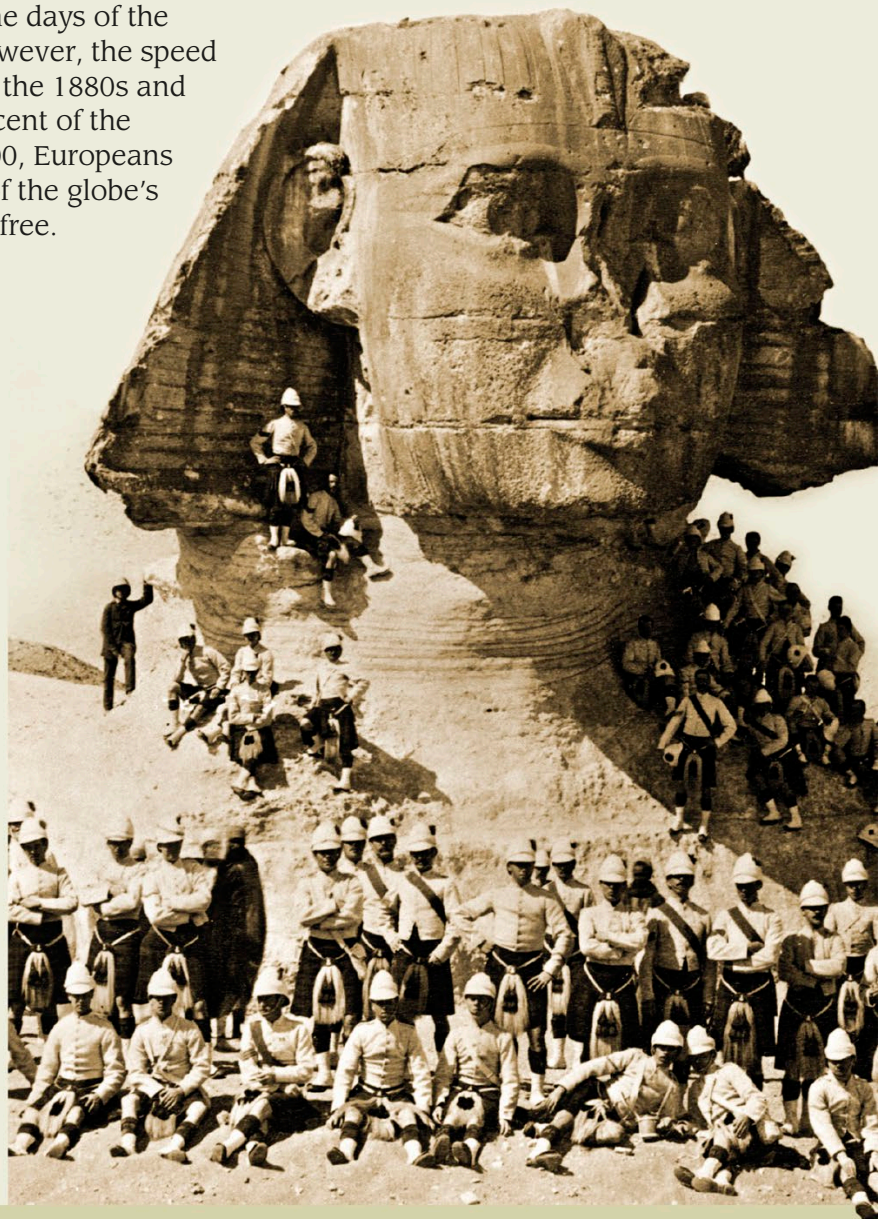
The major winner in the scramble was Britain. By 1900, the country was in control of 30 percent of the African population. Britain took over territory stretching from Egypt in the north and Gambia in the west to Kenya in the east and South Africa.



Berlin Conference

In 1884–1885, the Berlin Conference on the future of Africa started the empire-building scramble. The European countries claimed that they wanted to help Africa stamp out slavery. But in reality, they decided to carve up the continent between them in order to exploit its resources. No African leader was invited to the conference.

- France
- Spain
- Germany
- Italy
- Portugal
- Belgium
- England
- Uncolonized



Key events

1881

Tunisia became a French protectorate. The following year, Egypt became part of the British Empire.



Maxim's machine gun

1884

American-born Hiram Maxim invented the first self-powered machine gun, giving the British a military advantage in Africa.

1884–1885

The Berlin Conference gave the green light to European powers to begin the "Scramble for Africa."

1885

Germany acquired new territories, including what is now Namibia, while Britain acquired what is now Botswana.

1889

The Southern Ivory Coast became a French protectorate, while the Northern Ivory Coast followed two years later.

Looting of Africa

The Europeans paid little attention to the rights of native Africans. Treasures were stolen, such as this bronze carving from Nigeria, looted by the British in 1897. In Central Africa, King Leopold II of Belgium established a personal colony—the Congo Free State—employing a private army to force the local people to harvest rubber.



Reasons for the scramble

★ To end the slave trade

This was given as one of the official reasons for colonization. However, the colonial powers did exploit and mistreat the African people.

★ Religion

Many European missionaries went to Africa to convert people to Christianity.

★ Exploration

The African adventures of European explorers, such as Livingstone and Stanley, had helped map the continent. This raised interest in the riches to be found there.

★ Exploitation

Africa had vast mineral deposits and other resources that could be exploited.

★ Medicine

The discovery of quinine as a cure for malaria meant that more Europeans were prepared to settle in Africa.

★ Power and prestige

The great European powers—particularly Britain, France, and, after unification, Germany and Italy—competed with each other to build bigger empires.

★ Military superiority

The development of superior weapons, such as rifles and machine guns, gave the Europeans a military advantage over the Africans.

★ Racism

Some believed white people were superior to blacks, and had the right to take over their land to “civilize” them.

Key figures



David Livingstone

The first European to see Victoria Falls in southern Africa, Livingstone crossed Africa to convert people to Christianity.



Cecil Rhodes

One of the most ruthless colonizers of southern Africa, Cecil Rhodes had Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe) named after him.



King Leopold II

The Belgian king's brutal exploitation of his African colony triggered outrage and the intervention of the Belgian government.



Henry Morton Stanley

This Welsh-born American journalist helped King Leopold II establish his African colony in the Congo.

British soldiers gathered at the Sphinx in 1882, the year Egypt became part of the British Empire.



African resistance

The colonization of Africa was often a hard fought, bloody affair. The Asante people of West Africa, the Edo people of Benin City, Nigeria, and the Zulus of South Africa (right) all fought fiercely to defend their land. However, the superiority of European weapons was usually the deciding factor.

Zulu spear



1890

Britain acquired the island of Zanzibar and the city of Pemba from the Germans in return for the North Sea island of Heligoland.

1892

Britain seized Yorubaland (now part of Nigeria), while France gained control of much of Senegal.

1893

France took over Dahomey (now Benin).

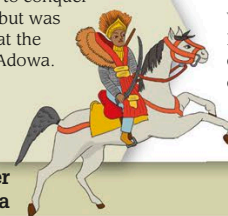
1896

Italy tried to conquer Ethiopia, but was defeated at the Battle of Adowa.

1899–1901

The Second Boer War resulted in Britain taking over the whole of South Africa.

Ethiopian commander at the Battle of Adowa





“At Ellis Island I was born again. Life for me began when I was 10 years old.”

Edward G. Robinson, movie actor, born Emanuel Goldenberg in Romania, who passed through Ellis Island in 1903

CHILDREN IN HISTORY

Children of Ellis Island

In the late 19th and early 20th centuries, hundreds of thousands of children traveled from Europe to the United States to start new lives. Some came with their families, while others made the trip alone, usually because their parents had gone ahead to find work. After a long, miserable sea journey, they would land at Ellis Island in New York Harbor, where they were checked before they could begin new lives in America.

Welcome to America

Most families traveling to the United States were escaping poverty or religious persecution back home. Many cheered and wept with joy as their steamships passed the Statue of Liberty in New York Harbor. They had endured storms and seasickness, but the long journey was finally over.

First impressions

The Immigration Station was busy and noisy with crowds of new arrivals waiting to be seen by the authorities. Different languages were heard as people talked excitedly to each other. Nurses were on hand to welcome and talk to the children. They reassured the youngsters, holding their hands and giving them milk to drink. Doctors and inspectors wore uniforms, which was intimidating for many of the immigrant children.

Entry tests

Families were put through a series of entry tests. The most important was the medical test. Anyone with an infectious disease was not allowed into the country. In the mental test, immigrants were asked a few arithmetic questions. Children gave their names to inspectors for the official documents, while parents had to prove they had money (usually about \$25) to support the family. Those who were ill but could be treated at Ellis Island Hospital were detained. Children traveling alone were kept until relatives came, or until money or a prepaid ticket was sent for them.

A new life

Once all the tests were over, the new arrivals could live in the United States—the land of freedom and opportunity. On the first floor of the Ellis Island Immigration Station, family and friends waited in anticipation for loved ones to arrive after months or even years apart. This area of the building became known as “the kissing post,” since reunited relatives kissed and hugged each other there. About one-third of the immigrants stayed in New York, where many worked in industries such as textile and clothing production. Thousands of children were employed as cigarette rollers, bobbin doffers in mills, and general helpers on production lines.

Loaded with luggage

This child has arrived at Ellis Island with his family. Families brought everything they could carry with them, ready to start their new lives in the United States.

Open wide
Doctors carefully examined every child as soon as they arrived at the island to make sure they were not bringing any diseases into the country.



Island of Hope

New York's Ellis Island Immigration Station opened in 1892 to process the vast numbers of people arriving from Europe—about one million a year.

“So when I came to Ellis Island, my gosh, there was something I'll never forget. The first impression—all kinds of nationalities. And the first meal we got... I said, 'My God, we're going to have a good time here. We're going to have plenty to eat.'”

Marta Forman, Czechoslovakian immigrant, at Ellis Island in 1922

Milk service
There were hundreds of employees on Ellis Island. This worker pours milk for waiting women and children.



1890

Ellis Island opens

In New York Harbor, work began on the construction of Ellis Island Immigration Station. Work was completed two years later in 1892. When the station closed in 1954, more than 12 million people had passed through. Today, at least 40 percent of the US population has an ancestor who entered the country in this way.



1891

Russian railroad

Construction of the world's longest railroad began in Russia. It took more than a decade to build, and eventually the Trans-Siberian Railway linked the capital, Moscow, with the port of Vladivostok on the Pacific coast, 5,785 miles (9,310 km) to the east.



Poster advertising the Trans-Siberian Railway



Italian baker Raffaele Esposito created the classic Margherita pizza in 1899 as a treat for the visit of Queen Margherita.

1893

Votes for women

New Zealand became the first self-governing country in the world to give women the right to vote. This was the result of a series of petitions to Parliament organized by the British-born women's rights campaigner Kate Sheppard.

▶▶ 1890

1890

Battle of Wounded Knee

American Indians lost their battle with the US Army at Wounded Knee Creek in South Dakota. In the massacre, 150 American Indians and 25 army troops were killed. It was triggered by the American government's attempt to ban the Ghost Dance—a new religious ceremony that American Indians believed would stop US expansion into their land.



Club used in the Ghost Dance by the Arapaho, a tribe of American Indians

1894

First Sino-Japanese War

When China and Japan sent troops to calm an uprising in Korea, the two nations ended up at war. The Chinese were defeated and forced to give up the island of Formosa (now Taiwan) to the Japanese. Japan became a new power, and Korea gained independence from China.



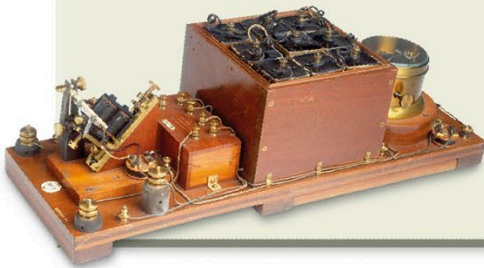
The Chinese and Japanese navies battle at the mouth of the Yalu River dividing Korea and China.

1895 A YEAR OF INVENTION

This groundbreaking year saw three dramatic technological breakthroughs, which would have long-lasting effects: Italian Guglielmo Marconi invented the wireless telegraph, German physicist Wilhelm Röntgen discovered X-rays, and the French Lumière brothers premiered the world's first moving picture film.

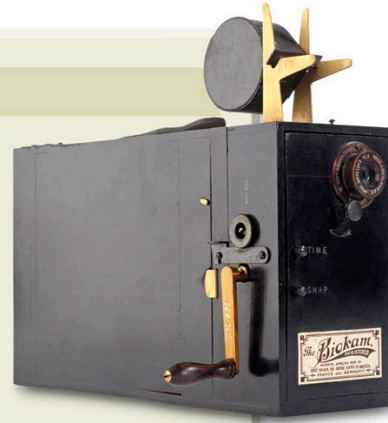
Wireless telegraph

This is a replica of Marconi's wireless telegraph, which used radio waves to transmit Morse code signals. The invention paved the way for the development of broadcast radio in the 20th century.



Moving pictures

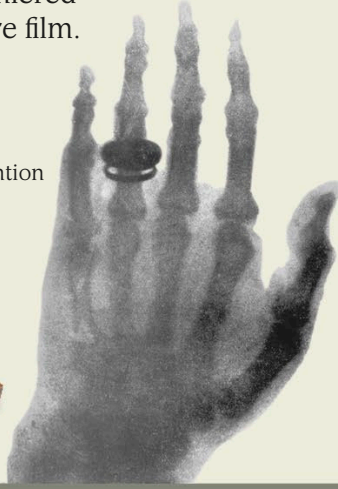
Viewers of the first motion picture film, presented by Auguste and Louis Lumière in Paris using a projector, were shown a 50-second scene of workers leaving a factory.



Film projector belonging to the Lumière brothers

X-rays

With the discovery of X-rays, it was finally possible for doctors to see inside the human body. The world's first X-ray showed the hand and wedding ring of Wilhelm Röntgen's wife. He was awarded the first Nobel Prize for Physics in 1901.



1899

Second Boer War

In South Africa, war broke out between the Boer settlers and the British imperial forces. After bitter fighting, the Boers were defeated in 1902, but the British were criticized for their brutal tactics—sending civilians to concentration camps (where 25,000 died) and trying to starve the Boers into submission.

1900

1896

Olympic Games

Believing that sports could be used to promote peace between nations, French aristocrat Pierre de Coubertin organized the first modern revival of the Olympic Games in Athens, Greece. About 300 athletes competed in various competitions, including swimming, cycling, weightlifting, wrestling, and track and field.



Medal given to all participating athletes at the 1896 Olympic Games

1896

Battle of Adowa

At this time, all of Africa except for Liberia and Ethiopia was under European control. Italy hoped to add Ethiopia to its empire, but was defeated at the Battle of Adowa in the First Italo-Ethiopian War. But Italy would try again in 1935 and win the Second Italo-Ethiopian War.

1898

Spanish-American War

In the Cuban War of Independence, the United States came to assist Cuba against the Spanish. Spain was defeated and forced to give its remaining colonies—the Philippines, Guam, and Puerto Rico—to the US. Although Cuba was supposed to have achieved independence, the United States continued to occupy the island for years to come.



Future US president Theodore Roosevelt and his troops plant the American flag to celebrate victory in the Spanish-American War.

1900 ▶ 1910



Airship *Graf Zeppelin* on a flight test in 1900

1900

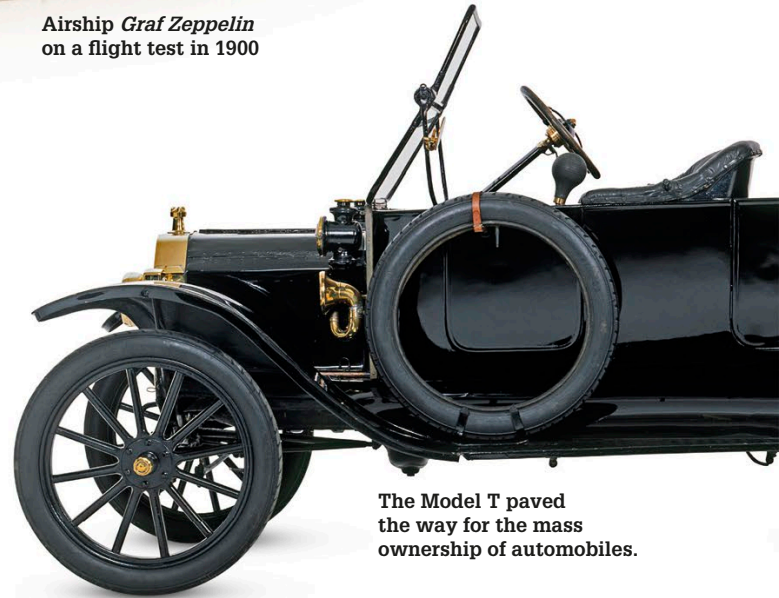
High flier

Air travel got off to a flying start in the 20th century with the first flight of a new type of airship. Known as the zeppelin, it was named after its German inventor, Ferdinand von Zeppelin. Commercial flights began in 1910, and the craft was used for bombing missions during World War I.

1902

Riyadh captured

A member of the exiled ruling family of Riyadh in Arabia, Ibn Saud returned in 1902 to capture the city of his birth. For the next two decades, he took control of the rest of central Arabia, founding the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia in 1932, which he ruled as King Abdulaziz.



The Model T paved the way for the mass ownership of automobiles.

▶▶ 1900

1900

Boxer Rebellion

In China, a nationalist group, the Righteous and Harmonious Fists (nicknamed "Boxers"), led an uprising against foreigners. It was eventually stopped by an international force including British, American, Russian, and Japanese troops.



1903

First flight

American brothers Wilbur and Orville Wright invented the first powered flying machine, named *Flyer*. The maiden flight took place at Kill Devil Hills, North Carolina, and lasted just 12 seconds.

1904

Russo-Japanese War

In the Boxer Rebellion of 1901, Russia occupied the region of Manchuria in northeast China. This caused hostility between Russia and Japan. When talks failed, Japan declared war. Japan drove the Russians out of Manchuria and emerged from the conflict as a world power.



1901

Australian Commonwealth

Although still part of the British Empire, six Australian colonies joined together to form the federal Australian state, which would control its own domestic and foreign policy. A new capital, Canberra, was built a decade later.

Depiction of the Russo-Japanese War



1879–1955

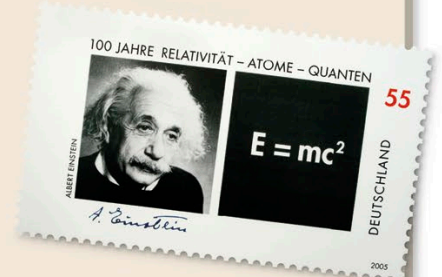
ALBERT EINSTEIN

In 1905, German scientist Albert Einstein published a revolutionary paper that explained many of the mysteries of the Universe. Einstein worked in an office in Switzerland and had developed his “Special Theory of Relativity” in his spare time.

Scientific genius

Born in Germany to a Jewish family, Einstein moved to Switzerland to study, and then to the United States in 1933, where he lived until he died. After his paper was published, he became the world’s most famous scientist and was awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1921.

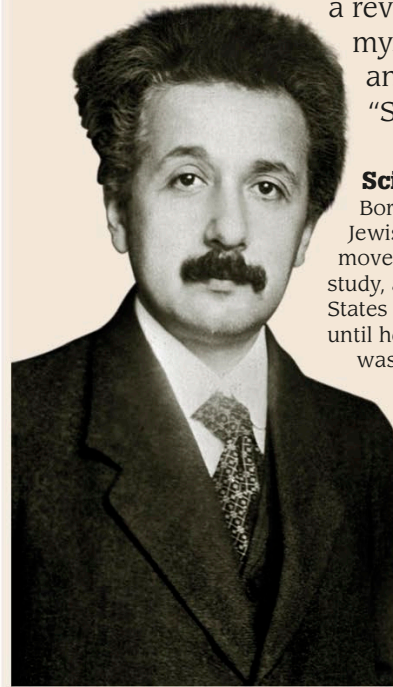
German stamp celebrating the centennial of Einstein’s theories in 2005

**Special Theory of Relativity**

Einstein suggested that mass and energy are versions of the same thing, which he expressed in his famous equation: $E=mc^2$. His later work explained how space and time form an interconnected whole called “space-time.”

Model T

Before the Model T, cars had been handmade and expensive. In 1908, American businessman Henry Ford revolutionized the industry by building his vehicles on factory assembly lines and selling them cheaply. By 1927, about 15 million had been built.



1910

1905

Russian revolt

Already unpopular with most of the nation, Czar Nicholas II faced mass protests following Russia’s defeat by Japan. To avoid being overthrown, the Czar was forced to introduce a new elected parliament, called the Duma, in 1905.

1906

San Francisco earthquake

An enormous earthquake hit San Francisco early in the morning of April 18, destroying most of the city’s buildings and killing more than 3,000 people. The damage took years to repair.

1909

Young Turk movement

The Ottoman Empire in Turkey was taken over by the Young Turk movement, which forced the sultan to grant a constitution and allow democratic elections. The Young Turks also advocated for legal reforms and more rights for women.

 The two US baseball leagues—the American League and the National League—competed in an end-of-the-year championship for the first time in 1903. It is now the World Series.



Crumbling buildings lined the streets after the earthquake.

DECEMBER 17, 1903, NORTH CAROLINA



Wilbur Wright watches his brother Orville take off from Kill Devil Hills, North Carolina.

“We could not understand that there was anything about a bird that would enable it to fly that could not be built on a larger scale.”

Orville Wright



Learning to fly

On a blustery morning in 1903, two American brothers—bicycle-makers by trade—proved that powered flight was possible. In an aircraft of their own design equipped with a small engine, Orville Wright nervously took the controls while his brother walked alongside. The first flight lasted just 12 seconds and covered only 120 ft (37 m), but it launched the age of aviation. That morning, four flights were made in all, two by each brother. The final one, piloted by Wilbur, lasted 59 seconds and traveled a distance of 852 ft (260 m)—the world’s first air pilots had shown that the sky was now the limit.

1910 ▶ 1915



On April 14, 1912, the British liner *Titanic* hit an iceberg and sank in the Atlantic Ocean. More than 1,500 passengers and crew died.

1910

Mexican Revolution

After more than four decades as Mexico's dictator, Porfirio Díaz was finally forced from power by an uprising demanding greater freedoms for the people. However, fighting between liberal and conservative forces continued for another decade.

1911

Chinese Revolution

More than 2,000 years of imperial rule in China ended with a rebellion against the unpopular Manchu Dynasty. Puyi, the six-year-old emperor, was forced to abdicate, and the country was declared a republic.

1911 THE RACE FOR THE SOUTH POLE

In 1911, two men competed to be first to reach the world's last unexplored territory, the South Pole, in Antarctica. Robert Scott, a British navy officer, got there on January 17, 1912, only to discover that the Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen had beaten him to it.

Norwegian victory

Captain Amundsen and his four companions arrived at the South Pole on December 14, 1911, where they planted the Norwegian flag. The trip had been meticulously planned and all the explorers made it home safely.

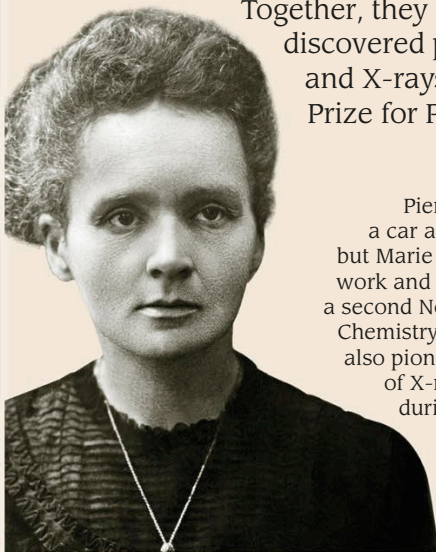


▶▶ **1910**

1867–1934 MARIE CURIE

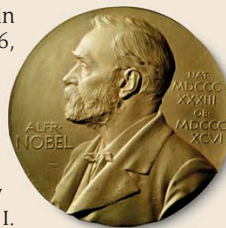
In an age when most scientists were men, Marie Curie was a notable exception. Born Marie Skłodowska in Poland, she studied in Paris, France, where she met and married Pierre Curie, a physics professor.

Together, they investigated the recently discovered phenomena of radiation and X-rays, winning the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1903.



Nobel Prize

Pierre was killed in a car accident in 1906, but Marie continued her work and was awarded a second Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1911. She also pioneered the use of X-rays in surgery during World War I.



Nobel Prize medal

1912

First Balkan War

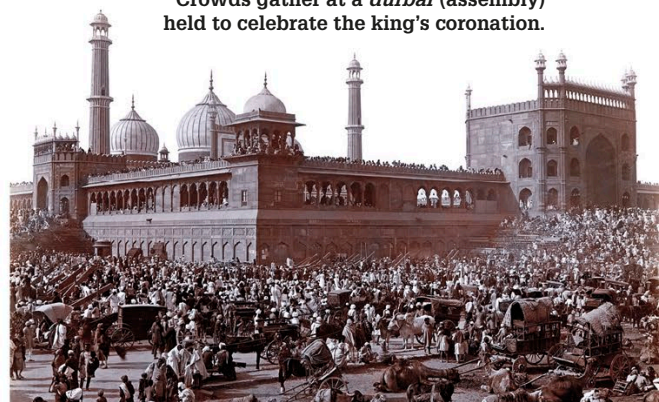
The Balkan League—an alliance between Bulgaria, Greece, Montenegro, and Serbia—declared war on the Ottoman Empire to free Macedonia from Turkish rule. The Ottomans were defeated the following year and lost Albania and Macedonia, which represented almost all of its remaining European territory.

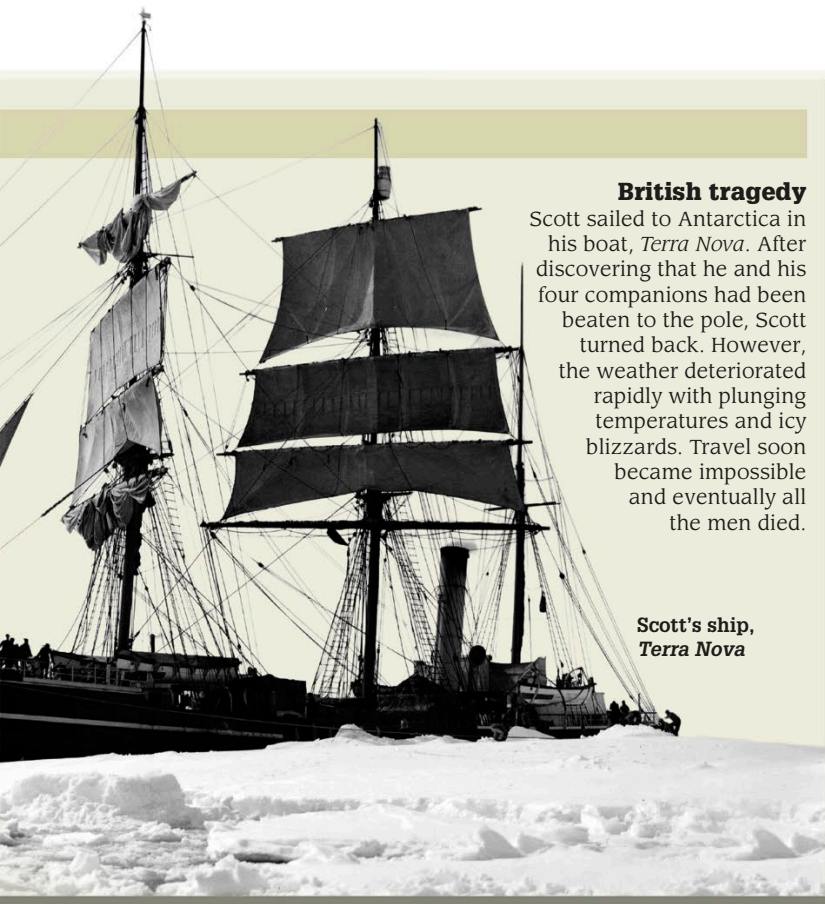
1911

New Delhi is born

In 1911, George V was crowned king of England. During his coronation celebrations in India, the king declared New Delhi to be India's new capital, replacing the old capital of Calcutta.

Crowds gather at a *darbar* (assembly) held to celebrate the king's coronation.





British tragedy

Scott sailed to Antarctica in his boat, *Terra Nova*. After discovering that he and his four companions had been beaten to the pole, Scott turned back. However, the weather deteriorated rapidly with plunging temperatures and icy blizzards. Travel soon became impossible and eventually all the men died.

Scott's ship,
Terra Nova

1914

World War I begins

The assassination of Archduke Franz Ferdinand, heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary, in Sarajevo in late July, prompted the first truly global conflict. Austrian emperor Franz Joseph declared war against Serbia, and World War I started. The network of alliances between the major European powers drew the continent into all-out war.

1914

First Battle of the Marne

In September, Germany swept through Belgium into France, winning a series of quick battles and reaching the outskirts of Paris. However, the German advance was stopped by a French counteroffensive at the Marne River, forcing the German army into retreat.

World War I
See pages
242–243

1915

Second Battle of Ypres

The first battle at the Belgium town of Ypres in autumn 1914 marked the start of more than three years of stalemate. At the second battle in spring 1915, the Germans tried unsuccessfully to break the deadlock by using poison gas for the first time.

1915

1914

Panama Canal

After 10 years and \$300 million, the Panama Canal was completed in 1914. Linking the Atlantic Ocean with the Pacific Ocean, the canal is 48 miles (77 km) in length. The canal was opened to traffic in August 1914. Ships no longer had to sail the long Cape Horn route around the southern tip of South America or through the dangerous Strait of Magellan.



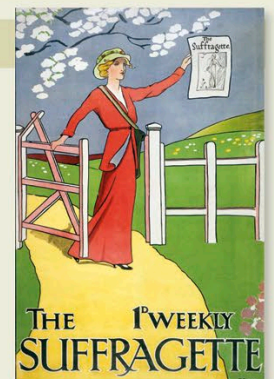
A tugboat pulls a ship through the new Panama Canal.

SUFFRAGETTE MOVEMENT

The right for women to be given the vote was advocated by political campaigners around the world. New Zealand was the first country to give women the vote in 1893, then Australia in 1902, Finland in 1906, and Norway in 1913. The Suffragette Movement in Britain heated up during the early 20th century with women given the vote in 1918. The US followed in 1920.

Raising awareness

Women did everything they could to capture the public's attention and the campaigners in Britain were particularly violent. They took part in acts of civil disobedience, smashing windows and chaining themselves to railings in the streets.



Media campaigns

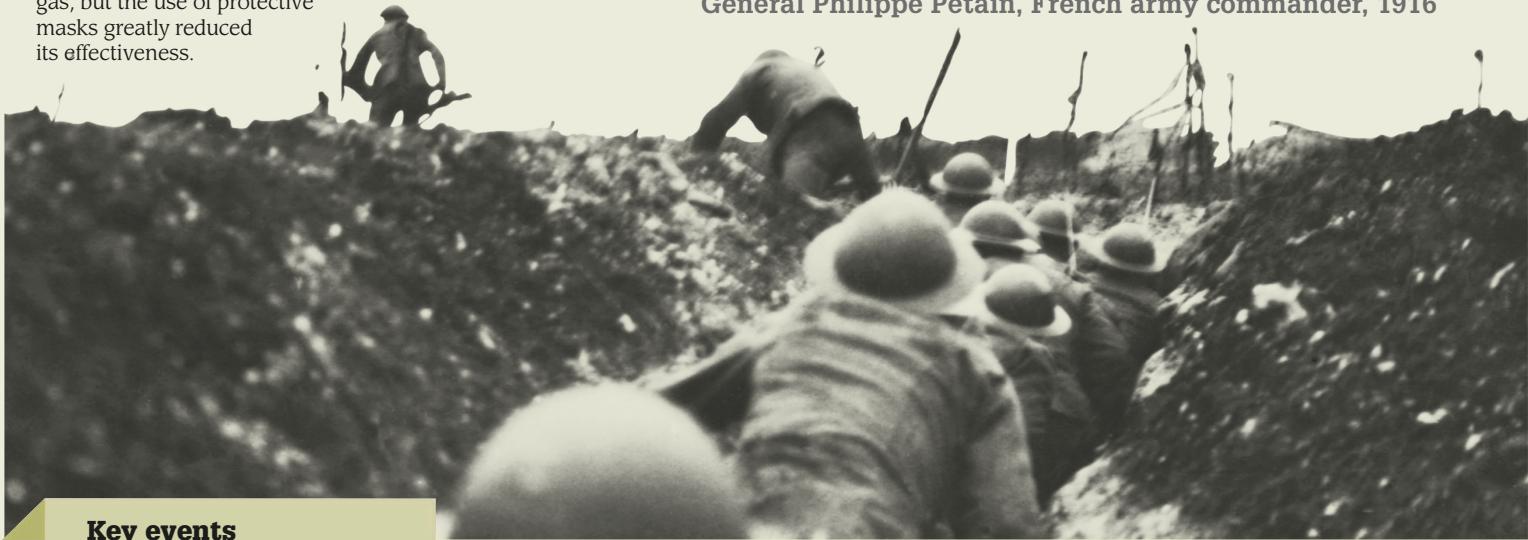
Women made use of the media and produced their own publications to promote their cause around the world. Poster and newspaper campaigns helped the female following grow. For example, this poster is advertising *The Suffragette* newspaper.

World War I

At the turn of the 20th century, the countries of Europe were a complicated network of alliances and rivalries. So, when the heir to the Austrian throne, Franz Ferdinand, was assassinated by a Serbian nationalist in 1914 and Austria declared war on Serbia, other nations were quickly drawn into the crisis. In Europe, the fighting took place on two fronts: the Western Front, stretching from Belgium to Switzerland, and the Eastern Front, from the Baltic to the Black Sea. However, the conflict soon spread to European colonies all over the world. The war raged for four years, and more than 20 million people lost their lives.

Trench warfare

On the Western Front, the war was fought from long trenches fortified with barbed wire, machine guns, and heavy artillery. Each side launched offensives, sending men "over the top" to attack the enemy. The result was usually the mass slaughter of the attackers in the muddy "no man's land" between the two front lines. In the trenches, both sides deployed deadly chlorine gas, but the use of protective masks greatly reduced its effectiveness.



Divided Europe

Europe lay at the center of the conflict. The opposing sides were the Central Powers (Germany, Austria-Hungary, and the Ottoman Empire) and the Allies (Britain, France, Russia, and later Italy and the United States). The lines of the Western and Eastern Fronts changed during the war.

- Allies (Entente)
- Central Powers
- Neutral
- Western Front
- Eastern Front

“Success will come to the side that has the last man standing.”

General Philippe Pétain, French army commander, 1916

Key events

1914

When Archduke Franz Ferdinand was assassinated, war erupted in Europe. By the end of the year, opposing forces in Europe were dug in, facing each other on the Western Front.

1915

The Allied attack at Gallipoli in Turkey failed to knock the Ottoman Empire out of the war, while in the east, the Germans drove back the Russians, capturing Poland.

1916

In France, the German offensive at Verdun lasted almost a year but the town was not captured. More than 700,000 were killed in the Allied offensive at the Somme.

1916

As both sides fought to control shipping routes, there were battles at sea. At Jutland, off Denmark, battle raged between 250 vessels but ended in stalemate.

New weapons of war

World War I saw new weapons used in battle for the first time. Early zeppelins and planes proved useful for spying, but inflicted only limited damage on the enemy. Tanks were unreliable, but hinted at possibilities for the future.

Zeppelin attacks

The Germans used airships, mainly for spying. They also launched bombing raids on Britain with limited effect.



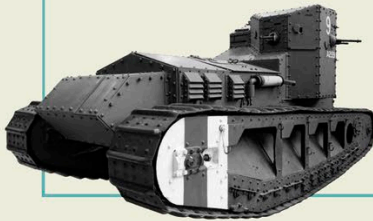
Airplanes

This was the first war where aircraft were used on a large scale. Small biplanes took part in aerial dogfights, but they had little influence on the conflict's outcome.



Tanks

First used by the British at the Battle of the Somme in France, tanks often got stuck in the muddy battlefields.



America calling

In May 1915, the British liner *Lusitania* was sunk by a German submarine, killing 1,201 people on board, including 128 Americans. Outrage at the attack was a major factor in the United States joining the war in 1917, alongside the Allies, giving a big boost to manpower and morale. "Uncle Sam" featured on a poster calling on Americans to join the army.

Women at war

As more and more men were called up to fight, women were hired to fill their places in the workplace, with the largest numbers employed in factories and farms. In Germany, by the end of the war, women made up more than half of the total domestic workforce. The wartime role of women would later help them win the vote.



Casualties of war

About 65 million men fought in World War I, of whom 8.3 million died. Germany suffered the highest number of casualties.

Country	Military deaths
United States	116,000
Ottoman Empire (Turkey)	325,000
Italy	460,000
Britain and the Commonwealth	1,114,800
Austria-Hungary	1,200,000
France	1,385,000
Russia	1,700,000
Germany	1,808,000
Civilians of all countries	8,000,000
Estimated combatants killed, all nations	8,300,000
Estimated wounded soldiers, all nations	19,536,000

An end to war

The final Allied offensives began on August 8, 1918, and pushed toward the German border. As the Allies advanced, the Central Powers collapsed. Revolution spread throughout a crumbling and weakened Germany. On November 11, an armistice was arranged, ending the war. Peace treaties redrew the map of Europe, penalizing the defeated nations. Surviving soldiers received a hero's welcome home.



1917

The United States entered the war, while the revolution forced the Russians to make peace with Germany. Major Western offensives by the Allies at Ypres failed in their objectives.

1918

The German Spring Offensive pushed the Allies back 40 miles (65 km) in just four days, but an Allied counteroffensive pushed the Germans back toward Germany.

1918

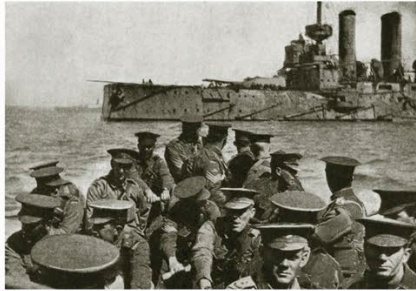
By November, it was clear that neither Germany nor its allies could continue the fight and an armistice was signed on November 11, ending the war.

Remembrance

The poppies that grew on the World War I battlefields have become a symbol of remembrance for the war dead.



1915 ▶ 1920



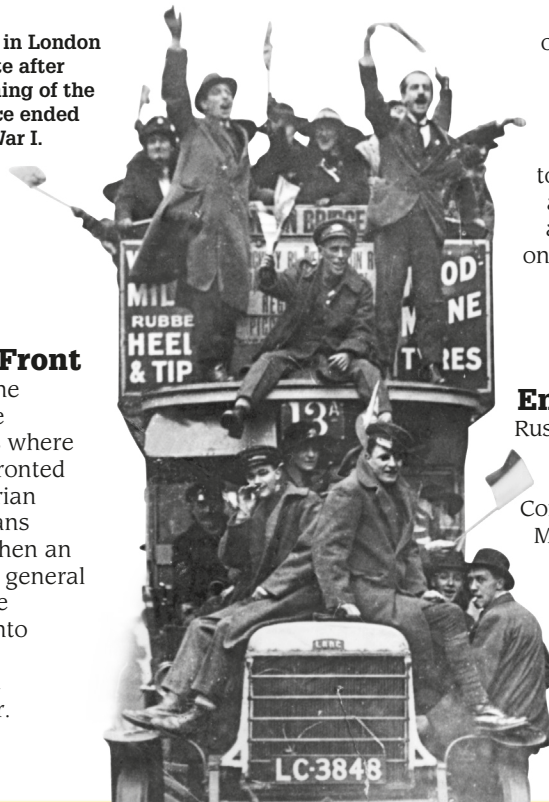
Soldiers from an Australian artillery unit wait offshore.

1915

Gallipoli campaign

During World War I, the Allied forces started their fight against Turkey by targeting Gallipoli, near the Turkish capital of Constantinople. The Turks repelled the invasion, inflicting a quarter of a million Allied casualties, including many ANZACs (Australian and New Zealand Army Corps).

Crowds in London celebrate after the signing of the armistice ended World War I.



1918

The 100 Days

Following the failure of the German Spring Offensive, the Allies began to fight back in August, pushing the German troops toward Germany over a 100-day period. An armistice was signed on November 11, 1918, ending the war.

1916

The Eastern Front

Less stable than the Western Front, the Eastern Front was where the Russians confronted German and Austrian troops. The Russians were victorious when an attack led by their general Brusilov forced the Austrians briefly into retreat. It was the Russians' greatest success of the war.

1918

End of the Czars

Russian Czar Nicholas II and his family were imprisoned by the Communists in the Ural Mountains. They were then assassinated by Bolshevik gunmen.

▶▶ 1915

1916

The Western Front

From 1914 to 1918, British and French troops faced the German army along a line of trenches called the Western Front. In 1916, there were two attempts to break through the front. First, a German attack against the French city of Verdun resulted in 400,000 casualties on both sides. Then, Britain launched an equally disastrous offensive at the Somme; more than 300,000 Allied and German soldiers were killed.

German submarine U-10 served during World War I.



Poster for the Russian Revolution, showing a worker smashing his chains

1917

Russian Revolution

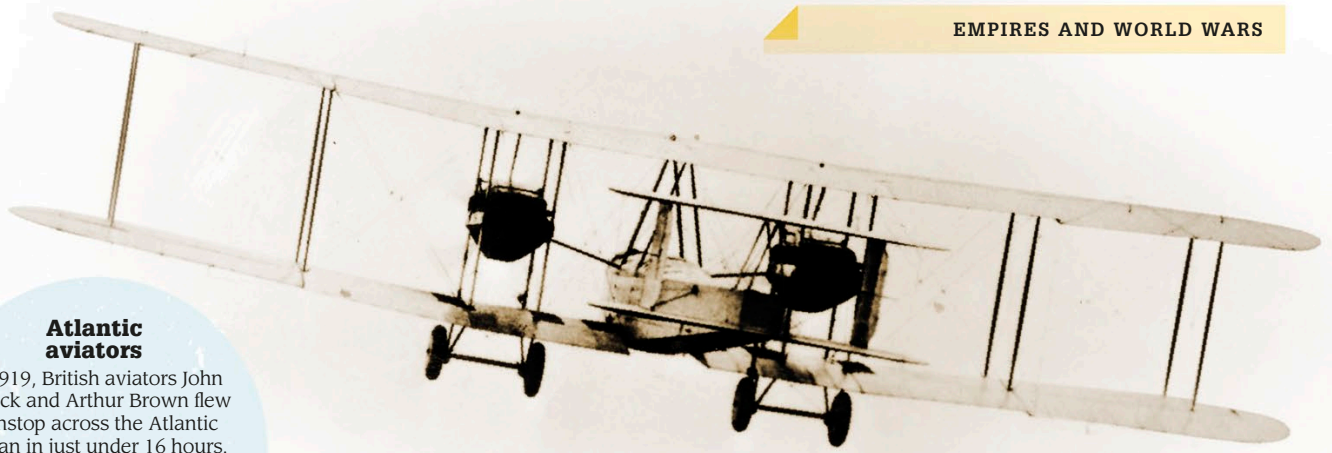
By 1917, the Russians were losing World War I as German forces pushed them back. Czar Nicholas II abdicated, leading to revolution. Eventually, the Communists, led by Vladimir Lenin, seized power. He signed an armistice with Germany that saw one-third of Russia's prewar population placed under German control.

1917

America declares war

The United States entered World War I for two reasons: the launch of unrestricted submarine warfare by Germany, which led to the loss of several US ships; and the publication of a telegram showing that Germany was seeking an alliance with Mexico if America joined the war. American manpower was a huge boost to the Allies.





Atlantic aviators

In 1919, British aviators John Alcock and Arthur Brown flew nonstop across the Atlantic Ocean in just under 16 hours. The distance was 1,890 miles (3,040 km). This feat helped them claim a 10,000-pound prize offered by the *Daily Mail* newspaper.

1919

Amritsar massacre

Fearing a nationalist uprising in India, British troops were ordered to fire on an unarmed crowd gathered at the Jallianwala Bagh gardens in Amritsar for a religious festival. Nearly 400 people were killed, and more than 1,000 injured, prompting outrage and fueling calls for Indian independence from Britain.

1920

1919

Versailles conference

The treaty signed at the end-of-war conference in Versailles, France, imposed severe peace terms on Germany. The country lost all its colonies as well as European territory in the east and west. It also faced a huge bill for the war, known as reparations, amounting to \$31 billion.



The 1919 Treaty of Versailles resulted in an economic crisis for Germany during the 1920s, and a sense of injustice that helped pave the way for the rise of Nazism in the years before World War II.

1918 SPANISH FLU

The biggest killer of 1918 was not war, but a powerful strain of flu that killed more than 50 million people worldwide. It was called Spanish flu because most of the reports on the disease came from Spain. This was not because the disease had originated there, but because Spain had remained neutral in the war and so did not have a media blackout like some other countries.



Global epidemic

The flu was one of the worst natural disasters in history, affecting nations across the world. Hospitals struggled to cope with the volume of casualties—it is estimated that about 3 percent of the world's population was killed.

Emergency hospital tents for flu patients in Massachusetts

Policeman on duty wearing a protective mask

Taking precautions

People tried to avoid catching the disease by wearing masks. Governments tried to stop its spread by quarantining communities and preventing infected people from moving around—which proved very difficult during a world war.



1920 ▶ 1930

1920

League of Nations

The League of Nations was an international body founded in 1919 to try and solve disputes between countries. It had its first meeting in 1920, but without the United States. Although US president Woodrow Wilson proposed the original idea, the US decided not to join.



1922

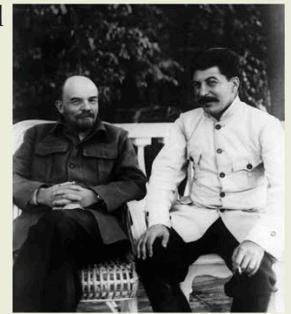
Mussolini in power

Benito Mussolini was the leader of the Italian Fascist Party, which he formed in 1919. In 1922, he was invited to join the government to deal with a political crisis. By 1925, he had made himself dictator, "Il Duce," with a mission to turn Italy into a major European power.

1922

SOVIET UNION ESTABLISHED

From 1917, Russia experienced civil war between the "red" Communists and the "white" opposition forces. Victorious Communist leader Vladimir Lenin united most of the territory formerly ruled by the czar to form the Soviet Union.



Lenin and Stalin

Vladimir Lenin (left) died in 1924 and, after a brief power struggle, was replaced by Joseph Stalin (right), who consolidated his power as he built his army, assassinating his political rivals. Stalin launched a five-year plan to expand farming and industry, and exerted ruthless control over the state for three decades.



Badge bearing the hammer and sickle—a symbol of Communism

“Bread, Peace, and Land.”

Communist slogan, 1917

1920

1920

Prohibition

The sale of alcohol was banned in the United States from 1920 until 1933. During this time, organized crime gangs grew rich selling illegal alcohol and running secret bars, known as "speakeasies."



Drinkers break the law in an American speakeasy.

1922

Irish Civil War

In 1921, Ireland had been divided into Northern Ireland, which remained part of the UK, and the Irish Free State. Many Irish republicans objected to the division, launching a civil war.

1923

Turkish settlement

Following its defeat in World War I, much of the Ottoman Empire was divided between Britain and France. However, Turkey fought off the Allies and in 1923 gained their recognition of its modern borders.

Tutankhamun

After years of searching, British archaeologist Howard Carter discovered the tomb of the Egyptian pharaoh Tutankhamun. Left undisturbed for more than 3,000 years, the tomb was filled with treasures.

Tutankhamun's gold death mask



1926

Birth of television

Scottish inventor John Logie Baird demonstrated the first flickering television images to a group of 50 scientists in London. Within two years, he had sent pictures through a cable across the Atlantic Ocean to the US.

Early Baird black-and-white television



Television screen



Walt Disney, with a model of his creation, Mickey Mouse

1928

Mickey Mouse

The famous animated character first appeared in the short cartoon, *Steamboat Willie*. Its creator, Walt Disney, went on to found Walt Disney Productions, creating full-length animated cartoons and opening the theme park Disneyland in the 1950s.



In 1927, *The Jazz Singer*, the first film with spoken words, signaled the beginning of the end for silent movies.

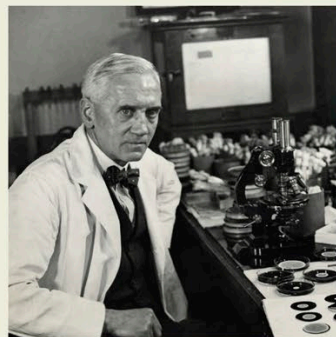
**Oscar ceremony**

The first Academy Awards celebrating the year's best films were held in a small hotel ceremony in Hollywood in 1929. Each winner received a small gold-plated statue known as an Oscar.

1930

1928 DISCOVERY OF PENICILLIN

Scottish scientist Alexander Fleming found that in dishes where *staphylococci* bacteria were being grown, a mold formed that was killing the bacteria. This accidental discovery led to the development of the first antibiotic, penicillin.

**Fleming's laboratory**

Fleming discovered penicillin and developed it in his laboratory. Then two scientists, Australian Howard Florey and German Ernst Chain, made penicillin a usable drug.

Antibiotics

An antibiotic is a chemical substance derived from a mold that cures infections. By the late 1940s, the antibiotic penicillin was being mass produced and has since saved millions of lives as a treatment for bacterial infection.



Penicillin mold (green) attacks bacteria (white)

1929

Wall Street Crash

The good times of the "Roaring Twenties" came to a sudden end in October 1929 when panic-selling wiped billions of dollars off the value of businesses on the US stock market and sent the world into the Great Depression.

The Great Depression
See pages 250–251



In New York, a man tries to sell his car, having lost all his money in the Wall Street Crash.

1930 ▶ 1935



1930

Soviet poster promoting the country's harvest

Collectivization of agriculture

In the Soviet Union, dictator Joseph Stalin's attempt to industrialize the countryside by turning small private farms into large state-owned operations was met with widespread resistance. Thousands of those who resisted were sent to forced labor camps known as gulags.

1931

Age of the skyscraper

The 1,046 ft (319 m) tall Chrysler Building was built in New York in 1930. A year later, the Empire State Building was constructed nearby. At 1,454 ft (443 m) in height, it was the world's tallest building at the time.



The Chrysler Building is visible (far right) behind a worker constructing the Empire State Building.

1931

Creation of the Commonwealth

The British parliament passed a law recognizing the British Empire dominions of Australia, New Zealand, Canada, South Africa, the Irish Free State, and Newfoundland as fully equal with Britain. This new arrangement was known as the Commonwealth of Nations.

1932

New Deal

With the Great Depression at its peak and about 13 million Americans out of work, the new US president Franklin D. Roosevelt gave a speech on his "New Deal"—a series of plans to try and solve the economic problems. These came into effect a year later.

▶▶ 1930

1930

Salt March

As part of Indian nationalist leader Mohandas Gandhi's campaign of nonviolent civil disobedience against British rule, Gandhi led his followers on a march to the sea to collect salt. This activity was banned by the British, who had a monopoly on salt.



1931

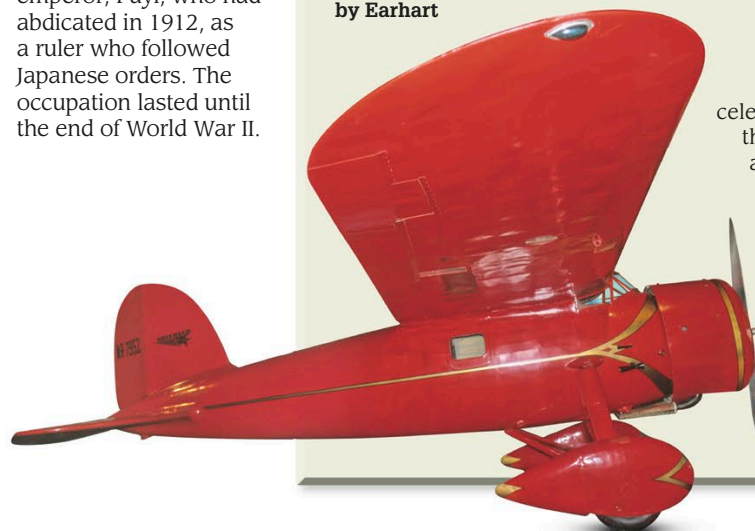
Japan occupies Manchuria

On the pretense of protecting the South Manchuria Railway from terrorists, the Japanese invaded the Chinese region. They installed the last Chinese emperor, Puyi, who had abdicated in 1912, as a ruler who followed Japanese orders. The occupation lasted until the end of World War II.

1930 THE AIR INDUSTRY

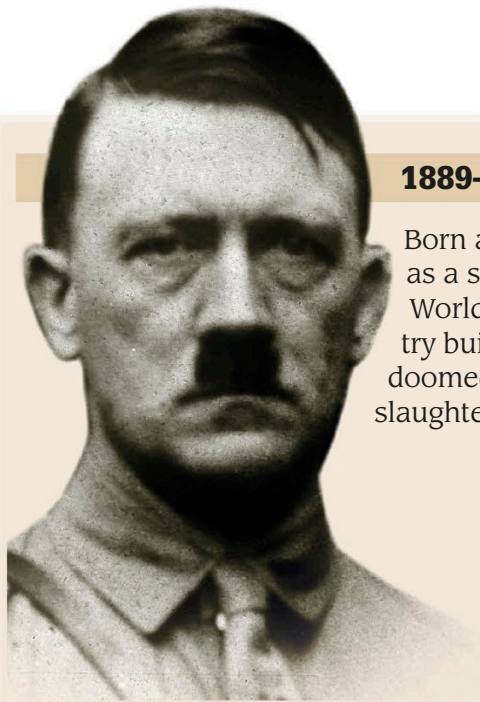
The 1930s saw major developments in the airline industry. Airplanes and airships competed to be the main form of passenger transportation. The public was also fascinated by the feats of pioneering aviators, such as Amelia Earhart and Amy Johnson.

Lockheed Vega flown by Earhart



Female fliers

During the 1920s, male aviation pioneers had become international celebrities. In the 1930s, it was the women's turn, as British amateur pilot Amy Johnson became the first woman to fly solo from England to Australia. She was followed in 1932 by the American Amelia Earhart, who made the first unaccompanied flight across the Atlantic Ocean.



1889–1945 ADOLF HITLER

Born and raised in Austria, Adolf Hitler served as a soldier in a German regiment during World War I. Defeat was his motivation to try building a new German Empire, but his doomed attempt unleashed carnage and slaughter on an unimaginable scale.

Rise of a dictator

Hitler was a gifted public speaker who convinced many people to support the Nazis. But when the Nazis came to power in 1933, they turned Germany into a dictatorship with Hitler as the supreme Führer (ruler).



Nazi origins

After serving in the war, Hitler became the leader of the far-right National Socialist (Nazi) Party. The Nazis blamed Germany's economic problems on the Treaty of Versailles and the influence of other races, particularly the Jews, who they considered inferior to the Germans.

Haile Selassie, emperor of Ethiopia



1935

Ethiopia invaded

Having failed to conquer Ethiopia several decades earlier, Italy tried again. Despite determined resistance by the Ethiopians, led by their emperor Haile Selassie, Ethiopia fell the next year.

1935

1933

Famine in Ukraine

According to official Soviet propaganda, the Soviet Union's economy was thriving while the rest of the world suffered in the Great Depression. In reality, Ukraine was suffering one of the largest famines in history with millions dying of starvation.

The Great Depression
See pages
250–251

1935

Dust Bowl

The Depression in the United States was made even worse by an agricultural disaster. Poor farming techniques and severe storms ripped the topsoil from farmland in Oklahoma, Texas, and several other states, creating a "Dust Bowl" that forced thousands of farmers to migrate.



Failed flights

In the early 1930s, airships looked like the future of flight. But a series of disasters caused people to lose faith in the industry. The British *R101* crashed in 1930, but the final blow came when the German *Hindenburg* exploded in flames (above) in 1937 while docking in New Jersey, killing more than 30 people.



A truck drives away from a giant dust cloud in Colorado.



Wall Street Crash

In the 1920s boom time, people overinvested in stocks, sending prices soaring. But in 1929, stock prices plummeted, plunging the United States into economic turmoil. Here, a panicked crowd surrounds the New York Stock Exchange on Wall Street.

Who's who



Herbert Hoover

Elected president in 1928, Hoover is often blamed for not realizing the scale of the problem. He thought the economy would fix itself. He was voted out of office in 1932.



Franklin D. Roosevelt

Hoover's successor, "FDR," introduced a policy—the New Deal—to solve the problems. This involved spending government money on public construction projects to employ people.

“Any lack of confidence in the economic future of the United States is foolish.”

President Herbert Hoover in a speech after the stock market crash, 1929

Key events

1929

The US economy was plunged into crisis as stock prices suddenly crashed.



1930

More than three million people were unemployed in the United States, but President Hoover continued to believe that prosperity would return.

1931

As the Depression spread around the world, many banks collapsed, taking the life savings of thousands of people.

1932

Franklin D. Roosevelt was elected president in a landslide victory. He was committed to solving the country's economic problems.

1933

Adolf Hitler came to power in Germany, promising to solve the problems of the Depression through his extremist policies.

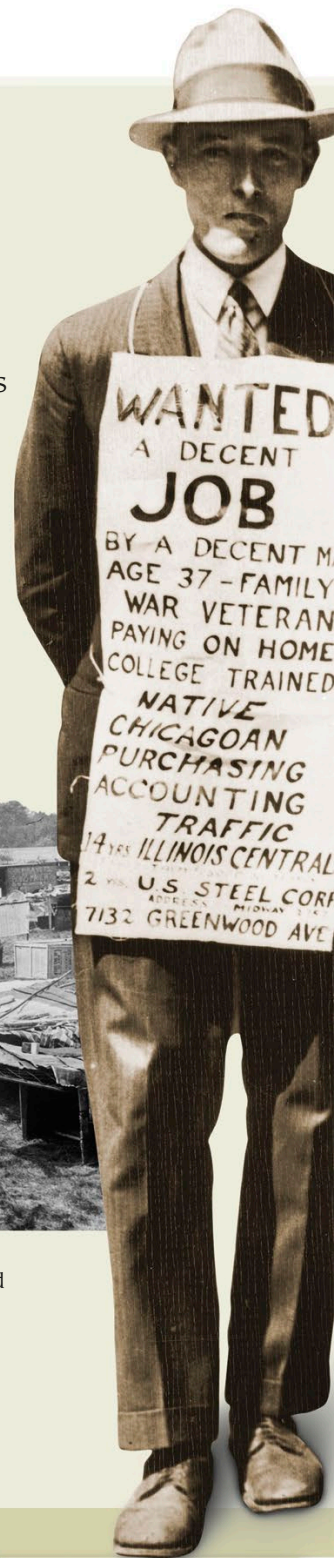
The Great Depression

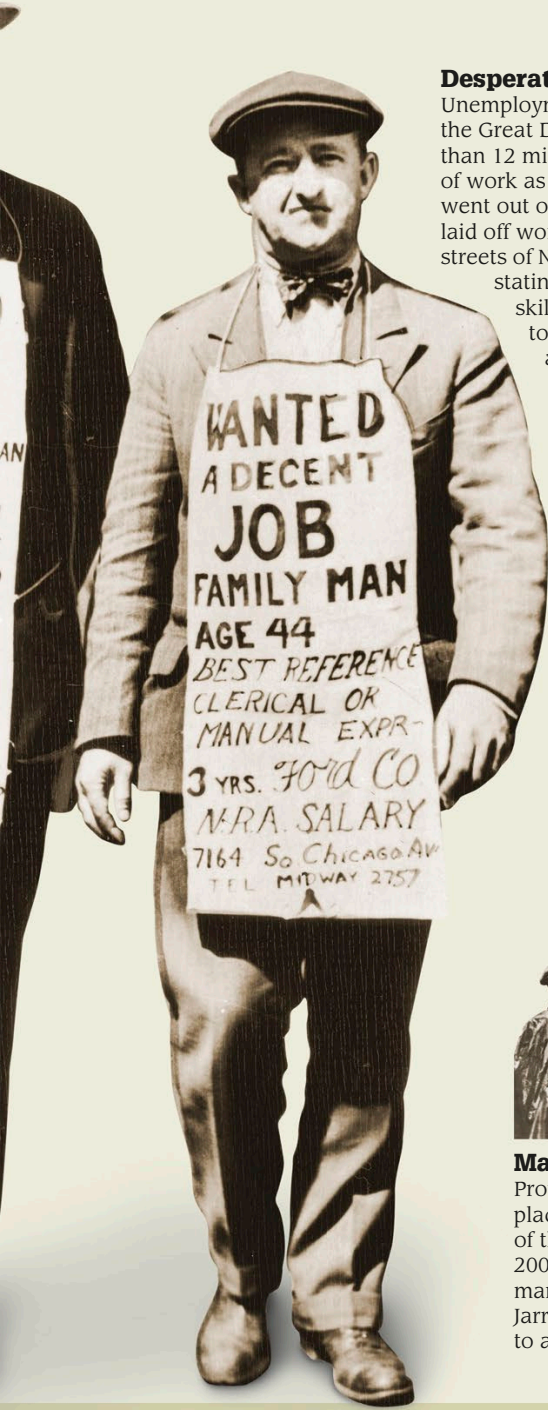
On Monday, October 28, 1929, the New York Stock Exchange crashed. Known as Black Monday, this caused thousands of companies to go bankrupt, and widespread unemployment and poverty ensued. The effects soon spread around the world, causing a global Depression. The election of President Franklin D. Roosevelt in 1932 and the introduction of his “New Deal” policies would turn the country around, with aid for the unemployed and big building projects to create jobs.



Housing crisis

During the Depression, about 20,000 companies and 1,600 banks went bust, and hundreds of thousands of farms were sold. Many people ended up homeless, and were forced to live in hastily built shantytowns, known as “Hoovervilles” after President Hoover.





Desperate for work

Unemployment figures soared during the Great Depression. By 1932, more than 12 million Americans were out of work as banks closed, companies went out of business, and factories laid off workers. People took to the streets of New York, wearing banners stating their professions and skills. They were prepared to work for only a dollar a week. Without money, families grew desperate for food, and were forced to line up for free soup at public kitchens.

Two men advertise their need to find work during the Great Depression.



Mass protest

Protests against the Depression took place across the world. In 1936, one of the most famous protests involved 200 unemployed shipbuilders who marched nearly 300 miles (500 km) from Jarrow in northeast England to London to appeal to the government for help.

Escapist entertainment

The Depression also coincided with the arrival of "talkies," new films that became one of the most popular forms of entertainment for the masses. The movies were a cheap way for many people to escape the harsh reality of daily life.



Technicolor camera used to shoot early color films

Industrial unemployment

Unemployment rose and trade declined in all the main industrialized countries during the Depression. Germany was the hardest-hit nation of all, and the public's dissatisfaction became a contributing factor in Hitler's rise to power.

Country	Millions of unemployed	Unemployment rate
Germany	5 million	30.1%
United Kingdom	3 million	22.1%
France	1 million	15.4%
United States	13 million	26.3%

Wartime recovery

Although the economy improved in the late 1930s, the Depression did not fully end in the United States until it entered World War II. Factories supplying vehicles and weapons to the war effort created thousands of jobs.



Poster to advertise war-related work in factories

1933

Roosevelt launched the "New Deal," a set of programs designed to bring the US out of economic gloom.

1933

President Roosevelt began his "fireside chats"—weekly radio broadcasts to the nation.

Men wait for work



1935

The Dust Bowl forced the migration of thousands of farmers in the Midwest. The Great Depression deepened.

1936

Roosevelt introduced the "Second New Deal," including pensions and plans for disability benefits and unemployment benefits.



1941

America's economic recovery was back on track, following the country's entry into World War II.

Worthless money

After World War I, Germany was faced with huge war debts and also reparations—money demanded by the Allies to compensate for the damage of the war. In an attempt to deal with the financial crisis, the government printed money. This only made it worthless and sent prices soaring, a situation called hyperinflation. A loaf of bread that cost 163 marks in 1922 cost 1.5 million by September 1923, and 200 billion by November 1923. Germans used wads of banknotes as fuel, to paper their walls, and let children play with it.

“The chief value of money lies in the fact that one lives in a world in which it is overestimated.”

Henry Louis Mencken,
American journalist



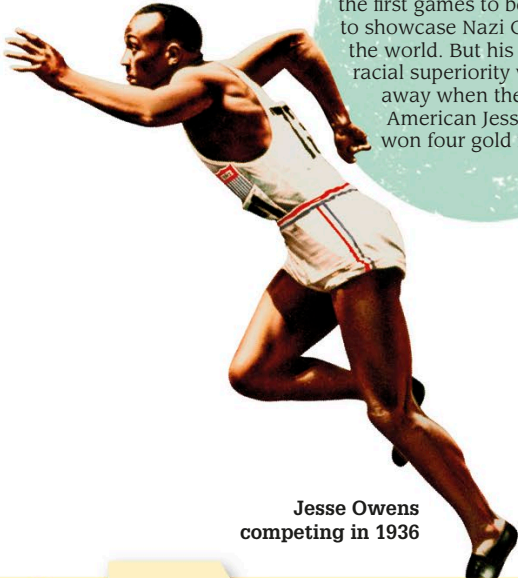


Children playing with kites made of Germany's worthless banknotes

1935 ▶ 1940

Jesse Owens

Hitler used the Berlin Olympic Games of 1936, the first games to be televised, to showcase Nazi Germany to the world. But his theories of racial superiority were blown away when the African American Jesse Owens won four gold medals.



Jesse Owens competing in 1936

1936–1939

SPANISH CIVIL WAR

In 1931, Spain's king abdicated and the country became a republic. However, in 1936 the Nationalist Party, led by General Francisco Franco, wanted to return to the old ways and revolted against the new Republican government.



Republican poster

Franco in power

Thousands were killed during three years of fighting. General Franco emerged victorious against the Republicans and went on to rule Spain as a dictator for the next 36 years.

1937

Second Sino-Japanese War

Already in control of Manchuria in northeast China, Japan launched an all-out war on China, taking several cities, including the capital Nanjing. The war continued until Japan's defeat by US forces at the end of World War II.

1938

Kristallnacht

"The Night of the Broken Glass" saw the Nazis' antisemitic (anti-Jewish) policies put into deadly effect as Jewish businesses and synagogues across Germany were destroyed. About 30,000 Jewish people were arrested and taken to concentration camps.

▶▶ 1935

1936

Edward VIII's abdication

Less than a year after becoming king of Britain, Edward VIII gave up the throne so he could marry the American divorcée Wallis Simpson—the rules of the time did not allow the British monarch to have a wife who had already been divorced. His brother George VI took over the throne.

Edward and Mrs. Simpson on their wedding day in 1937



German troops in Vienna, Austria

1938

Union of Germany and Austria

The next stage in Hitler's plan for a Greater German Reich (empire) was to create an *Anschluss* (union) of Germany and Austria, the country of the dictator's birth. In March, Hitler's troops marched unopposed into Austria.

1938

Munich Conference

At the Munich Conference, Germany, Italy, France, and Britain signed the Munich Agreement, which tried to limit German expansion. Only part of Czechoslovakia (the Sudetenland) was given to Germany. Hitler broke the Munich Agreement by taking all of Czechoslovakia.

British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain signed the Munich Agreement.





Child star Shirley Temple presents the Oscar to Walt Disney.

1939

Award-winning cartoon

It took three years to make and cost more than \$1 million, but the first feature-length cartoon, *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*, proved a huge hit when it was released in 1938. Its producer, Walt Disney, was presented with an Oscar for the film in 1939.

1940

1940

France surrenders

German forces quickly overran Belgium, the Netherlands, Denmark, and Norway. France was hit with such ferocity that it surrendered within weeks. The Germans then ruled the north while the French Vichy government ruled the south.

In 1942, the Germans took over the whole of France.

1939

World War II begins

Germany invaded Poland on September 1. Shortly after, Britain and France declared war on Germany, while the United States announced its neutrality—as did Italy before entering the war on Germany's side in 1940.

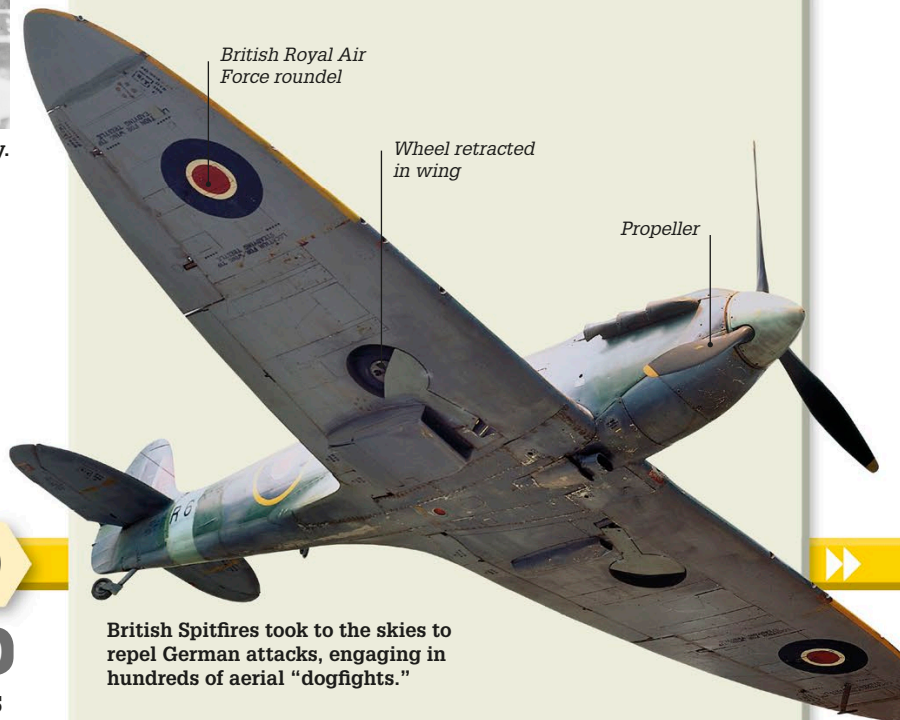
War in Europe
See pages
256–257



1935 was a year for music legends, with both American rock-and-roll star Elvis Presley and Italian opera singer Luciano Pavarotti being born.

1940 BATTLE OF BRITAIN

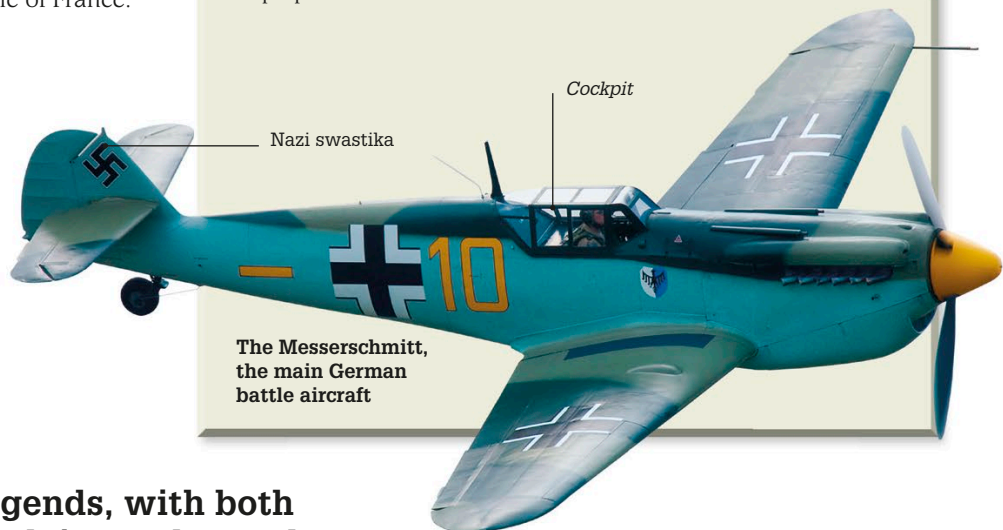
After the defeat of France, Germany turned its attention to Britain, which had started the war badly with much of its army forced to evacuate France at Dunkirk. In the summer and autumn of 1940, the British Royal Air Force (RAF) and the German Luftwaffe engaged in intense combat in the skies above Britain.



British Spitfires took to the skies to repel German attacks, engaging in hundreds of aerial "dogfights."

Rivals in the skies

Hitler's plan was to destroy Britain's air defenses to prepare for a full-scale invasion. From July onward, squadrons of German Messerschmitts and Stukas targeted British airfields and aircraft factories. In September, the Germans changed tactics, launching devastating bombing raids on London. When Britain did not surrender, the Germans called off the attacks on October 31 to prepare for their imminent invasion of the Soviet Union.



The Messerschmitt, the main German battle aircraft

War in Europe

In 1939, the army of Nazi Germany invaded Poland. This was the first step in the plan of the German dictator, Adolf Hitler, to conquer Europe. Two days later, Britain and France declared war on Germany, but Hitler's invasion of Europe continued and by 1940 Belgium, Holland, France, Denmark, and Norway had all fallen. The Allied forces of Britain, Australia, New Zealand, Canada, and the exiled French and Poles were joined in 1941 by the Soviet Union and the United States. Their enemies were the Axis powers of Germany, Italy, and (from 1941) Japan, as the war expanded across the world.



Lightning war

Germany achieved a number of swift victories in World War II using the speed and surprise of joint tank and aircraft attacks to catch the Allied forces off guard. This tactic became known as *blitzkrieg* (lightning war).



German expansion

By 1942, German troops had overrun much of Europe and North Africa. In many of the lands they occupied, such as France, Russia, Yugoslavia, and Greece, there was resistance from the nonmilitary population.

Battle of the Atlantic

The conflict was fought at sea as well as on land. In the Atlantic, German bombers and U-boats (submarines) off France and Norway tried to sink ships carrying supplies of food and weapons from the United States. Allied battleships and aircraft carriers fought back.

A US ship destroys a German U-boat.



Key events

1939

Germany invaded Poland, causing Britain and France to declare war on the Nazis.

Little ship of Dunkirk

1940

France surrendered. British troops were forced to make an emergency evacuation from the French port of Dunkirk using a mix of naval vessels and private "little ships."

1941

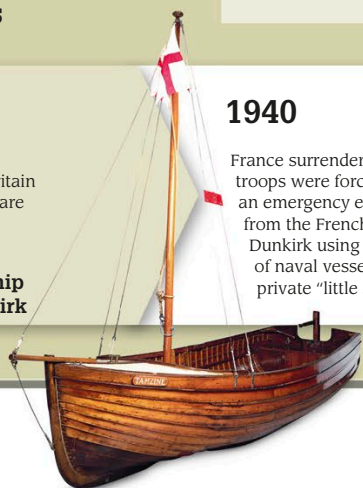
Germany turned on its former ally, the Soviet Union, in 1941. From August 1942 to March 1943, German troops tried and failed to take the city of Stalingrad.

1942

In the First and Second Battles of El Alamein in northern Africa, the British forces attacked and defeated the German Afrika Korps.

1943

Germany surrendered at Stalingrad. Germans and Italians were expelled from North Africa. Mussolini was forced to resign.



Code breakers

Both the Allies and the Axis powers disguised their communications using codes. One breakthrough of the war was the success of British code breakers in deciphering German messages encoded by the Enigma machine. As a result, valuable military information fell into Allied hands, giving them a great advantage over their enemies in the war.

German Enigma machine



Who's who

Winston Churchill

One of the few politicians to warn against Hitler during the 1930s, Winston Churchill led Britain through the war as prime minister.



Dwight Eisenhower

A general in the US Army, Eisenhower commanded the Allied Forces in Western Europe, and directed D-Day. He later became president.



Adolf Hitler

It was the ambitions of Germany's leader, Hitler, that drove the country to war and led to its defeat. At the end of the conflict, Hitler took his own life.



Joseph Stalin

Soviet leader Joseph Stalin led the retaliation after Germany's attack in 1941, but ended up taking over many of the countries "freed" from German control.



African advance

The war reached north Africa by 1940. Italian forces invaded Egypt, but the defending British troops drove them back. The conflict continued until the British victory at El Alamein, Egypt, in 1942. British and American forces arrived in Algeria and Morocco, leaving the Axis armies caught between the Allies. The Axis armies surrendered in 1943.



British soldiers advance at the Battle of El Alamein in 1942.

Russian military hat



Turning point

During intense conflict on Europe's Eastern Front, the Russians beat the Germans at Stalingrad in 1942, and then pushed them steadily westward, capturing Warsaw in January 1945 and then encircling Berlin in April. Meanwhile, Allied troops pushed into Germany from the West. On May 7, Germany finally surrendered as Berlin lay in ruins. Hitler had killed himself in his bunker. On May 8, a formal announcement came that the war in Europe was over.

1944

The Allies invaded France on June 6—D-Day. Thousands of British, American, Canadian, and French troops landed to push the Germans back.

1944

The Italian government signed an armistice in 1943, but the Germans remained in control of much of Italy until 1944, when US forces captured Rome.

1944

Hitler used new weapons, the V-1 (an unmanned jet-propelled flying bomb) and the V-2 (a supersonic rocket bomb), but with limited success.

1944

Allied troops continued to push through France, capturing Paris. At the Battle of the Bulge, the Germans carried out their final counteroffensive until they were forced back.

1945

By 1945, Germany was losing the war. The Allies attacked Germany from east and west to capture Hitler's capital of Berlin. On May 7, Germany surrendered.



V-2

War in the Pacific

Japan, which had been allied to Germany since 1940, wanted to create an empire across Asia and the Pacific. However, Japan feared American interests in the area might prevent its ambitions. So in 1941, the Japanese launched an attack on the US fleet at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. The idea was to inflict so much damage that the US would be unable to wage war. The battle for control of the Pacific Ocean turned the war into a global conflict. With its Allies, the US fought back against Japan, finally claiming victory when it dropped devastating atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki.

Japan against the Allies

Japan started the war at a furious pace, declaring war on both the US and Britain. After Pearl Harbor, it took control of the Philippines, Indonesia, Hong Kong, Malaya, and Burma, as well as many Pacific islands. But from mid-1942 onward, it was mainly in retreat as the Allies went on the offensive.

- Allies
- Axis
- Axis control
- Neutral
- ┌ Extent of Japanese control, 1942
- ★ Atom bombs



Who's who



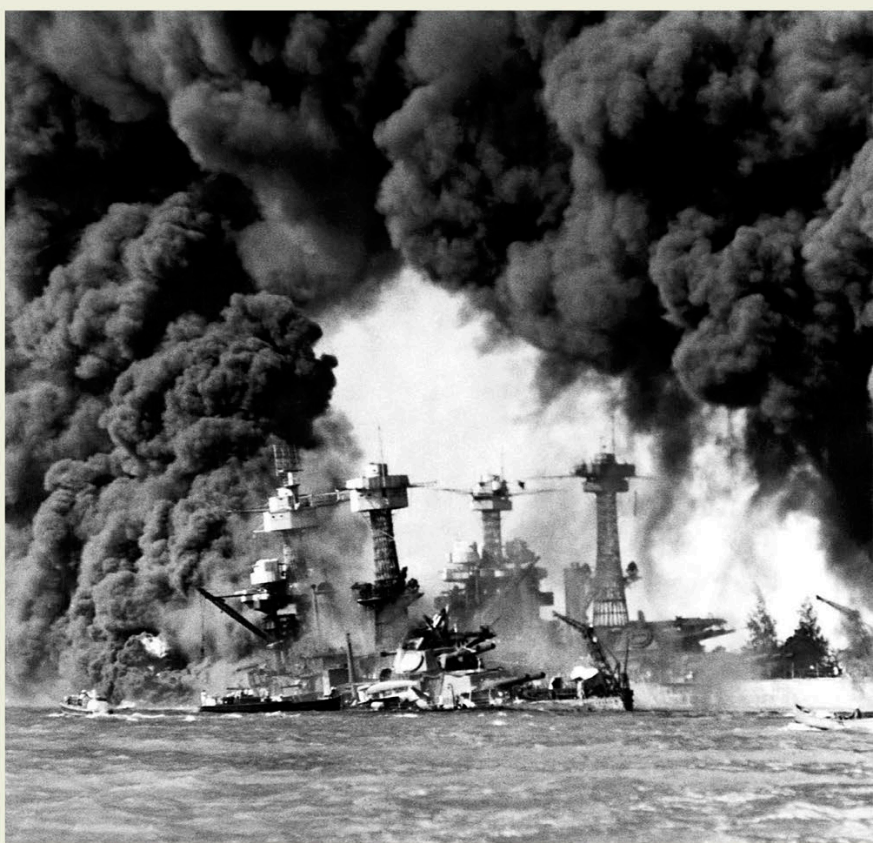
Franklin D. Roosevelt

The US president described Pearl Harbor as "a date which will live in infamy." He led his country to the edge of victory, but died before the war ended. He was succeeded by Harry S. Truman.



Emperor Hirohito

Japan's ruler was not prosecuted for war crimes, and remained in power until the 1980s, overseeing an economic boom in his country.



Key events

1941

In December, Japan attacked the US naval base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. The United States declared war the next day.



Pearl Harbor memorial in Hawaii today

1942

Japan stepped up its Asian campaign, conquering territories across Southeast Asia and the Pacific.

1942

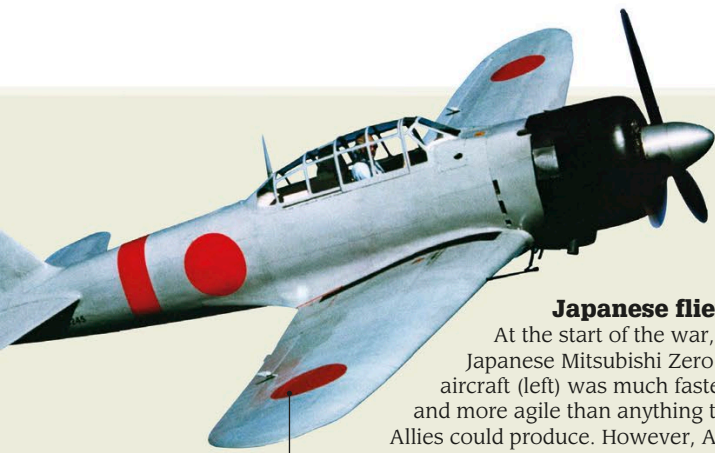
By the middle of the year, the US had begun to push the Japanese back, preventing their attempt to take the US naval base at Midway Island.

1943

The US defeated Japanese forces at the Battle of Tarawa, the bloodiest yet in the Pacific. More than 1,000 American and 4,000 Japanese soldiers perished.

1944

The Japanese attacked the British in northeast India. The British regrouped and, with the Burmese army, drove the Japanese out of Burma in 1945.



Japanese Rising Sun emblem

Japanese fliers

At the start of the war, the Japanese Mitsubishi Zero fighter aircraft (left) was much faster and more agile than anything the Allies could produce. However, Allied technology caught up, and the Japanese began to lose more battles, forcing them to adopt more desperate tactics.



Kamikaze pilots

Kamikaze bombers

In the latter stages of the war, with the conflict going badly, the Japanese came up with a new military strategy: kamikaze, meaning "divine wind." It involved pilots launching suicide attacks against US vessels in planes loaded with explosives. About 50 Allied vessels were destroyed in this way with at least 4,000 kamikaze pilots sacrificing themselves.

Pearl Harbor

In December 1941, Japan's surprise attack caused huge devastation. More than 2,000 people were killed, 188 aircraft were destroyed, and many warships were damaged. But it was not a knock-out blow. The US was able to replace its losses and lead the attack on Japan in 1942.

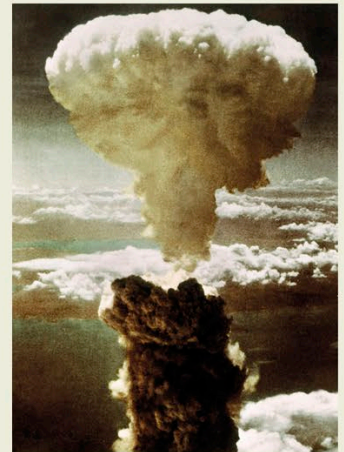
Cities under attack

Between March 10 and June 15, 1945, six major Japanese cities were decimated by heavy US bombing raids.

Japanese cities	Number of raids	Percentage of city destroyed
Tokyo	5	50%
Nagoya	4	31%
Kobe	2	56%
Osaka	4	26%
Yokohama	2	44%
Kawasaki	1	33%

Nuclear warfare

Developed by American and British scientists, the two nuclear bombs dropped on Japan caused massive devastation. The impact of the bombs was like nothing the world had ever seen before. In the city of Hiroshima, more than 90,000 people were killed, and 70 percent of the buildings were destroyed, while in Nagasaki, at least 60,000 perished. After the second blast, Japan surrendered. World War II was over.



Cloud of debris over the city of Nagasaki



Replica of the nuclear bomb dropped on Hiroshima

“I realize the tragic significance of the atom bomb... We thank God it has come to us instead of our enemies.”

President Harry S. Truman, August 9, 1945

1944

The Battle of the Philippine Sea ended in defeat for Japan at the Mariana Islands.

1944

In the war's largest naval battle, and the first to feature kamikaze bombers, the US defeated the Japanese fleet near the Philippine island of Leyte.

1945

Fighting for the tiny but strategically important island of Iwo Jima was fierce. The US lost more than 6,000 troops, and the Japanese at least 20,000.

1945

The US spent two months conquering the heavily defended island of Okinawa. It lost 12,000 soldiers, while the Japanese lost more than 100,000 men.

1945

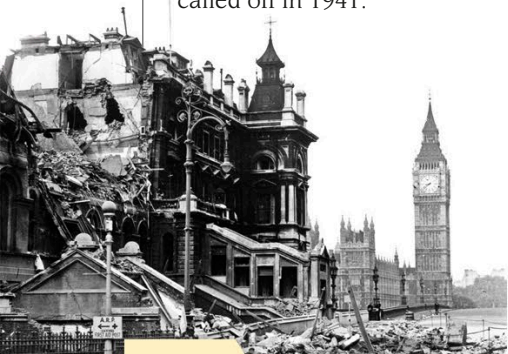
The US finally ended hostilities by dropping two nuclear bombs on the Japanese cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Japan surrendered.

1940 ▶ 1945

1940

The Blitz

Germany tried to break Britain's resolve to continue fighting by bombing 16 major cities. German Luftwaffe carried out aerial attacks on London on 57 consecutive nights. About 40,000 people died before the raids were called off in 1941.



Battle of El Alamein

In north Africa, an Allied offensive at El Alamein, Egypt, forced the Germans into retreat. The following year, the German army in north Africa had surrendered to the Allies.

1942

1942

Battle of Stalingrad

Germany's failed attempt to capture the Soviet city of Stalingrad (now Volgograd) was one of the major turning points of the war. The Soviets held out for more than six months, eventually destroying the Nazi forces.



The ruins of Stalingrad in 1942

1944

Siege of Leningrad ends

The longest and deadliest siege of the war was Leningrad. Started in 1941, it finally came to an end when the Soviets reopened the communication lines to the city and forced the Germans out. The conflict resulted in more than one million Soviet casualties.

1944

Battle of the Bulge

In December, the Germans launched their last major offensive against the Allies. The attack initially created a break, or "bulge," in the Allied lines in France and Belgium, but this was quickly closed up and soon the Germans were retreating back toward Germany.



St. Thomas's Hospital in London was wrecked by bombing in the Blitz.

▶▶ 1940

1941

Operation Barbarossa

In June, Germany launched Operation Barbarossa—an all-out attack on its former ally, the Soviet Union. By the end of the year, German troops were at the gates of Moscow. However, a Soviet counterattack in January 1942 managed to push the Germans back.

1941

US enters the war

Although the United States had declared its support for the Allied cause, public opinion was firmly against the country joining the war. That changed when the Japanese attacked the US naval base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, on December 7. The United States Congress declared war the next day.

1944 D-DAY

On June 6 (code-named D-Day), thousands of Allied troops landed on France's Normandy coast for a surprise attack. The Allies faced stiff resistance, but by June 17, more than half a million troops were on French soil and the push toward Berlin, Germany, had begun.



Parachute drops

The attack began with thousands of paratroopers being dropped behind the German lines. Their task was to capture key targets and destroy German defenses and communication systems before the invasion force marched across France.

Beach landings

Troops and equipment were gathered in Britain ready for the attack, and then sailed across the English Channel. Soldiers waded ashore on Normandy's beaches under heavy fire, but were eventually able to break through the German defenses.



1945

Italy defeated

Allied troops invaded Italy and took the city of Rome in 1943. The war continued until May 1945, when German forces in Italy surrendered. Italy's dictator leader, Benito Mussolini, had tried to flee, but was captured and executed.

War rationing

To preserve precious resources, both the UK and Germany rationed what the public could eat during the war. Everyone was issued a ration book. Sweets were limited to 12 ounces per month.



1945

1945

Japan's surrender

Japan continued to fight for a few months after the defeat of Germany. It finally surrendered in August after the US dropped two nuclear bombs, destroying the cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki.



American boxer Muhammad Ali was born Cassius Clay in 1942. He was the first person to win the heavyweight championship three times.

1945

Germany surrenders

With German forces retreating in the East, the Soviets were ordered by their dictator leader, Joseph Stalin, to "race" to Berlin to capture Hitler. But knowing that all was lost, Hitler committed suicide. Berlin was captured and on May 7, Germany surrendered. The next day, May 8, was declared V-E (Victory in Europe) Day, and saw mass celebrations across Europe.

British girls danced with American soldiers to celebrate V-E Day in London.

**1933–1945 THE HOLOCAUST**

The Nazis' antisemitic (anti-Jewish) and racist policies led to the slaughter of more than six million Jews, gypsies, homosexuals, and disabled people. This systematic killing was known as the Holocaust, meaning a burned offering or sacrifice.

Anne Frank's diary

In 1942, a Jewish girl named Anne Frank and her family went into hiding in a secret apartment in the Netherlands. The diary she kept reveals the fear of a life in hiding. In 1944, they were discovered and Anne died in a concentration camp.

**Concentration camps**

Jewish people were rounded up and sent to concentration camps, where they were imprisoned and forced to do hard labor. Later, the Nazis established "extermination" camps such as Auschwitz (above), where millions of people were murdered.



Yellow star worn to identify Jews

Jewish label

In Nazi Germany, Jewish people were forced to sew yellow stars onto their clothing to identify them to the rest of the population and the authorities. The stars were marked with the word *Jude*, German for "Jew."

Fleeing the Nazis

In November 1938, as the Nazi persecution of Germany's Jews grew worse, Jewish leaders appealed to Britain for help. This led to the development of the *Kindertransport* (German for "transportation of children"), a rescue operation set up by British Jews to help Jewish children in Nazi-occupied countries. As a result, thousands of Jewish children were sent to Britain for their own safety. It was meant to be a temporary measure until the situation improved, but once war broke out, the children were forced to stay.

The lucky few

The plan's organizers chose the most vulnerable children to be rescued: orphans, those with poor parents, or those with parents in a concentration camp. About 10,000 children from Germany, Austria, Poland, and Czechoslovakia made the journey before war broke out.

Traveling light

The children were allowed to bring just one small suitcase each and no more than 10 German marks in money. They were issued a simple ID card, which was often pinned to their clothing. Then, leaving their parents behind, they faced the long journey to Britain by train and boat.

Life in Britain

About half of all the *Kindertransport* children ended up in foster homes. The rest lived in hostels, group homes, and farms. Some of the older children went to work, mainly on farms, as servants in houses, or as nurses. Once they turned 18, many *Kindertransport* refugees joined the military and fought with the Allies against the Nazis.

After the war

Some children were reunited with their parents after the war, but many learned that their parents had died in concentration camps. Despite their misfortunes, most went on to lead happy lives in their new country. Two Nobel Prize winners were former *Kindertransport* children: German-born American Arno Penzias won the Prize for Physics in 1978, while Austrian-American Walter Kohn won the Prize for Chemistry in 1998.

“I was one of the lucky ones in that I saw my parents again. The majority of children, in fact, didn't.”

Marion Marston, German *Kindertransport* child, at age 14

New arrival

Recently arrived in Britain, a young German girl holds her doll and her bag as she waits to be placed in temporary accommodation in Harwich.

Parting gifts

This stuffed dog was the last thing Evelyn Kaye's father gave her as she left Vienna at age 9.



Saying goodbye

These *Kindertransport* children are saying their final goodbyes to their parents at the train station in Vienna, Austria.

“We all leant out of the carriage window and my parents waved white handkerchiefs. I didn't know that would be the last time I would see any of them alive.”


Vera Schaufeld, Czechoslovakian girl, who left on the *Kindertransport* at age 9



A safe haven

Children stand outside their rooms at a British holiday camp in Harwich. Many *Kindertransport* children were housed here while foster accommodation was arranged.

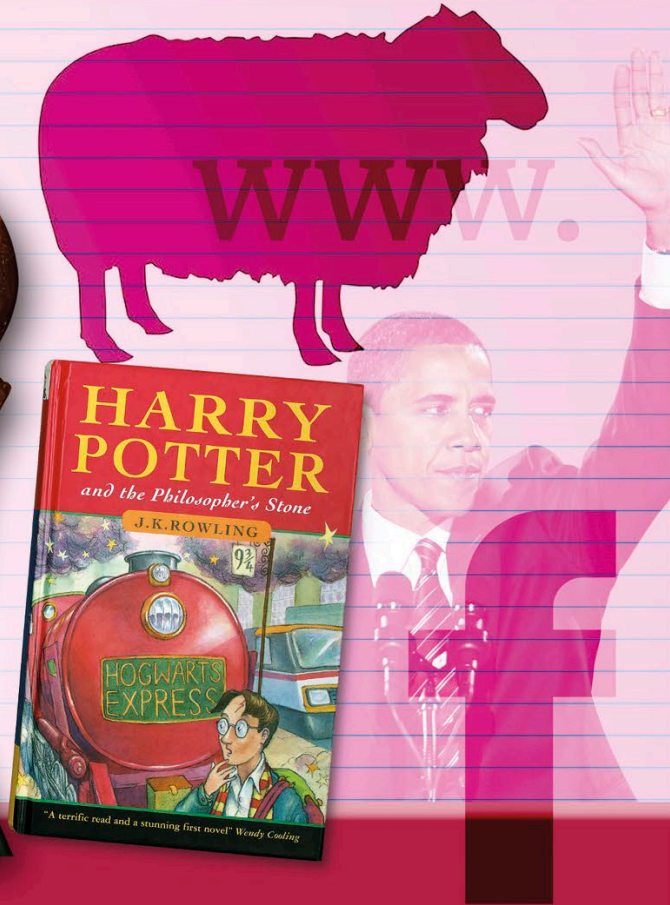
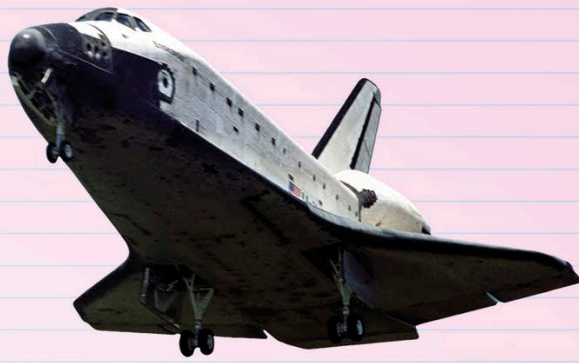




“At the time I thought it was quite an exciting adventure. I said ‘goodbye’ to my mother, ‘see you soon.’ Who could tell what was going to happen?”

Inga Joseph, an Austrian *Kindertransport* child who left Vienna at age 9





1945–2018

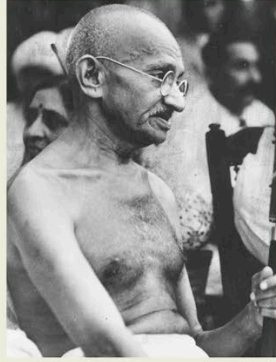
Fast forward

After World War II, two superpowers emerged and a 40-year standoff began, with the United States and its capitalist allies on one side and the Soviet Union and its Communist allies on the other. The period also saw the disintegration of European overseas empires, and the formation of the European Union. Meanwhile, technology was leaping forward, putting men on the Moon and personal computers in most homes, and linking people all around the globe through the World Wide Web.

1945 ▶ 1950

1947 INDIAN INDEPENDENCE

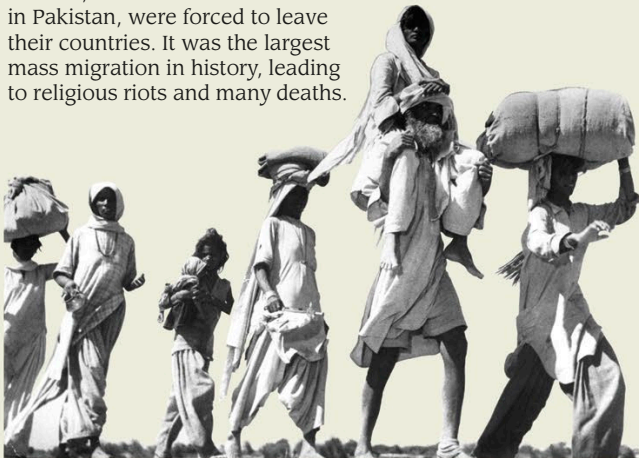
Calls by Indian nationalists for their country to be freed from British rule had been growing throughout the 20th century. With Britain economically exhausted after World War II, India was finally released from the British Empire in 1947 and partitioned (divided) into mainly Hindu India and mainly Muslim Pakistan.



Gandhi
The Indian independence movement was led by Mohandas Gandhi (above), who preached a policy of *satyagraha*, or nonviolent protest, against the British Empire. He was assassinated in 1948 by an Indian Hindu.

Mass migration

Independence led to instant turmoil as millions of Muslims in India, and Hindus and Sikhs in Pakistan, were forced to leave their countries. It was the largest mass migration in history, leading to religious riots and many deaths.



New countries

Indian independence eventually resulted in the creation of three new countries. India and Pakistan were founded in 1947. In 1971, a region of Pakistan broke away to form Bangladesh. These are the three nations' flags today.



Pakistani flag



Indian flag



Bangladeshi flag

“Victory attained by violence is... a defeat, for it is momentary.”

Mohandas Gandhi

1945

Nuremberg trials

In the German city of Nuremberg, 20 surviving Nazi leaders were charged with crimes against humanity and genocide for their part in World War II. While 12 of them were sentenced to death by hanging, the others were sent to prison, including Rudolph Hess, Hitler's deputy until the early 1940s.

Rudolph Hess (second from left) on trial



1945

1946



Singles were also known as “45s” because they were played at 45 rpm (revolutions per minute).

1946

United Nations

The United Nations (UN) was established after World War II as a global organization where nations could meet to discuss their disagreements without resorting to violence. From its original 51 members, the UN has expanded to represent 193 countries. Its logo (above) shows the world framed by olive branches—a symbol of peace.



German pro-Marshall Plan poster

1947

Marshall Plan

US secretary of state George Marshall persuaded his government to provide \$13 billion in aid to help the recovery of Europe's war-ravaged economies. The US government also believed the aid would help prevent the spread of Communism, then taking hold across Eastern Europe.

1948

Birth of Israel

After World War II, the United Nations proposed dividing the Middle Eastern region of Palestine into a Jewish state and an Arab state. The Jews agreed, but the Arabs did not. The subsequent war was won by the Jews, and the new Jewish State of Israel, which included parts of the proposed Arab state, was proclaimed in May 1948.



1949

USSR develops atomic weapons

To catch up with the military power of its great rival, the United States, the Soviet Union became the second nation to develop nuclear weapons. Its program, code-named "First Lightning," relied heavily on secrets stolen from the US by Soviet spies.

1949

People's Republic of China

After a truce in World War II, China's ruling Nationalist Party reentered a civil war with the Communist Party. In 1949, the leader of the victorious Communists, Mao Zedong, became the head of the new People's Republic of China. The Nationalist leader, Chiang Kai-Shek, fled to Taiwan to form the Republic of China.



Chinese pro-Communist propaganda

1947

1948

1949

1950



The Korean War is not over as no peace deal was ever signed.

First 7-inch single

Introduced in March 1949, the new, smaller, 7-inch vinyl record format revolutionized the music industry and helped fuel the rock-and-roll explosion of the 1950s.



1950-1953

THE KOREAN WAR



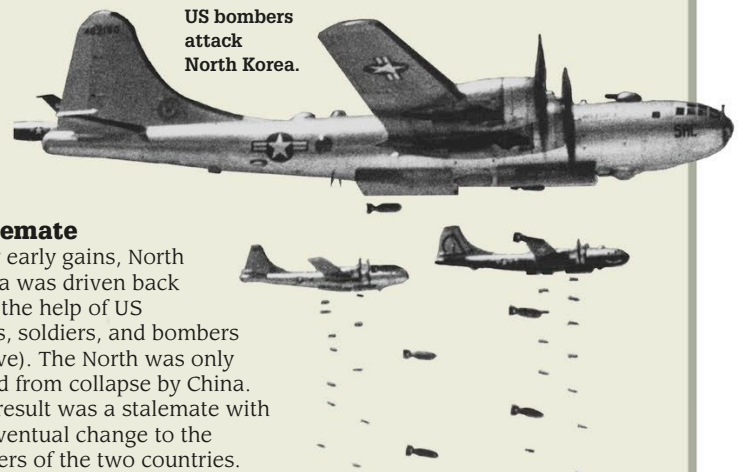
International war

Communist North Korea, led by Kim Il Sung (above), was backed by the Soviet Union and China. South Korea was supported by the US and the UN. What began as a local dispute threatened to escalate into a world war.

Previously controlled by Japan, Korea was split into two states after World War II: Communist North Korea and democratic South Korea. In 1950, the North invaded the South, prompting three years of intense fighting and the first major conflict of the Cold War.

Stalemate

After early gains, North Korea was driven back with the help of US tanks, soldiers, and bombers (above). The North was only saved from collapse by China. The result was a stalemate with no eventual change to the borders of the two countries.



US bombers attack North Korea.

The Cold War

After World War II, the capitalist United States and the Communist Soviet Union (USSR) emerged as rival world "superpowers." However, since both were armed with enough nuclear weapons to destroy the other several times over, they couldn't risk an outright war. Instead, they engaged in a "Cold War" that lasted more than 40 years, conducting their conflict by other means: by forming alliances, backing rival opponents in conflicts, developing new technologies, and spying.

Cold War alliances

Both superpowers maintained a tight network of alliances with other countries throughout the Cold War. In 1949, the United States brought together 13 countries to form a military union called the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO). The Soviet Union responded by establishing the Warsaw Pact in 1955. Both sides also regularly backed opposing allies in other conflicts, as happened in the Korean War, the Vietnam War, and the Afghanistan War.

- NATO countries
- Warsaw Pact countries
- Other US allies
- Other USSR allies



Cold War leaders



Joseph Stalin
The USSR's leader did more than anyone else to set the Cold War in motion by bringing Eastern Europe under Soviet control.



John F. Kennedy
The US president confronted the Soviets in 1962, demanding that the USSR remove their nuclear weapons from Communist ally Cuba.



Leonid Brezhnev
A slight thaw in the war came when this Soviet leader met US president Nixon to discuss the reduction of their nuclear arsenals.

Children in Berlin celebrate as an Allied plane drops off essential supplies.



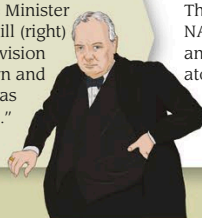
Berlin airlift

After World War II, the German capital of Berlin was divided into different zones, controlled by the USSR and the Allies. In 1948, the Soviets tried to force the Allies out by cutting off road and rail links to starve the city into submission. However, a massive, almost year-long Allied airlift of supplies foiled the plan.

Key events

1946

British ex-Prime Minister Winston Churchill (right) described the division between Western and Eastern Europe as an "Iron Curtain."



1949

The Berlin blockade ended, NATO was established, and the Soviets developed atomic weapons.

1949

Capitalist West Germany and Communist East Germany were founded. China became Communist and an ally of the USSR.

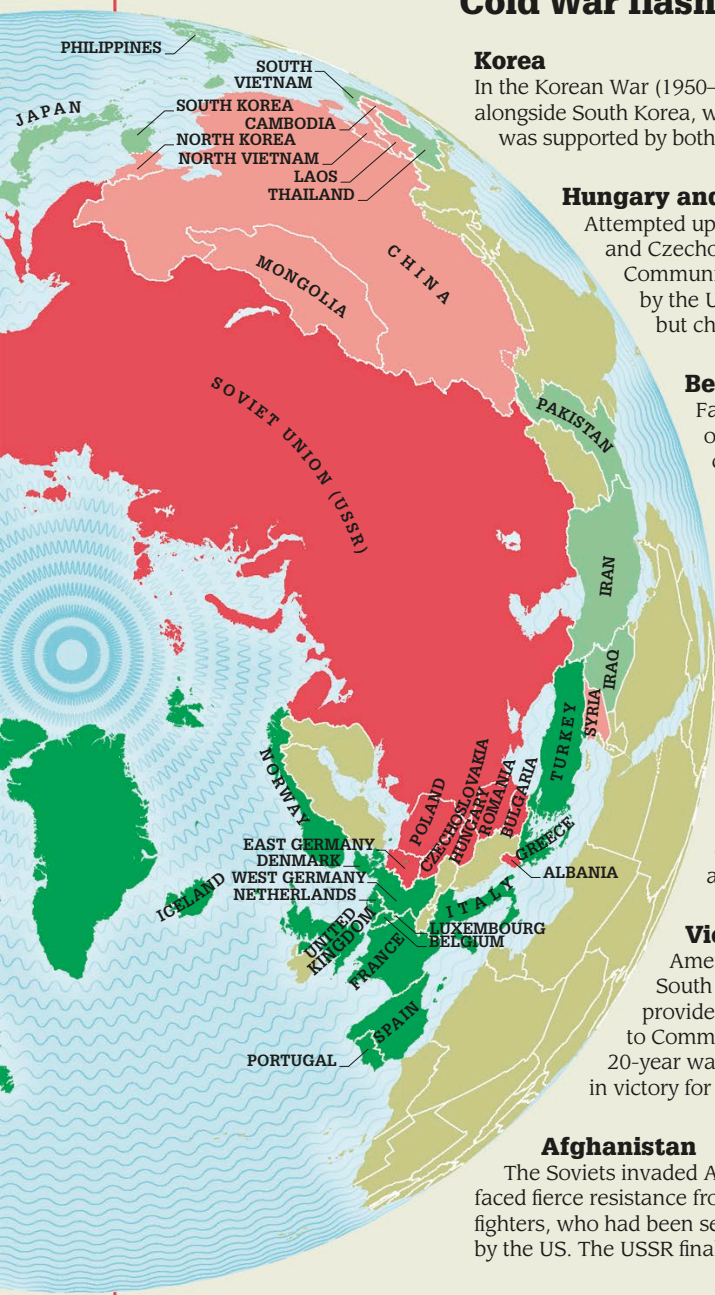
1950

The superpowers backed opposing sides in the Korean War, the first major conflict of the Cold War.

1955

The Warsaw Pact was established, making allies of the USSR and seven Eastern European Communist states.

Cold War flashpoints



Korea

In the Korean War (1950–1953), the US and UN fought alongside South Korea, while the Communist North was supported by both the Soviets and China.

Hungary and Czechoslovakia

Attempted uprisings in Hungary (1956) and Czechoslovakia (1968) against Communism were violently quashed by the USSR. The West was appalled, but chose not to intervene.

Berlin Wall

Facing increasing numbers of people fleeing Soviet-controlled East Berlin for West Berlin, the Communist government of East Germany built a huge security wall in 1961 to divide the city in two.

Cuba

The Cold War heated up during a tense standoff between the United States and the USSR over the Soviet Union's stationing of nuclear missiles in Cuba in 1962. The USSR eventually backed down after a US blockade.

Vietnam

American troops fought alongside South Vietnam, while the Soviets provided aid and military equipment to Communist North Vietnam in a 20-year war that began in 1955. It ended in victory for the Communists.

Afghanistan

The Soviets invaded Afghanistan in 1979, but faced fierce resistance from the Afghan Mujahideen fighters, who had been secretly trained and armed by the US. The USSR finally withdrew in 1989.



Arms race

During the Cold War, the United States and the Soviet Union took part in an arms race, producing vast reserves of nuclear weapons and other military equipment, such as cruise missiles (above). But they also invested in smaller technology, particularly spy gadgets, such as secret cameras and bugs, which they used to try to discover each other's military and political secrets.



The handshake that ended the Cold War

Peaceful conclusion

The conflict came to a peaceful end in the late 1980s, when both sides agreed to reduce their store of weapons. In 1989, US president George Bush met the Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev in Malta (above) to declare the Cold War over. The USSR was weakening, and dissolved less than two years later.

1962

The United States and the USSR went head-to-head over the Cuban missile crisis. The Soviets backed down.

1972

The signing of an Anti-Ballistic Missile Treaty was the first attempt by the two Cold War powers to limit their nuclear arsenals.

1987

US president Ronald Reagan and Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev signed a treaty reducing their nuclear arsenals.


1989

The leaders of the United States and the Soviet Union met in Malta to declare an official end to the Cold War.

1991

The Soviet Union collapsed and the Warsaw Pact was dissolved.

A Soviet missile



Across the divide

A young boy in East Berlin gazes through the barbed wire that divided the city just before the wall was erected.



“I’m tired of everyone in the West thinking we’re unhappy here. I’m not saying I love it here all the time. Sometimes I do want to leave, look around. But I *can’t*. And even if I could, this is my home; and I would return here if I left.”

12-year-old boy from East Berlin



CHILDREN IN HISTORY

Divided Berlin

After World War II, Germany and its capital, Berlin, were divided into zones by the Allies. The East was controlled by the Communist Soviet Union; the West by the United States, France, and Britain. By 1961, hundreds of families a week were fleeing the poverty of East Berlin for the promise of opportunity in the West. Fearful of damage to the economy, the East German authorities built a wall between East and West Berlin. It stopped migration, but at a terrible cost to the families who were split up by the wall.

Building the wall

On August 13, 1961, East Berlin closed its border with the West, sealing off roads, cutting train lines, and putting up barricades and barbed wire. The dreams of thousands were over. Construction began on a huge concrete wall manned by armed guards told to "shoot to kill."

Divided families

The barrier tore families apart. It went up overnight, so people couldn't leave either side. Parents were separated from children, and children from their siblings. As time passed, split families knew less and less about how their relatives were living their lives.

Side by side

West Germany was more prosperous than the East. Families shopped for luxuries, such as sweets and toys, and traveled freely. They could visit shops, restaurants, and museums. Life in East Berlin was much more regulated. Families lived in fear of the secret police, the *Stasi*. If parents were suspected of trying to escape, their children could be taken away. Two-thirds of children belonged to Communist youth movements, which taught them not to question the system or try to leave the country.

Escaping the East

The Berlin Wall made escape to the West almost impossible, yet many tried. Some dug under it, while others flew over it in homemade balloons or hid in cars. More than 130 people died trying to cross it. The city and its people would remain divided until the wall came down in 1989.



In the shadow of the wall

West German children play beside the wall that divided the city from 1961 to 1989.

“I heard people... yelling, screaming, and crying... a wall had gone up overnight. Friends and relatives who had been visiting in East Berlin were now stuck and would not be allowed to return.”

Marion Cordon-Poole,

American child who was staying with her German mother's family in 1961



Failed escape

East German troops arrest a man trying to escape to the West through the sewer system.



Separated families

Parents in West Berlin hold their babies up so their grandparents on the other side of the wall can see them, shortly after the border closed in 1961.

“The whole village was like a prison. Wherever you went, you had to see the Wall.”

Gitta Heinrich, from East Germany

1950 ▶ 1960



The highest mountain on Earth, Mount Everest, was scaled for the first time by Edmund Hillary of New Zealand and Tenzing Norgay of Nepal in 1953.

Testing of the hydrogen bomb in the Pacific



1952

Mau Mau uprising

In Kenya, an anticolonial group called the Mau Mau led an uprising against British rule. It was brutally put down, with 13,000 Kenyans killed as the British fought to hold on to the country. Seven years later, Kenya achieved independence.

1952

A deadly weapon

Seven years after the first atomic bomb was dropped, the United States revealed a deadlier weapon: the hydrogen—or thermonuclear—bomb. The first test of the device completely destroyed a Pacific island.

1952

Queen Elizabeth II

After the death of King George VI, his daughter Elizabeth became Queen of the United Kingdom and Head of the Commonwealth. She was crowned the next year in a lavish ceremony at London's Westminster Abbey.



1950

1950

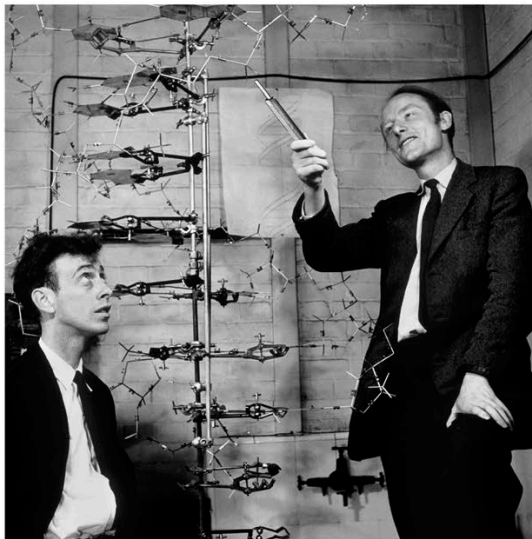
Apartheid in South Africa

In 1948, South Africa's National Party launched a policy of racial segregation known as apartheid, aimed at controlling the majority black population. From 1950, the African National Congress party (ANC) began to attack the apartheid laws with acts of defiance that sometimes led to violent clashes.



The black population of South Africa was banned from voting, living in white areas, and denied access to Whites-only areas.

1952



Crick (standing) and Watson demonstrate the structure of DNA.

1953

The structure of DNA

Scientists James Watson and Francis Crick mapped out the structure of DNA—the molecule found in every cell that contains the instruction, or gene, that builds and runs the cell. Its shape, like a twisted ladder, is known as a double helix.

1954

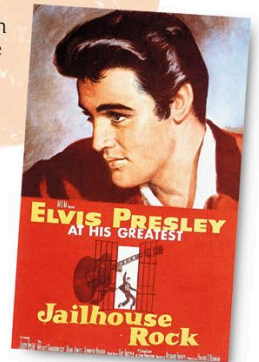
1954

French leave southeast Asia

Following years of intense fighting, French-ruled Laos and Cambodia became independent while Vietnam was divided in two. North Vietnam had a Communist government, and the South declared itself to be a democratic republic.

Elvis's first record

Elvis Presley, also known as the "King of Rock and Roll," released his first single in 1954 called "Jailhouse Rock." He would go on to sell more than 100 million records before his death in 1977.



1955

Bus boycott

In Montgomery, Alabama, a black woman named Rosa Parks refused to give up her bus seat to a white person as the law of the time required. She was jailed, leading to a boycott of the bus system by the black population, and eventually an end to segregation on Montgomery's buses.



Soviet Union stamp commemorating *Sputnik 2* and *Laika*

1959

Castro's Cuba

After a six-year campaign, Cuban revolutionaries led by Fidel Castro overthrew the US-backed Cuban dictator Fulgencio Batista. Castro established Cuba as a Communist state, which he led until 2008, despite numerous US attempts to assassinate him.



Cuban revolutionary **Fidel Castro**

1955

Warsaw Pact

In response to the formation in 1949 of NATO, a military alliance of Western powers led by the United States, the Communist countries of Eastern Europe formed their own alliance—called the Warsaw Pact—led by the Soviet Union.

1957

Sputnik 1

The Soviet Union took an early lead in the Space Race, launching the first artificial satellite, *Sputnik 1*, into Earth's orbit in October. A month later, *Sputnik 2* carried the first living creature, a dog named *Laika*, into space.

1956

1956

Hungarian revolution

When Hungary attempted to form a liberal government and withdraw from the Warsaw Pact, Soviet tanks came rolling in (below). After a week of heavy fighting, the Soviet Union reasserted its control.



1958

1957

Treaty of Rome

After the bitter conflicts of the 1940s, the countries of Europe began to establish better relations in the 1950s. The Treaty of Rome set up the European Economic Community (EEC), a trading union between six nations: West Germany, France, Italy, the Netherlands, Belgium, and Luxembourg.

1958

China's Great Leap Forward

China's leader, Mao Zedong, devised a program of reform, called the Great Leap Forward, to change the country from a rural economy to an industrial one. It forced people to produce steel rather than food. The policy was a disaster, resulting in famine and the death of 35 million people.

1957

Independence for Ghana

Ghana, formerly known as the Gold Coast, gained independence from the British Empire.



Chinese propaganda poster

1960

1960 ▶ 1965



Soviet cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin

1961

First man in space

Soviet pilot Yuri Gagarin captured the world's attention when he became the first man to travel into space. Aboard his rocket, *Vostok 1*, he took just under two hours to orbit Earth before returning to the ground an instant international celebrity.

1962

Algerian independence

Since 1954, the French army and Algerian protestors—who wanted their country freed from French rule—had fought a bloody war. French wartime leader Charles de Gaulle was brought back as president in 1958 and was expected to lead France to victory. However, he granted Algeria its independence in 1962.

1962

Cuban missile crisis

US spy planes discovered that the Soviet Union was installing nuclear weapons on Communist-controlled Cuba, just off the American coast. President Kennedy demanded that Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev remove the weapons or face retaliation. For several days, the world stood on the brink of nuclear war before the Soviets backed down.

Algerian crowds celebrate their independence, waving the country's new flag.



▶▶ 1960



1961

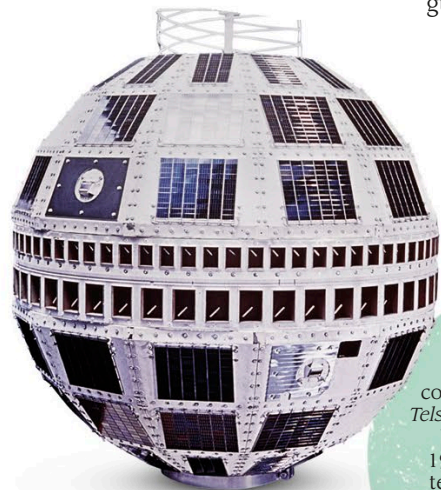
Berlin Wall erected

By 1961, thousands of people were leaving Communist East Berlin for democratic West Berlin, seriously weakening the East's economy. Immigration was halted when the East Germans built a heavily guarded wall, splitting the city in two.

1962

Beatles release first single

Having spent years playing small clubs, a pop group called the Beatles, from Liverpool, England, finally got a record deal and released their first single, "Love Me Do." The group went on to become the most popular musicians in the world during the 1960s.



Telstar 1

The first communications satellite, *Telstar 1*, was sent into orbit by the United States in 1962. It relayed television, telephone, telegraph, and other signals to Earth, but technical faults caused it to fail after less than a year.

The Beatles in concert



1963

Women's Liberation

Triggered by the release of American writer Betty Friedan's book *The Feminine Mystique*, the Women's Liberation Movement campaigned for women to have the right to do the same jobs and earn the same pay as men. They also demanded equal status for women in society.

Betty Friedan



The "hotline," a direct communication line between the US and the USSR, was set up after the Cuban missile crisis.

1963

March on Washington

At an American civil rights rally in Washington, DC, Martin Luther King, Jr., gave a famous speech, stating "I have a dream that one day this nation will rise up and live out the true meaning of its creed... that all men are created equal."

1963

Organization of African Unity

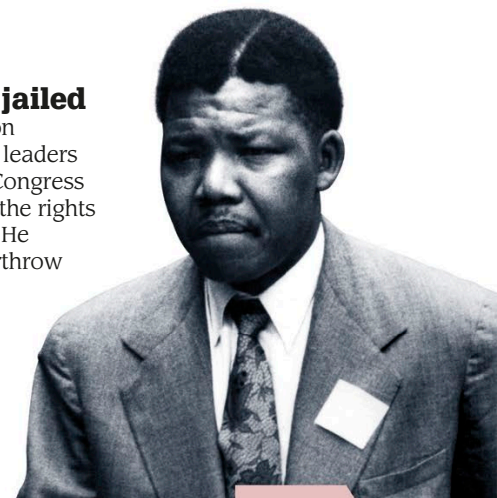
In the two decades since World War II, a number of African countries had become independent from their former European colonial masters. In 1963, 32 African states set up the Organization of African Unity to promote their economic, political, and cultural interests.

1964

Nelson Mandela jailed

In the early 1960s, Nelson Mandela was one of the leaders of the African National Congress (ANC), which fought for the rights of black South Africans. He campaigned for the overthrow of the apartheid regime of racial segregation but was arrested and sent to jail—where he spent the next 26 years.

Nelson Mandela



1965

1963 PRESIDENT KENNEDY ASSASSINATED**Death in Dallas**

As Kennedy's car drove slowly through the Dallas crowds, it is alleged that Oswald fired three shots from the sixth floor of a nearby building, killing the president.

The world was shocked by the assassination of US president John F. Kennedy in November. According to the official report, a lone gunman killed Kennedy as the president was riding in an open-top car through the streets of Dallas on an official visit. His killer was identified as Communist sympathizer Lee Harvey Oswald.

**Lee Harvey Oswald**

Oswald (left) was arrested, but was killed while being transferred to jail before standing trial. This led some to believe that there had been a cover-up and that the true killer of the president was someone else.

Civil Rights

During the mid-20th century, most Southern states in the US enforced policies of racial segregation. These forced white and black people to live in different areas, go to different schools, and use different public services. The services provided for the black population were nearly always worse than those provided for white people. In the 1950s and 1960s, there was a series of protests against this discrimination, known collectively as the Civil Rights Movement, which triggered major changes in the law.

Movement leaders



Martin Luther King, Jr.

The leader of the Civil Rights Movement, Dr. King organized numerous strikes, protests, and marches against segregation, but always preached a policy of nonviolent civil disobedience.



Robert Kennedy

As US attorney general, and brother of President John F. Kennedy, Robert Kennedy oversaw the passing of several of the most important civil rights laws.



Malcolm X

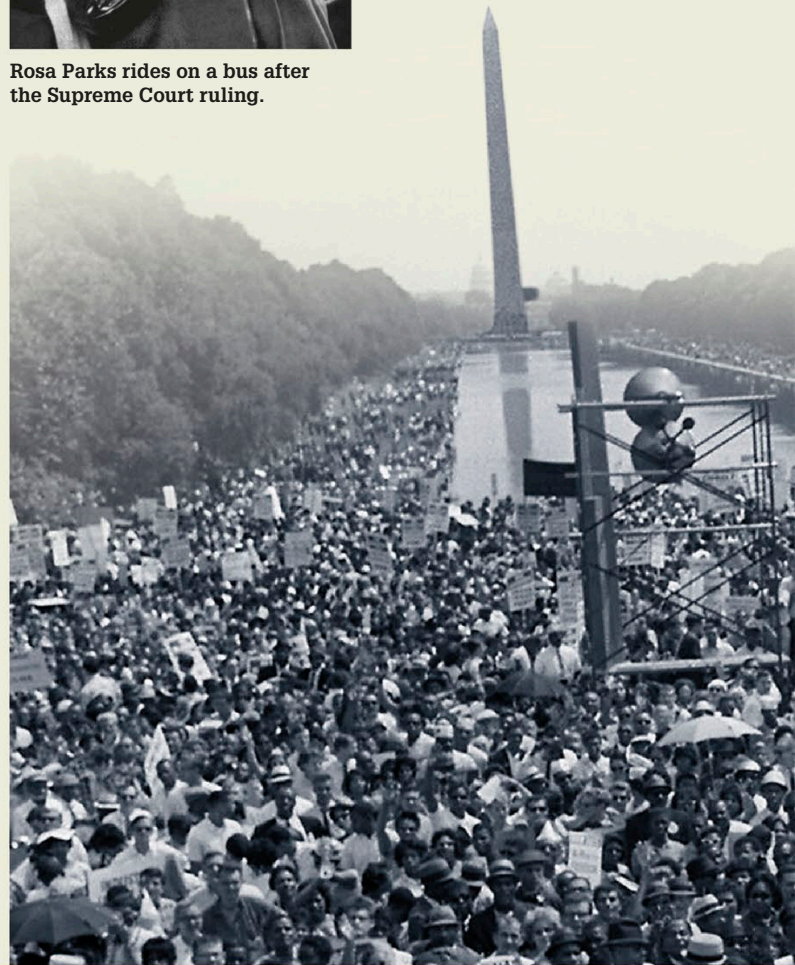
A passionate protestor for civil rights, Malcolm X believed that African Americans should be prepared to use violence, if necessary, to achieve their goals. He was assassinated in 1965.



Rosa Parks rides on a bus after the Supreme Court ruling.

Parks's protest

A protest against racial segregation on buses by Rosa Parks, a seamstress from Montgomery, Alabama, became one of the most important events in the Civil Rights Movement. Martin Luther King led a year-long boycott of the bus company by Montgomery's black residents. In 1956, the Supreme Court ruled that segregated bus seating had to end.



Key events

1954

The Supreme Court ruled that states had to provide an integrated education, teaching white and black children in the same schools.

1955

Rosa Parks's refusal to give up her seat to a white passenger led to a year-long bus boycott and a change to the segregation laws on public transportation.

1957

President Eisenhower was forced to send troops to protect a group of black students—known as the “Little Rock Nine”—attending an all-white high school in Little Rock, Arkansas.

1960

Activists protested against segregation, staging “sit-ins” at the whites-only sections of restaurants, “wade-ins” at segregated swimming pools, and “kneel-ins” at segregated churches.



A Montgomery bus

“Now is the time to make justice a reality for all of God’s children.”

**Martin Luther King, Jr.,
1963**



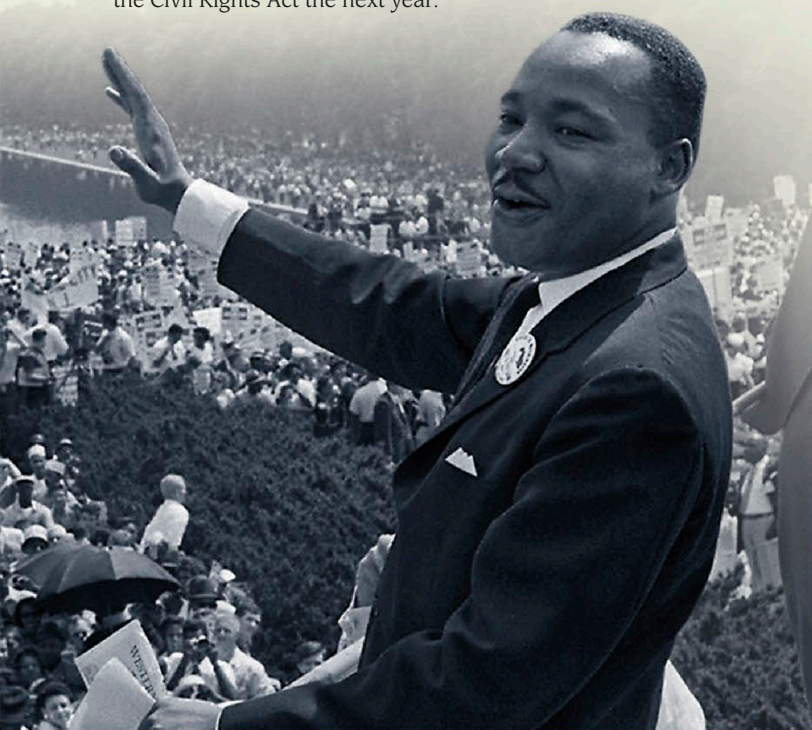
On the march

After the success of the Washington protest, King organized another march in 1965, from Selma to Montgomery. This was a protest against restrictions placed on black voters. In Alabama, black people often had to pass a literacy test or pay a tax in order to vote. The Voting Rights Act, passed the same year, banned these practices.

Martin Luther King and his wife, Coretta Scott King, lead the march.

March on Washington

In 1963, Martin Luther King led the largest march of the Civil Rights Movement. About 250,000 people arrived in Washington, DC, to call on the government to do more to end racial discrimination. With the crowd gathered in front of the Lincoln Memorial, King delivered his famous “I have a dream” speech. The march is widely credited for spurring the government to pass the Civil Rights Act the next year.



New legislation

As a result of the Civil Rights Movement, several important pieces of legislation were passed by the federal government:

★ 1964 Civil Rights Act

This banned employers from hiring employees on the basis of their “color, religion, or national origin.”

★ 1965 Voting Rights Act

This made it illegal for states to have extra voting requirements designed to stop black people from voting.

★ 1968 Fair Housing Act

Ensured equality when selling or renting out property.

Civil rights progress

In 1968, King was assassinated by James Earl Ray, who opposed the Civil Rights Movement. By that time, segregation had legally ended. The extent of the country’s progress in race relations over the next few decades became clear in 2008 when the United States elected its first black president, Barack Obama. He was sworn in for his second term in 2013 on King’s own copy of the Bible (right).



1963

Martin Luther King electrified a nation with his famous “I have a dream” speech in Washington, DC, at the largest rally of the civil rights era.

1964

Following years of protests and the mass rally in Washington, DC, the government passed the Civil Rights Act, outlawing discrimination on the basis of race, religion, or gender.

1965

The government passed laws to protect the voting rights of African Americans in the South, where they often faced harassment at the voting booths.

1968

The year witnessed both the triumph of the Fair Housing Act, which banned discrimination in the housing market, and the tragedy of the assassinations of both Dr. King and Robert Kennedy.

1965 ▶ 1970

THE SPACE RACE

From the mid-1950s to the mid-1970s, the United States and the USSR were locked in a competition to lead the exploration of space. But the “Space Race” was also a battle for international prestige and military advantage between the two superpowers.



This Soviet postage stamp depicts Leonov's space walk.

The USSR takes the lead

Most of the early victories went to the Soviets, who launched the first satellite, *Sputnik*, in 1957 and the first manned spaceflight four years later. Then, in 1965, Soviet cosmonaut Alexei Leonov became the first man to step outside a spacecraft on a “space walk.”

The US catches up

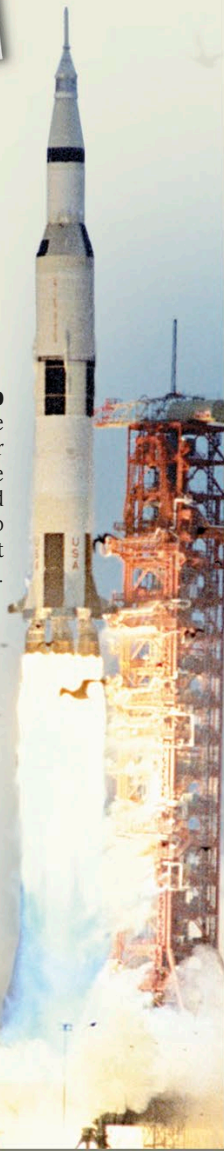
The US pulled ahead of the Soviets in the late 1960s with their Apollo space program. In 1967, the Americans successfully launched the *Saturn V* rocket. Two years later, a *Saturn V* put the first man on the Moon.



Apollo-Soyuz mission patch

Cooperation in space

In 1975, the Apollo-Soyuz Test Project marked the end of the Space Race, when US Apollo and Soviet Soyuz crafts docked in space.



1965–1975 VIETNAM WAR

In the late 1950s, Communist North Vietnam attacked South Vietnam. The United States entered the conflict in 1965 in support of South Vietnam, to try to prevent Communism from spreading to other countries in the region—a theory called the “Domino Effect.” Despite its superior firepower, the US was unable to defeat the North and signed a cease-fire in 1973. In 1975, North Vietnam finally defeated the South.



Viet Cong

Much of the North's fighting was carried out by the Viet Cong (left), a group of South Vietnamese Communist rebels who undertook guerilla raids and acts of sabotage against South Vietnam's government.

1965

1966

Cultural revolution in China

China was plunged into anarchy when leader Mao Zedong unveiled the Cultural Revolution. Its aim was to remove capitalist sympathizers from positions of power across society. Hundreds of thousands were murdered before Mao declared the revolution over in 1969.

The first flight of the supersonic airliner Concorde took place in 1969.



Chinese children read from the Little Red Book, a collection of Chairman Mao's quotations.



US pulls out

By 1969, thousands of US troops had been killed, and North Vietnam's resistance was as strong as ever. President Nixon began withdrawing troops, while the US national security advisor, Henry Kissinger, negotiated a cease-fire in 1973.

President Nixon (left) with Henry Kissinger



Peace protests

The war in Vietnam was the first where day-to-day conflict could be followed on television. Protest grew as people were shocked by the violence against both US troops and innocent civilians.



Woodstock

This three-day American music festival in 1969 featured some of the biggest bands of the time and was a high point of the "hippie" youth movement dedicated to peace and love.

1968

Assassinations

Two of the leading figures of the Civil Rights Movement fell to lone gunmen. On April 4, Martin Luther King was shot while in Memphis supporting a strike by local black workers. His death triggered race riots across the country. In June, Robert Kennedy was assassinated while campaigning for president. His Palestinian killer, Sirhan Sirhan, had objected to Kennedy's support of Israel in the Six-Day War the previous year.

1969

Gaddafi comes to power

The young army officer Muammar al-Gaddafi seized power in Libya while the king was out of the country on vacation. He led the country for the next 42 years, until he too was overthrown in 2011.



1970



1967

Che Guevara killed

A leading figure in the Cuban Revolution, Ernesto "Che" Guevara left Cuba in 1965 to start Communist uprisings in other countries. However, he was hunted down by US troops in Bolivia and killed.



Images of Che Guevara became a popular symbol of protest and revolution.

1968

Strikes in France

Students in Paris rioted over the government's education policy. Soon, a revolutionary mood had swept the country, with more than 11 million workers putting down their tools to demand higher wages. The protests stopped only after the government stepped down and new elections were called.



A student protests during the May 1968 Paris riots.

1968

Czechoslovakia invaded

In January, the new leader of Communist Czechoslovakia, Alexander Dubcek, began a program of reform known as the "Prague Spring," designed to give the people more freedom. Alarmed at the changes, the Soviet Union invaded in August and stopped the reforms.

“I ask every citizen to reject the blind violence that has struck Dr. King, who lived by nonviolence.”

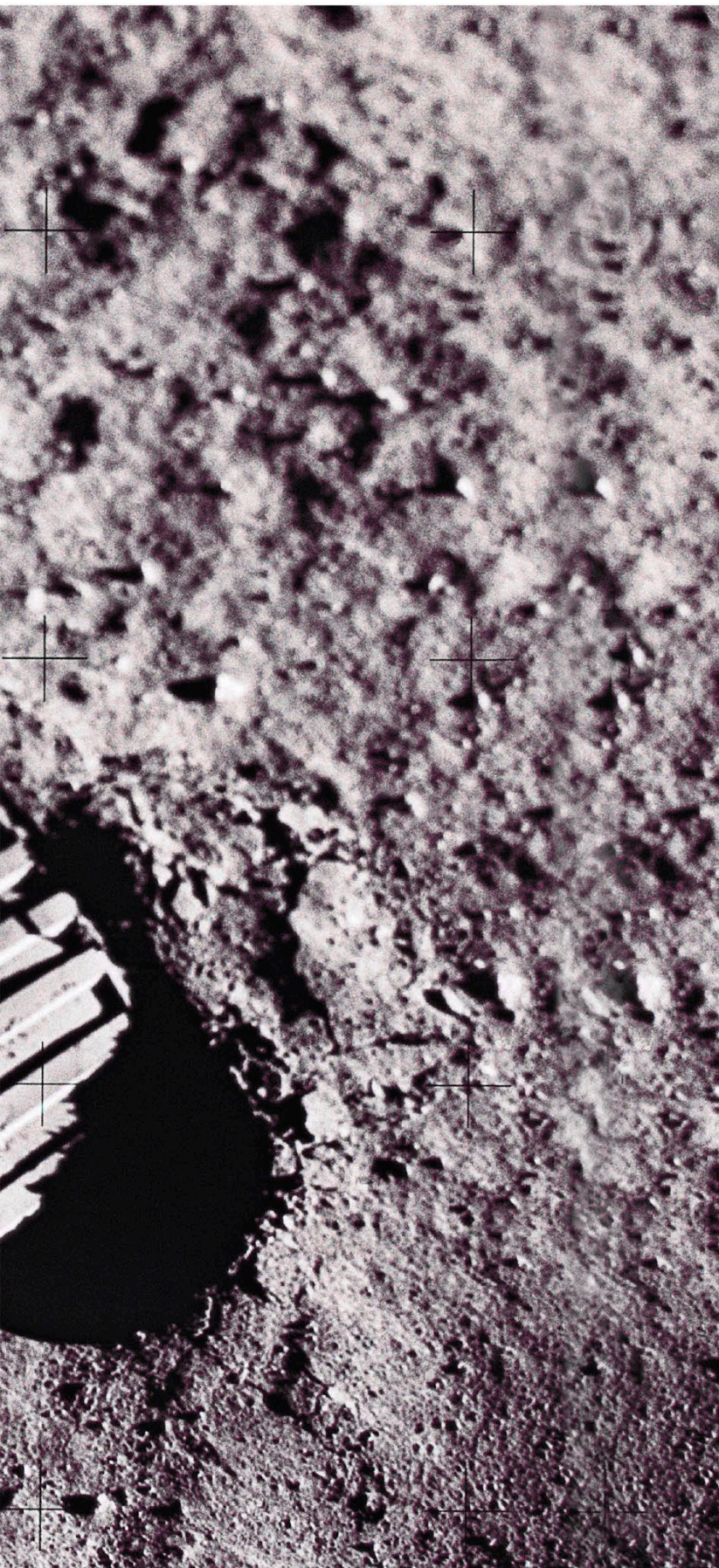
President Lyndon B. Johnson, 1968

JULY 21, 1969



Man on the Moon

In July 1969, millions of people around the world tuned in to see if the *Apollo 11* mission to the Moon would be successful. American astronauts Neil Armstrong and “Buzz” Aldrin landed their craft and made their way down to the featureless, gray surface, becoming the first humans to set foot on a world other than Earth. Ten other people have repeated their feat since.



This boot print, left by Aldrin, is still on the Moon since there is no wind to erode it.

“That’s one small step for [a] man, one giant leap for mankind.”

Neil Armstrong, on becoming the first human to walk on the Moon

1970 ▶ 1975



A soldier clashes with a protester during Bloody Sunday.



1970

Palestinian plane hijackings

Palestinian terrorists hijacked three large passenger aircraft and flew them to a remote airfield in the Jordanian desert. There, 40 passengers were taken hostage and the planes were blown up. The passengers were later freed in return for seven Palestinian prisoners being released from Western jails.

1972

Bloody Sunday

In Northern Ireland, conflicts between the Nationalists, who wanted the region to become part of the Republic of Ireland, and the Unionists, who wanted it to stay in the UK, became known as "The Troubles." In one of the most notorious incidents, known as Bloody Sunday, 13 unarmed Nationalist protestors were shot dead by the British army during a march.

▶▶ 1970

1970

East Pakistan cyclone

The deadliest cyclone in recorded history hit East Pakistan, leaving more than half a million dead. The limited help from West Pakistan provoked resentment and calls for independence. In 1972, the region broke free from West Pakistan's rule, forming the new country of Bangladesh.

1971

Idi Amin seizes power

The commander of the Ugandan Army, Idi Amin, overthrew the president in January. He proved to be a brutal ruler, and was responsible for the death of more than 100,000 Ugandans.



A Black September terrorist

1972

Munich Olympic killings

Eleven members of the Israeli Olympic team were taken hostage in Munich by members of the Palestinian terrorist group, Black September. After a botched rescue attempt by the German authorities, all of the hostages—and most of the terrorists—were killed.

1972

Nixon meets Mao

Since 1949, the US had refused to recognize China's Communist regime. However, relations improved when Richard Nixon became the first US president to visit China, meeting its leader, Mao Zedong. In 1978, the US finally recognized China.



Survivors dig through the debris caused by the East Pakistan cyclone.

1973

Yom Kippur War

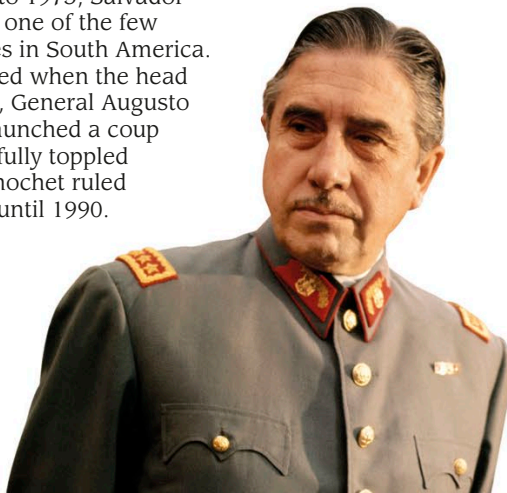
Egyptian and Syrian forces launched a surprise attack against Israel on the holiest day of the Jewish year. But Israel fought back successfully. In retaliation for assisting Israel, Arab nations cut oil supplies to the West, triggering a recession.

1973

Coup in Chile

From 1970 to 1973, Salvador Allende led one of the few democracies in South America. That changed when the head of the army, General Augusto Pinochet, launched a coup that successfully toppled Allende. Pinochet ruled as dictator until 1990.

Chile's
dictator,
General
Pinochet



Microsoft, the computer company Bill Gates founded in 1975, made him the wealthiest man in the world by 1995.

Sears Tower

Upon its completion in 1973, this 1,451-ft- (442-m-) high Chicago skyscraper, now called the Willis Tower, was the world's tallest building. In 2004, construction started on Dubai's Burj Khalifa, which currently holds this record, standing at 2,716½ ft (828 m).



1975



1974

Turkey invades Cyprus

Turkey invaded the Mediterranean island of Cyprus, fearing it would become part of Greece. The northern part declared independence as the Turkish Republic of Northern Cyprus, but only Turkey has recognized this.

1974

Lucy discovered

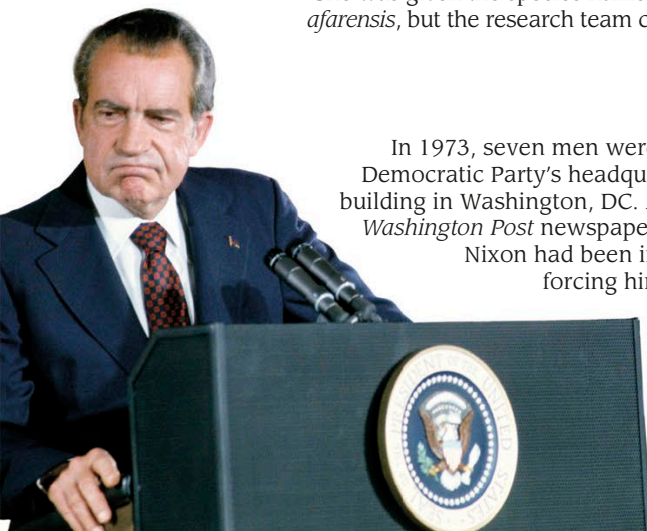
Scientists digging in an Ethiopian valley found the fossil remains of one of humankind's oldest ancestors—an apelike female who lived about 3.2 million years ago and walked on two legs. She was given the species name *Australopithecus afarensis*, but the research team called her "Lucy."

1974

Watergate

In 1973, seven men were jailed for bugging the Democratic Party's headquarters in the Watergate building in Washington, DC. An investigation by the *Washington Post* newspaper proved that President Nixon had been involved in the scheme, forcing him to resign from office.

President Nixon
just before leaving
the White House
for the last time



Arab-Israeli conflict

The establishment of the State of Israel in 1948 was intended to signal a more peaceful era for the world, giving the Jewish people a safe homeland after the horrors of World War II. Instead, it led to decades of conflict with the people who had been displaced—the Palestinians—as well as with neighboring Arab countries.



Israel founded

In 1948, Jewish people living in the Middle Eastern region of Palestine declared the creation of a new country, Israel, with a new flag (left). However, the Palestinians living there objected. War soon followed.

Wars

- ★ **1948 Arab-Israeli War:** When Israel was created, its Arab neighbors launched an immediate attack. Israel managed to repel the attack and eventually claim more land.
- ★ **1967 Six-Day War:** Israel launched a swift assault, taking the Gaza Strip from Egypt and the West Bank from Jordan.
- ★ **1973 Yom Kippur War:** Egypt and Syria launched their own surprise attack on Israel's holiest day. They enjoyed some initial success, but were pushed back again.
- ★ **1987–1993 First Intifada:** Palestinians in Gaza and the West Bank launch a six-year-long mass uprising, the Intifada against Israel, in which hundreds of Israelis and thousands of Palestinians die.
- ★ **2008 Gaza Invasion:** The Israeli army invades Gaza in retaliation for Hamas rocket attacks on Israel. Over 1,000 Palestinians die. Israel launches another ground invasion of Gaza in 2014.

Key events

c. 1200 BCE

The Jewish people emerged in the Middle Eastern region of Palestine and went on to form the Kingdom of Israel.

c. 133 CE

The Jews were expelled from Palestine following their revolt against the Romans.

638

Now part of the Byzantine Empire—the Eastern Roman Empire—Palestine was conquered by Arab Muslims.

1897

A Zionist (pro-Jewish) conference called for the establishment of a Jewish homeland in Palestine to curb European antisemitism.

1922

Control of Palestine passed to Britain after the collapse of the Ottoman Empire, and Jews began to immigrate to the region en masse.



Yom Kippur War and the oil crisis

Egypt and Syria launched an attack on Israel on the Jewish holiday of Yom Kippur in 1973. Once again, Israel managed to reverse the attack and push into both Egypt and Syria, before a cease-fire. During the conflict, Arab countries cut oil supplies to nations, such as the United States, that were supporting Israel. The ban stayed in place until March 1974, leading to worldwide fuel shortages, lines at gas stations, and a global recession.

Jordanian tanks roll into battle in the Six-Day War.



The Peace Process

★ **1978–1979 Camp David Accords:**

The 1970s ended with an agreement between Egypt and Israel, committing the two sides to a peaceful future and limited self-government for the Palestinians.

★ **1993 Oslo Accords:** Under the terms of the deal arranged in Oslo, Norway, the Palestinians recognized Israel's right to exist, while Israel allowed a Palestinian government, the Palestinian Authority, to be established in the West Bank and Gaza.

★ **1998 Land for peace:** In another deal negotiated by the US, Israel agreed to withdraw from Palestinian territories in return for an end to the Palestinian campaigns of violence.

★ **2002 Road Map:** US president George W. Bush's "Road Map" called for an end to Palestinian violence and Israeli settlement building in Palestinian territory. A short-lived peace was followed by a return to violence.

★ **2012 UN Resolution:** The United Nations General Assembly voted for Palestine to be given non-Member Observer State status, meaning they can take part in UN meetings but not vote on any decisions.



Palestinians throw rocks during the First Intifada.

Palestinian opposition

In the early years, opposition to Israel was provided mainly by Arab nations in the region. But gradually the Palestinian people found their voice, with the formation of the Palestinian Liberation Organization (PLO) in 1964. In 1987, Palestinians launched the First Intifada, or uprising, against Israeli presence in the West Bank and Gaza Strip.

West Bank barrier

Continued Israeli settlement building in Palestinian areas triggered a Second Intifada in 2000. Israel responded by constructing a giant concrete barrier around parts of the West Bank (below). Designed to prevent terrorist attacks, it was internationally criticized for also preventing law-abiding Palestinians from traveling freely.

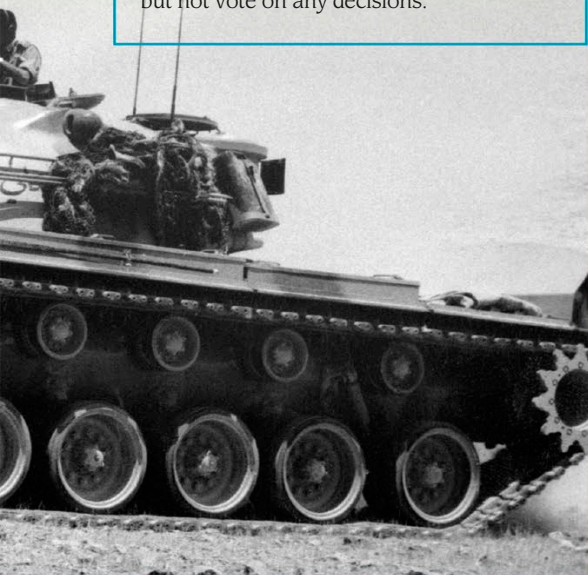


Hope for peace

In recent times, Israel has indicated that it requires the Palestinians to accept its right to exist, and that it will do the same for Palestine if there is an end to violence on Israeli territory. The Palestinians seek an end to the Israeli occupation of the West Bank and Gaza, and a full recognition of their statehood.



The flag of the Palestinian people



1948

The State of Israel was proclaimed against Palestinian objections, leading to the Arab-Israeli War.

1964

The PLO, the main political voice of the Palestinian people, was founded. Yasser Arafat became its leader in 1969.

1967

Israel captured the West Bank and the Gaza Strip during the Six-Day War. In time, these became the Palestinian territories.

2006

The two main parties in the Palestinian Authority split, with Fatah ruling the West Bank and Hamas ruling the Gaza Strip.

2017

Despite Palestinian protests, US president Donald Trump announces US recognition of Jerusalem as the capital of Israel and moves the US embassy there.



Yasser Arafat

1975 ▶ 1980



First Apple computer

Cofounded and led by American Steve Jobs, Apple launched its first product in 1976, a simple personal computer called Apple I (left). The company would grow to become one of the most valuable in the world.



Northern troops seize the presidential palace in the South.

1975

End of the Vietnam War

US troops pulled out of Vietnam in 1973, but fighting between the North and South continued. In 1975, Northern troops overran the South, which surrendered soon after.

1976

Death of Mao

The leader of Communist China since the revolution of 1949, Mao Zedong died at age 82. His disastrous policies, particularly the Great Leap Forward and the Cultural Revolution, led to the deaths of many millions.

Johnny Rotten, lead singer of the Sex Pistols

1976

Punk rockers

Pop music was shaken up when the "punk" movement began. Punk songs were fast and loud, with shouted lyrics often about politics or social problems. Bands such as the Sex Pistols caused outrage with their spiky hair, ripped clothing, and aggressive attitude.



▶▶ 1975

1975

The Khmer Rouge

Pol Pot, the leader of the Khmer Rouge, Cambodia's Communist party, overthrew the Cambodian government. He tried to turn the country back into a simple, rural society, forcibly emptying cities and ruthlessly massacring anyone who opposed him. An estimated 1.7 million people died before Vietnam invaded, toppling Pot's brutal regime.



1975

Lebanese Civil War

In Lebanon, tensions had been rising between the Christians, who controlled the government, and Palestinian refugees led by the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO). An attack on a bus full of Palestinians in Beirut by armed Christians triggered a brutal 15-year civil war.



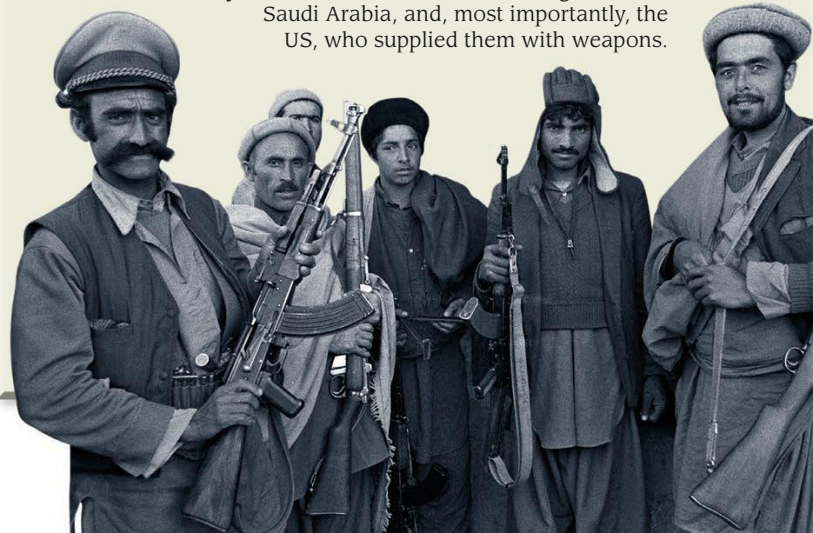
Wreckage of the bus

1979 INVASION OF AFGHANISTAN

The Communist party of Afghanistan seized power in a 1978 coup, renaming the country the Democratic Republic of Afghanistan (DRA). However, after a rebellion by Islamic militants, the Mujahideen, the Soviet Union sent in troops to help secure the country for the Communists.

Mujahideen

Throughout the 1980s, the Mujahideen (below) successfully repelled the Soviets. They were backed by a number of countries, including Pakistan, Saudi Arabia, and, most importantly, the US, who supplied them with weapons.



1979 IRANIAN REVOLUTION

The king, or shah, of Iran, Mohammad Pahlavi, was a close ally of the United States. This made him very unpopular, and, in 1979, he was overthrown by Muslim rebels. The country became an Islamic Republic headed by the cleric Ayatollah Khomeini.



Iran-Iraq War

In 1980, Iraq tried to take advantage of the situation in Iran by launching a surprise invasion. However, Iran fought back and the conflict soon became a stalemate. The 1988 cease-fire returned both countries to their prewar borders.

Support for Khomeini

Although he had been exiled since 1964 for calling the Shah “a puppet” of the West, Ayatollah Khomeini still had a lot of support within Iran. Big demonstrations, such as the one shown here, eventually led to the shah fleeing, and Khomeini returning.



Members of *Solidarnosc* (Solidarity) hold a union banner.

1980

Solidarity

Cracks began to appear in the Soviet Union’s authority when striking ship workers in Poland founded the first independent trade union in Soviet-controlled territory. Known as Solidarity, it was banned two years later and its leader, Lech Walesa, was imprisoned, but the government was later forced to negotiate with the union.

1980

1979

Sandinista policies

After overthrowing Nicaraguan president Anastasio Somoza Debayle, the left wing Sandinista party introduced a series of liberal policies. In the 1980s, they faced regular attacks by the US-backed right-wing militia group, the Contras.



President Robert Mugabe

1980

Zimbabwe elections

In response to international pressure and internal rebellions, the Rhodesian government finally ended white-minority rule. After free elections, Robert Mugabe became the first black president of the country now known as Zimbabwe.

First Walkman

The introduction of the Walkman, a small portable cassette player with lightweight headphones, revolutionized the experience of listening to music, allowing people to enjoy recorded music on the move.



Soviet withdrawal

Despite years of bloody fighting, the Soviet Union couldn’t stop the uprising and withdrew its troops in 1989 (above). The Mujahideen finally overthrew the DRA government in 1992, but then began fighting among themselves. One faction, the Taliban, would eventually emerge victorious.

1980 ▶ 1985



Columbia prepares for launch

1981

Space shuttle

In April, the US launched the first reusable space vehicle, the space shuttle *Columbia*. Five space shuttles were built in total, two of which exploded during missions. Shuttles flew on 135 missions before the program was retired in 2011.

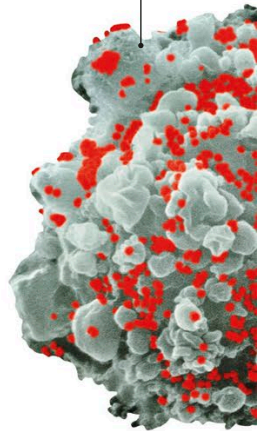


1982

Falklands War

Argentina had long disputed Britain's ownership of the Falkland Islands in the South Pacific. In April, its army invaded the islands, prompting Britain to send troops (above) to take them back. After two months of fighting, Argentina surrendered.

Infected white blood cell



1982

Invasion of Lebanon

In June, Israeli troops entered Lebanon to attack the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) forces based there. A cease-fire was called two months later, and the PLO leadership moved to Tunisia, in North Africa.

▶▶ 1980

1981

Assassin attacks

In separate attacks, gunmen attempted to kill both US president Ronald Reagan and Pope John Paul II. After his attack, the Pope began traveling in a bulletproof vehicle known as the "popemobile." In Egypt, President Sadat was assassinated by a soldier angry at the recent peace deal between Egypt and Israel.



Pope John Paul II after being shot at by a Turkish gunman

1983 ETHIOPIAN FAMINE

In the 1980s, Ethiopia received the lowest rainfall since records began, resulting in a devastating famine and more than 400,000 deaths. Television images of the starving population shocked the world and provoked musicians to record charity singles and stage Live Aid, a day of concerts in the UK and US, to raise money for famine relief.



Refugee camps

Thousands of people left their homes to seek help, with many people ending up in refugee camps (left). The suffering in Ethiopia was made worse by the policies of the government, which spent more than half its national budget on the military.

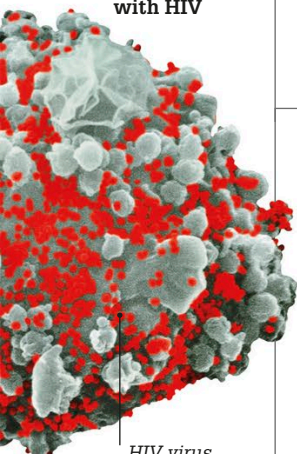


1983

Sri Lankan Civil War

Tensions in Sri Lanka between the majority Sinhalese people and the minority Tamils, who wanted to establish their own separate state, erupted in 1983 into a 26-year long civil war. An estimated 700,000 people died in the fighting, which eventually ended when government forces defeated the main rebel group, the Tamil Tigers.

Microscopic image of a white blood cell infected with HIV



HIV virus

1983

AIDS identified

In the early 1980s, a mystery disease began killing people. It was eventually identified as Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS), which is caused by the HIV virus, which attacks the patient's immune system. Since then, AIDS has killed more than 20 million people. Medicines have been developed that can lessen its effects, but not cure it.



Coal miners on strike

1984

Miners' strike

In Britain, coal miners went on strike for more than a year in protest over pay and planned mine closures. However, the conservative government of Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher refused to give in to their demands. Eventually the miners, facing destitution, were forced back to work.

1985



1984

Indira Gandhi assassinated

In June, Indian Prime Minister Indira Gandhi (below) ordered troops to attack Sikh rebels in Amritsar's Golden Temple, resulting in hundreds of deaths. Four months later, two of her Sikh bodyguards took revenge, assassinating her.



1985

Democracy in Brazil

After 21 years of military dictatorship, Brazil became a democracy again. However, its first president, Tancredo Neves, died before he could take office and was immediately succeeded by his deputy, José Sarney.

**Live Aid**

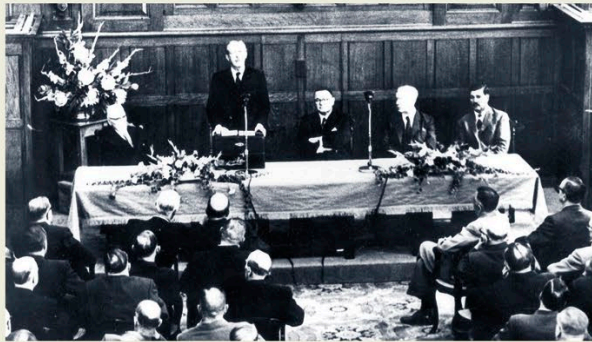
After seeing televised images of dying Ethiopian families, Irish pop singer Bob Geldof gathered musicians to record a charity single called "Do They Know It's Christmas?" In 1985, he organized the Live Aid concerts, which raised more than 50 million pounds for the cause.

**Thriller**

The sixth album by American pop star Michael Jackson, *Thriller*, became a global phenomenon and the best-selling record of all time, with sales of more than 60 million.

Decolonization

Before World War II, Europe's major powers controlled large overseas empires, as did Japan. Italy and Japan lost their empires at the end of the conflict. The victorious European nations held on to theirs for slightly longer, but with their economies shattered by the war—and nationalist sentiments stirring worldwide—the once-mighty European empires gradually melted away to almost nothing. By the early 1980s, the process was largely complete.



Wind of change

At its peak, the British Empire was the largest in history, but it began to break apart after World War II. In 1960, British prime minister Harold Macmillan gave a speech to the South African parliament (above), where he predicted that a “wind of change”—meaning independence—would sweep through Africa. Over the next two decades, most of Britain's colonies declared independence.



Indonesia

In 1945, nationalist rebels in Indonesia declared the country free of the Dutch, who had ruled since 1800. The Dutch disagreed. Three years of fighting ensued before the Dutch withdrew, and Indonesia became independent in 1949 under President Sukarno (above).



End of empires

This map shows the world's major empires in 1938 on the eve of World War II. The colors show the different empires, and the dates are when the colonies finally became independent. Some territories are still colonies.

Egypt



Egypt had officially become independent in 1922, but Britain continued to occupy the country and exert control over its ruler, King Farouk. British influence was finally ended by the 1952 Egyptian Revolution led by Colonel Nasser (left), who went on to become president.



Ghana

The British colony of the Gold Coast began campaigning for independence after the war. Britain initially resisted but eventually gave in, and in 1957 the newly independent, and newly named, country of Ghana was born. Shown here are Ghanaians holding a parade to celebrate their independence.

Key events

1947

Countries that became independent: India and Pakistan (from Britain).

1948

Countries that became independent: Burma and Sri Lanka (from Britain).



Sri Lankan flag

1956

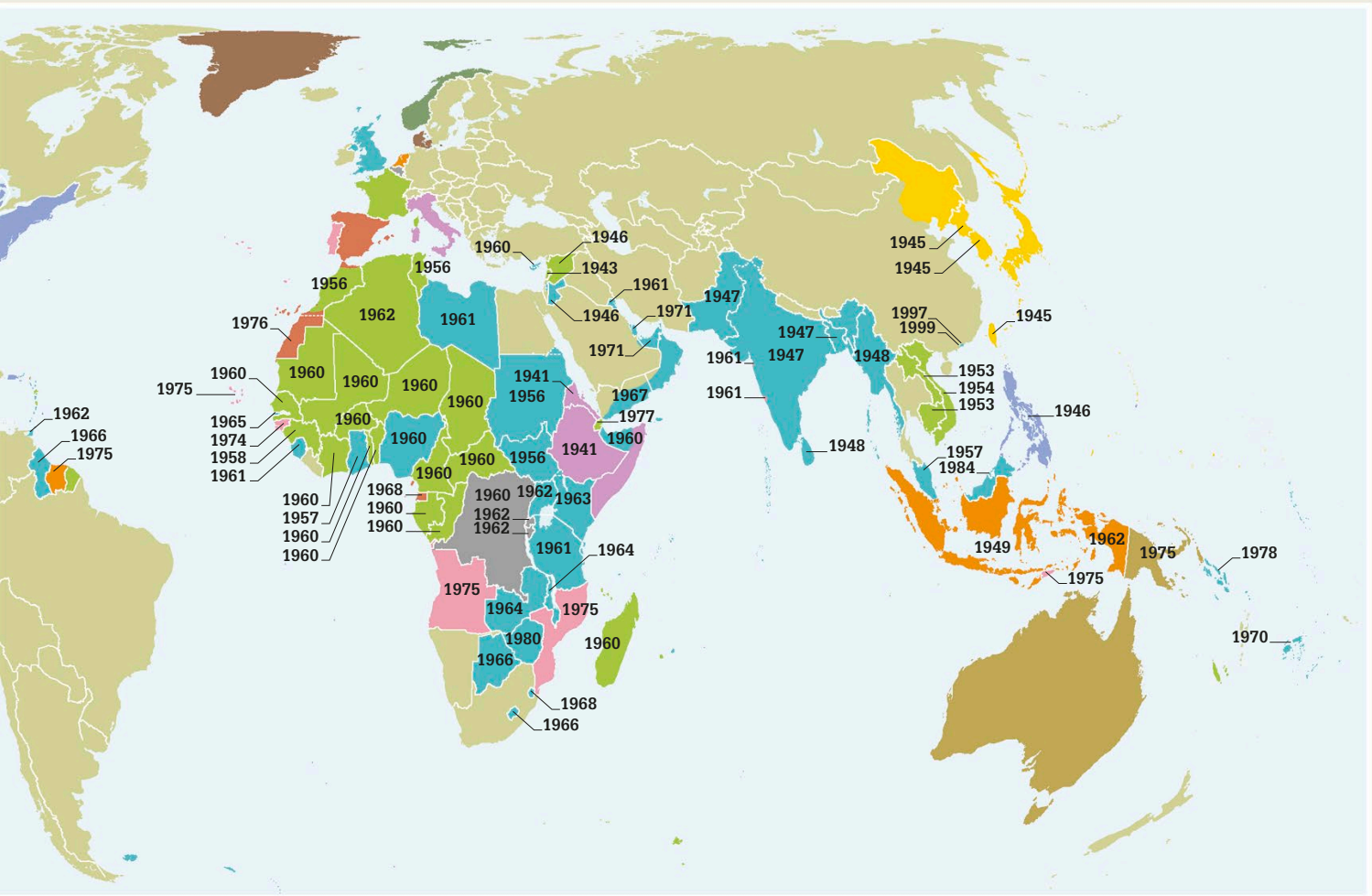
Countries that became independent: Morocco and Tunisia (from France); and the next year Malaysia and Ghana (from Britain).

1960

Seventeen African countries became independent. These included Cameroon and the Ivory Coast (from France).

1962

Countries that became independent: Rwanda (from Belgium); Algeria (from France); Jamaica, Trinidad and Tobago, and Uganda (from Britain).



Jamaica

In the late 1950s, Britain brought together several Caribbean islands, including Jamaica, as the Federation of the West Indies. However, the federation broke up, and in 1962 Jamaica became independent. Shown here is Princess Margaret, sister of the British Queen, attending Jamaica's independence celebrations.



Angola

Angolan nationalists began fighting the Portuguese dictatorship that ruled their country in 1961. The conflict ended only when the dictatorship was overthrown by a coup in Portugal in 1974. Agostinho Neto (left) became Angola's first president, but the country was soon drawn into a 26-year-long civil war.

1964

Countries that became independent: Malawi, Zambia, and Malta (from Britain).

1966

Countries that became independent: Guyana, Botswana, Lesotho, and Barbados (from Britain).

1968

Countries that became independent: Mauritius and Swaziland (from Britain); Equatorial Guinea (from Spain).

1975

Countries that became independent: Angola, Mozambique, Cape Verde, São Tomé and Príncipe (from Portugal).

1981

Countries that became independent: Antigua and Barbuda, and Belize (from Britain).

1985 ▶ 1990

1986

Challenger disaster

Until 1986, the American space shuttle program had been an enormous success, with 24 missions completed safely. But disaster struck in January when a faulty seal caused the *Challenger* shuttle to explode shortly after takeoff, killing all seven crew members.



Debris and smoke from the exploded *Challenger*



1986

Chernobyl explosion

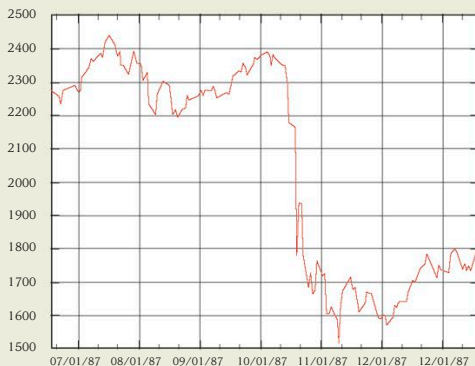
The worst nuclear disaster in history took place when a reactor at the Chernobyl plant in Soviet-controlled Ukraine exploded. It sent a cloud of harmful radiation out over Europe, forcing thousands of people to evacuate the area.



1985

1987 BLACK MONDAY

On Monday, October 19, 1987, stock markets around the world suffered the biggest crash since 1929. However, unlike the earlier crash, it didn't lead to a global economic depression—just a slowdown.



Computer trouble

A trader at the New York Stock Exchange feels the impact as the crash takes hold on October 19. The crash was partly caused by computers that had recently been installed in stock exchanges, since they could sell stocks much quicker and in greater volumes than ever before.

October slump

This graph, showing the value of the top 100 companies trading in the UK between July 1987 and January 1988, shows a sharp decline for October, when their value was reduced by 26 percent. The crash started in Hong Kong, but affected every market in the Western world.

1987

First Intifada

The Palestinians launched an Intifada, or uprising, against Israel's continued occupation of Gaza and the West Bank. It resulted in the deaths of more than 150 Israelis and 2,000 Palestinians over the next six years.



1990

Gulf War

Iraqi leader Saddam Hussein ordered his troops to invade Kuwait and seize its oil reserves. In retaliation, the United States launched an international operation that forced the Iraqis out, but did not topple Hussein from power.



A US marine watches an oil fire in Kuwait.



Crowds celebrate a united Germany outside the Reichstag (parliament).

1989

The Berlin Wall falls

Berliners in both the East and West of the city tore down the Berlin Wall, after a series of events that also led to the fall of the government in the East. In 1990, East and West Germany were reunited.



1990



1988

Lockerbie bombing

In December, Libyan terrorists planted a bomb on a transatlantic flight from London, England, to New York. It exploded, killing all 259 people on board. The wreckage crashed onto the Scottish town of Lockerbie, where another 11 people on the ground lost their lives.

1989

Tiananmen Square

The Chinese authorities initially allowed pro-democracy protests by students in Beijing's Tiananmen Square to go ahead. However, tanks were eventually sent in to stop the demonstration, resulting in hundreds of deaths.

1989

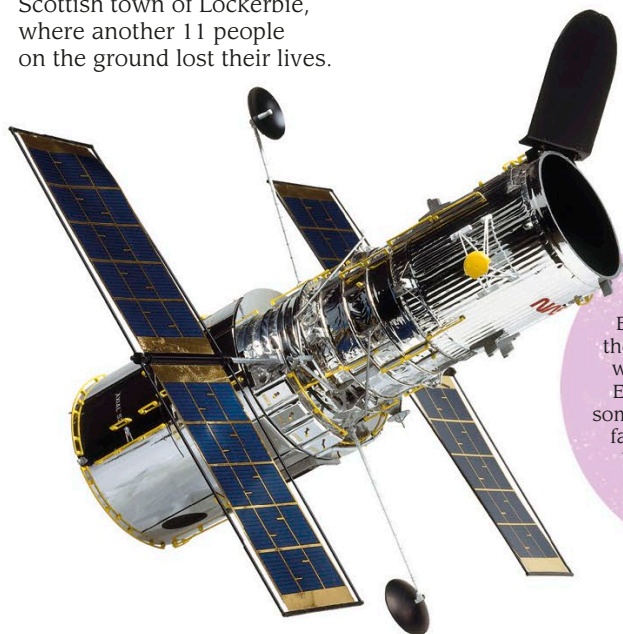
Exxon Valdez oil spill

Loaded with oil and heading for California, the *Exxon Valdez* oil tanker ran aground off Alaska. A rupture in its hull spilled more than 750,000 barrels of oil, seriously damaging the environment and killing wildlife. The Exxon oil company was forced to pay nearly \$1 billion in compensation.

1990

Nelson Mandela released

After 26 years of international pressure, the anti-apartheid activist Nelson Mandela was finally released from prison in South Africa. He immediately returned to politics, becoming the head of the African National Congress and negotiating an end to apartheid with South African president F.W. de Klerk.

**Looking at the Universe**

Built in the United States, the Hubble Space Telescope was sent into orbit around Earth in 1990. It has taken some of the most detailed and far-reaching images of the Universe ever produced.



Fall of Communism

Throughout the Cold War, the Soviet Union had seemed a powerful force. But behind the scenes, the USSR was struggling. By the mid 1980s, it could no longer match the US militarily, and its citizens were demanding more control over their lives. The new Soviet leader, Mikhail Gorbachev, decided to try and rejuvenate the country by granting the people greater freedom. Ultimately, this precipitated the fall of Communism, as people across the USSR and its allies used the opportunity to break away from Soviet control.

Fall of the Berlin Wall

The Berlin Wall, the most iconic symbol of the Cold War, had divided the city since 1961. As Communist regimes fell across Europe in 1989, pressure grew on the East German government to open the border.

In November, it announced that the barrier would open. Thousands of people rushed to the wall to tear it down.

Key events

1989

In January, the Soviet Union, the Warsaw Pact countries, and Yugoslavia had Communist regimes.

1989

In July, Gorbachev gave the countries of the Warsaw Pact the chance to choose their own governments.

1989

Poland voted out its Communist regime in favor of the Solidarity Party in August.

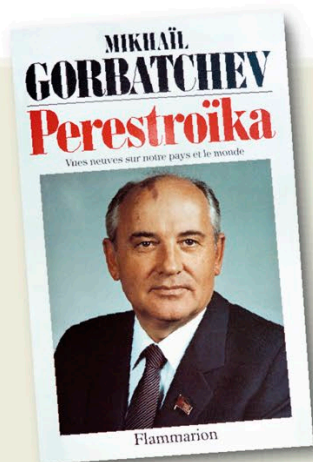
1989

The Velvet Revolution in November saw Czechoslovakia peacefully move away from Communism.

1989

The Berlin Wall, which had divided the city for nearly 30 years, fell on November 9.

A Solidarity Party banner



A copy of Gorbachev's book on perestroika

New policies

Until the mid-1980s, Soviet society was strictly controlled. But Gorbachev broke with the past with his new policies of *glasnost* (openness) and *perestroika* (restructuring). These gave people more personal and economic freedom, but once these were gained, they wanted political freedom and rejected Communism.



Yeltsin delivers a speech from a tank used in the failed military coup.

Key figures



Mikhail Gorbachev

The last Soviet leader unleashed changes he probably didn't foresee. Although he received the Nobel Peace Prize, he lost his political power as the Soviet Union collapsed.



Boris Yeltsin

Yeltsin became the leading politician of the post-Soviet Russian world. He served two terms as president, ensuring the country's transfer to democracy.



Nicolai Ceausescu

Head of Communist Romania, Ceausescu was a brutal leader, living a life of luxury while his people starved. In 1989, he was overthrown, put on trial, and executed.

End of the Communist Bloc

In 1989, Gorbachev allowed the Warsaw Pact countries to hold free elections, resulting in the toppling of Communist governments across Central and Eastern Europe. In the Soviet Union, Communists opposed to the changes staged a military coup against Gorbachev, but it was defeated by democrat Boris Yeltsin (above) and the USSR disintegrated.

“Why not?”

Mikhail Gorbachev in May 1989, when asked by a reporter if the Berlin Wall should be dismantled

The Warsaw Pact

Eight countries signed the Warsaw Pact, a treaty that promised military aid in the case of foreign threat:

- Albania
- Bulgaria
- Czechoslovakia
- East Germany
- Hungary
- Poland
- Romania
- Soviet Union



Russian Federation

Following its dissolution in December 1991, the Soviet Union split into 15 separate countries. Shown here is the flag of the Russian Federation, the largest and most powerful state to emerge from the former USSR. Boris Yeltsin became its first president.

1989

Romania's Communist regime was overturned in a bloody uprising in December.

1990

In March, free elections were held in East Germany, and voters chose to reject Communism.

1990

In October, West and East Germany were reunified for the first time since World War II.

1990

Communism was rejected in the six republics making up Yugoslavia, but they soon began fighting among themselves.

1991

Gorbachev resigned in December and the Soviet Union officially ceased to exist.



An election ballot box

1990 ▶ 1995



1991 End of the Soviet Union

After more than 40 years as one of the world's two superpowers, the Soviet Union suddenly disintegrated following popular protests in the Soviet republics. The Soviet Union divided into 15 separate countries.

1992

Maastricht Treaty

The gradual coming-together of Western European nations that had begun at the end of World War II culminated in the Maastricht Treaty. This created the European Union, with member countries agreeing to common foreign and defense policies. Some also committed to adopting a single currency, the Euro, in the future.



1993

Oslo Accords

Israel's leader, Yitzhak Rabin, and Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) leader Yasser Arafat shake hands on a peace deal, looked on by US president Bill Clinton. This followed secret talks in Oslo, Norway, in which Israel agreed to withdraw from some Palestinian territory, while the PLO agreed to end violence and recognize Israel's right to exist.

1992

LA riots

In 1991, police officers were filmed viciously beating a black suspect, Rodney King. Charged with using excessive force, they were acquitted at their trial the next year, prompting a six-day race riot in which 53 people died.

1990

1991–1996 WAR IN YUGOSLAVIA

The breakup of Yugoslavia after the fall of Communism was a bloody affair. As four of its states—Slovenia, Croatia, Macedonia, and Bosnia and Herzegovina—tried to become independent countries, Serbia waged war to try to hold on to power and create a "Greater Serbia."

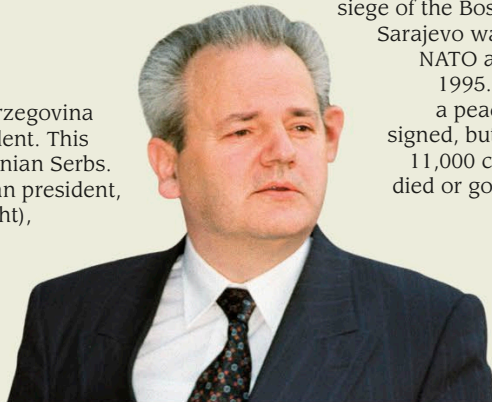


Siege of Sarajevo

A ferocious four-year Serbian siege of the Bosnian city of Sarajevo was ended by NATO air strikes in 1995. Soon after, a peace deal was signed, but more than 11,000 civilians had died or gone missing.

Ethnic cleansing

In 1992, Bosnia and Herzegovina declared itself independent. This was rejected by the Bosnian Serbs. Supported by the Serbian president, Slobodan Milosevic (right), they began to violently remove all non-Serbs from Serb-dominated areas—a policy known as "ethnic cleansing."



1993

The Waco siege

In Waco, Texas, the Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms stormed the headquarters of the Branch Davidians, a secretive Christian sect, using tanks and tear gas. The raid was a disaster and the compound caught fire, killing about 70 people, including several children and the sect's leader, David Koresh.



1994

Rwandan massacre

Around 800,000 people—20 percent of the population—were killed in Rwanda when the Hutu ethnic group attacked their long-term rivals, the Tutsis. Extremist Hutu leaders used the recent assassination of Hutu president Juvénal Habyarimana as justification.



In 1991, two German tourists found a mummified Copper Age man frozen deep in a glacier in the Alps.

1994

US invades Haiti

Haiti's first elected president, Jean-Bertrand Aristide, was overthrown in 1991 in a military coup. Three years later, the US led a military mission that put Aristide back in power—although he was overthrown again a decade later in a second coup.

1995

Barings bank

The UK's oldest merchant bank, Barings Bank, was ruined by the activities of a single "rogue trader." Nick Leeson gambled huge sums in unauthorized, risky investments, racking up losses of 800 million pounds—almost all of the bank's assets.

1995

1994

First Chechen War

The Chechnyan region's attempt to break away from Russia was fiercely resisted by the Russian army. Chechen forces fought back, and a cease-fire in 1996 gave Chechnya its independence. However, Russia regained control of the region after the Second Chechen War (1999–2000).

1995

Oklahoma bombing

In protest against the government's handling of the Waco siege, ex-soldier Timothy McVeigh planted a huge bomb next to a government building in Oklahoma City. It exploded, killing 168 people. McVeigh was arrested and executed in 2001.

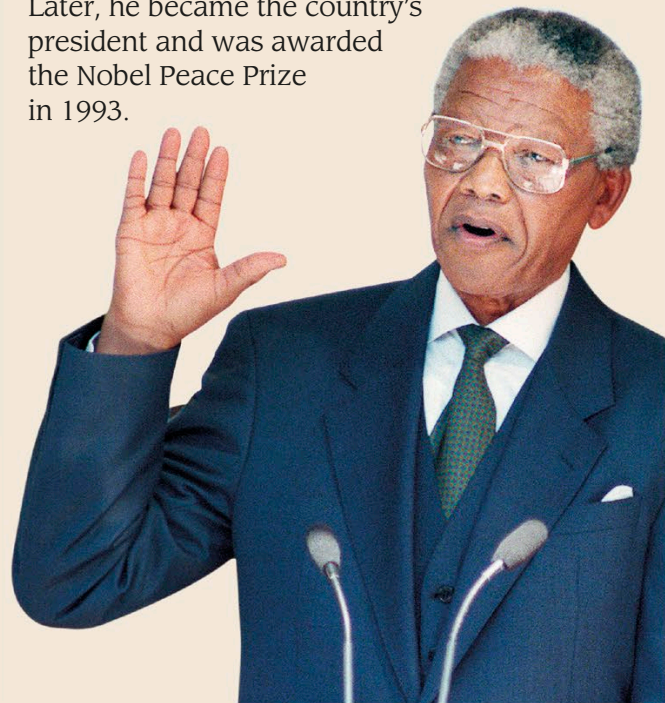


Brazil wins FIFA World Cup

The South American nation became the first country to win soccer's World Cup four times in 1994. They defeated Italy on penalties in the final match, held in California.

1918–2013 NELSON MANDELA

Nelson Mandela spent his whole life fighting prejudice. As a young man, he helped lead the African National Congress (ANC) protests against South Africa's apartheid regime. Later, he became the country's president and was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1993.



International hero

Imprisoned in 1964 for trying to overthrow South Africa's government, Mandela became an international hero during his time in jail. In the 1980s, concerts were staged and records were recorded calling for his release—which eventually came in 1990.

Prison life

Life in prison was hard. Mandela slept in a tiny cell (right), was allowed to receive just one visitor a year, and had to do hard labor. After his release, Mandela sought to heal the divisions between blacks and whites.



New flag

South Africa adopted a new flag in 1994. It combines the green, white, and gold of the ANC with the red, white, and blue of the Netherlands and the UK, South Africa's old colonial rulers.

Living under apartheid

Apartheid (meaning “separateness”) was introduced in South Africa in 1948 by the ruling white Afrikaner National Party to give the government control over the majority black population. During apartheid, families lived very different lives depending on the color of their skin—one privileged, the other impoverished. Black and white children were not allowed to play together.

Racial divide

Under apartheid, black people were told where to live and only allowed to take menial jobs. When they were sick, black children were taken to the hospital in “black only” ambulances. Black children only glimpsed the privileged lives of white South Africans if they went to work with their parents as servants in white homes.

Living apart

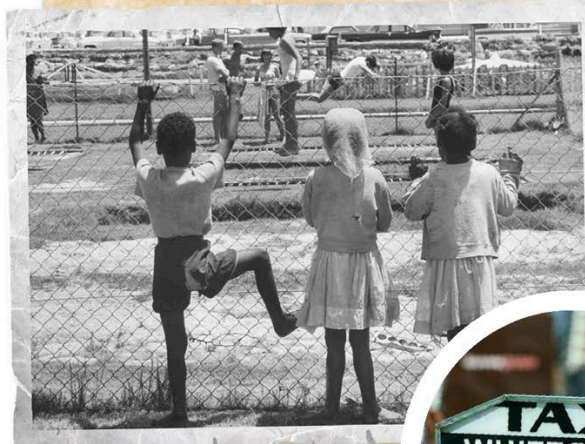
Black families were forcibly moved to townships—poor areas with few facilities and overcrowded schools. Black people could only enter white areas to work, and had to carry an identity document known as a passbook wherever they went. In some places, a six o’clock siren signaled a curfew. Any black person out after this time could be arrested, so children waited nervously for their parents to hurry home each day.

Protesting against the regime

Children in the townships lived in the shadow of violence. Any protest was violently put down, such as the march of young people in Soweto in 1976. Opposition to apartheid was headed by black rights groups, such as the African National Congress (ANC). One of the figureheads of the ANC was Nelson Mandela, who was imprisoned for 26 years.

The end of apartheid

As international awareness of apartheid increased, pressure grew on South Africa to change. In 1989, President F.W. de Klerk lifted the ban on protest marches and ended the segregation of public facilities. In 1994, Nelson Mandela was elected president. He urged people to heal the old divisions, and for black and white South Africans to unite.



Kept out
Black children stand behind a fence watching white children play on a “whites only” beach. Everything in apartheid South Africa was segregated (separated along racial lines), including the taxis.



“At all the schools I attended from preschool right up to university, the only black people I met were cleaners or people serving tea or looking after the gardens.”

Gerrit Coetzee, a white teacher, describing growing up in apartheid South Africa



Student uprising
In 1976, students in the Soweto township marched against apartheid. The police opened fire, killing 600 people.

“If you met a policeman on the road, the first thing they’d say was ‘Where is your passbook?’ and if you didn’t have it you knew where you’d spend the evening—in prison.”

John Biyase, teacher, describing life in the Soweto township

Together at last
These children are waiting for a visit from Nelson Mandela, the country’s first black president. Their faces are painted with the new South African flag, adopted in 1994.



Back to school

A child sits in class in a "black only" school during the apartheid era. As protest gained momentum in the 1980s, education in townships was interrupted by class boycotts.

“The school I went to was overcrowded. We’d have 70 to 80 children in one class.”

Obed Bapela, member of Parliament, describing schooling for black children in the Alexandra township



1995 ▶ 2000



Rise of the Taliban

The Taliban (left) overthrew the Afghan government, which had been in power since 1992. They established the Islamic Emirate of Afghanistan, an extremist Muslim state.

1996

1995

Dayton peace accords

A peace agreement signed in Dayton, Ohio, ruled that Bosnia would be split into the Bosnian Serb Republic and the Muslim-Croat Federation, both forming part of the country Bosnia-Herzegovina. The treaty ended the Bosnian War, the most devastating war in Europe since World War II.

Hong Kong

In 1898, China granted Britain a 99-year lease for the island of Hong Kong, which became a major financial center. It was handed back to China in 1997, but has been allowed to continue operating semi-independently, with its own currency and local laws.



Skyscrapers in Hong Kong



Flowers laid by mourners outside Diana's home at Kensington Palace

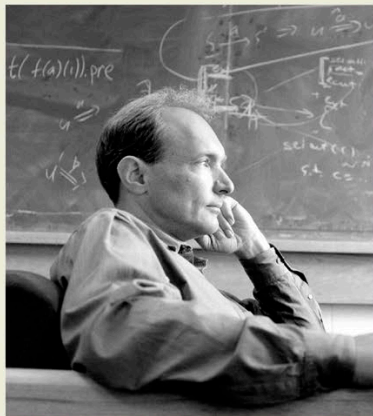
1997

Princess Diana's death

The ex-wife of Prince Charles of the United Kingdom and mother of princes William and Harry died in a car crash in Paris. The nation was stunned, and millions watched the funeral service at Westminster Abbey on television.

▶▶ 1995

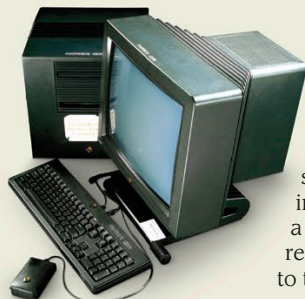
1995 GROWTH OF THE WORLD WIDE WEB



A slow start

Berners-Lee's innovation was used by only a handful of people during the first few years, but with the introduction of Internet browsers in 1993, it soon became very popular. By 1995, the Web was on its way to becoming a global phenomenon.

The first networks of computers were created in the 1960s, but were complicated to use. In 1990, a British computer researcher named Tim Berners-Lee (left) came up with a simple way of distributing information, using hyperlinks to make connections between documents. He called his invention the World Wide Web.



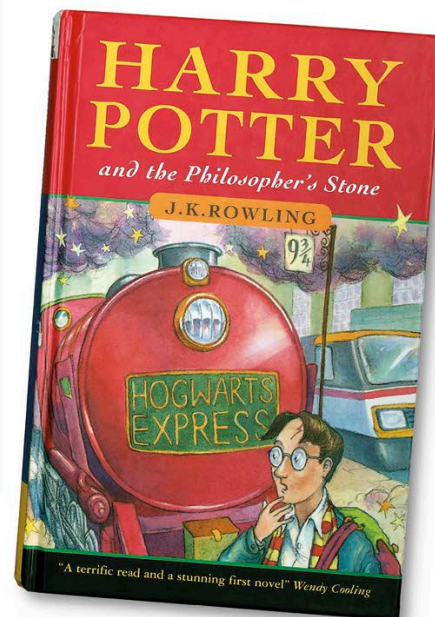
A world online

This computer is the first Internet server, and it hosted the first webpage when it was set up by Berners-Lee in 1990. He scrawled a notice on the side to remind people not to turn it off.

1997

Harry Potter

The first of J.K. Rowling's books, *Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone* (*Sorcerer's Stone* in the US), was released in 1997, and became an instant smash hit. The seven Harry Potter books have sold more than 500 million copies worldwide.





1998

The Kosovo War

The Serbian President Slobodan Milosevic sent Serbian troops to prevent Kosovo—a region in Serbia—from becoming independent. The Serbs were driven back by NATO air strikes, and Kosovo finally declared independence in 2008.

1998

Peace in Ireland

A major breakthrough in the Northern Ireland peace process was made when Nationalist and Unionist political parties agreed to serve in a power-sharing government. The treaty was supported in both Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland.



Irish prime minister Bertie Ahern, US senator George Mitchell, and British prime minister Tony Blair after signing the agreement.

1998

Nuclear weapons for India and Pakistan

Since independence, India and Pakistan had become fierce enemies, clashing several times over the disputed border area of Kashmir. In an attempt to prove its military superiority, India tested a nuclear device in May. This was followed shortly after by Pakistan's own nuclear test.

1999

East Timor is born

In 1999, East Timor voted to become independent of Indonesia. This triggered a violent revolt by a minority who wanted to remain part of Indonesia. UN troops restored order, and in 2002 East Timor became the first new country of the millennium.



Flag of East Timor

Dolly the sheep

In 1996, scientists managed to successfully clone an adult mammal for the first time. Known as Dolly, she was an exact copy of her parent sheep.



1999

Coup in Pakistan

After being defeated by India in a border conflict, the elected Pakistani government of Prime Minister Nawaz Sharif was overthrown in a bloodless military coup. The coup leader, General Pervez Musharraf, became the country's dictator.

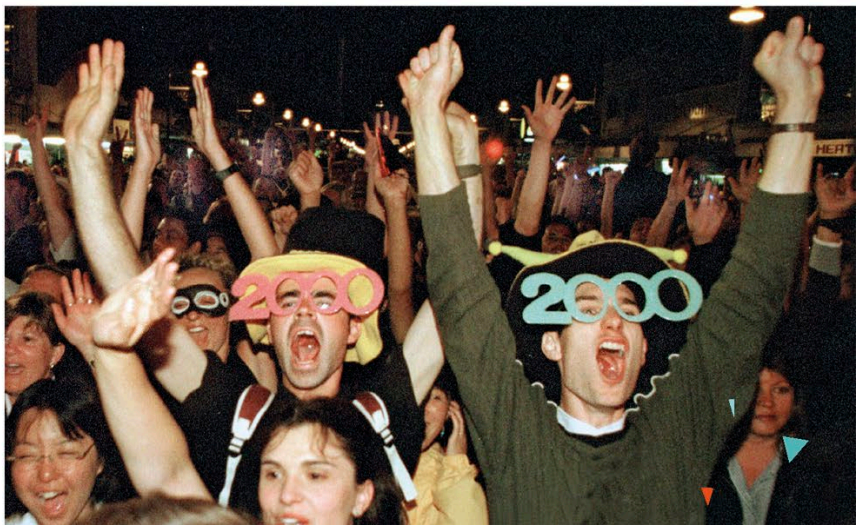
2000

2000

New millennium

Billions of people welcomed the new millennium with celebrations around the world. As the new year approached, there were concerns that a so-called "millennium bug" might cause a global computer meltdown. Ultimately, these fears proved unfounded.

Revelers celebrate the millennium in 2000.



The Harry Potter books have been translated into 80 languages.



2000 ▶ 2005



The clean-up operation begins after the devastating earthquake in Gujarat.

2001

Gujarat earthquake

A giant earthquake, measuring 7.9 on the Richter scale, rocked the state of Gujarat in northwest India. It resulted in the deaths of more than 20,000 people and the destruction of at least 400,000 homes. About 600,000 people were left homeless.



Refugees from the Angolan Civil War carry grain past a land-mine field.

2002

End of Angolan Civil War

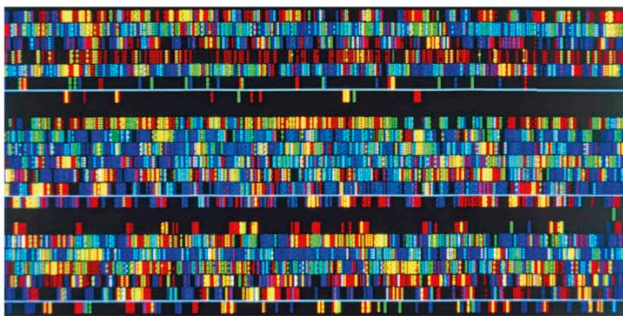
The Civil War in Angola finally ended after 26 years. Meanwhile, the African Union was launched, the successor to the Organization of African Unity.

2002

Milosevic on trial

Former Yugoslav president Slobodan Milosevic stood trial at the International Court of Justice in The Hague, Netherlands, for war crimes during the Bosnian War. However, he died in prison before the trial ended.

▶▶ 2000



Sequence of human DNA

2001

Human Genome Project

Begun in 1990, the Human Genome Project employed scientists around the world to map and identify the role of more than 20,000 genes that make up human DNA—the blueprint for life. By 2001, the project had published its first draft of the genome.

2001

Enron collapses

Considered to be one of the most profitable energy companies in the world, Enron suddenly collapsed when it was found to have created false accounts that made it look like it was making more money than it actually was.

2001

Al-Qaeda attacks

Members of Al-Qaeda flew planes into New York's World Trade Center on September 11, in the worst terrorist attack in US history. America responded by launching attacks on Afghanistan, where Osama bin Laden, the head of Al-Qaeda, was hiding.



2002

Euro banknotes

The Euro

On January 1, 17 countries in the European Union gave up their old currencies and adopted the Euro as their new joint currency. Euro notes and coins are now used every day by more than 330 million people.

2004 INDIAN OCEAN TSUNAMI

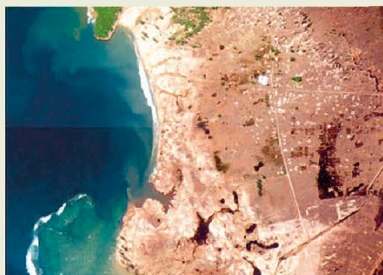
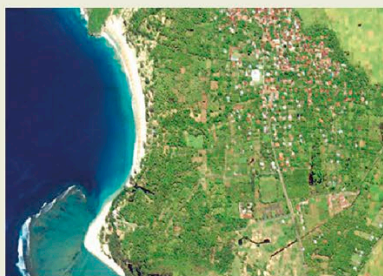
In the early hours of December 26, 2004, an enormous earthquake occurred under the Indian Ocean. It created a tsunami (a series of huge waves) more than 100 ft (30 m) in height, which raced across the ocean, pummeling the surrounding coastlines with devastating force.

Disorder and devastation

The huge tsunami struck 14 countries, destroying homes and property, and killing more than 230,000 people. Since there were no warning signals, the waves took most of the victims by surprise.



Cars stacked up after the tsunami



The aftermath

These images show Banda Aceh, Indonesia, before (top) and after (bottom) the tsunami. The waves flattened most buildings, leaving a bare landscape.

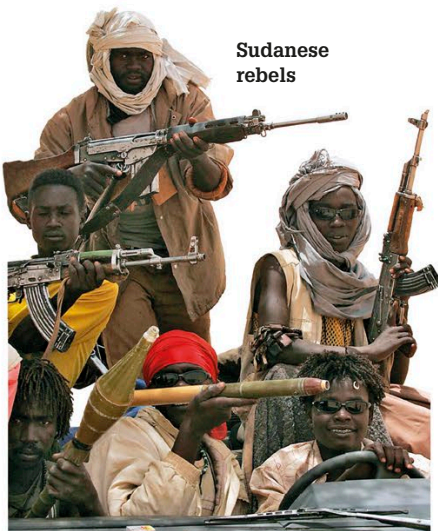
iPod launched

In 2001, Apple came out with a revolutionary new product – the iPod – a small portable device that could store and play thousands of songs.

2003

Sudanese conflict

The Darfur region of Sudan rebelled against the government, claiming they were being oppressed. As many as 300,000 lives were lost before a peace accord in 2010. Another civil war (1983–2005) resulted in South Sudan becoming an independent country in 2011. However, civil war broke out again in 2013. Since then more than 2 million refugees have fled South Sudan.



Sudanese rebels

2003

War in Iraq

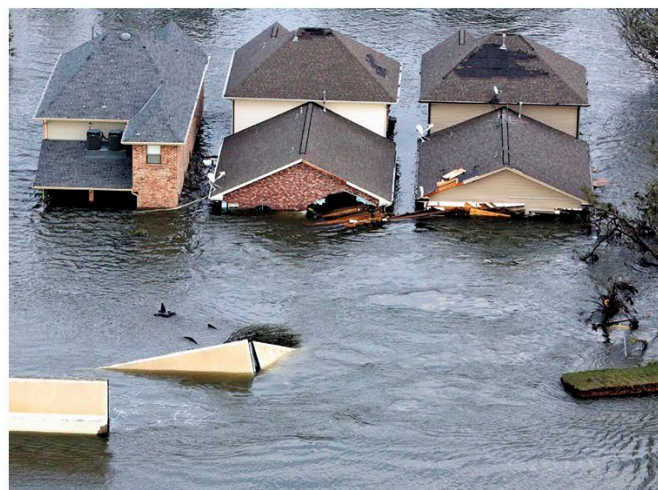
As part of the “War on Terror,” the US invaded Iraq to overthrow its leader, Saddam Hussein. Hussein’s regime quickly crumbled, and US troops left in 2011. However, the rise of the Islamic State led to instability in the country, and in 2014 US troops returned to help put down the terrorist group.

2004

Beslan hostage crisis

Chechen separatists protested against Russian rule by taking 1,000 people hostage in a school in the town of Beslan. A rescue attempt by Russian troops ended disastrously, with the deaths of 186 children.

Submerged homes in New Orleans



2005

Hurricane Katrina

The city of New Orleans, Louisiana, was devastated by Hurricane Katrina. The levees (embankments) that were meant to protect the city from flooding broke under the extreme pressure of the storm surge, leaving much of the city underwater and thousands homeless. It caused billions of dollars worth of damage.

War on Terror

In the 1980s, the militant Islamist terrorist organization Al-Qaeda was formed with the aim of establishing a worldwide Muslim nation. It carried out a series of attacks, culminating in the destruction of New York's World Trade Center in 2001. This prompted the United States to launch a "War on Terror" against the group's worldwide network.

“Today, our fellow citizens, our way of life, our very freedom came under attack.”

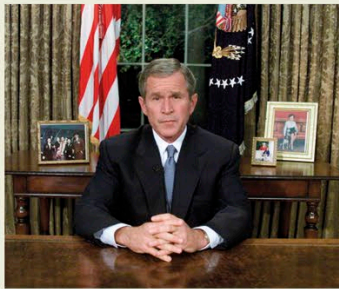
President George W. Bush speaking to the nation on September 11, 2001

Under attack

On September 11, 2001, 19 members of Al-Qaeda hijacked four American planes. Two were flown into the Twin Towers of New York's World Trade Center, one hit the Pentagon in Washington, DC, while the final plane crashed into a field in Pennsylvania. Almost 3,000 people were killed.

Osama bin Laden

A member of a wealthy Saudi family, Osama bin Laden fought with the Mujahideen against the Soviets in Afghanistan during the 1980s. He later founded Al-Qaeda (meaning "the base" in Arabic) to wage a worldwide *jihād* (holy war) against what he saw as the corrupt Western world.



Invasion of Afghanistan

The Taliban rulers of Afghanistan harbored bases of bin Laden's Al-Qaeda movement. In 2001, US president George W. Bush ordered an attack on the country. Initially, the war went well for the US and the Taliban was quickly overthrown. But the Taliban fought back, and the war continued for more than a decade. Bin Laden slipped out of the country.



Key events

1988

Following the end of the Afghanistan War, Osama bin Laden founded Al-Qaeda.

1991

Bin Laden set up terrorist training camps in Sudan, but was later asked to leave the country.

1996

Bin Laden returned to Afghanistan and called on his followers to launch a holy war against the United States.

1998

Al-Qaeda killed more than 200 people by planting bombs at US embassies in Kenya and Tanzania.

1998

The US retaliated against the embassy bombings with air strikes on Al-Qaeda training camps in Afghanistan.

Bombed embassy





Iraq War

In 2003, the US turned its attention to Iraq. Believing its ruler, Saddam Hussein, was hiding Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMD) that could potentially be used against the West, the US invaded the country to destroy them. Hussein was forced from power, but no WMD were ever found and the new US-backed Iraqi government faced years of fighting against rebel groups.

A statue of Saddam Hussein is toppled by the Iraqi people, with help from US forces.



Al-Qaeda attacks

In the 2000s, Al-Qaeda and its associated organizations continued to launch terrorist attacks targeting the West as protests against the wars in Afghanistan and Iraq.

- ★ **December 2001**
British terrorist Richard Reid was arrested trying to detonate a bomb in his shoe on a plane from Paris, France, to Miami, Florida.
- ★ **October 2002**
Two bombs set off in a nightclub in Bali, Indonesia killed more than 200 people.

- ★ **March 2004**
Bombs on trains in Madrid, Spain, killed more than 190 and injured at least 1,800.
- ★ **July 2005**
Bombs on underground trains and a bus in London killed 52 people and injured more than 700.
- ★ **April and December 2007**
Bomb attacks in Algiers, Algeria, kill more than 70 people, including 17 United Nations staff.



Bin Laden's compound

Bin Laden's death

For a decade, America's most wanted man—Osama bin Laden—evaded capture. He continued to organize terrorist attacks and released regular public messages, urging his supporters to continue the fight against the West. But in 2011, he was tracked down to a specially built compound in Abbottabad, Pakistan. US soldiers helicoptered in, stormed the compound, and shot bin Laden dead.

2001

The terrorist attacks on the United States triggered the "War on Terror."

2001

On October 7, the US launched the war in Afghanistan with the aim of finding Al-Qaeda's terrorist bases.

2003

The Iraq War was launched in the face of much international opposition.

Protest banners



2006

Following his capture in 2003, Saddam Hussein was put on trial for "crimes against humanity," found guilty, and executed.

2011

Osama bin Laden was finally tracked down in Pakistan and assassinated by American troops.

CLIMATE CHANGE

Earth's average temperature has risen over recent decades. Contributing factors include the burning of fossil fuels, which releases greenhouse gases. Global warming causes ice sheets to melt; rising sea levels; and an increase in extreme weather events, such as tsunamis and heat waves.



Kyoto protocol

In 1997, world leaders met in Kyoto, Japan, to agree on action to stop global warming. The big industrialized nations promised to cut the production of greenhouse gases. However, developing countries, such as India and China, were not subject to this agreement.



Paris climate agreement

In 2015, the leaders of 195 nations met in Paris, France, where they agreed on further action to tackle global warming. Developing countries promised to cut their emissions and developed nations pledged to fund renewable energy initiatives.

School strike

In 2018, Greta Thunberg, a 16-year-old Swedish schoolgirl, staged a protest demanding government action on climate change. Refusing to go to school, she stood outside the Swedish Parliament, holding a banner saying "School Strike for Climate." Thunberg inspired schoolchildren around the world to stage their own school strikes.



2006

Twitter

In the US, Twitter, a new social networking service, was launched. It allowed users to post short messages, called "tweets," online. Twitter increasingly replaced conventional media, such as television, as a way of following breaking news stories. It became a popular channel to show reactions to current events.

2006

Terror in Mumbai

More than 200 people were killed in India when seven bombs went off on trains on Mumbai's railroad network. Terror shook the city again two years later when more than 150 people died in shooting and bomb attacks that shocked the nation. In 2011, three bombs killed 26 and left 130 injured. All of the attacks were blamed on Islamic extremists.

The social networking site Facebook was founded in 2004. Its popularity grew and, by 2012, more than a billion people had signed up.



2005

2007

Economic crisis

In late 2007, the world was plunged into the biggest economic crisis since the Great Depression. It started in the US where many people had taken out bank loans they could not afford to buy houses. Bank failures followed, and the crisis soon spread around the world, as many financial institutions either went bankrupt or needed to be rescued by governments. In Greece, government workers' pay was cut, leading to riots on the streets.

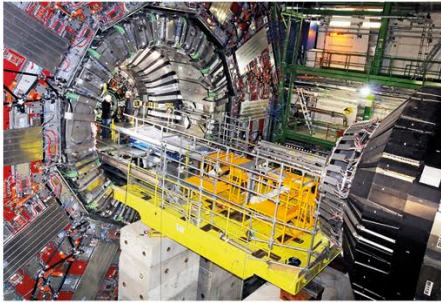
Riots break out in Greece



2008

Large Hadron Collider

A huge scientific machine began operating beneath the French-Swiss border. It was built to recreate the conditions just after the Big Bang, giving scientists a better idea of how the universe first formed.



Large Hadron Collider

2008

Obama elected

History was made as the US elected its first African American president, Barack Obama. Representing the Democratic Party, the former community organizer went on to win a second term in office in 2013.

President Obama



Clouds of volcanic ash pour out of Eyjafjallajökull volcano.

2010

Icelandic volcano

The eruption of Iceland's Eyjafjallajökull volcano sent up a massive ash cloud, which spread across the North Atlantic Ocean and northern Europe. Over the next five days, 95,000 flights had to be cancelled.

2010

Deepwater Horizon

A major ecological disaster took place off the US coast when an oil rig, Deepwater Horizon, exploded and sank. Marine life was devastated, as 3.19 million barrels of oil poured into the sea.

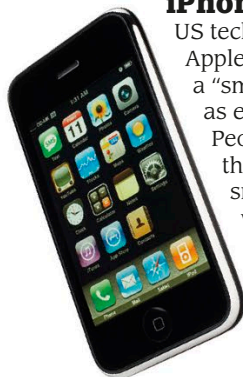
2010



2007

iPhone launched

US technology company Apple launched the iPhone, a "smartphone" as powerful as earlier home computers. People could now access the Internet using only a small handheld device with a touch-sensitive screen. The iPhone X, released in 2017, would have facial recognition security.



2008

Usain Bolt

At the Beijing Summer Olympics, Jamaican athlete Usain Bolt became the fastest man on earth. He set a new world record by running the 100 m race in just 9.69 seconds.

Usain Bolt celebrates at the 2008 Olympics



2010

Chilean miners freed

When a roof collapsed in a gold and copper mine in Chile, 33 miners were trapped. They remained underground for 69 days before a rescue mission brought them all back to the surface safely.

2010

Haiti earthquake

The Haiti earthquake measured only 7 on the Richter scale, but the weak standard of buildings in Haiti—one of the world's poorest countries—meant it caused widespread devastation and more than 230,000 deaths.



Haiti's presidential palace lies in ruins

2010 ▶ 2018

2011

Arab Spring

A wave of protests and rebellions, known as the Arab Spring, swept across the Arab world, with people calling for democracy and greater human rights. Uprisings started in Tunisia and spread to other countries, toppling several long-standing dictators, but also bringing war and disruption to the region.

2011

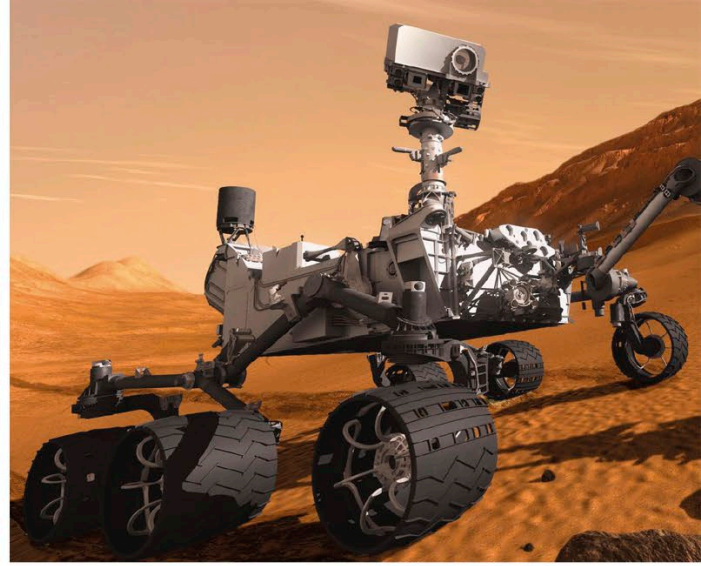
Syrian war

When protestors throughout Syria demanded democratic government, President Assad responded with a brutal military crack-down. The conflict escalated into a many-sided civil war that tore the country apart, cost tens of thousands of lives, and caused a major refugee crisis.

2011

Japanese tsunami

An earthquake just off Japan's northeast coast caused a huge tsunami. Giant waves crashed onto the mainland, destroying thousands of buildings and killing over 16,000 people.



2012

Curiosity

A NASA spacecraft delivered the research vehicle Curiosity to Mars after an eight-month journey. The carlike rover, equipped with cameras and scientific instruments, was designed for a long-term exploration of Mars' surface. Its key mission is to determine whether the planet has ever supported life.

▶▶ 2010

1997–

MALALA YOUSAFZAI



In 2012, Malala Yousafzai was just 15 when she was almost killed in an assassination attempt because of her campaigning for the right of girls in Pakistan to be educated. After recovery in Britain, Malala became a world-famous ambassador for youth, and the youngest-ever Nobel Peace Prize winner.

“Let us pick up our books and our pens. They are our most powerful weapons.”

United Nations speech, July 12, 2013

Champion for education

Malala speaks to and for women around the world, campaigning for their right to an education. Here, she is speaking to girls in a refugee center based in Kenya, in 2016.

2013

Meteor strike

A 66-ft- (20-m-) wide meteor, traveling at 12 miles (20 km) per second, burst apart above the Russian city of Chelyabinsk. The shock waves shattered windows and blew people off their feet. Many were injured by debris.

In 2010, the first-ever image—of a dog—was posted on the photo-sharing app Instagram. The social networking site now has 500 million users.





2015

Paris attacks

On a single evening in November, in Paris, France, a series of shootings and suicide bombings at sports and concert venues and restaurants killed 130 people and injured more than 350 others. IS claimed responsibility for the attacks.

2014 **ISLAMIC STATE (IS)**



Fight-back

By 2014, IS had occupied Mosul (above) in Iraq and Raqqa in Syria, established them as strongholds, and declared a state based around them. The Iraqis and Syrian Kurds struck back, with US military assistance. By 2017, they had retaken both cities, but fierce resistance by IS left them largely in ruins, and millions of their former inhabitants had become refugees.

Decades of regional unrest led to the emergence of a new rebel force in Iraq in 2014, with the rise of a militant Islamist group calling itself the Islamic State (IS). War raged as IS fighting forces expanded into Syria, taking key cities. By 2018, IS held just a tiny proportion of its former territory.



Palmyra in ruins

From 2015 to 2017, IS occupied Palmyra in Syria, one of the world's best-preserved archaeological sites. Its fighters destroyed much of the ancient city as part of their campaign to eradicate buildings sacred to previous eras and other faiths, including many revered by other sects of Islam.

2018

2016

Trump triumphs in US

Many forecasters were surprised in November when Republican businessman Donald Trump defeated Democrat politician Hillary Clinton to become the 45th President of the United States.

2016

Brexit

In a referendum called by British Prime Minister David Cameron, the UK voted to leave the European Union after 43 years, starting a series of events and negotiations known as "Brexit" (a combination of "British" and "exit").

2018

Korean leaders meet

During peace talks, North and South Korean leaders crossed the border between their countries for the first time since the end of the Korean War in 1953 and shook hands.

2017

Women's March

Around 200,000 people marched in a demonstration for equality in Washington, D.C., the day after Trump's inauguration. Millions of people around the country and the world participated in local marches.



Star Wars

In 2015, after more than 30 years, the film *The Force Awakens* finally picked up the Star Wars story where the original trilogy left off in 1983 with *Return of the Jedi*. New characters included the rolling droid BB-8.



President of the United States of America, Donald Trump



The history of the United States

In 1492, Christopher Columbus was looking for a shortcut to Asia but stumbled across North America. He was not the first person to set foot on this land. A Viking explorer had visited almost 500 years earlier, and hundreds of American Indian tribes already lived there. Since Columbus, millions have set sail for the New World in search of a better life and adventure. After gaining independence from Britain, the United States got bigger and richer, and by the mid-twentieth century, it was the most powerful country in the world.

700 CE Farming peoples in the Mississippi valley build the first large towns in North America; the towns are ceremonial centers with open plazas and large flat-topped earth mounds.

900 CE The Anasazi people build villages in what is now New Mexico.

c. 1000 CE Viking explorer Leif Eriksson reaches North America, which he calls Vinland, probably after the vines he found there.

1492 Christopher Columbus discovers the Americas while trying to find a shortcut to India.

1513 Ponce de León claims the land of Florida for Spain.

1519–21 Hernán Cortés, a Spanish explorer, conquers the Aztec Empire of Mexico.

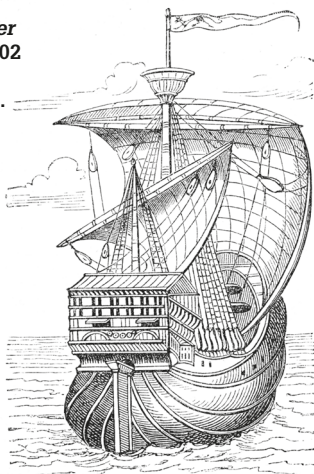
1541 Spanish explorer Hernando de Soto discovers the Mississippi River.

1585–87 Two unsuccessful attempts are made to establish English colonies on Roanoke Island, Virginia.

1607 The first permanent European settlement in North America, Jamestown, Virginia, is founded.

1619 A Dutch ship brings the first cargo of African slaves to Virginia, to work in the tobacco plantations there.

The *Mayflower* transported 102 pilgrims to New England.



1620 The colony of Plymouth is founded by Pilgrims who sailed from England on the *Mayflower*.

1621 The Pilgrims celebrate the First Thanksgiving after a successful harvest.

1625 The Dutch found New Amsterdam, later known as New York, on the East Coast.

1664 The English take New Amsterdam from the Dutch.

1708 Black slaves outnumber white inhabitants in the Carolinas for the first time. Over the next 50 years, thousands of slaves arrive in the colonies every year to work on the plantations.

1754–63 French and Indian War between Britain and France and its Indian allies. Britain wins, and gains French Canada, Louisiana, and Spanish Florida.

1765 The British government imposes direct taxation on its American colonies for the first time.

1773 At the “Boston Tea Party,” colonists, protesting against paying British taxes, dump valuable tea cargo into the harbor.

1774 Uniting in opposition to the British government, the 13 colonies (except Georgia) form the First Continental Congress.

1775 The Revolutionary War begins.

July 4, 1776 American leaders sign the Declaration of Independence.

1783 Following the British surrender at Yorktown (1781), the United States wins independence.

1787 The Constitution, the supreme law of the United States, is signed by delegates at the Federal Convention.

1789 George Washington is elected the first president of the United States.

1791 The Bill of Rights, a set of ten amendments to the Constitution, is formally approved.

1803 The Louisiana Purchase: The US buys French territories in the south and west, doubling the nation’s land area.

1820 Pro- and antislavery groups pass the Missouri Compromise, in which slavery will be permitted in Missouri but prohibited in the north and west.

1823 President Monroe proclaims the “Monroe Doctrine,” preventing future colonization of the Americas by any European power.

1830 Indian Removal Act permanently removes American Indians from their land to settle in “Indian territories.”

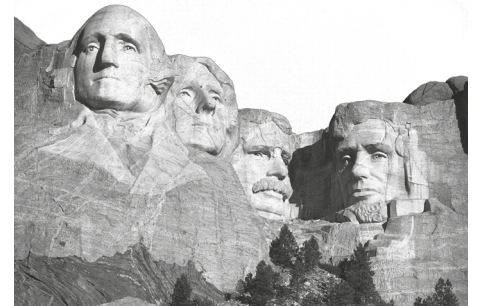
1841 The Oregon Trail, a 2,000-mile (3,200 km) wagon route connecting the Missouri River to Oregon, opens.

1844 Telegraph first used.

1849 The discovery of gold in California leads to a “gold rush.”

1861 Civil War erupts when the Southern states leave the Union, forming the Confederate States of America.

1863 Battle of Gettysburg; President Abraham Lincoln delivers the Gettysburg Address and proclaims the emancipation (freeing) of slaves.



Mount Rushmore is a sculpture carved into the side of a mountain featuring the US presidents George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, Theodore Roosevelt, and Abraham Lincoln.

The Statue of Liberty in New York Harbor was a welcome sight to immigrants arriving in America.



1865 13th Amendment abolishes slavery; the Confederates surrender; President Lincoln is assassinated.

1867 Reconstruction Act sets terms for the readmission of Southern states into the Union.

1868 14th Amendment grants citizenship to African Americans.

1869 Transcontinental railroad, crossing the western half of the United States, is completed.

1870 15th Amendment gives African Americans the right to vote.

1871 The city of Chicago, almost entirely built of wood, burns down in a huge fire; the city is rebuilt in stone and steel and the world's first skyscrapers are built.

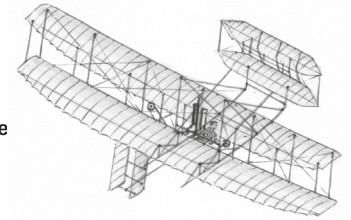
1879 American inventor Thomas Edison makes the first successful electric light bulb.

1882 Chinese Exclusion Act bans Chinese immigration.

1886 Workers in Chicago go on strike, demanding an eight-hour workday; near Haymarket Square, a rally in support of the workers ends in a riot after a bomb is thrown at the police.

1890 Census shows that the West had officially been settled; massacre of American Indians at Wounded Knee.

1898 United States acquires the Philippines, Puerto Rico, and Hawaii.



The Wright brothers made and flew the first airplane.

1903 First airplane flight, by Wright brothers at Kitty Hawk, North Carolina.

1905 More than 1 million immigrants enter the US in a year. By 1910, the US population rises to 92 million.

1913 In his Highland Park automobile factory, Henry Ford introduces the world's first moving assembly line.

1915 German U-boat (submarine) sinks US liner, the *Lusitania*.

1916 Child Labor Act, an attempt to end the employment of children in factories and mines, is passed.

1917 United States enters World War I.

1918 End of World War I.

1919 18th Amendment proclaims Prohibition, the banning of the sale of alcohol.

1920 19th Amendment gives women the right to vote.

1927 Charles Lindbergh makes first flight across Atlantic; the first talking film is released.

1929 New York stock market collapses, leading to the Great Depression worldwide.

1933 President Roosevelt launches the New Deal, using government spending to combat unemployment.

1939 Germany invades Czechoslovakia and Poland; Great Britain and France declare war on Germany.

December 7, 1941 Pearl Harbor, a US naval base in Hawaii, is attacked by the Japanese; US enters World War II.

THE PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

President	In Office	Party
George Washington	1789-1797	Federalist
John Adams	1797-1801	Federalist
Thomas Jefferson	1801-1809	Democrat-Republican
James Madison	1809-1817	Democrat-Republican
James Monroe	1817-1825	Democrat-Republican
John Quincy Adams	1825-1829	Democrat-Republican
Andrew Jackson	1829-1837	Democrat
Martin Van Buren	1837-1841	Democrat
William H. Harrison	1841	Whig
John Tyler	1841-1845	Whig
James K. Polk	1845-1849	Democrat
Zachary Taylor	1849-1850	Whig
Millard Fillmore	1850-1853	Whig
Franklin Pierce	1853-1857	Democrat
James Buchanan	1857-1861	Democrat
Abraham Lincoln	1861-1865	Republican
Andrew Johnson	1865-1869	Democrat
Ulysses S. Grant	1869-1877	Republican
Rutherford B. Hayes	1877-1881	Republican
James Garfield	1881	Republican
Chester A. Arthur	1881-1885	Republican
Grover Cleveland	1885-1889	Democrat
Benjamin Harrison	1889-1893	Republican
Grover Cleveland	1893-1897	Democrat
William McKinley	1897-1901	Republican
Theodore Roosevelt	1901-1909	Republican
William Howard Taft	1909-1913	Republican
Woodrow Wilson	1913-1921	Democrat
Warren Harding	1921-1923	Republican
Calvin Coolidge	1923-1929	Republican
Herbert Hoover	1929-1933	Republican
Franklin D. Roosevelt	1933-1945	Democrat
Harry S. Truman	1945-1953	Democrat
Dwight Eisenhower	1953-1961	Republican
John F. Kennedy	1961-1963	Democrat
Lyndon B. Johnson	1963-1969	Democrat
Richard M. Nixon	1969-1974	Republican
Gerald R. Ford	1974-1977	Republican
James (Jimmy) Carter	1977-1981	Democrat
Ronald Reagan	1981-1989	Republican
George H.W. Bush	1989-1993	Republican
William J. Clinton	1993-2001	Democrat
George W. Bush	2001-2009	Republican
Barack Obama	2009-2017	Democrat
Donald Trump	2017-	Republican

THE FIFTY STATES OF THE UNION

State	Admission	Capital	State	Admission	Capital
Delaware	1787	Dover	Michigan	1837	Lansing
Pennsylvania	1787	Harrisburg	Florida	1845	Tallahassee
New Jersey	1787	Trenton	Texas	1845	Austin
Georgia	1788	Atlanta	Iowa	1846	Des Moines
Connecticut	1788	Hartford	Wisconsin	1848	Madison
Massachusetts	1788	Boston	California	1850	Sacramento
Maryland	1788	Annapolis	Minnesota	1858	St. Paul
South Carolina	1788	Columbia	Oregon	1859	Salem
New Hampshire	1788	Concord	Kansas	1861	Topeka
Virginia	1788	Richmond	West Virginia	1863	Charleston
New York	1788	Albany	Nevada	1864	Carson City
North Carolina	1789	Raleigh	Nebraska	1867	Lincoln
Rhode Island	1790	Providence	Colorado	1876	Denver
Vermont	1791	Montpelier	North Dakota	1889	Bismarck
Kentucky	1792	Frankfort	South Dakota	1889	Pierre
Tennessee	1796	Nashville	Montana	1889	Helena
Ohio	1803	Columbus	Washington	1889	Olympia
Louisiana	1812	Baton Rouge	Idaho	1890	Boise
Indiana	1816	Indianapolis	Wyoming	1890	Cheyenne
Mississippi	1817	Jackson	Utah	1896	Salt Lake City
Illinois	1818	Springfield	Oklahoma	1907	Oklahoma City
Alabama	1819	Montgomery	New Mexico	1912	Santa Fe
Maine	1820	Augusta	Arizona	1912	Phoenix
Missouri	1821	Jefferson City	Alaska	1959	Juneau
Arkansas	1836	Little Rock	Hawaii	1959	Honolulu

1942 US victory over the Japanese at the Battle of Midway.

May 8, 1945 Germany surrenders.

August 15, 1945 Following the dropping of US atomic bombs on Hiroshima (August 6) and Nagasaki (August 9), Japan surrenders.

1947 President Truman announces the Truman Doctrine, a pledge to contain Soviet expansion, beginning the Cold War between the US and USSR.

1948 Marshall Plan is enacted, providing US support to rebuild European economies.

1950-3 Korean War: United States and allies fight against a Communist takeover of Korea.

1954 Supreme Court rules that separate schooling for black and white students is unconstitutional.

1955 Montgomery bus boycott: a protest against racial segregation on public transportation.

1958 First American satellite goes into orbit.

1961 Bay of Pigs invasion, a failed US-backed attempt to overthrow the Communist Cuban government.

1962 The discovery of Soviet missile bases in Cuba leads the US and Soviet Union to the brink of war.

1963 Martin Luther King, Jr., delivers his "I have a dream" speech.

November 22, 1963 President Kennedy is assassinated.

1965 US troops sent to help South Vietnam fight the Communist North.

April 4, 1968 Martin Luther King, Jr., is assassinated.

1969 Neil Armstrong, of *Apollo 11*, is the first man on the Moon.

1974 Following the exposure of the Watergate scandal and cover-up, President Nixon resigns.

1975 South Vietnam surrenders.

1979 Iranian pro-government students seize the US embassy in Tehran, holding 52 Americans hostage for 444 days.

1985 Relations with the Soviet Union improve as President Reagan and Mikhail Gorbachev meet.

1986 Space shuttle *Challenger* explodes, killing all seven crew members.

1989 Fall of the Berlin Wall signals the end of Communism in Eastern Europe.

1991 Operation Desert Storm: the first war against Saddam Hussein of Iraq.

1995 Right-wing extremist Timothy McVeigh bombs Oklahoma City federal building.

September 11, 2001 Two planes hijacked by al-Qaeda, an Islamist terrorist group, destroy New York's

World Trade Center towers; a third plane hits the Pentagon; a fourth crashes in Pennsylvania.

2001 US and Britain bomb Afghanistan, where there are al-Qaeda bases, resulting in the collapse of the Taliban government.

2003 US and British forces invade Iraq, toppling the government of Saddam Hussein.

2005 Hurricane Katrina devastates New Orleans.

2008 World financial crisis, beginning with the US banking system.

2009 Barack Obama is inaugurated as the first African American president.

2011 9/11 mastermind Osama bin Laden killed by Navy SEALs in raid in Pakistan; US troops leave Iraq.

2012 20 children and 6 staff killed at Sandy Hook Elementary, Connecticut.

2013 Supreme Court legalizes same-sex marriage nationwide.

2015 President Obama opens diplomatic relations with Cuba for first time since 1961.

2016 Donald Trump elected president over Hillary Clinton, widening the political divide.

2018 17 students shot and killed at Marjory Stoneman Douglas High School in Parkland, Florida, setting off student-led gun-control movement.

The history of Canada

Thousands of years ago, Canada was home to different groups of Indigenous Peoples. In the northwest, tribes carved beautiful totem poles; in the south, people lived by hunting buffalo; and in the Arctic, the Inuit fished and hunted sea animals. During the 16th century, French and English explorers arrived, finding a land rich in natural resources, and early exploration was driven by fur traders. Over the centuries, Indigenous, French, and British cultures have combined to create a distinct Canadian identity.

c. 1000 CE Newfoundland is briefly settled by Vikings from Greenland.

1497 John Cabot, on an English voyage of exploration, reaches Newfoundland.

1534–35 Jacques Cartier explores the St. Lawrence River, and claims the region for France.

1608 Samuel de Champlain founds Quebec City, later the capital of New France.

1610 Henry Hudson, the English navigator, explores Hudson Bay.

1634–40 The American Indian Huron Nation is reduced by half by European diseases.

1670 Hudson's Bay Company, formed by English merchants, is given rights to trade along the rivers draining into Hudson's Bay.

1763 French and Indian War ends with the Treaty of Paris, which leaves New France under British rule.

1774 Quebec Act recognizes the right of French Canadians to keep their Roman Catholic religion.

1783 Following British defeat in the American Revolution, thousands of loyalists, who had supported the British Crown, emigrate to Canada.

1784 Scottish fur traders in Montreal set up the North West Company, which will found trading posts across north and western Canada.

1791 Colony of Quebec is divided into French-speaking Lower Canada (present-day southern Quebec) and English-speaking Upper Canada (present-day southern Ontario).

1793 Alexander Mackenzie, of the North West Company, reaches the Pacific, completing the first overland crossing of Canada.

1821 The Hudson's Bay Company absorbs the North West Company.

1847 Arrival of almost 100,000 immigrants, fleeing famine in Ireland.

1867 Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick are united in the new Canadian Confederation.

1869–70 Unsuccessful rebellion by the Métis people (descendants of French fur traders and natives).

1870 Manitoba and the Northwest Territories join the Confederation.

1871 British Columbia joins the Confederation.

1873 Prince Edward Island joins the Confederation.

1885 Canada's transcontinental railroad, linking Montreal with the Pacific, is completed.

1896–8 Gold rush attracts 100,000 prospectors to the Yukon in northwest Canada.

1898 Yukon joins the Confederation.

1905 Alberta and Saskatchewan join the Confederation.

1914–18 World War I, in which Canadians fight alongside British troops.

1929–39 The Great Depression.

1939–45 World War II, in which Canada is again an ally of Britain.

1949 Newfoundland joins the Confederation.

1962 Trans-Canada Highway officially opens.

1965 New Canadian flag adopted, replacing one incorporating the British flag.

1966 Medical Care Act is introduced to provide Canada-wide medical care.

1968 The Parti Québécois is formed, campaigning for independence for Quebec.

1960 Official Languages Act gives English and French equal status in Canada.

1970 The October Crisis, triggered by the kidnapping of two government officials by the FLQ, a Quebec nationalist group; Prime Minister Trudeau uses the War Measures Act to deal with the terrorists, allowing more than 400 arrests without warrants.

1980 In a referendum, the people of Quebec vote against independence; "O Canada" is adopted as the official national anthem.

1982 Canada adopts a new constitution and a Charter of Rights and Freedoms.

1994 North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) comes into effect, facilitating free trade between Canada, the United States, and Mexico.

1995 In another referendum, Quebec again votes to stay in Canada.

1999 Canadian territory of Nunavut established, with Inuktitut, Inuinnaqtun, English, and French as its official languages.

2005 Civil Marriage Act legalizes same-sex marriage across Canada.

2014 Franklin expedition ship, HMS *Erebus*, is found submerged in Canadian Arctic. HMS *Terror* is found in 2016.

2018 New trade agreement (CUSMA) is signed, replacing NAFTA.

PRIME MINISTERS

Sir John A. Macdonald (1867–1873)
Alexander Mackenzie (1873–1878)
Sir John A. Macdonald (1878–1891)
Sir John Abbott (1891–1892)
Sir John Thompson (1892–1894)
Sir Mackenzie Bowell (1894–1896)
Sir Charles Tupper (1896)
Sir Wilfrid Laurier (1896–1911)
Sir Robert Borden (1911–1920)
Arthur Meighen (1920–1921)
Sir William Lyon Mackenzie King (1921–1926)
Arthur Meighen (1926)
Sir William Lyon Mackenzie King (1926–1930)
Richard B. Bennett (1930–1935)
Sir William Lyon Mackenzie King (1935–1948)
Louis St. Laurent (1948–1957)
John Diefenbaker (1957–1963)
Lester Pearson (1963–1968)
Pierre Trudeau (1968–1979)
Joseph Clark (1979–1980)
Pierre Trudeau (1980–1984)
John Turner (1984)
Brian Mulroney (1984–1993)
Kim Campbell (1993)
Jean Chrétien (1993–2003)
Paul Martin (2003–2006)
Stephen Harper (2006–2015)
Justin Trudeau (2015–)

Glossary

Terms defined elsewhere in the glossary are in *italics*.

abolition

The act of doing away with something completely.

abdicate

To formally hand over power or responsibility to another.

ally

A person or country who unites with another person or country against a common enemy.

apartheid

In South Africa, a government policy of racial *segregation*.

apprentice

A person who works for an agreed period of time, in exchange for being taught a trade or craft.

armistice

An agreement between warring parties to end a conflict.

assassination

The murder of a key figure by surprise attack, carried out for political or religious reasons.

barbarian

The name given by the Romans to tribes outside the Roman Empire.

blockade

The isolation of an area so as to prevent supplies from entering or leaving.

Byzantine Empire

The mainly Greek-speaking Christian continuation of the Eastern Roman Empire, which lasted for 1,000 years.

caliph

The title of the religious and political leader of Islam (the Islamic world).

Calvinism

A strict form of Protestantism named after 16th-century religious reformer John Calvin.

capitalism

An economic system based on the private ownership of property and free competitive conditions for business.

city-state

A self-governing, independent state consisting of a city and the surrounding area.

civil war

A war between opposing groups of people in the same country.

classical

Relating to the ancient Greek or ancient Roman world.

Cold War

The period of hostility between the West and the *Communist* countries dominated by the *USSR*. It lasted from shortly after World War II until 1989.

colonization

The act of sending settlers to establish a *colony* in another country, sometimes involving taking political control over the people already living there.

colony

An area under the political control of another state, or the group of people who has settled there.

Communism

The political belief in a society in which ownership of property and wealth is shared.

conquistador

One of the Spanish conquerors of American Indian civilizations.

Counter-Reformation

The period of change in the Catholic church after the Protestant *Reformation*, which included internal reform and opposition to *Protestantism*.

coup

The sudden violent or illegal seizure of power by a small group.

Cro-Magnon man

The first modern humans to settle in Europe, around 40,000 years ago.

crusader

A Christian knight who went on one of the Crusades—military expeditions of the 11th, 12th, and 13th centuries to seize back Jerusalem from the Muslims.

czar

The title of the male rulers of Russia from the 15th century until 1917; a female ruler or the wife of a czar was titled *czarina*.

daimyo

A Japanese lord.

democracy

A form of government based on rule by the people, usually through elected representatives.

depression

In history, a period of drastic decline in economic activity, marked by widespread unemployment and hardship.

dictator

A leader who rules a country alone with no restrictions on the extent of their power.

domestication

The taming of wild animals to make them useful to humans.

dynasty

A royal family ruling a country for successive generations.

emir

A Muslim prince or military commander. The territory he rules over is known as an emirate.

empire

A group of lands or peoples brought under the rule of one government or person (emperor).

Enlightenment, the

The period of European history, in the 1700s, when radical thinkers tried to reach a new understanding of society, government, and humanity, and then to reform them.

exile

Forced absence from a person's home or country.

fascism

An ideology stressing *dictatorship* and *nationalism*, which places the strength of the state above individual citizens' welfare.

feudalism

A political system in Europe from the 700s onward, under which lords granted land to other nobles in return for loyalty, military assistance, and services.

genocide

The systematic murder of an entire people.

glasnost

The Russian word for "openness." Used by Mikhail Gorbachev to describe his policies in the *USSR* in the 1980s.

guerrilla warfare

A type of warfare in which small groups of fighters make surprise attacks.

guild

Organization in 11th- to 14th-century Europe formed by skilled workers or merchants of the same craft or trade to protect its members and control business.

heresy

Beliefs, held by a member of a religious group, that are considered to be in conflict with that group's established beliefs.

Holy Roman Empire

An *empire* set up in Western Europe in 800 CE, centered on modern-day Germany. The emperor received his title from the Pope and was the senior monarch in the Catholic world.

hominin

A member of the biological group that includes humans and their extinct ancestors and relatives.

**jihad**

Arabic word meaning “holy war.”

Khmer Rouge

The *Communist* organization that carried out *guerrilla warfare* in Cambodia in the 1960s and 70s, seizing power in 1975.

Lutheran

Someone who follows the ideas of German theologian Martin Luther, a key figure of the *Reformation*.

Mesoamerica

“Middle America,” the name for the region stretching from central Mexico in the north, to Guatemala in the south.

Mesopotamia

The region of modern-day Iraq lying between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers, where many of the earliest civilizations began.

missionary

A religious person who seeks to persuade others, often living in foreign lands, to adopt his or her religion.

Mughal

A member of the Muslim *dynasty* that ruled much of India between the 16th and 19th centuries.

Mujahideen

Muslim fighters who carry out *jihad*.

nationalism

The strong support for the interests of one's nation.

Neanderthal

An extinct species of early humans closely related to our own species.

Neolithic

The later Stone Age, during which improved stone tools and weapons were made and the first farming began.

nomad

A person who moves from one place to another to find fresh pastures and water for livestock.

Ottoman Empire

Founded by Turkish tribes around 1300, the *empire* that dominated eastern Europe and the Middle East for nearly 500 years.

paganism

A term used for the religious beliefs of the ancient Greeks and Romans and other early European peoples before the coming of Christianity.

pandemic

A sudden and widespread outbreak of disease.

peasant

A worker on the land, usually an agricultural laborer.

perestroika

Russian word meaning “reconstruction.” Used to refer to radical political and economic change, especially in *Communist* countries.

persecute

To oppress or harass a person or group because of their origins or beliefs.

pilgrim

A religious follower who makes a journey to a holy place.

protectorate

A dependent nation or region that is protected and partly controlled by a superior power.

Protestantism

A form of Christianity, resulting from the *Reformation*, in which allegiance is no longer offered to the Pope.

Reformation, the

The reform movement of the 16th century, in which many churches broke from the Catholic Church headed by the Pope in Rome.

regent

A person acting as head of state on behalf of the ruler, usually because the ruler is too young, unfit to rule, or absent.

Renaissance

A period of European history, beginning in the 14th century, when far-reaching changes occurred in the arts and intellectual life.

republic

A country without a hereditary king, prince, or emperor. Modern republics are usually led by presidents.

revolt

An organized uprising intended to overthrow an authority.

revolution

Sudden and fundamental change in society brought about by an organized group of protestors.

Safavid Empire

Islamic *empire*, based in modern-day Iran, that controlled much of the Middle East from the 16th to the 18th centuries.

samurai

A Japanese warrior knight.

script

The written characters that make up a writing system, such as an alphabet.

segregation

Separation, particularly of one race from another within a racist social system.

shogun

One of the military leaders who ruled Japan in the name of the emperor from the 1100s to the 1800s.

siege

To surround and *blockade* a city or fortress with the intention of capturing it.

slave

A person who is held as the property of another.

sovereign

A ruler or head of state exerting supreme power.

Soviet Union

Another name for the *USSR*.

stockade

A line of stout posts or logs set in the ground to form a defense.

stock exchange

An organization that allows trading in shares of companies and other financial assets.

suffragette

In the early 20th century, a woman who fought for the right to vote, known as suffrage.

superpower

A powerful and influential country considered stronger than its allies.

treaty

An official, written agreement between warring parties to bring hostilities to an end.

tribute

Money or goods paid by one king to another, or by one state to another, as recognition of the other's superior status.

USSR

The “Union of Soviet Socialist Republics,” the *Communist* state that existed from 1922 to 1991 in the former Russian Empire, with its capital at Moscow.

Zionism

The movement to create and maintain a homeland for the Jewish people in Israel.

Zoroastrianism

A religion of ancient Iran. It was founded by the prophet Zoroaster, who taught belief in one god, Ahura Mazda.

Index

A

Abbasids 94–95, 96, 97
Afghanistan 59, 64, 74, 225,
269, 286–287, 300, 302, 304
Africa 8, 9, 83, 131, 136, 275, 302
colonization 224, 225, 228,
230–231
independence movements 272,
273, 274, 287, 290
African Americans 223, 254, 273,
275, 276–277, 279, 296
African National Congress 275,
293, 297, 298
AIDS and HIV 288–289
aircraft 236, 238–239, 243, 245,
248–249, 255, 258–259, 278
airships 236, 248, 249
Akbar the Great 144, 160
Akhenaten 36
Akkadian Empire 28
Alaska 172, 173
Alcock and Brown 245
Alexander the Great 58, 59
Alfred the Great 99, 100
Algeria 274–275, 305
Ali, Muhammad 261
alphabets 31, 43, 99, 125, 205
Al-Qaeda 302, 304–305
America, discovery of 136–137
American Civil War 220, 222–223
American Indians 65, 106, 109,
135, 153, 208, 224–225, 234
American Revolution 186, 188–189
Americas, ancient 13, 18, 19, 208
Amin, Idi 282
ancestor worship 19, 33
anesthetics 206, 207
Anglo-Saxons 81, 82, 87, 90–91
Angola 291, 302
animals, domestic 10, 18, 19, 137
Antarctica 204, 240–241
antibiotics 247
Apollo missions 278, 280–281
Apple Inc. 307
apprentices 116–117
Arab conquests 90–91, 92, 96
Arab-Israeli conflict 284–285
Arab Spring 308
Arabic numerals 97
Arafat, Yasser 285, 296
Archimedes 61
architecture 70, 114–115, 133,
143, 159, 160–161, 162
Argentina 202, 203, 288
Arkwright, Richard 182, 186
art 132–133, 142, 144, 157, 171,
199, 221
Aryans 37
Asante people 224, 231
Assyrian Empire 42, 46
astronomy 97, 141, 152, 155
178, 190
Athens, Greece 47, 51, 52, 53,
54, 55, 58
Attila the Hun 82–83
Augsburg, Peace of 144, 148
Augustine, Saint 87
Augustus, Emperor 67, 69, 70
Aurangzeb 161, 162, 168
Aurelius, Marcus 75
Australia 13, 159, 181, 191, 204,
236, 244, 290–291
Australopithecines 8, 283
Austria 221, 226, 227, 241, 242,
244, 254, 262, 263
automobiles 228, 236–237

axes 9, 17, 34, 81
Aztecs 89, 125, 126–127, 136, 139

B

Babur, Emperor 140, 160, 161
Babylonian Empire 32, 42, 46, 50
Bactria 64
Baghdad, Iraq 95, 97, 119
Baird, John Logie 247
balloons, hot-air 190
Bangladesh 266, 282
banks 165, 297
barbarian tribes 81, 82–83
baseball 237
battery 194
battles
Agincourt 122–123, 124
Alamo 209
Britain 255
Culloden 173
Dan-no-Oura 112–113
El Alamein 257, 260
Gettysburg 222, 223
Hastings 107
the Ice 114
Kosovo 121, 142
Lepanto 145
Little Bighorn 225
Marathon 53
Stalingrad 256, 257, 260
Tannenberg 124
Thermopylae 53
Tours 94
Trafalgar 199
Waterloo 195
White Mountain 148–149
Wounded Knee 234
Bayeux Tapestry 107
Beatles, The 274
Becket, Thomas 109
Bede 94, 105
Beethoven, Ludwig van 199
Belgium 208, 231, 241, 290–291
Bell, Alexander Graham 225
Bering, Vitus 172
Berlin, Germany 257, 261, 268,
270–271
Berlin Wall 269, 271, 274
fall of 293, 294, 295
bicycles 203
Bin Laden, Osama 302, 304, 305
Bismarck, Otto von 224, 226
Black Hole of Calcutta 179
Blitz 260
Blue Mosque, Istanbul 143
Boer War, Second 231, 235
Bolívar, Simón 202
Bolivia 94, 141, 202
Bolt, Usain 307
books 99, 104, 134, 167
see also literature
Borobudur 98
Bosnian War 296, 300, 302
Boston Tea Party 186, 188
Boudicca, Queen 57
Boxer Rebellion 236
braille 205
Brazil 136, 138, 152, 201, 202,
204, 289, 297
Brexit 309
Britain
Anglo-Saxon 82, 99
medieval 109, 114, 120, 123,
124–125
Roman 70, 74, 82
17th century 159, 162, 165

Tudor 134, 140, 144, 150, 151
Viking 95, 98, 99, 100–101,
103, 106
see also United Kingdom
British Empire 179, 248, 290–291
African colonies 224, 225, 228,
230–231, 272, 273, 290
American colonies 150, 153,
180, 186, 188–189
Australian colonies 191, 236
Canadian provinces 221
India 219, 240, 245, 248, 266
bronze 17, 33, 34, 35, 57, 77
Bronze Age 33, 34, 37
Brunel, Isambard Kingdom 183, 209
Brunelleschi, Filippo 132, 133
Buddhism 50, 60, 87, 93, 98,
99, 106
Bulgaria 35, 99, 225
Burgundy, duchy of 134
burial customs 23, 32–33, 46–47,
82, 91
Burma 106
Byzantine Empire 83, 86, 90,
91, 95, 103, 114

C

Cabot, John 136–137
Cabral, Pedro Alvares 136–137, 138
Caesar, Julius 57, 67
calendars 66, 150, 178
Calvin, John 145, 148
Cambodia 98, 108, 272, 286
Camp David Accords 285
Canada 43, 101, 179, 136, 221
history of 313
Newfoundland 101, 106, 136
canals 87, 183, 205, 221, 241
cannons 120, 149
Carthage 51, 61, 64, 68, 69
Cartier, Jacques 136–137
Castro, Fidel 273
Catalhöyük, Turkey 16
cathedrals 114–115, 141
Catherine de' Medici 149
Catherine II "the Great" 180, 171
cave paintings 10, 13, 14–15
Celts 50, 55, 56–57, 66
Challenger 288, 292
Charge of the Light Brigade 218
Charlemagne, Emperor 95, 98
Charles I, King 159
Charles II, King 162
Charles V, Emperor 138, 139, 140,
144, 148
Charles Edward Stuart, Prince 173
Chaucer, Geoffrey 121
Chavin culture 43, 58
Chechnya 297, 303
chemistry 178, 180
Chernobyl disaster 292
chess 97, 101
children
apprentices 116–117
career at sea 174–175
immigrants to US 232–233
monks 104–105
rescued from Nazis 262–263
Roman 78–79
South African 298–299
Spartan 48–49
working 183, 184–185, 208,
212, 233
Chile 202, 283, 307
China, ancient and medieval 18,
19, 22, 50, 55, 65, 70, 87, 124,
144, 167
burials 32–33, 62–63
conflicts 54, 58, 61, 65, 70, 75,
80, 103
dynasties 29, 33, 37, 65, 76, 80,
87, 90, 92–93, 103, 108, 121,
135, 159
emperors 61, 62, 65, 70, 87, 90,
91, 92
golden age 92–93
Great Wall 135
inventions 93, 98, 107
metalwork 17, 33, 34, 35, 37
writing and paper 31, 74
China, modern 144, 159, 165,
166–167, 172, 180, 236, 240,
248, 300
Communist era 267, 273, 278,
282, 286
Tiananmen Square 293
wars 209, 212, 218, 234, 254
chocolate 150
Christianity 67, 70–71, 80, 81, 87,
99, 103, 156, 157, 159, 171
Protestants and Catholics
138–139, 141, 145, 148–149
Vikings and 101, 102, 103
Churchill, Winston 257, 268
circuses 180
cities, early 17, 28
Civil Rights Movement 273, 275,
276–277, 279
Claudius, Emperor 57, 70
Cleopatra 67
climate change 306
clocks 93, 107
cloning 301
Cnut, King 106
coal mining 183, 203, 212, 289
coffee 97, 162
coins 35, 47, 68, 83, 164, 169
Cold War 268–269, 274, 275, 294
Colosseum, Rome 71, 75
Colossus of Rhodes 60
Columbus, Christopher 135,
136–137, 174
comets 178
Commonwealth of Nations 248
communism 221, 244, 246, 267,
269, 271, 279, 286, 294–295
compass, magnetic 93
computers 283, 286, 292, 300
Confucius 50, 65
Congo Free State 231
conquistadors 126, 127, 136
Constantine the Great 80, 81
Constantinople 80, 83, 86–87, 91,
99, 110, 111, 114, 142, 143
fall of 130
Constitution, US 190
Cook, James 181, 187
Copernicus, Nicholas 141, 152
copper 17, 32, 34, 35, 65
Cortès, Hernán 136, 139
cotton mills 184–185, 186
Counter-Reformation 141, 148
Crete 28–29, 30, 32, 33, 163
Crimean War 207, 218
Cro-Magnons 13
Cromwell, Oliver 159, 162
Crusades 108, 110–111, 114
Cuba 235, 273, 279
missile crisis 269, 274, 275
Cultural Revolution 278, 286
cuneiform 17, 30
Curie, Marie 240
Curiosity (spacecraft) 308
Cyprus 283
Cyrus the Great 50–51, 52
Czechoslovakia 254, 262, 269,
279, 294

D

D-Day 260
da Gama, Vasco 135, 136–137
Damascus, Syria 71, 90, 142
Dante Alighieri 121
Darius I, King 50, 51, 52
Darwin, Charles 219
Davy, Humphrey 203

Dayton peace accords 300
de Gaulle, Charles 257, 274
Declaration of Independence 188
decolonization 290–291
Deepwater Horizon 307
Denmark 103, 106, 150, 290–291
Depression, Great 247, 248, 249, 250–253
Descartes, René 158
Diana, Princess of Wales 300
Disney, Walt 247, 255
DNA 272, 302
dodo 164
dogs 10
dolmens 17
Dome of the Rock 96–97
Don Quixote 152
Draco 47
Dracula 130
druids 56
Dust Bowl 249, 251
Dutch colonies 158, 159, 162, 290–291
Dutch Revolt 145, 148, 149, 151

E

Earhart, Amelia 248
earthquakes 144, 178, 237, 302, 307
East India Company 152, 190, 203, 219
East Timor 301
Easter Island 64, 102, 169
eclipses, predicting 50
economic crises 292, 302, 306
Edison, Thomas 206, 228
Edward VIII, King 254
Egypt, ancient 17, 18, 21, 22, 23, 29, 33, 34, 37, 38–41, 67
hieroglyphic 17, 30, 40, 194
pharaohs 22, 29, 30, 33, 36, 37, 38–39, 47, 59, 246
religion 26–27, 29, 36
Egypt, modern 221, 228, 230–231, 257, 260, 283, 288, 290
Eiffel Tower 229
Einstein, Albert 237
electricity 178, 191, 194, 204, 228
elephants 59, 161
Elizabeth I, Queen 144, 150, 151
Elizabeth II, Queen 272
Ellis Island 232–233, 234
encyclopedia, first 187
Enigma machine 257
Enlightenment, the 187, 199
Erasmus, Desiderius 133
Erie Canal 205
Ethiopia 81, 115, 231, 235, 249, 283, 288–289
Etruscans 46
European Union 296, 302, 309
evolution, theory of 219
explorers 115, 124, 125, 135, 136–137, 138, 139, 159, 169, 172, 181, 198, 204, 231, 240–241

F

Fahrenheit, Daniel Gabriel 169
fairy tales 202, 209, 255
Falklands War 288
famines 213, 249, 288
Faraday, Michael 204
farming 16, 18–19, 21, 100, 127
collectivization 248
innovations 168, 173, 205, 210–211
Fawkes, Guy 152
Ferdinand and Isabella 131, 134
films 235, 247, 251, 255, 309
fire, discovery of 9
Fleming, Alexander 247

Florence, Italy 131, 133, 135
Florida 204
flu, Spanish 245
flying shuttle 172, 185
food 11, 19, 137, 180, 202, 234
Forbidden City, Beijing 124
Ford, Model T 236–237
forts, hill 66
fossils 8, 144, 283
France 14–15, 114, 121, 134, 162, 182, 186, 208, 213, 279
colonies 230, 231, 272, 274, 290–291
religious conflict 145, 148, 149, 151, 164
Roman (Gaul) 66, 67, 68, 83
wars 120, 122–123, 124–125, 165, 179, 189, 199, 224, 226, 227, 241, 242–244, 255, 256, 257
see also French Revolution
Franco, Francisco 254
Frank, Anne 261
Frankenstein 203
Franklin, Benjamin 178
Franks 81, 86, 94, 95, 101, 102
Frederick II “the Great” 173, 179
French Revolution 191, 192–193, 194, 195, 196–197, 229

G

Gaddafi, Muammar al- 279
Gagarin, Yuri 274
Galápagos Islands 219
Galileo Galilei 152, 154–155
Gallipoli, Turkey 242, 244
games 23, 58, 79, 93, 101, 127
Gandhi, Indira 289
Gandhi, Mohandas 248, 266
Garibaldi, Giuseppe 227
Gaul 66, 67, 68, 83
Gaza Strip 285, 292
Genghis Khan 114, 118–119
George V, King 240
Germany 221, 226–227, 230
Depression 251, 252–253
divided 268, 270–271
Holocaust 261–263
Nazis 245, 249, 254–263, 266
religious conflict 148–149
reunified 293, 294, 295
wars 241, 242–245, 255–263
Ghana 224, 273, 290
gladiators 71, 72–73
Gobekli Tepe 16
gods, ancient 26–27, 29, 36, 56, 69, 76, 89, 101
gold 34, 35, 91, 127, 137, 140
gold rush, California 213
Gorbachev, Mikhail 269, 294–295
Goths 81
gravity 164
Great Exhibition 218
Great Leap Forward 273, 286
Great Western, SS 209
Greece, ancient 33, 34, 35, 37, 43, 47, 50, 51, 54, 56, 58, 59, 64
Sparta 46, 48–49, 53, 55, 58
wars 52–53, 54–55, 60
Greece, modern 208, 306
Greenland 100, 101, 103
Guevara, Ernesto “Che” 279
guillotine 193, 196–197
Gulf War 293
gunpowder 98, 120
guns 223, 230
Gustavus II Adolphus 149, 158
Gutenberg, Johannes 130

H

Hadrian's Wall 74
Haiti 194, 297, 307
Halley, Edmond 178

Hammurabi, King 32
Hannibal 61, 69
Harold II, King 107
Harry Potter books 300
Harvey, William 158
Henry V, King 123, 124
Henry VIII, King 140
Henry the Navigator 136
Herschel, William 190
hieroglyphic 17, 30, 40, 194
Hinduism 37, 108, 130
Hirohito, Emperor 258
Hiroshima, Japan 259
Hitler, Adolf 249, 250, 251, 254, 255, 256, 257, 261
Hittites 33, 36, 37
Holy Roman Empire 103, 139, 144, 148–149, 199
Homer 43
hominins 8–9
Homo erectus 7, 9, 13
Homo sapiens 7, 9, 13
Hong Kong 212, 300–301
Hooke, Robert 163
horses 17, 65, 180, 183
Hubble Space Telescope 293
Huguenots 145, 164, 165
Human Genome Project 302
Hundred Years' War 120, 122–123, 124–125
Hungary 269, 273
Huns 81, 82–83
hunter-gatherers 10–15, 16
Hurricane Katrina 303

I

Ice Age 10, 12
Iceland 101, 102, 190, 307
Incas 125, 126–127, 131, 140
incense 27
India 37, 59, 60, 80, 90, 109, 130, 163, 179, 190, 219, 240, 245, 248, 289, 301, 302, 306
independence 266
Mughals 140, 144, 160–161, 168, 172
religions 37, 50, 60, 135, 144
Indonesia 98, 290, 301, 303, 305
volcanoes 203, 228
Indus civilization 28, 30, 31
Industrial Revolution 177, 181, 182–185, 186
Inquisition 134, 154–155
Intifada 284, 285, 292
inventors 97, 165, 169, 181, 183, 186, 190, 194, 198, 203, 205, 211, 212, 219, 225, 228, 229, 235, 247
Iran 50, 76, 138, 151, 287
Iraq 138, 287, 293, 303, 305, 309
Ireland 17, 100, 198, 213, 246, 313
see also Northern Ireland
iron 33, 34, 35, 183
Islam (Muslims) 87, 90, 96–97
Crusades 108, 110–111
mosques 102, 143, 151
rulers 94–95, 102, 108, 109, 143, 144
scholarship 95, 97, 120
in Spain 94, 95, 97, 102, 114, 134
Islamic State (IS) 309
Israel 267, 283, 288, 292, 296
Arab-Israeli conflict 284–285
Italy 81, 83, 107, 224, 227, 234, 246, 290–291
Renaissance 131, 132–133, 138
wars 227, 231, 235, 249, 255, 256, 257, 261
Ivan IV “the Terrible” 141

J

Jackson, Michael 289

Jamaica 291
James I, King (VI of Scotland) 152
Japan 13, 46–47, 77, 82, 87, 98, 109, 112–113, 145, 236, 248, 254, 290–291, 306, 308
Edo period 156–157
emergence 218–219, 221
nuclear attack on 259, 261
shoguns 109, 113, 152, 156–157, 159
wars 131, 151, 156, 157, 234, 236, 248, 254, 258–259, 261
Jenner, Edward 194, 206, 207
Jerusalem 42, 50, 64, 90, 96–97, 108, 110–111
Jesus Christ 67, 70–71
Jews 134, 142, 228, 249, 254
ancient 42, 50, 64, 71, 284
Holocaust 261–263
Joan of Arc 125
Johnson, Amy 248
Jones, John Paul 174, 189
Justinian, Emperor 86

K

kamikaze pilots 259
Karnak, Temple of 26–27, 33
Kennedy, John F. 268, 274, 275
Kennedy, Robert 276, 279
Kenya 272
Kepler, Johannes 152
Khmer Empire 98, 108
Kindertransport 262–263
King, Martin Luther, Jr. 275, 276–277, 279
knights 110, 114, 124
Korea 67, 91, 125, 234
see also North Korea; South Korea
Korean War 267, 269
Kosovo War 301
Kushan Empire 74

L

Large Hadron Collider 307
League of Nations 246
Lebanon 47, 286, 288
Leif Ericson 101, 106
Lenin, Vladimir 244, 246
Leonardo da Vinci 132
Lewis and Clark 198
Liberia 213, 230
Libya 279, 293
light bulb 228
Lincoln, Abraham 222, 223
Lindisfarne Gospels 94
Linnaeus, Carl 172, 187
Lister, Joseph 207
literature 43, 106, 121, 150, 152, 202, 203, 209, 300
Livingstone, David 231
Lockerbie bombing 293
London, England 66, 117, 163, 218, 220, 260, 305
Louis XIV, King 162, 164, 165
Louis XVI, King 186, 192–193, 194, 196–197
Louis Philippe I, King 208
Louisiana Purchase 198
Luddites 202
Lumière brothers 235
Luther, Martin 138–139, 148

M

Maastricht Treaty 296
Machiavelli, Niccolò 133
Magellan, Ferdinand 136–137, 139
Magna Carta 114
Mali 83, 120, 131
mammoth, woolly 12
Manchuria 166, 236, 248, 254
Mandela, Nelson 275, 293,

297, 298
Mao Zedong 267, 273, 278,
282, 286
maps 145, 146–147
marathon 53
Marcomanni 68, 75
Marconi, Guglielmo 235
Marie Antoinette, Queen 186, 193
Marius, Gaius 65
Marshall Plan 267
Marx, Karl 221
Mary, Queen of Scots 150
mathematics 97, 164, 165
Maya 31, 75, 80, 88–89, 91, 99
Mayflower (pilgrims' ship) 153
Mecca and Medina 90
medical science 158, 194, 203,
206–207, 218, 223, 231, 247
Medici family 131, 133, 149
Meiji, Emperor 221
Mercator, Gerard 146–147
Mesopotamia 17, 18, 21, 23,
24–25, 27, 28, 29, 32, 46, 64
metalwork 21, 34–35, 37, 57
meteors 308
Mexico 36, 54, 71, 76–77, 88, 89,
91, 202, 209, 219, 220, 225, 240
see also Aztecs
Michelangelo 132–133, 138
microscopes 163, 207
Milosevic, Slobodan 296, 301
Ming Dynasty 121, 135, 159, 166
Minoans 28–29, 30, 32, 33
Mithridates I, King 64
Moche people 74, 77
Mohenjo-daro 28
Mongols 65, 93, 114, 118–119, 134
monks 86, 94, 99, 104–105
Mont Blanc 220
Montgolfer brothers 190
Mormons 213
Morse Code 212, 235
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus 180
Mugabe, Robert 287
Mughals 140, 144, 160–161,
168, 172
Muhammad 87, 90, 94, 96
Mumbai bombings 306
mummies 23, 60
Munich Agreement 254
music 26, 169, 180, 199, 213, 255
pop 274, 279, 286, 289
rock and roll 255, 266–267, 272
Mussolini, Benito 246, 256, 261
Mycaenae 33, 37

N

Nantes, Edict of 151, 164
Napoleon Bonaparte 193, 195,
198, 199, 202, 204
Napoleon III 224, 225, 227
NASA 308
NATO 268–269, 273, 296, 301
natural history 172, 181, 187, 219
Nazca lines 83
Nazis 245, 249, 254–263, 266
Neanderthals 12, 13
Nelson, Horatio 199
Neolithic Age 16, 18–19
Nero, Emperor 71, 73
Netherlands (the Dutch) 152, 156,
158, 159, 162, 290–291
see also Dutch Revolt
New York 158, 248, 251
Ellis Island 232–233, 234
terrorist attack 302, 304–305
New Zealand 159, 181, 234, 241
Newton, Isaac 164
Nicaragua 287
Nicholas II, Czar 237, 244
Nightingale, Florence 207, 218
Nixon, Richard 278–279, 282, 283
Noh theater 157

Normandy 102, 123, 260
Normans 107
Norte Chico civilization 23, 28
North Korea 267, 309
Northern Ireland 282, 301, 313
Nubia 50
nuclear weapons 259, 267, 268,
269, 272, 274, 301

O

Obama, Barack 277, 307
oil spills 293, 307
Oklahoma bombing 297
Olmechs 36, 89
Olympic Games 43, 235, 254, 282
Opium Wars 209, 212
Oregon Trail 212
Oslo accords 285, 296
Ostrogoths 81, 83, 86
Ottoman Empire 121, 124, 138,
140, 142–143, 145, 163, 164,
225, 237, 240, 242, 246
Ótzi the Iceman 16–17, 297
Owens, Jesse 254

P, Q

Pacific Ocean 64, 159, 181,
258–259
pagodas 93, 106
Pakistan 28, 266, 282, 301
305, 308
Palestine and Palestinians 37, 267,
282, 284–285, 286, 288, 292, 296
Palmyra, Syria 309
Panama Canal 241
paper 40, 74
Paraguay 220
Paris, France 101, 109, 145, 229, 309
Paris, Treaties of 179, 189
parliaments 102, 114
Parthians 64, 67, 68, 75, 76
Pasteur, Louis 207
Paul, Saint 71
Pearl Harbor 258–259, 260
Peloponnesian War 55
Peninsular War 199
Persian Empire 50–51, 59, 76, 90
Persian Wars 52–53, 54–55
Peru 23, 28, 32, 43, 58, 60, 74, 77,
83, 108
see also Incas
Peter the Great 168, 170, 171
Philip II, King 145, 150, 151
philosophers 50, 58, 75, 97,
158, 187
Phoenicians 31, 37, 43, 47, 51
photography 205, 209, 229
pirates 169
Pizarro, Francisco 140
plague 55, 86, 120, 163
Pocahontas 153
Poland 124, 173, 255, 256,
287, 294
police 205
Polo, Marco 115
Polynesia 64, 102, 169
Pompeii, Italy 71, 72–73, 78–79
Popes 114, 121, 132, 141, 150, 288
Portugal 125, 135, 136–137, 138,
150, 202, 204, 290–291
postage stamps 212
potatoes 19, 213
pottery 13, 19, 22, 32, 88, 143
fine porcelain 93, 157, 168
Presley, Elvis 255, 272
Priestley, Joseph 180, 187
printing 93, 99, 130
Prohibition 246
Prussia 165, 173, 179, 221,
224, 226
pyramids 22, 71, 76, 88
Qing Dynasty 159, 166–167, 180

Quran 90, 96

R

railroads 183, 198, 205, 209, 220,
221, 223, 234, 305
Rameses II “the Great” 36
Reagan, Ronald 269, 288
reaper, mechanical 210–211
Red Cross 227
Reform Act, Great 208
Reformation 138–139, 148–149
Relativity, theory of 237
Renaissance 131, 132–133, 138
Rhodes, Cecil 231
Richard I, King 111
Richard III, King 134
Robert the Bruce 120
Robespierre, Maximilien 193, 196
Rocket (locomotive) 205
Roman Empire 66–75, 76, 77,
78–79, 80, 81
early Rome 43, 47, 51, 54, 56, 68
fall of 81, 82–83
wars 57, 58, 60, 61, 64, 66, 67,
68, 69, 75, 77
Romania 130, 225, 295
Romanov Dynasty 153
Romantic Movement 199
Rome, modern 132, 140, 227, 261
art and architecture 138, 159
Rome, Treaty of 273
Roosevelt, Franklin D. 248, 250,
251, 258, 260
Rosetta Stone 194–195
rubber 172, 187
Russia 103, 134, 153, 165, 168,
170–171, 173, 180, 220, 234,
237, 244, 295, 308
after 1991 297, 303
Czars 141, 220, 228, 237, 244
Vikings in 99, 100
wars 218, 225, 236, 244
see also Soviet Union
Russian Revolution 244
Rwanda 297

S

Saddam Hussein 293, 303, 305
Safavid Dynasty 138, 142, 151
Saladin 108, 111
Salem witch trials 165
Salt March 248
samurai 112–113, 131, 156
Sasanian Dynasty 76, 77
satellites 273, 274
Saudi Arabia 236
Savonarola, Girolamo 135
saxophone 213
schools 40–41, 79, 104, 299, 303, 306
science 133, 141, 163, 164, 178,
180, 187, 194, 203, 204–205,
206–207, 237, 240, 247, 272,
301, 307
Scotland 101, 120, 173, 312
Scott, Robert 240–241
scurvy 194
Scythians 46–47
Sea Peoples 37
seed drill 168, 205
Seljuk Turks 97, 107, 111
September 11 attacks 302,
304–305
Serbia 121, 225, 241, 242, 296, 301
Seven Years' War 173, 179
Shah Jahan 161, 162
Shakespeare, William 150
ships and boats 13, 64, 69, 99,
100–101, 124, 125, 139, 145, 153,
181, 201, 227, 240, 243, 256
steam-powered 183, 209, 219
young crew 174–175
Sikhs 135, 289

silk 87
Silk Road 65, 74, 92
silver 35, 141, 167
Singapore 203
skyscrapers 248, 283, 300–301
slaves and slave trade 137, 152,
168, 194, 200–201, 222, 231
abolition 199, 200, 201, 223
ancient 46, 48, 66, 69, 87, 89
freed slaves 69, 191, 213
Slavs 99
smartphones 307
Socrates 58
soccer 229, 297
Solomon, King 42, 115
Song Dynasty 92–93, 103, 108
Songhai Empire 131
South Africa 11, 40, 162, 209,
225, 231, 235, 290
apartheid 272, 275, 293, 297,
298–299
South America 136–137, 202, 220
South Korea 267, 309
South Pole 240–241
Soviet Union 246, 248, 249, 267,
268–269, 273, 274, 275, 278,
279, 286–287
end of 294–295, 296
in World War II 256, 257, 260, 261
see also Russia
space exploration 273, 274, 278,
280–281, 288, 292
Spain 131, 134, 145, 168, 199,
202, 204, 307
colonies 126, 127, 135,
136–137, 139, 140, 152, 168,
235, 290–291
Muslims in 94, 95, 97, 102,
114, 134
Spanish Armada 151
Spanish Civil War 254
Sparta 46, 48–49, 53, 55, 58
spices 135
Sputnik 273, 278
Sri Lanka 289
Stalin, Joseph 246, 248, 257,
261, 268
steam power 165, 181, 182, 183,
186, 190, 198, 205, 209
Stephenson, George 205
Stepped Reckoner 165
stethoscope 203, 206
Stonehenge 22–23
Stradivari, Antonio 169
strikes 279, 289
submarines 187, 244, 256
Sudan 50, 228, 303
Suez Canal 221
suffragettes 241
Suleiman I “the Magnificent” 140
Sumerians 17, 26, 30
Sutton Hoo treasure 91
Sweden 149, 158, 162, 168
Syria 77, 90, 110, 283, 308, 309

T

Taj Mahal 160–161
Taliban 287, 300, 304
Tang Dynasty 90, 92–93, 103
tanks 243, 256
Tasman, Abel 159
telegraph 212, 219, 223, 235
telephone 225
telescopes 152, 164, 190, 293
television 247
temples 16, 26–27, 33, 36, 42, 55,
98, 108, 130, 135
tennis 225
Tenochtitlán 126, 139
Teotihuacán 71, 76–77, 89, 91
Terracotta Warriors 62–63
terrorism 282, 285, 293, 297, 302,
303, 304–305, 306, 309

Texas 168, 209, 296
textile industry 161, 184–185,
186, 190, 202
Thailand 190
Thanksgiving 153
theater 54, 150, 157
Theodosius I, Emperor 81
thermometers 169, 206
Thirty Years' War 148–149, 153,
158, 159
Tikal 75, 80, 88, 89, 99
Timbuktu, Mali 120, 131
Timur the Lame 124
tin cans 202
Titanic, RMS 240
Tiwanaku 94
tobacco 152
Toltecs 89, 102
tomb builders 17
tools 9, 11, 12, 17, 34, 35
Tordesillas, Treaty of 135
towns, early 16, 19, 21, 22, 23, 83
Trevithick, Richard 183, 198
Troy, siege of 37
Trump, Donald 285, 309
tsunamis 178, 303, 308
Tudors 134, 140, 144, 150, 151
Tull, Jethro 168, 205
Tunisia 120, 230, 308
Turkey 16, 47, 51, 107, 237, 244,
246, 283
see also Constantinople;
Ottoman Empire
Tutankhamun 38–39, 246
Twitter 306

U
Ukraine 46, 249, 292
Umayyads 94, 96, 97
United Kingdom 152, 198, 208,
209, 212, 254, 272, 289, 310
wars 202, 209, 212, 242–244,
255–263
see also Britain; British Empire
United Nations 266, 285
United States of America 190,
198, 204, 246, 267, 290–291
attacks on 297, 302, 304–305
Cold War 268–269, 274, 275
early colonies 150, 153, 158,
168, 180, 186, 188–189
farming 210–211, 249
Great Depression 247, 248, 249,
250–251
history of 310
immigration 232–233, 234
pioneers 198, 212–213, 214–215
presidents 191, 223, 250, 275,
277, 283, 288, 307, 309
railroads 209, 221, 223
space program 278,
280–281, 288, 292
states 173, 198, 204, 209
wars 186, 188–9, 202, 220,
222–223, 225, 235, 243, 244,
258–259, 260, 278–279, 297,
303, 304, 305
see also African Americans;
American Indians
universities 109
Ur 23, 24–25, 27, 29

V
vaccinations 194, 206, 207
Vandals 81, 86
Vercingetorix 67
Versailles, Treaty of 245
Vespucci, Amerigo 137
Victor Emmanuel II 224, 227
Victoria, Queen 209
Vienna, Congress of 202, 208
Vienna, siege of 164
Vietnam 75, 272
Vietnam War 269, 278–279, 286
Vikings 95, 98, 99, 100–101, 102, 103
Vinland 101, 106
Visigoths 81, 86
volcanoes 33, 71, 190, 203, 228, 307
Volta, Alessandro 194
Voortrekkers 209

W
Waco (Texas) siege 296, 297
Wall Street Crash 247, 250
warfare, early 24–25, 65
Wars of Religion 148–149, 153
Warsaw Pact 268–269, 273,
294, 295
Washington, George 189, 191
Watergate scandal 283
Watt, James 181, 183, 186
weapons 120, 149, 223, 230, 231,
242, 243, 244, 257
early 10–11, 17, 35, 48, 52, 58,
81, 82
medieval 91, 108, 118, 120,

125, 131
nuclear 259, 267, 268, 269, 272,
274, 301
Weapons of Mass Destruction 305
Wellington, Duke of 195, 199
Westphalia, Peace of 149, 159
Whittington, Dick 117
Wilberforce, William 199, 200, 201
William and Mary 165
William the Conqueror 107
Wolfe, James 179
women, rights of 194, 212, 234,
241, 243, 275, 308, 309
World War I 241, 242–244, 252
World War II 251, 255–263, 290
World Wide Web 300
Wright brothers 236, 238–239
writing 17, 30–31, 40–41, 43, 74,
88, 104

X, Y, Z
Xerxes, King 53, 54–55
X-rays 235, 240
Yellowstone National Park 225
Yom Kippur War 283, 284
Yousafzai, Malala 308
Yugoslavia 295, 296
Zapotec 54, 89
Zenobia, Queen 77
zeppelins 236, 243
zigzags 27, 29
Zimbabwe 115, 231, 287
Zulus 225, 231

Credits

Dorling Kindersley would like to thank: John Searcy for Americanization; Jackie Brind and Elizabeth Wise for the index; Hazel Beynon for proofreading; Ann Baggaley, Frances Jones, Andrea Mills, and John Woodward for additional writing; Helen Abramson, Caron Brown, Matilda Gollon, Victoria Pyke, Jenny Sich, and Samira Sood for editorial assistance; Paul Drislane and Mik Gates for design assistance; Merrit Cartographic for maps; Peter Bull and Caroline Church for illustrations. Nityanand Kumar for DTP assistance.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:
(Key: a-above; b-below/bottom; c-center; f-far; l-left; r-right; t-top)

3 Dorling Kindersley: Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (cla/microscope). **6 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (c/carving); Gary Omler / Courtesy of the Oxford Museum of Natural History (bc); Dave King / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (cr/bow). **Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti (c/pot). **7 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Museum of London (c/flint cutting edge). **8 Alamy Images:** Anton Rothwell Scenic / Alamy (tc). **9 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (fcl/bow). **10 Corbis:** Kazuyoshi Nomachi (c). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (tl). **11 Alamy Images:** John Warburton-Lee Photography (c). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the Museum of London (tr/fishing spear, tr/harpoon point, ca); Dave King / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (fcl/bow). **12 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the Natural History Museum, London (br); Andrew Nelmer / Courtesy of the Royal British Columbia Museum, Victoria, Canada (tl); Dave King / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (fbr). **13 Getty Images:** AFP (tl); DEA / G. Dagli Orti (br). **14–15 Corbis:** Jean-Daniel Sudres / Hemis (c). **16 Alamy Stock Photo:** Michele Burgess (cb). **The Trustees of the British Museum:** (bc). **17 Alamy Images:** The Art Archive (br). **The Art Archive:** Musée du Louvre Paris / Gianni Dagli Orti (cra). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Wolfgang Neeb (bl). **Getty Images:** Robert Mettiffogo (tl). **Corbis:** Burstein Collection (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Museum of London (fcl). **19 Dorling Kindersley:** Alan Hills and Barbara Winter / The Trustees of the British Museum (cra). **20 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (c). **Corbis:** Philip de BayCredit / Historical Picture Archive (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (bc); Demetrio Carrasco / CONACULTA-INAH-MEX. Authorized reproduction by the Instituto Nacional de Antropología e Historia (bl). **21 Corbis:** (cr); Sandro Vannini (cl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (c); Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (cb). **22 Corbis:** David Nunuk / All Canada Photos (tl). **23 Alamy Images:** Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd (bc); The Art Archive (cr). **Corbis:** Paulo Aguiar / epa (cb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (tr). **24–25 Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Omler / The British Museum (ca). **26 Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (cla). **27 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Universal History Archive / UIG (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (fcl). **28–29 Corbis:** Gianni Dagli Orti (bc). **28 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library (bc). **Corbis:** Ursula Gahwiler / Robert Harding World Imagery (cr). **29 Alamy Images:** nik wheeler (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / The Trustees of the British Museum (cra). **30 Dorling Kindersley:** Nick Nichols and Peter Hayman / The Trustees of the British Museum (tl, fl/stylus). **31 Dorling Kindersley:** By permission of The British Library (tc); University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (tl); Michel Zabe / CONACULTA-INAH-MEX. Authorized reproduction by the Instituto Nacional de Antropología e Historia (cb). **32 Corbis:** (cla). **Getty Images:** Universal Images Group (bc). **33 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library / G. Nimatallah (cb). **Corbis:** Sandro Vannini (bc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (c); Harry Taylor / Courtesy of the Natural History Museum, London (br). **35 Dorling Kindersley:** Nigel Hicks / Courtesy of Museo Tumbas Reales de Sipan (cra); Dave King / Courtesy of The Museum of London (cla); Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (bl, br); Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (cb). **36 Corbis:** Jose Fuste Raga (br); Sandro Vannini (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Demetrio Carrasco / CONACULTA-INAH-MEX / CONACULTA-INAH-MEX. Authorized reproduction by the Instituto Nacional de Antropología e Historia (tl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (bl). **37 Corbis:** Philip de BayCredit / Historical Picture Archive (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Joe Cornish / ARF / TAP (Archaeological Receipts Fund) (cb). **Getty Images:** Werner Forman / Universal Images Group (bl). **38 Corbis:** Sandro Vannini (c). **40 The Trustees of the British Museum:** (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (bc/geese, bl). **41 Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (c). **42 Alamy Images:** BibleLandPictures.com (bc). **Corbis:** Alfredo Dagli Orti / The Art Archive (tl). **43 Corbis:** (tc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Ivor Kerslake / The British Museum (cla); Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (bc). **44 Alamy Images:** The Art Archive (cb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (cr). **Getty Images:** (ca). **Panos Pictures:** (tl). **45 Alamy Images:** Gianni Dagli Orti / The Art Archive (cla/knife point). **Corbis:** Werner Forman (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (c). **46 Alamy Images:** BibleLandPictures.com (cla). **The Art Archive:** (bc). **Corbis:** Heritage Images (ca). **Dorling Kindersley:** Rob Reichenfeld / National War Museum, Athens (bl). **47 Alamy Images:** BibleLandPictures.com (tc); The Art Archive (bl). **48–49 Dorling Kindersley:** Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (bc). **48 akq-images:** North Wind Picture Archives (tl). **The Trustees of the British Museum:** (bl). **49 akq-images:** Eric Lessing (c). **50 The Trustees of the British Museum:** (bc). **Panos Pictures:** (cra). **51 Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (bc). **52 The Art Archive:** Musée Archéologique Naples / Gianni Dagli Orti (cl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Omler / Courtesy of 4hoplites (fcl). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (cr). **53 akq-images:** (cb). **Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (fcl). **Corbis:** Michael Nicholson (cla). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (tc). **54 Corbis:** Ruggero Vanni (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (tl). **54–55 akq-images:** Joseph Martin (tc). **55 Alamy Images:** Gianni Dagli Orti / The Art Archive (fbl). **Ancient Art & Architecture Collection:** R. Kawka (bl/spade coins). **Corbis:** Bettmann (br). **56 Alamy Images:** (clb). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (cra). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Edwin Mullan Collection (cb). **57 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Museum of London (tc); Dave King / Courtesy of the University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology, Cambridge (fcl, clb). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (cr). **SuperStock:** David Lyons / age fotostock (cr). **58 Corbis:** Heritage Images (clb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (br). **TopFoto.co.uk:** HIP (tl). **58–59 Dorling Kindersley:** Nick Nicholls / The British Museum (bc). **59 akq-images:** (tr); ullstein bild (cb). **Corbis:** (cl). **60 The Bridgeman Art Library:** The Stapleton Collection (br). **Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (bl). **61 Corbis:** Heritage Images (tr). **Getty Images:** DEA / G. Dagli Orti / De Agostini (br). **62 Corbis:** Werner Forman (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Karl Shone / Courtesy of the Ermine Street Guard (cr). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (bl). **66 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Look & Learn (cl); The Stapleton Collection (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Christi Graham and Nick Nicholls / The British Library (cra); Alan Hills / The British Museum (br). **67 Corbis:** Bettmann (bc); The Gallery Collection (br). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tr). **68–69 Corbis:** Sylvain Sonnet (cb). **68 Dorling Kindersley:** Alan Hills and Barbara Winter / The British Museum (ca). **69 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Ny Carlsberg Glyptotek, Copenhagen, Denmark (cla). **Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (cr). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (bl). **70 Getty Images:** (cla); De Agostini Picture Library (clb). **71 The Bridgeman Art Library:** John Mitchell Fine Paintings (bl). **Corbis:** Nathan Benn / Ottochrome (tl). **Getty Images:** Jean-Pierre Lescurret (cra). **72 akq-images:** Eric Lessing (c). **74 akq-images:** RIA Novosti (cra); Collection Archer fuvr Kunst & Geschichte (cb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Demetrio Carrasco / Courtesy of Museo Chileno de Arte Precolombino (tc); Joe Cornish / Courtesy of English Heritage (cla). **75 Alamy Images:** Ben Oliver (cb). **Corbis:** Stapleton Collection (ca). **76 The Art Archive:** Musée Cernuschi Paris / Gianni Dagli Orti (cla). **Corbis:** (tl); Angelo Hornak (bl). **76–77 Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (bc). **77 Alamy Images:** Interfoto (tl); Mo Peerbac (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Peter Nahum at The Leicester Galleries, London (bc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Nigel Hicks / Courtesy of Museo Tumbas Reales de Sipan (tc). **78 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon (c). **79 akq-images:** De Agostini Pic.Lib. (br); MPorfolio / Electa (tr). **80 Alamy Images:** Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library (cra). **Corbis:** (br). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (cb). **81 akq-images:** (bc); De Agostini Pic.Lib. (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Omler / Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the Royal Armouries (bl); Christi Graham and Nick Nicholls / The British Library (tc). **82 akq-images:** (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Interfoto Agentur (cra). **SuperStock:** DeAgostini (br). **83 akq-images:** (tl). **Getty Images:** Bjorn Holland (bl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Granger Collection (tr). **84 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (fcl); The Art Archive (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, Germany (cl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Image Gap (c) Alamy (br). **85 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (fcl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** British Library Board. All Rights Reserved (cla); Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, France (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Tim Parmenter / The British Museum, Courtesy of the British Museum (fcr). **Getty Images:** SSPL (cl). **86 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Musée Conde, Chantilly, France (tl); Giraudon / San Vitale, Ravenna, Italy (ca); Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, Germany (tr); Czartoryski Museum, Cracow, Poland (bl). **87 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (tr); The Art Archive (bl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon / Musée des Arts Décoratifs, Paris, France (tl). **88 Alamy Images:** Diana Bier (cla). **Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (cr); Linda Whitwam (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (tl). **Getty Images:** Pola Damonte (cl). **89 Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (br); Tim Parmenter / Courtesy of the British Museum (tl). **90 akq-images:** R. u. S. Michael (tr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Fitzwilliam Museum, University of Cambridge, UK (bc). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Granger Collection (bl). **91 Alamy Images:** The Art Archive (br). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Musée Guimet, Paris, France (cr). **Werner Forman Archive:** San Francisco Museum of Asiatic Art. Location: 01 (clb). **92 akq-images:** British Library (cla). **Getty Images:** UIG (cr). **93 Getty Images:** TAO Images Limited (cl). **94 akq-images:** Album / Prisma (bc); British Library (cla); IAM (cra). **95 Alamy Images:** Robert Harding World Imagery (tl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** (bl); Roger-Viollet, Paris (br); The Stapleton Collection (cra). **97 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library / G. Dagli Orti (cr). **Corbis:** Gianni Dagli Orti (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Andy Crawford / Courtesy of the Royal Museum of Scotland, Edinburgh (tl). **98 akq-images:** Album / Prisma (ca). **Getty Images:** Teeje (bl). **99 The Bridgeman Art Library:** (bl); Archives Charmet / Veliko Tarnovo Museum, Bulgaria (tl); The Stapleton Collection (cra); Tyne & Wear Archives & Museums (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Geoff Dann / Ashmolean Museum, Oxford (br). **100 Alamy Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (cl). **100–101 Dorling Kindersley:** James Stevenson / Courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, London (c). **101 Alamy Images:** All Canada Photos (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Anderson / Courtesy of the Statens Historiska Museum, Stockholm (tl); Helena Smith / The National Museum of Scotland

(br). **102 Corbis:** Atlantide Phototravel (bc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (cla). **103 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library (tc); Vladimir Cathedral, Kiev, Ukraine (br). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Granger Collection (clb). **104 akq-images:** British Library (bl, tl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Fitzwilliam Museum, University of Cambridge, UK (bc). **105 akq-images:** Gerhard Ruff (c). **106 akq-images:** Erich Lessing (cra). **Alamy Images:** Juergen Rittenbach (br); Christopher Vernon-Perry (clb). **Corbis:** Buddy Mays (cla). **107 akq-images:** Erich Lessing (tl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Musee de la Tapissierie, Bayeux, France (bc); English Heritage Photo Library (fcrb). **Getty Images:** SSP/L (cr). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (cr). **108 Alamy Images:** Peter Horree (cra). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon (crb). **Corbis:** Ken Walsh / Design Pics (bl). **109 akq-images:** (cr); Yvan Travy (tc); Ulsteinbild (br). **Corbis:** Ira Block / National Geographic Society (cl); Gianni Dagli Orti (bl). **110-111 The Bridgeman Art Library:** British Library Board. All Rights Reserved (c). **111 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris (cr); Universal History Archive / UIG (tl); Giraudon / Musee des Monuments, Francais, Paris, France (br). **112 The Bridgeman Art Library:** (c). **114-115 Alamy Images:** SuperStock (bc). **114 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Palazzo Ducale, Venice, Italy (bl); Look & Learn (cr). **Corbis:** Alfredo Dagli Orti / The Art Archive (tr). **115 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France (cra). **Corbis:** Gavin Hellier / Robert Harding World Imagery (tl); David Reed (bc). **116 TopFoto.co.uk:** (c). **117 Alamy Images:** North Wind Picture Archives (tr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Look & Learn (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Geoff Dann / Courtesy of the National Guild of Stone Masons and Carvers, London (crb). **118 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Peter Newark Military Pictures (cl); Victoria & Albert Museum, London (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the Royal Armouries (bc); Tim Parmenter / The British Museum, Courtesy of the British Museum (tl). **119 akq-images:** (cr); Visioars (cb). **Alamy Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the Royal Armouries (br). **120 Alamy Images:** Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library (bl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** (cra); Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris, France (br). **121 Alamy Images:** JL Images (bc); The Art Archive (cb). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** (tr); Duomo, Florence, Italy (cla). **122 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Lambeth Palace Library, London (c). **124 Corbis:** Bettmann (cla). **125 Alamy Images:** The Art Archive (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (br). **Getty Images:** (c). **126 akq-images:** (cla). **126-127 Dorling Kindersley:** Michel Zabe (c) CONACULTA-INAH-MEX (c). **127 akq-images:** (tc). **Corbis:** Ocean (cr). **128 akq-images:** Interfoto (fcl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Boltin Picture Library / Museo Nacional de Antropologia, Mexico City, Mexico (bc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Neil Mersh / Courtesy of the Vatican Museums and Galleries, Rome (c); PhotoAlto Agency / Isabelle Rozenbaum and Frederic Crou (c) Getty (crb). **Getty Images:** British Library / Robana (c); Werner Forman / UIG (cl). **129 Alamy Images:** The Natural History Museum (cr/dodo). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Tina Chambers / Courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, London (ca/Blackbeard). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library / Bishn Das (fcl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (bl). **130 Corbis:** Alfredo Dagli Orti (tc). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (cb); British Library / Robana (cra); Image Source (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (crb). **131 akq-images:** Interfoto (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Brooklyn Museum of Art, New York, USA (bc). **Corbis:** (tc). **Getty Images:** Werner Forman / UIG (bl). **132 Corbis:** Bettmann (fcl); Araldo de Luca (cr). **133 Corbis:** (tr); Stefano Bianchetti (tl); Sylvain Sonnet (bc); Summerfield Press (tl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Iberfoto (tc). **134 akq-images:** RIA Novosti (tr). **Alamy Images:** North Wind Picture Archives (br). **Getty Images:** Popperfoto (c). **135 Alamy Images:** Dinodia Photos (tc). **Corbis:** Atlantide Phototravel (br); Tibor Bogner (cla); Bettmann (bl). **136 Corbis:** Historical Picture Archive (c). **Getty Images:** (clb/Cartier); SuperStock (cl); De Agostini (clb/Magellan); DEA / G. Dagli Orti (cla). **137 Corbis:** Bettmann (tr). **138 akq-images:** (bc). **The Art Archive:** Bodleian Library, Oxford / MS Elliott 332 folio 207-8 (br). **Getty Images:** Michele Falzone (tr). **TopFoto.co.uk:** (cla). **139 akq-images:** Interfoto (clb). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Boltin Picture Library / Museo Nacional de Antropologia, Mexico City, Mexico (br); Look & Learn (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** James Stevenson & Tina Chambers / Courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, London (cla). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (bl). **140 Corbis:** Bettmann (crb); Image Source (br); Charles Caratini / Sygma (cra). **Getty Images:** (bl); The Bridgeman Art Library / Bishn Das (tl); Time & Life Pictures (ca). **141 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Bonhams, London, UK (tl); British Library, London / © British Library Board (tr). **Corbis:** Paul Seux / Hemis (br). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (cb). **142 akq-images:** Erich Lessing (c). **143 akq-images:** IAM (cl, cla). **Alamy Images:** Jon Arnold Images Ltd (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Victoria & Albert Museum, London (clb). **Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tl). **144 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Private Collection (br). **Corbis:** Bettmann (tr); Stapleton Collection (bl). **145 Alamy Images:** Everett Collection Historical (br); The Art Archive (cra). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Private Collection (cla). **Corbis:** Bettmann (c). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Granger Collection (bl). **146-147 Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (c). **148-149 akq-images:** De Agostini Pic.Lib. (c). **148 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Alinari / Museo e Gallerie Nazionali di Capodimonte, Naples, Italy (tl). **149 akq-images:** North Wind Picture Archives (cra). **Alamy Images:** Interfoto (tc). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Archives du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères, Paris (crb); DHM / Deutsches Historisches Museum, Berlin, Germany (tr); Heeresgeschichtliches Museum, Vienna, Austria (cr). **150 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon (br); Peter Phipp / Travelshots (ca). **Corbis:** Heritage Images (cla). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tr). **151 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon (bl); Chateau de Versailles (tr); Photo Rafael Valls Gallery, London, UK (cla). **Corbis:** Paul Seux / Hemis (br). **152 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Orlicka Galerie, Rychnov nad Kneznou, Czech Republic (cb); Universal History Archive / UIG (cr). **Corbis:** Bettmann (tc); PoodlesRock (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (bc). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Interfoto / Sammlung Rauch (c). **153 Alamy Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (c); RIA Novosti (bl). **Getty Images:** (tl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** Ulsteinbild (br). **154-155 Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library. **156 Getty Images:** UIG (clb). **156-157 Getty Images:** (c). **157 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Paul Freeman (fcrb, cb); Peter Newark Pictures (tl). **Corbis:** Werner Forman (tr); Seattle Art Museum (crb). **158 The Art Archive:** Gift of Rita and Murray Hartstein / Museum of the City of New York / 96.13.1 (bl). **159 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Crispian Riley-Smith (tr). **Getty Images:** (tl); Time & Life Pictures (br). **159 The Bridgeman Art Library:** (c). **Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tr). **Dreamstime.com:** Stefanian (br). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Interfoto / Sammlung Rauch (bl). **160-161 Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Cook (c). **161 akq-images:** Erich Lessing (cla); R. S. Michael (cra, tr, cr). **Getty Images:** UIG (tl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** HIP / The Board of Trustees of the Armouries (cl). **162 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Photo © Philip Mould Ltd, London (tr). **Corbis:** Michael Nicholson (br); Bertrand Rieger (bc). **163 akq-images:** IAM (cl); R. u. S. Michael (cra). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** (bc). **Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (c). **164 Alamy Images:** The Natural History Museum (bl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Universal History Archive / UIG (cra). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cla). **Getty Images:** De Agostini / G. Nimatallah (br). **165 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Collection of the New-York Historical Society (bc); Photo © Philip Mould Ltd, London (cla). **Getty Images:** SSP/L (cra). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (crb). **166 akq-images:** Erich Lessing (br). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Peter Newark Pictures (clb/Chien-Lung). **TopFoto.co.uk:** (clb/Qianlong); World History Archive (cr). **167 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library / G. Dagli Orti (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Durham University Oriental Museum (br). **168 akq-images:** R. u. S. Michael (cb). **Alamy Images:** The Art Archive (tc). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Acquired with assistance of National Art Collections Fund / National Army Museum, London (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (c). **169 akq-images:** Rabatti - Domingie (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Tina Chambers / The British Museum (cra); Tina Chambers / Courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, London (cr). **Getty Images:** British Library / Robana (br); SSP/L (cl). **170 akq-images:** Ulsteinbild (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Tretyakov Gallery, Moscow, Russia (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Christ Graham and Nick Nicholls / The British Library (tr). **171 akq-images:** (cb). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Art Museum, Samara, Russia (cla); Universal History Archive / UIG (tr). **Corbis:** Lebrecht Music & Arts (tl); Reproduced by permission of The State Hermitage Museum, St. Petersburg, Russia (tl). **Getty Images:** Imagno / Hulton Archive (clb); Universal Images Group (cl). **172-173 akq-images:** IAM (bc). **172 Alamy Images:** North Wind Picture Archives (ca). **Corbis:** (bl). **173 akq-images:** (cb). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cra). **Getty Images:** Universal Images Group (cla). **174 akq-images:** North Wind Picture Archives (cl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (tl). **Getty Images:** Royal Geographical Society (cb). **175 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Universal History Archive / UIG (c). **176 Corbis:** PoodlesRock (c). **Dorling Kindersley:** Ranald MacKechnie / The Wallace Collection, London (crb); James Stevenson / Courtesy of the National Maritime Museum, London (cl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (bc). **Science Photo Library:** Dellev van Ravenswaay (tl). **177 Corbis:** Stefano Bianchetti (c). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (cla/boomerang); Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the National Cycle Collection (cr). **178-179 Science Photo Library:** Dellev van Ravenswaay (bc). **178 Corbis:** Bettmann (tr); Museum of the City of New York (cla). **179 akq-images:** North Wind Picture Archives (bc). **Alamy Images:** North Wind Picture Archives (cb). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Archives du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères, Paris (cb). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cl). **180 Dorling Kindersley:** John Chase / Courtesy of The Museum of London / Courtesy of the Museum of London (br); Wallace Collection, London (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (cla, tr). **181 Corbis:** Hulton-Deutsch Collection (crb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Colin Keates / Courtesy of the Natural History Museum, London (bl/butterfly); Natural History Museum, London (bl); **iStockphoto.com:** EVAfotografie / Getty Images Plus (c). **182 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / CNAI, Conservatoire National de Arts et Metiers, Paris (c). **Dorling Kindersley:** Colin Keates / Courtesy of the Natural History Museum, London (cb). **Getty Images:** British Library / Robana (tl). **183 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Archives de l'École Nationale des Ponts et Chaussées, Paris (tr). **Corbis:** (tl); Hulton-Deutsch Collection (c). **Getty Images:** Time & Life Pictures (cra). **184 Corbis:** (c). **185 Alamy Images:** Everett Collection Historical (cr). **Getty Images:** Popperfoto (tr); SSP/L (cb). **186 Alamy Images:** david martyn hughes (tl). **Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Frank Greenaway / Courtesy of the Natural History Museum, London (cla); Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (br); Ranald MacKechnie / The Wallace Collection, London (cl). **187 Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tr). **Getty Images:** De Agostini (crb). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (clb). **188 Corbis:** PoodlesRock (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Jacob Termansen and Pia Marie Molbech / Courtesy of Peter Keim (tl). **189 Corbis:** Heritage Images (crb). **Getty Images:** (cl, clb). **SuperStock:** (cla). **190 Corbis:** Nigel Hicks (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (br). **191 Corbis:** (tl); Stapleton Collection (cra); Christel Gerstenberg (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Pitt Rivers Museum, University of Oxford (cr). **192 Corbis:** The Gallery Collection (tl, c). **193 akq-images:** Interfoto (bc). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Musee de la Ville de Paris, Musee Carnavalet, Paris (cl); Archive Charmet / Bibliotheque Nationale, Paris (cb); Look & Learn (cr). **Corbis:** Gianni Dagli Orti (fcl, c). **Getty Images:** (tr); Universal Images Group (tl). **194 Corbis:** (bl); Bettmann (tl). **Getty Images:** SSP/L (cr). **194-195 Dorling Kindersley:** Peter Hayman / Trustees of The British Museum (bc); Clive Streeter / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (ca). **195 Corbis:** Bettmann (bc, cr). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tl). **196-197 Corbis:** Heritage Images (c). **198 Corbis:** Smithsonian Institution (bc). **Library of Congress, Washington, D.C.:** 3a19564u (cr). **199 Corbis:** Bettmann (cb); Hulton-Deutsch Collection; Stapleton Collection (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Iberfoto (tr). **200 Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tl). **Universal Images Group / Hulton Fine Art:** 201 **Dorling Kindersley:** Wilberforce House Museum, Hull (bc). **SuperStock:** The Bridgeman Art Library (tr); Universal Images Group (cr). **202-203 Corbis:** Bettmann (cb). **202 Corbis:** Bettmann (crb); Blaine Harrington III (tl); Michael Nicholson (cr); Christie's Images (bc). **203 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (bl); Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the National Cycle Collection (ca). **Science Photo Library:** Sheila Terry (tl). **204 The Bridgeman Art Library:** The Royal Institution, London, UK (cr). **Corbis:** Michael Nicholson (cl); Nigel Pavitt / JAI (tl). **205 Corbis:** Bettmann (bl). **Getty Images:** Antoine Francois Jean Claudet / Hulton Archive (crb); Joseph Niepce / Hulton Archive (tl); SSP/L (cb). **206 Dorling Kindersley:** Dave King / Courtesy of The Science Museum, London (c/ various medical instruments). **207 Corbis:** PoodlesRock (cr). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Peter Higginbotham Collection (tl). **Welcome Images:** Science Museum, London (cl). **208 Corbis:** Michael Nicholson (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** Lynton Gardiner / Courtesy of The American Museum of Natural History (cr). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (ca, bl). **209 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Look & Learn (cra). **Corbis:** Bettmann (bl); Heritage Images (c). **210-211 Getty Images:** (c). **212 Corbis:** (tl); Heritage Images (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Ensiper / Shutterstock (ca). **213 Corbis:** PoodlesRock (bc). **Getty Images:** (tl); Universal Images Group (cr). **214 akq-images:** North Wind Picture Archives (bl). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Peter Newark American Pictures (tl). **215 Dorling Kindersley:** Demetrio Carrasco / Rough Guides (c). **216 akq-images:** John Hios (ca/medal). **Alamy Images:** Trinity Mirror / Mirrorpix (bc). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** (c/crown); Cincinnati Art Museum, Ohio, USA / Museum Purchase (bl). **Corbis:** Swim Ink 2, LLC (cr/Unclé Sam). **Getty Images:** SSP/L (clb/early telephone, cr). **217 akq-images:** RIA Novosti (cla/medal). **Corbis:** Museum of Flight (fcr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Andy Crawford / By kind permission of The Trustees of the Imperial War Museum, London (tl); Ellen Howdon / Courtesy of Glasgow Museum / Glasgow City Council Museums (cl); Courtesy of the Imperial War Museum, London (fcr); Steve Gorton / Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences (cr/Oscar). **218 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Private Collection (bc); Universal History Archive/UIG (tr). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the Royal Armouries (clb). **Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library / DEA / G. Dagli Orti (tl). **219 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Private Collection (tr). **Corbis:** Louie Psihoyos / Science Faction (tc). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library (clb). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (crb). **220 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Museo Historico Nacional, Buenos Aires, Argentina (br). **Corbis:** Hulton-Deutsch Collection (bl). **Getty Images:** The Bridgeman Art Library / Samuel John Hodson (tl). **221 Alamy Images:** Interfoto / Travel (cr). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Cincinnati Art Museum, Ohio, USA / Museum Purchase (tr). **Corbis:** Lebrecht Authors / Lebrecht Music & Arts (ca). **Getty Images:** Imagno / Hulton Archive (tl). **222 Dorling Kindersley:** Confederate Memorial Hall, New Orleans / Confederate Memorial Hall, New Orleans, LA (c). **222-223 Corbis:** Blue Lantern Studio (c). **223 Corbis:** (tl); Bettmann (cra). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gettysburg National Military Park, PA (ca/bayonet, c/rifle, tc); Kovalchuk Oleksandr (c) Shutterstock (cb/Grant). **224 The Bridgeman Art Library:** De Agostini Picture Library (tl). **Corbis:** Fine Art Photographic Library (cb). **224-225 Getty Images:** American School / The Bridgeman Art Library (tl). **225 Getty Images:** SSP/L (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (crb). **Wimbledon Lawn Tennis Museum:** (tr). **226 akq-images:** Ulsteinbild (br). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Tuchsenschloss Nuernberg, Nuernberg, Germany (cl); Chateau de Versailles (clb); Universal History Archive / UIG (c). **227 The Bridgeman Art Library:** (crb); Museo del Risorgimento, Brescia, Italy (cl); Giraudon (cra); De Agostini Picture Library (cr/Garibaldi). **228 Alamy Images:** Trinity Mirror / Mirrorpix (tc). **Dorling Kindersley:** The Science Museum, London (cr). **Getty Images:** (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (br). **229 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Giraudon / Musee de la Ville de Paris, Musee Carnavalet, Paris (c). **Corbis:** Bettmann (bl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Football Museum, Preston (tl). **230-231 Corbis:** Hulton-Deutsch Collection (c). **231 Alamy Images:** World History Archive (tc). **The Bridgeman Art Library:** Look & Learn (tr); Photo © Tarker (cra/Rhodes); Patrick Lorente (cra/Leopold II); The Stapleton Collection (cr). **Corbis:** adoc-photos (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** Gary Ombler / Courtesy of the Board of Trustees of the Royal Armouries (c/spear). **232 Corbis:** Paul Thompson / National Geographic Society (c). **233 Corbis:** Bettmann (br, cr, tr). **234 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Archives Charmet / Bibliotheque des Arts Decoratifs, Paris, France (ca); Universal History Archive / UIG (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** Lynton Gardiner / Courtesy of the American Museum of Natural History (bl). **235 akq-images:** John Hios (cb). **Corbis:** Bettmann (br). **Dorling Kindersley:** The Science Museum, London (cla). **Getty Images:** Hulton Archive (ca). **236 Getty Images:** De Agostini Picture Library / DEA / M. 237 **Corbis:** Arnd Wiegmann / Reuters (cra). **Getty Images:** Arnold Genthe / Hulton Archive (br); Topical Press Agency / Hulton Archive (cla). **238-239 Alamy Images:** LOC Photo (c). **240-241 Getty Images:** Popperfoto (tl). **240 Corbis:** Ted Spiegel (bc); Underwood & Underwood (cl). **Getty Images:** (cra, br). **241 Corbis:** Heritage Images (crb). **Getty Images:** SSP/L (c); Time & Life Pictures (bl). **242 Corbis:** (cb). **243 Alamy Images:** Martin Bennet (cl). **Corbis:** (crb); Swim Ink 2, LLC (tc). **Getty Images:** (tl, cla/Sopwith Camel, cr). **244 Corbis:** Michael Nicholson (cb). **Getty Images:** Bain News Service / Interim Archives / Archive Photos (bc); Topical Press Agency / Hulton Archive (cra); Mansell / Time & Life Pictures (tl). **245 Getty Images:** PhotoQuest / Archive Photos (crb); Topical Press Agency / Hulton Archive (br); SSP/L (c). **246 akq-images:** RIA Novosti (ca). **Corbis:** Bettmann (bl). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** (tl). **247 Corbis:** Bettmann (cb, br); Hulton-Deutsch Collection (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Steve Gorton / Academy of Motion Picture Arts and Sciences (cra); Ellen Howdon / Courtesy of Glasgow Museum / Glasgow City Council Museums (cla). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Epic (tc). **Science Photo Library:** Clouds Hill Imaging Ltd (bl). **248 aviationpictures.com:** (bc). **Corbis:** (tr). **Getty Images:** (bl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Granger Collection (tl). **249 Getty Images:** (c, tl, br); Time & Life Pictures (bl). **250 The Bridgeman Art Library:** Peter Newark American Pictures (clb/Roosevelt). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cl). **Getty Images:** Gamma-Keystone (tl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** (c). **250-251 Getty Images:** (c). **251 Getty Images:** (cl, crb); SSP/L (tr). **252-253 Getty Images:** Keystone (c). **254 akq-images:** Interfoto (cla). **Corbis:** Hulton-Deutsch Collection (br). **Getty Images:** (tr); De Agostini (cb). **255 Alamy Images:** Andy Myatt (br). **Corbis:** (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Andy Crawford / By kind permission of The Trustees of the Imperial War Museum, London (cr/Spitfire). **Getty Images:** (bl). **256-257 Corbis:** (tr). **256 akq-images:** (tr). **Dorling Kindersley:** Courtesy of the Imperial War Museum, London (bl). **Corbis:** Oscar White (ca/Eisenhower). **Dorling Kindersley:** Courtesy of the Imperial War Museum, London (tl). **Getty Images:** (tl); Roger Vliet (cra). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** Glasshouse Images (cl). **258 Corbis:** (cr). **Getty Images:** FPG (tc). **Mary Evans Picture Library:** SZ Photo / Scheri (ca). **259 Corbis:** Hulton-Deutsch Collection (tc); Museum of Flight (tl). **Dorling Kindersley:** Bradbury Science Museum, Los Alamos (cr). **Getty Images:** Gamma-Keystone (cr). **260 akq-images:** (tr). **Corbis:** Bettmann (cra). **Getty Images:** (cl, br). **261 Corbis:** (cb); Ocean (cl). **Getty Images:** (bc); UIG (tr). **262 Corbis:** Bettmann (cl). **Getty Images:** (crb). **Imperial War Museum:** (EPH 3872) (cb). **263 Corbis:** Bettmann (c). **264 Alamy Images:** Everett Collection Historical (ca); TNT Magazine (cb). **Dorling Kindersley:** Image Source / United Nations / Getty (cla/UN logo); Gary Ombler / Courtesy of Dave Shayler / Astro Info Service Ltd (c/patch). **265 Corbis:** Christian Liewig / TempSport (c). **Getty Images:** (cr/book); AFP (cl/Mandela, fcr/Obama). **NASA:** (tc). **Ed Uthman:** (fcl/computer). **266 Dorling Kindersley:** Image Source / United Nations / Getty (cb). **Getty Images:** (cla, cra); Time & Life Pictures (clb). **267 Corbis:** Swim Ink 2, LLC (tl). **Getty Images:** (br). **268 akq-images:** Ulsteinbild (clb). **Getty Images:** (cla, cra); Time & Life Pictures (ca). **269 Getty Images:** AFP (crb); Time & Life Pictures (tr). **270 Getty Images:** Gamma-Keystone (c). **271 akq-images:** (bl). **Corbis:** Bettmann (br, tr). **272 Alamy Images:** Gallo Images (bl). **Corbis:** (cl). **Getty Images:** (cr, br). **Science Photo Library:** A. Barrington Brown (cb). **273 Getty Images:** (tc); Time & Life Pictures (cra); AFP (bl). **Imagine China 274 Corbis:** Bettmann (bl). **275 Alamy Images:** (br); Popperfoto (tl). **274-275 Getty Images:** (tc). **275 Alamy Images:** Pictorial Press Ltd (clb). **Getty Images:** (br); Time & Life Pictures (cl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** AP (cr). **276-277 Getty Images:** AFP (c). **276 Getty Images:** (cl); Time & Life Pictures (tr); UIG (cl). **TopFoto.co.uk:** (cla). **277 Corbis:** Ken Cedeno (crb). **Getty Images:** (tc). **278 Getty Images:** (bc, cra). **NASA:** (cl). **279 Alamy Images:** TNT Magazine (bl). **Getty Images:** (tc, fcl); Popperfoto (cra); Gamma-Keystone (crb). **280-281 Corbis:** Ocean. **282 Corbis:** Bettmann (tl). **Getty Images:** AFP (tr); Time & Life Pictures (bl). **283 Corbis:** Bettmann (ca); Ralf-Fin Hestoft (cr). **TopFoto.co.uk:** The Image Works (bl.). **284 Getty Images:** Danita Delimont (cr); Popperfoto (tr). **284-285 Corbis:** Bettmann (cb). **285 Alamy Images:** Gino's Premium Images (crb). **Getty Images:** AFP (tc). **286 Corbis:** Wael Hamzeh / epa (bl). **Rex Features:** Richard Young (cra). **TopFoto.co.uk:** World History Archive (cb). **Ed Uthman:** (tr). **287 Getty Images:** (clb); AFP (cla, tc, tr); Gamma-Rapho (bl); NBCU Photo Bank (crb). **288-289 Getty Images:** (cb). **Science Photo Library:** NIBSC (ca). **288 Corbis:** Reuters (bl). **Getty Images:** (tc, bc). **NASA:** (cla). **289 Alamy Images:** f8 archive (br). **Corbis:** Nathan Benn (tr); Kapoor Baldev / Sygma (bc). **290 Getty Images:** AFP (cl); Time & Life Pictures (cb, ca). **TopFoto.co.uk:** (cla). **291 Getty Images:** (clb); Gamma-Keystone (crb). **292 Getty Images:** (cla); AFP (cl); **292-293 akq-images:** (tr). **293 Corbis:** Peter Turnley (cra). **294 Getty Images:** Boston Globe (c). **295 Getty Images:** AFP (tr, tl); Time & Life Pictures (clb, cl/Yelnsin); Gamma-Rapho (cla/Gorbachev). **296 Getty Images:** (cb); Time & Life Pictures (tr, br); AFP (bc). **297 Alamy Images:** Universal Images Group Limited (br). **Getty Images:** (crb); AFP (cra). **298 akq-images:** Interfoto (ca). **Getty Images:** AFP (bl); Time & Life Pictures (tl). **299 Getty Images:** AFP (c). **300-301 Corbis:** James Leynse (tc). **300 Corbis:** Ed Quinn (clb). **Getty Images:** (bl); SSP/L (bc); AFP (cra, cb, tl). **301 Alamy Images:** Universal Images Group Limited (tr). **Getty Images:** (bl, cra). **302 Getty Images:** (tr); AFP (cla); Medioimages / Photodisc (crb). **Science Photo Library:** James King-Holmes (clb). **303 Getty Images:** (cra); AFP (cla, bl); NY Daily News (bc). **NASA:** (ca, tc). **304 Getty Images:** (clb); AFP (cl). **304-305 Getty Images:** (c). **305 Alamy Images:** Trinity Mirror / Mirrorpix (tr). **Getty Images:** AFP (cb). **306 Alamy Stock Photo:** COP21 (c). **Getty Images:** Hanna Franzen / AFP (bc); AFP (br); Jhd Share / Kaoru Shire (cla). **307 Getty Images:** (br); Barcroft Media (tl); Gabriele Coffini / AFP (bl); Etienne De Malglaive / Getty Images News (tr); Carl De Souza / AFP (ca). **Alamy Stock Photo:** Adrian Lyon / iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. (cl). **308-309 NASA:** JPL-Caltech. **308 Getty Images:** Tony Karumba / AFP (bl). **309 Getty Images:** Ahmad Al-Rubaye / AFP (tc); Ron Sachs-Pool (bl); David M. Benett / WireImage (clb); Joe & Clair Carnegie / Libyan Soup / Moment (cra); Mario Tama / Getty Images News (br)